

Hi-Res Graphics and Animation Using Assembly Language

The Guide for Apple II Programmers

*includes
double hi-res
for the Apple IIc
and extended-
memory
Apple IIe*



HAYDEN

Leonard I. Malkin, Ph.D.

Scanned in Summer 2022 by WIZARD1969.
Dedicated to KansasFest 2022, Dr Steven Weyhrich
and the unborn.

***Hi-Res Graphics and Animation
Using Assembly Language***

The Guide for Apple II® Programmers

***Hi-Res Graphics and Animation
Using Assembly Language***

The Guide for Apple II® Programmers

Leonard I. Malkin, Ph.D.

.....



Hayden Book Company

A DIVISION OF HAYDEN PUBLISHING COMPANY, INC.
HASBROUCK HEIGHTS, NEW JERSEY / BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA

Acquisitions Editor: KAREN PASTUZYN
Production Editor: ALBERTA BODDY
Design: JIM BERNARD
Cover photo: LOU ODOR
Compositor: McFARLAND GRAPHICS AND DESIGN, INC.
Printer: J.D. LUCAS PRINTING COMPANY

I would like to thank my editor, Karen Pastuzyn, who helped me turn a rough idea into a finished manuscript, and also the reviewers, who lent their assembly language expertise to many parts of the programs.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Malkin, Leonard I.

Hi-res graphics and animation using assembly language.

Includes index.

1. Apple II (Computer)—Programming. 2. Computer graphics. 3. Assembler language (Computer program language) I. Title.

QA76.8.A662M35 1985 006.6 85-24752
ISBN 0-8104-6758-5

Copyright © 1986 by HAYDEN BOOK COMPANY. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted, or reproduced, or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the Publisher.

Printed in the United States of America

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	PRINTING
86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	YEAR

*To Diane, Sonya, and Joshua,
with whom I can now get reacquainted,
and to my parents, who made me.*

EQUIPMENT NEEDED

To use the programs in this book, you will need the following equipment:

- An Apple II Plus, IIe, or IIc (Chapter 12 requires either a IIc or an extended-memory IIe)
- A disk drive
- A monitor (color for Chapter 11 and part of Chapter 12)
- A joystick or paddle
- An assembler (see the *What You Will Need* section)



What You Will Need

If you have an Apple II (II+, IIe, or IIfx), and someplace to plug it in, you're practically all set. You will need a disc drive and a display screen, which can be either a black and white or color monitor or television set. Monitors give sharper pictures and are recommended, especially for double hi-res, but television sets are adequate. You should also have a joystick or paddle controls.

You will also need a good assembler. Assemblers are software packages that allow you to write and, more importantly, edit assembly language programs. Strictly speaking, you don't need an assembler to enter the programs in this book (you could use the Apple's resident Monitor or even BASIC), but the level of inconvenience would be unbearably high. Also, for you assembly language beginners out there, don't be lulled by those who may tell you that the Apple's Mini-Assembler or some other simple assembler is sufficient for your needs. The most important characteristic of full feature assemblers is their convenience, not their complexity. To eliminate long hours of needless work, and certainly if you're going to do any serious assembly language programming, a full feature assembler is a necessity. All programs in this book were assembled using the BIG MAC assembler (available from A.P.P.L.E., 290 S.W. 43rd St., Renton, WA 98055; call 1-800-426-3667 to order), but any full feature assembler can be used as they all employ the same basic command set. Among others I can recommend are Orca/M (Hayden Software), Merlin (Southwestern Data Systems), and DOS Tool Kit (Apple Computer, Inc.). These are available in computer stores and are also discounted by mail order firms—check the software ads in any computer magazine. If you don't want to invest in an assembler just now, contact your local Apple user's group—you may be able to borrow an assembler for temporary use.

There are usually some minor differences from assembler to assembler but these are almost always in extra features rather than in the basic system. Features of the BIG MAC assembler used in this book that may not be found in other assemblers are pointed out in the text along with the normal or standard instructions. If you're not going to use BIG MAC, examine your assembler's instruction manual. This, together with an examination of the generated machine code, will tell you what changes, if any, have to be made in the way the assembly code is written.



Introduction

Part One of this book will lead you, step-by-step, through the construction of a single, arcade-type hi-res game written entirely in Apple II assembly language. Each chapter in Part One provides a building block leading to the final game with minimal digressions. Later chapters (Part Two) discuss aspects of hi-res animated graphics important to the subject but not directly related to the game, with suggestions about how to apply these techniques to the game itself or to your own programs.

The game we're going to construct is relatively simple but the program code is not. Hopefully, reading this book will reduce the level of difficulty to manageable proportions. It is written for beginners and experienced users alike and no prior knowledge of assembly language is required. It begins with a discussion of bits and bytes, binary and hexadecimal numbering systems, architecture of the Apple II hi-res screens, use of an assembler, and proceeds with a discussion of drawing and animating shapes, paddle and joystick controls, collision detection, scoring and sound, and finally the game itself. Other topics discussed in both Parts One and Two include animating multiple shapes, drawing over backgrounds, animation in color and in double hi-res color and black and white, advanced paddle and joystick routines, and integrating BASIC with assembly language programs.

Studying this book slowly and methodically will provide you with knowledge of the elements of hi-res game design for the Apple and you will be able to program your own hi-res animation routines in assembly language. However, it should be emphasized that the skills you will acquire have utility far beyond merely designing games. Let me give you a concrete example. I've recently completed an educational program for the Apple II that required moving rather large shapes around the screen and attempts to do this from BASIC using Apple shape tables (we'll discuss these in Chapter 1) were far from satisfactory. The jerky, flickering animation seemed designed to ensure nervous blinking. Using

the simple principles described in this book, I was able to produce smooth, professional-looking animation that contributes greatly to the visual appeal of the program, which is one of its strong selling points. So even if game design is not your goal, hi-res animation using assembly language will provide you with an extremely useful tool for a myriad of applications, limited only by your imagination.

Finally, I strongly encourage you to play an active role in the learning process. Do not merely read the text; type in the programs. Try the advanced techniques described in Part Two to modify the game and, above all, develop your own programs. In this way you will learn not only the techniques of hi-res graphics and animation but also many fundamental principles of assembly language programming. Reading about assembly language instructions is one thing but using them in your own programs is another. In the words of an ancient Chinese philosopher,

*I hear, and I forget,
I see, and I remember,
I do, and I understand.*

Contents

PART ONE

Fundamentals and the Game 1

1. Why Assembly Language for Hi-Res Animated Graphics? 3
2. Bits and Bytes, Sugar and Spice 6
 - Binary Number System* 6
 - The Hexadecimal Numbering System* 8
 - The Apple II Memory Map* 9
 - The Hi-Res Screens* 11
 - Using an Assembler* 12
3. Drawing a Shape on the Hi-Res Screen 16
 - Displaying the Hi-Res Screen* 16
 - Clearing the Hi-Res Screen* 18
 - Drawing a Shape* 21
 - Line Address Tables* 24
 - Shape Tables* 30
 - Drawing Shapes Wider Than One Byte* 33
4. Vertical Animation 37
 - Erasing a Shape* 37
 - Time Delays* 39
 - Vertical Animation—One Shape Moving Down* 39
 - One Shape Moving Up* 45
 - Draw-Draw Routines* 48

5.	Horizontal Movement and Internal Animation	54
	<i>The Seven Preshifted Shapes</i>	55
	<i>TEMP and Shape Address Tables</i>	57
	<i>Accessing Sequential Shapes and Testing for End of Screen</i>	60
	<i>Shapes at New Line Positions</i>	72
	<i>Draw-Draw</i>	72
	<i>Internal Animation</i>	77
6.	Paddle and Joystick Controls and Multiple Shapes	89
	<i>Paddle and Joystick Controls</i>	89
	<i>Paddle Control of Vertical Movement</i>	90
	<i>Paddle Control of Horizontal Movement</i>	93
	<i>Multiple Shapes—Paddle Control of Horizontal Movement and Shooting Bullets</i>	105
7.	Collisions and Explosions	116
	<i>Collision Detection</i>	116
	<i>Explosions</i>	127
8.	Scoring, Stopping, and Restarting	140
	<i>Counting by Ones</i>	140
	<i>Stopping at a Predetermined Score and Restarting with a Keypress</i>	144
	<i>Counting by Multiples and Decrementing Score</i>	156
9.	Sound Generation: Explosions and Clickety-Clicks	167
	<i>The Apple Speaker and Sound Generation</i>	167
	<i>Integrating Sound Effects into the Game Program</i>	169
10.	Putting It All Together: The Game	

PART TWO

Advanced Techniques 211

11.	Drawing in Color	213
	<i>Apple Color</i>	213
	<i>Color Animation</i>	215
	<i>Collision Detection with Color Shapes</i>	221
12.	Double Hi-Res Graphics and Animation	227
	<i>Double Hi-Res—What It Is and What's Required</i>	227
	<i>The Double Hi-Res Screen</i>	228
	<i>The Double Hi-Res Mode</i>	229
	<i>Drawing Shapes</i>	229
	<i>Animating Shapes</i>	231
	<i>Double Hi-Res Color Shapes</i>	239
	<i>Animating Double Hi-Res Color Shapes</i>	244

13.	Curved and Diagonal Movement	252
	<i>Diagonal Movement</i>	252
	<i>Curved Movement</i>	261
14.	Drawing over Backgrounds	266
	<i>White Shapes and Backgrounds</i>	266
	<i>Color Shapes with Color or White Backgrounds</i>	276
15.	Advanced Paddle (Joystick) Routines	283
	<i>Testing for Non-Movement of Paddle</i>	283
	<i>Paddle-Smoothing Routines</i>	288
16.	Integrating BASIC with Assembly Language Programs	295
	<i>Memory Allocation</i>	296
	<i>Zero Page Usage</i>	299
	<i>Graphics and Text Commands from BASIC</i>	300
	<i>Accessing Assembly Language Programs from BASIC</i>	300
17.	Suggestions for Game Modification	304
	Appendix: Assembly Language Commands	306
	Index	313

PART ONE

*Fundamentals and
the Game*

Why Assembly Language for Hi-Res Animated Graphics?

*An English teacher named Bea
Knew the dictionary from A to Z,
But upon buying an Apple
She then had to grapple
With a brand new vocabulary.*

Programming in assembly language is not the only way to produce hi-res animated graphics on the Apple II. Applesoft BASIC supports many graphics features that can be quite useful for displaying shapes or moving one or two relatively small shapes around the screen. In fact, it is often convenient to combine graphics from BASIC with assembly language graphic routines, and we will discuss how to do this in Chapter 16. But, as we'll soon see, there are problems associated with using BASIC for graphics programming.

Simple BASIC commands allow one to plot points or lines (and thus shapes) on the hi-res screen and to move them around by erasing and redrawing at a new position. For example, the following BASIC program plots a horizontal line and moves it down one line:

```
10 HGR: REM CLEARS AND DISPLAYS HI-RES SCREEN
20 HCOLOR=3: REM COLOR SET TO WHITE
30 HPLOT 20,20 TO 100,20: REM DRAWS HORIZONTAL LINE
40 HCOLOR=0: HPLOT 20,20 TO 100,20: REM ERASES LINE BY REDRAWING IN BLACK
50 HCOLOR=3: HPLOT 20,21 TO 100,21: REM REDRAWS LINE IN NEW POSITION
```

The line can be made to traverse the screen by continuing the program and changing plot coordinates. One can also draw vertical or diagonal lines and move them across the screen. By specifying different values for HCOLOR, the lines can be drawn in any of the four hi-res colors (blue, orange, violet, and green). This routine is fine for drawing and moving lines, but is far too cumbersome for complicated shapes and entirely inappropriate for rapid and smooth animation—BASIC is just too slow. Consider that even a simple shape may consist of 5 or 10 lines, and moving a shape across the entire hi-res screen involves over 200 draw-erase cycles. Now imagine a routine to move several such shapes at the same time. Attempting to do this in BASIC, in the way described above, would result in

an enormous, and enormously difficult to write, program. In addition, the animation would be extremely slow and jerky.

There is yet another method for programming hi-res graphics from BASIC and this involves using Apple shape tables. Details are contained in the Apple BASIC manual so I will touch on the subject only briefly. The instructions for drawing a shape (not the shape itself) are stored somewhere in memory in what are called, appropriately enough, shape tables. A single shape table can contain instructions for more than one shape. For example, to draw the first shape of a shape table, the location of the table is specified by POKEing the appropriate numbers into certain memory locations. Then the color is chosen by assigning a number to HCOLOR, and values for rotation (ROT) and scale (SCALE) are specified. The instruction DRAW 1 AT X,Y will draw the first shape of the table at the coordinates specified by X and Y. By changing the HCOLOR value, the shape can be drawn in different colors. Changing the values for ROT and SCALE allows one to rotate the shape and scale it up in size (although this latter feature is of limited usefulness because the scaling is not proportional). The shape can be erased by the instruction XDRAW 1 AT X,Y or by changing the color to black (HCOLOR = 0) and reDRAWing at X,Y. By erasing and redrawing at different nearby coordinates, the shape can be made to appear to move.

Using shape tables is a neat and convenient way to program hi-res graphics, but there are three problems associated with their use. First, although any of the hi-res colors can be selected, the shape can be only one color—multiple colors in a single shape is not possible. Second, constructing a shape table in the way described in the Apple BASIC manual is a horrendous task. The manual itself recommends using one of the many commercially available utility programs for this purpose—an example is the Apple Mechanic program from Beagle Bros. Such utilities work well (you draw the shape, point by point, and the program assembles it automatically into a shape table) but, as is often the case with someone else's program, you may not be able to get it to do what you want it to do. The Apple Mechanic, for example, limits the overall size of the shape and this may not be appropriate for your needs. Third, smooth and rapid animation with large shapes or with many shapes moving at the same time is not possible using shape tables. The draw, erase, redraw cycles are just too slow, and excessive flickering and jerky movement are the results. Again, as with HPLOTting, shape tables do not have their place (I use them in my own commercial programs), but they do not provide the versatility afforded by assembly language programming.

There are a few graphics utility programs on the market that purport to greatly simplify hi-res animation and they do. But they also, in my hands at least, suffer from many of the problems associated with shape tables and graphics from BASIC and thus, in my opinion, have limited usefulness. Again, using someone else's program almost assuredly will place limits on what you can do. For example, the programs I am familiar with limit the size of the shapes and the number of shapes you can display at any one time. Most have no provision for sound. They are also too slow—the more and larger the shapes, the slower and jerkier the animation. Some of these programs may satisfy your particular needs but don't buy one without return privileges.

The essence of good animation is speed. The illusion of continuous movement can be accomplished only by very rapid draw and erase cycles, especially for large shapes. This also applies in the case of the game we're going to con-

struct, where one desires the illusion of simultaneous movement of multiple shapes. Assembly language provides this speed—in fact, as we'll soon see, assembly language speed is so great that time delays have to be placed in the game program to slow down the action to a reasonable pace.

In addition to speed, assembly language provides the ultimate in versatility. You want to draw and move a shape that takes up half the screen? OK, no problem. How about moving five shapes in different directions at the same time, with sound effects and all possible colors? Also no problem (actually, it is a problem but solvable with assembly language).

Finally, if you're like I am, you want to know and control what's going on. How is your computer drawing and moving all those shapes? Using someone else's program or using BASIC or shape tables tells you very little. Writing your own assembly language programs tells you a great deal.

Speed, versatility, understanding—only assembly language provides this combination of virtues.

Bits and Bytes, Sugar and Spice

*There once was a fellow named Tex
Whose computer kept him from sex.
When offered a slumber
By a cute little number
He said, "I really prefer binary and hex."*

A certain minimal knowledge of binary and hexadecimal numbering systems, the Apple memory map, details of the hi-res screens, and the use of an assembler is necessary before going on to a discussion of assembly language hi-res drawing and animation. Those who know this material can skip to Chapter 3. Those who don't will need to slog their way through this chapter. I'll try to make the slogging as painless as possible.

BINARY NUMBER SYSTEM

Computers operate essentially by using thousands of 2-position switches. Everything a computer does, taking in data (or text, which to a computer is just another form of data), manipulating it, and sending it out to a screen or printer or other device, is all controlled by these switches. A switch can either be on or off (more precisely, high voltage or low voltage). If we assign a 1 and a 0 to these alternate states, we then have a way of representing the status of these switches with numbers. To "talk" to a computer, to tell it what to do, we have to set its switches by talking its language. The only language a computer understands is the language of 0's and 1's, which comprises what is called a binary number system. Higher level computer languages, such as BASIC, use interpretive programs to convert text and decimal number instructions into a binary form. To use lower level languages, such as assembly language, and to understand hi-res graphics, some understanding of the binary system is required.

In any language, all possible words are represented by arranging the alphabet characters in different combinations. Computer "words" are numbers and the computer "alphabet" is 0 and 1. How can just two digits be used to represent more than two numbers? The universally used numbering system is, of course, the decimal system which uses ten digits, 0 to 9, to represent all possible numbers (this is undoubtedly related to the fact that we have ten fingers and toes; if we had only two, we would probably be balancing our checkbooks in binary). We have to realize that the decimal system is just as arbitrary as any other system using any other number of digits. Thus, to understand the binary system requires only an understanding of the principles of the decimal system.

The decimal system works by column assignments. There is no single digit to represent the number ten, so a 1 is placed in a second column, the tens column. Similarly, we represent one hundred by placing a 1 in the third or hundreds column. Each column represents some whole factor of 10.

1000's	100's	10's	1's	
10^3	10^2	10^1	10^0	
4	3	2	7	$= 4000 + 300 + 20 + 7 = 4327$

In the binary system, we can count to one easily enough (zero, one) but there is no single digit to represent the number two so we place a 1 in a second column. Thus, binary 10 = decimal 2 and, it follows, binary 11 = decimal 3. What is decimal 4? Very good. It's binary 100. Thus, the binary system uses columns just like the decimal system except the columns are now factors of two.

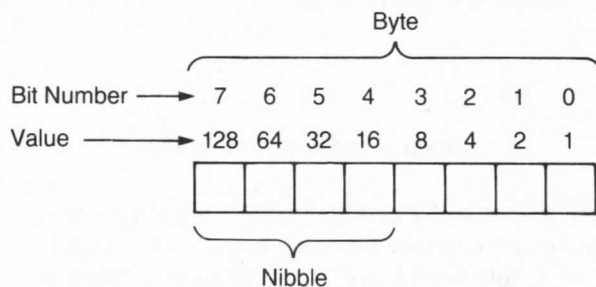
8's	4's	2's	1's	
2^3	2^2	2^1	2^0	Decimal
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	0	2
0	0	1	1	3
0	1	0	0	4
0	1	0	1	5
0	1	1	0	6
0	1	1	1	7
1	0	0	0	8
1	0	0	1	9
1	0	1	0	10
1	0	1	1	11
1	1	0	0	12
1	1	0	1	13
1	1	1	0	14
1	1	1	1	15

Columns can be extended to a 16's column, 32's column, etc. and so given enough columns, we can represent any number by stringing together 0s and 1s.

THE HEXADECIMAL NUMBERING SYSTEM

Writing numbers in binary is obviously a laborious task and is also prone to errors—try copying a string of a hundred 0's and 1's and see how far you get without making a mistake. To avoid these problems, assembly language uses yet another numbering system, the hexadecimal system. An interpreter program converts hexadecimal (or hex for short) numbers into the binary format so the computer can understand what's going on. It will be easier to understand the hexadecimal system if we first discuss some aspects of how the Apple handles numbers.

Each position of a binary number is called a bit. A group of 4 bits is called a nibble and a group of 8 bits is called a byte.



The Apple II is an 8-bit machine; that is, its microprocessor handles 8 bits (1 byte) of data at a time. It's convenient to represent a nibble by a single hex number; thus two hex numbers can represent a single byte. If we look at the table below, we see that a nibble can have values from 0 to 15. We have only ten digits (0-9) to work with, so numbers 10 to 15 are assigned letters A to F (hex numbers are preceded by a \$ sign to distinguish them from decimal numbers).

<i>Decimal</i>	<i>Binary</i>	<i>Hex</i>
0	0 0 0 0	\$0
1	0 0 0 1	\$1
2	0 0 1 0	\$2
3	0 0 1 1	\$3
4	0 1 0 0	\$4
5	0 1 0 1	\$5
6	0 1 1 0	\$6
7	0 1 1 1	\$7
8	1 0 0 0	\$8
9	1 0 0 1	\$9
10	1 0 1 0	\$A
11	1 0 1 1	\$B
12	1 1 0 0	\$C
13	1 1 0 1	\$D
14	1 1 1 0	\$E
15	1 1 1 1	\$F

Now we've simplified things somewhat. It's obviously easier to write \$F than 1111.

Most of the time we'll be writing numbers as bytes and here the advantage of hex numbers becomes more apparent. To write a byte in hex, we simply assign a hex number to each nibble, e.g.,

Decimal	Binary	Hex
98	<div>0 1 1 0 0 0 1 0</div> <div>\$6 \$2</div>	\$62
198	<div>1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0</div> <div>\$C \$6</div>	\$C6
255	<div>1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1</div> <div>\$F \$F</div>	\$FF
1	<div>0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1</div> <div>\$0 \$1</div>	\$01

If you ever feel an irresistible urge to convert hex numbers into binary, you simply take each hex digit and write the corresponding binary nibble. Converting hex to decimal and vice versa is often useful (BASIC uses only decimal numbers). This can be done easily if you understand that the hex system also uses column assignments, just as binary and decimal, but here the columns are factors of 16 (hence the name hexa[6]decimal[10]) because there are 16 digits possible in each column.

16's 16 ¹	1's 16 ⁰	Hex	Decimal
\$1	\$0	\$10	16
\$2	\$0	\$20	32
\$2	\$A	\$2A	42
\$6	\$2	\$62	98

THE APPLE II MEMORY MAP

The Apple 6502 microprocessor stores numbers in specific locations called memory addresses. Each memory address can hold only one byte. The maximum value of a byte is \$FF (11111111 or 255 decimal)—this explains why 255 is the maximum value you can use to POKE to a memory location in BASIC. When

these addresses are scanned, a byte is retrieved from each location and depending on the value, a given operation is performed. Memory addresses are accessed by a system that can handle two bytes of data at a time. Two bytes can be represented by four hex numbers, and so a memory address has the general form \$NNNN where N equals any hex number. Assemblers always access addresses using the hex format. We can convert memory addresses from hex to decimal (useful when using BASIC and assembly language in the same program) by column assignments; e.g.:

4096's 16 ³	256's 16 ²	16's 16 ¹	1's 16 ⁰	Hex	Decimal
\$0	\$0	\$A	\$0	\$00A0	160
\$0	\$8	\$0	\$0	\$0800	2048
\$2	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$2000	8192
\$4	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$4000	16384
\$6	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$6000	24576
\$9	\$6	\$0	\$0	\$9600	38400
\$F	\$F	\$F	\$F	\$FFFF	65535

The highest memory address is \$FFFF; i.e., all 16 bits are 1. Thus the 6502 microprocessor can access only 65536 addresses (\$0000 is the first memory location)—from this comes the term 64K of memory. Apples with 128K of memory switch between two memory banks, each one containing 65536 addresses; Apples with less than 64K of memory have the capability of accessing 65536 addresses—it's just that they're not all there.

Memory addresses are conveniently divided into what are called pages, each page containing 256 bytes.

Address Bytes	Hex Address	Page Number
0-255	\$0000-\$00FF	0
256-511	\$0100-\$01FF	1
512-767	\$0200-\$02FF	2
etc.		

Thus, addresses in the range \$0000 to \$00FF are called zero page addresses. We'll meet up with these later on as they play an important role in some of the assembly language instructions used in our programs.

Memory addresses themselves are often stored at other memory addresses for use in a program. Because an address can store only one byte but is itself represented by two bytes (except for zero page addresses), we have a problem. The solution is to store an address in two locations, one byte in one and one byte in the other. This is done in a particular way. Memory address bytes are divided into two classes, the high order byte (left) and the low order byte (right). For example, \$20 is the high byte and \$00 the low byte of address \$2000. The bytes are stored in consecutive locations, low byte first. We'll learn more about this when we get to our programs in later chapters.

There are several general areas of memory that play a distinctive role in the operation of the Apple II. The following memory map describes and locates some of these functions.

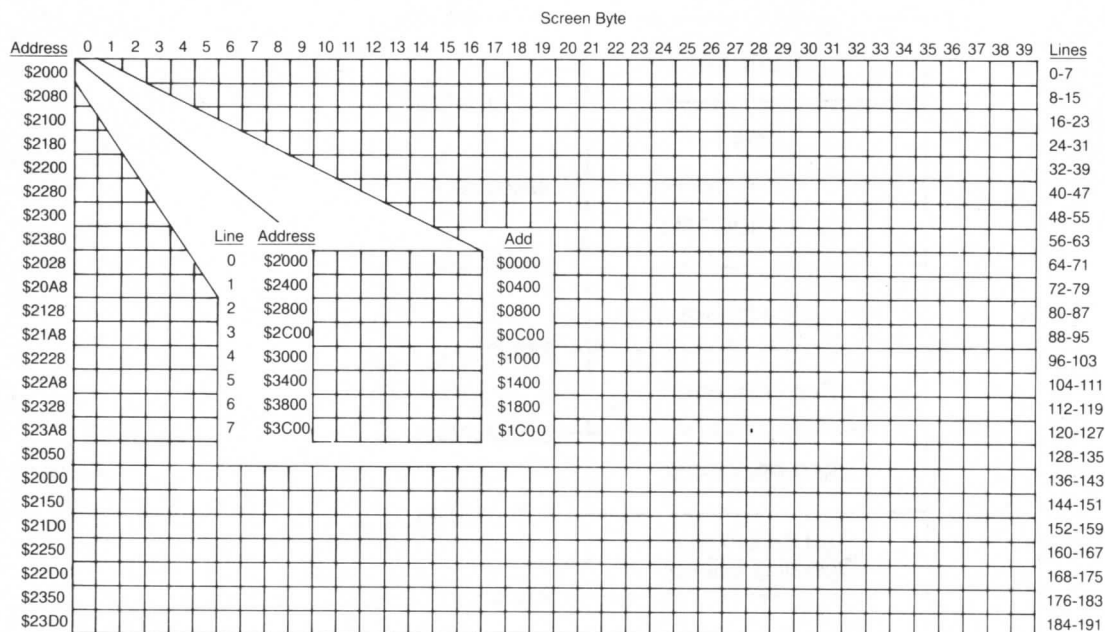
Hardware	\$FFFF (65535)
DOS	\$BFFF (49151)
USER PROGRAM	\$9600 (38400)
Page 2 Hi-Res	\$6000 (24576)
Page 1 Hi-Res	\$4000 (16784)
USER PROGRAM	\$2000 (8192)
Text Screen and Operating System	\$0800 (2048)
	\$0000 (0)

THE HI-RES SCREENS

There are two areas reserved for hi-res graphics, Pages 1 and 2 (these page numbers have nothing to do with the page numbers of memory addresses discussed above). Page 1 occupies an area from \$2000 to \$3FFF and Page 2 from \$4000 to \$5FFF. Either page can be used for any hi-res graphics program, the only difference being that Page 1 has the option of displaying full-page graphics or mixed text and graphics, the bottom four lines displaying the text. So if you want to display text and graphics, choose Page 1. For full page graphics, you can choose either page. The only other point to consider in choosing pages is whether you're going to use a BASIC program along with your assembly language program. BASIC requires a continuous stretch of memory, so the page choice determines the maximum length of your BASIC program. For example, if you choose Page 1, you can run BASIC from \$0800 to \$1FFF or load the BASIC program above Page 1 and run it from \$4000 to \$9600. This will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 16.

The hi-res screens are divided into screen bytes (horizontal) and lines (vertical). There are 192 lines, numbered 0 to 191, top to bottom, and each line contains 40 screen bytes, numbered 0 to 39 (#\$00 to #\$27) left to right. Thus there are $40 \times 192 = 7680$ screen byte positions.

In hi-res drawing, only 7 of the 8 bits in a byte are plotted (more on this later) and so each screen byte contains 7 bits, or, as they're called when plotted, pixels (let's get away from computerese and call them dots). Each line then can contain $7 \times 40 = 280$ dots. Therefore a hi-res screen can display up to $280 \times 192 = 53760$ dots; that's why they call it hi-res. So far so good. Everything seems to be in logical order but, of course, there are complications; otherwise, why would you need to read this book? For reasons we won't go into, the Apple designers decided to number hi-res lines in a nonconsecutive fashion. For example, line 0 of the Page 1 screen starts at address \$2000 and ends at \$2027. You might then expect line 1 to start at \$2028, right? Wrong. Line 1 starts at \$2400. Line 2 starts at \$2800, line 3 at \$2C00, and so on, producing quite a scrambled



picture. The same situation holds true for the Page 2 hi-res screen although, of course, with different addresses. There is a method to this mad scramble but we need not concern ourselves with the details because the next chapter will describe a way of accessing any screen position without having to refer to the hi-res screen memory map. The map itself is useful, however, so that you will understand how this is done. In addition, situations may arise where you will want to access particular screen positions directly by referring to the map.

USING AN ASSEMBLER

Finally, we get to the subject of an assembler. As mentioned in the *What You Will Need* section at the beginning of the book, you don't have to use an assembler for your assembly language programs but if you don't, I'll reserve a room for you at the home.

The object of writing an assembly language program is, fittingly enough, to produce object or machine code. Object code is a machine language program that consists entirely of bytes stored at memory addresses. Some of these bytes represent numbers and others represent instructions to the operating system. Object code can look something like this:

```
6000: A9 10
6002: 8D 40 60
```

The code is interpreted as follows. When the program gets to address \$6000, byte \$A9, an opcode (operation code), tells the computer to store the following number (\$10) in the Accumulator, or A, an area for number storage and manipulation in the microprocessor. The first byte (\$8D) in the next program line is an opcode that instructs the computer to put the number in the Accumulator at memory address \$6040 (note that memory addresses are stored low byte first).

You could enter this code directly from BASIC by POKEing appropriate numbers into appropriate memory locations, remembering first to convert all numbers to decimal. The BASIC program would look like this:

```
POKE 24576, 169
POKE 24577, 16
POKE 24578, 141
POKE 24579, 64
POKE 24580, 96
```

The program could also be entered directly from the Apple's Monitor in this fashion:

```
6000:A9
6001:10
6002:8D
6003:40
6004:60
```

Here is an assembly language code for the same instructions:

```
ORG $6000
LDA #$10
STA $6040
```

ORG \$6000 says start the program at address \$6000. LDA is a mnemonic for Load Accumulator (the Apple 6502 microprocessor uses some 56 mnemonics for assembly language instructions). The # prefix says #\$10 is a number, not a memory address. STA is a mnemonic for Store Accumulator and \$6040 is the address where #10 is to be stored. This type of code is called a source code and the assembler, when it is instructed to do so, assembles the source code into the object code and usually will display or print both codes together, one next to the other.

Now, imagine a program hundreds or even thousands of lines long. Obviously, a program written in assembly language is more easily written (and read) than one written in machine language. But assemblers have even more useful features, not the least of which are editing capabilities that allow you to go anywhere in the program and change numbers and lines around without having to reenter the whole thing. In addition, assemblers allow the use of labels and comments, both very useful features.

The source code from most assemblers is divided into several fields or columns. First, a line number is displayed for each instruction. These line numbers are not incorporated into the object code—they are there for editing convenience. The next field is reserved for labels, which are optional. When a region of the program is labeled, it can be accessed by referring to the label rather than to a specific memory location. This not only makes the program more readable but also eliminates the chore of changing instructions to reflect new memory addresses when lines are shifted around. The next field is the command field, which contains the opcode and, if required, the operand, the number or address acted upon by the opcode. Finally, there is the comment field, usually delimited by a semi-colon(;). Comments are similar to REM statements in BASIC and are not incorporated into the object code.

Let's look at a sample program. When the source code is typed in, it will look like this (the field headings are not displayed by the assembler—they are there for your edification):

<i>Line</i>	<i>Label</i>	<i>Opcode</i>	<i>Operand</i>	<i>Comments</i>
1	*SAMPLE PROGRAM			
2		ORG	\$6000	;START PROGRAM AT \$6000
3	LOOP	LDA	#\$10	;LOAD A WITH #\$10
4		STA	\$6040	;STORE AT \$6040
5		JMP	LOOP	;GO TO LOOP (LINE 3)

Line numbers are entered automatically by the assembler. Line 1 demonstrates another feature of assemblers—an entire line can be a comment if delimited by a *. Such lines are not incorporated into the object code. When the command to assemble (usually ASM) is given, the object and source codes are displayed side by side:

	1	*SAMPLE PROGRAM		
	2		ORG	\$6000 ;START PROGRAM AT \$6000
6000:A9 10	3	LOOP	LDA	#\$10 ;LOAD A WITH #\$10
6002:8D 40 60	4		STA	\$6040 ;STORE AT \$6040
6005:4C 00 60	5		JMP	LOOP ;GO TO LOOP (LINE 3)

The source code and object code are named by you and then saved separately on a disc. The assembler will append a prefix or suffix automatically to one or the other to distinguish which is which. For example, the disc catalog may show the object code as SAMPLE PROGRAM and the source code as SAMPLE PROGRAM.S. This is how programs appear when assembled using the BIG MAC assembler. Other assemblers may do this differently.

The object code is the machine language program we want to run. The source code is not a program and can't be "run" as such. How do we run the program? Object codes are always stored as binary files. To run, we enter BRUN <space> file name (in this case, SAMPLE PROGRAM). This program will be loaded at address \$6000 and will run starting from this location. We can also load the program without running it if, for example, we want just to inspect it. The instructions for this are BLOAD <space> file name. To see the program we've loaded, enter the Monitor with CALL-151 and then type 6000L (L for list). The program, along with its assembly language mnemonics but without labels or comments, will be listed starting from \$6000. To run the program now we can enter 6000G (G for go to).

Suppose we decide at some later date that \$6000 is an inappropriate location for this program because we want to use this area for something else. Let's say we now want to store it at address \$4000 instead. We can do this by specifying the address when we BLOAD it, i.e., BLOAD <space> file name,A\$4000. The program will now load at \$4000 and we can run it from the Monitor by 4000G. What will happen when we run it? Disaster! The reason is that the machine language code is nonrelocatable, that is, it can be run only at the location specified by the ORG statement. To see why this is so, let's look at the code itself. The assembly language instruction in line 5 is JMP LOOP. LOOP is a label that refers to address \$6000. Remember that object codes do not deal with labels, only numbers, and

so the assembled code for line 5 is 4C 00 60, which is interpreted by the operating system to mean go to address \$6000. If the program is loaded at and run from \$4000, the 4C 00 60 instruction will be executed faithfully and the program will jump to \$6000, which no longer contains the original instruction. Garbage in, garbage out.

It is possible to write relocatable codes, that is, programs that can be loaded anywhere regardless of the address specified by the ORG statement. Sometimes such codes are necessary, but for our purposes this represents just another complication we can do without. If you want to relocate a program, simply call up the source program, change the ORG operand to the new address, and reassemble.

There is one other aspect of assembler use that should be emphasized so I'll mention it here and remind you of it again in later chapters. Assembly language opcodes are entered as 3-letter mnemonics, designed to help you remember what they stand for. Two such opcodes, BCC (Branch on Carry Clear) and BCS (Branch on Carry Set) are often not helpful in this regard. In the BIG MAC and most other full feature assemblers, these opcodes can be replaced by what are called pseudo-opcodes; e.g., BCC can be replaced by BLT (Branch if Less Than) and BCS by BGE (Branch if Greater or Equal). If your assembler doesn't use these pseudo-opcodes, just use BCC and BCS—there is no difference in the assembled program. Purists might argue against the use of pseudo-opcodes because they are not part of the standard Apple instruction set, but they do make programs easier to write and read. I should also mention at this point that the instruction EQU, which is used to assign a label to a memory address, can be replaced in the BIG MAC and other assemblers by the = sign. If your assembler doesn't allow it, use EQU.

If all this is confusing to you, don't worry about it. Get an assembler, read the instructions, look over some of the programs in this book to get a feel for it, and before you know it you'll be a bona fide assembly language programmer. Now, onward and upward (or, in the case of some programs, downward and acrossward).

Drawing a Shape on the Hi-Res Screen

*Of graphics he certainly could write it;
His talent so great he couldn't bide it.
He plotted a shape
That looked so like a grape
It was all you could do not to byte it.*

Drawing a point or a series of points (i.e., a shape) on a hi-res screen involves only three operations:

1. Display the screen.
2. Clear it.
3. Store a byte in a hi-res screen memory location (\$2000-\$3FFF for Page 1 or \$4000-\$5FFF for Page 2).

DISPLAYING THE HI-RES SCREEN

.....

In Applesoft BASIC, the command HGR can be used both to clear and to display the Page 1 hi-res screen. Similarly, HGR2 clears and displays hi-res Page 2. To do this in assembly language is not quite that simple but really not all that difficult either (except perhaps for clearing the screen—we'll get to that later). Displaying the hi-res screen of choice involves accessing what are called soft switches. These are certain memory locations that, when accessed, perform the desired function. Accessing a soft switch means either reading from it (PEEKing in BASIC) or writing to it (POKEing in BASIC). It doesn't make any difference which numbers are read from or written to these memory locations. The access process itself is all that's required. Some soft switches require a read, others a write, and some can be accessed either way (details of soft switches can be found in the reference manuals published by Apple for your particular machine). The soft switches of interest for hi-res graphics are the following:

Memory Location of Switch

<i>Decimal</i>	<i>Hex</i>	<i>Function</i>
49232	\$C050	Turns on graphic mode
49239	\$C057	Selects hi-res mode
49236	\$C054	Selects Page 1
49234	\$C052	Selects full page graphics (Page 1)
49237	\$C055	Selects Page 2
49235	\$C053	Selects mixed text and graphics (Page 1)
49233	\$C051	Selects text mode

Arbitrarily, I've decided to use Page 1 with full-screen graphics as the screen of choice for all programs in this book. The switches we want to access then are the first four in the table above. These switches can be accessed by either a read or a write. Try this in BASIC or directly from the keyboard:

```
POKE 49232,0 :POKE 49239,0: POKE 49236,0: POKE 49234,0
```

The Page 1 hi-res screen will be displayed (you will probably see a screen filled with random dots as these instructions, unlike HGR or HGR2, do not clear the hi-res screens). Now, how do we do this in assembly language? The assembly language instruction equivalent to a PEEK in BASIC is LDA, the mnemonic for Load Accumulator (the Accumulator is a part of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor that performs most number manipulations). The LDA instruction is used to load the Accumulator with a byte (LDA #\$08 loads the number 8 into the Accumulator) or with the contents of a memory location (LDA \$2057 loads the Accumulator with the byte stored in location \$2057)—note that # preceding a number means it is a number, not a memory location. Because we're simply accessing a soft switch, the particular number loaded into the Accumulator is immaterial.

The assembly language instruction equivalent to a POKE in BASIC is STA (STore Accumulator). This instruction stores the number in the Accumulator in a specified memory location (STA \$4097 stores the number in the Accumulator in location \$4097). Again, when accessing a soft switch, the particular number is immaterial.

Either LDA or STA can be used to access the soft switches we're interested in but I'm going to use LDA throughout (it appears to be the traditional choice among assembly language programmers). Thus, the assembly language code for displaying the Page 1 hi-res screen with full screen graphics is as follows.

```
]PROGRAM 3-1
```

```
:ASM
                                1      ORG $6000      ;START PROGRAM AT $6000
6000: AD 50 C0 2                LDA $C050      ;GRAPHICS
6003: AD 57 C0 3                LDA $C057      ;HI-RES
6006: AD 54 C0 4                LDA $C054      ;PAGE 1
6009: AD 52 C0 5                LDA $C052      ;FULL SCREEN GRAPHICS
600C: 60 6                      RTS
```

```
. --End assembly--
```

```
13 bytes
```

That's all there is to it! Running this program (see the section in Chapter 2 on using an assembler) will display the Page 1 hi-res screen (again probably with random dots as the screen is not cleared by these instructions). Let's now use a feature of the assembler to make this program more readable. As mentioned previously, we can assign labels to particular memory locations so that the code reads more like text rather than a series of numbers (this is always nice to do so that when you come back to it three months later you won't wonder why in heaven's name you LDAed \$C050). Here is the same program with labels for the soft switches (JMP is an instruction equivalent to GOTO in BASIC).

]PROGRAM 3-2

```
:ASM
6000: 4C 03 60 1          ORG $6000
2          JMP PGM
3  GRAPHICS = $C050
4  HIRES    = $C057
5  PAGE1    = $C054
6  MIXOFF   = $C052
6003: AD 50 C0 7  PGM    LDA GRAPHICS
6006: AD 57 C0 8          LDA HIRES
6009: AD 54 C0 9          LDA PAGE1
600C: AD 52 C0 10         LDA MIXOFF
600F: 60      11         RTS
```

--End assembly--

16 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

```
PGM      =$6003      GRAPHICS=$C050      MIXOFF  =$C052      PAGE1   =$C054
HIRES    =$C057
```

Obviously this is a much more readable listing. We're going to use labels as often as we can throughout the book with the idea of eliminating numbers from the source code as much as possible.

CLEARING THE HI-RES SCREEN

Now that we've displayed the hi-res screen, we must clear it before drawing on it. Clearing the screen means turning it all to black, i.e., no dots displayed. There is no simple command, such as BASIC's HGR, to do this in assembly language. However, the assembly language clear routine is a relatively short program (13 lines), and besides clearing the screen, it also serves as a good example of the use of some common assembly language instructions.

Remember we said before that to draw on a hi-res screen we first display the screen and then store bytes at hi-res screen memory locations. Well, we've already displayed the screen. Now, what bytes do we store and where to clear the screen? It turns out that if you load a hi-res screen location with byte #\$00, that portion of the screen will turn to black, i.e., no dots (the relationship of

other bytes to what appears on the screen will be dealt with later in this chapter). Thus, to clear the Page 1 hi-res screen we load all the screen locations, from \$2000 to \$3FFF, with zeros. The following program shows how this is done.

]PROGRAM 3-3

```

:ASM
6000: 4C 03 60 1      ORG $6000
2      JMP PGM
3      GRAPHICS = $C050
4      HIRES = $C057
5      PAGE1 = $C054
6      MIXOFF = $C052
6003: AD 50 C0 7      LDA GRAPHICS
6006: AD 57 C0 8      LDA HIRES
6009: AD 54 C0 9      LDA PAGE1
600C: AD 52 C0 10     LDA MIXOFF
600F: A9 00 11      LDA #$00      ;CLEAR SCREEN PAGE 1
6011: 85 26 12      STA $26
6013: A9 20 13      LDA #$20
6015: 85 27 14      STA $27
6017: A0 00 15      CLR1 LDY #$00
6019: A9 00 16      LDA #$00
601B: 91 26 17      CLR STA ($26),Y
601D: C8 18      INY
601E: D0 FB 19      BNE CLR
6020: E6 27 20      INC $27
6022: A5 27 21      LDA $27
6024: C9 40 22      CMP #$40
6026: 90 EF 23      BLT CLR1
6028: 60 24      RTS

```

--End assembly--

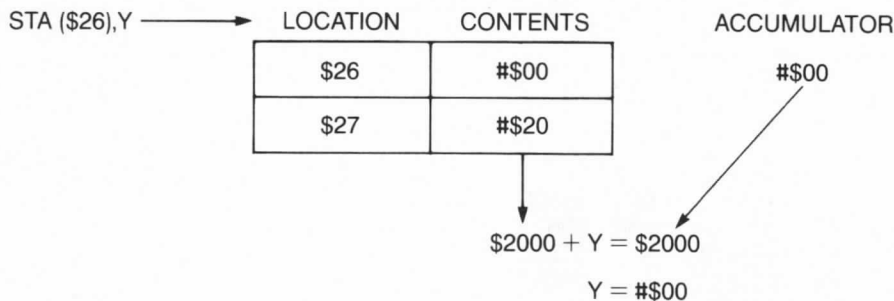
41 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

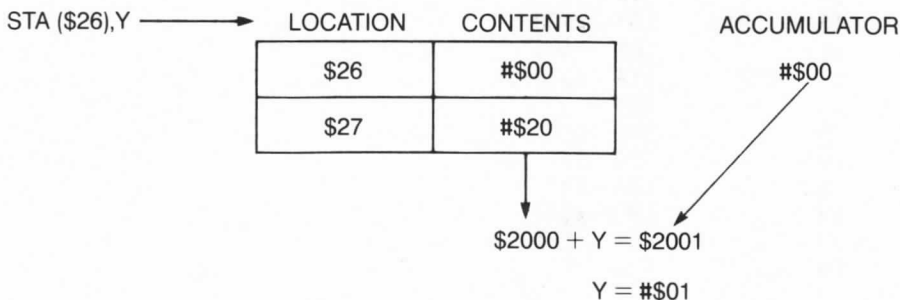
PGM	=\$6003	CLR1	=\$6017	CLR	=\$601B	GRAPHICS=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	

Let's see how it works (assembly language literates or those simply uninterested can skip to the next section). First, byte #\$00 is stored in location \$26 (lines 11 and 12). Location \$26 is called a zero page address because its actual address is \$0026. There's a reason for choosing a zero page address as we'll soon see. Lines 13 and 14 load #\$20 into zero page address \$27. Line 15 loads #\$00 into the Y register (the Apple's microprocessor has two areas other than the Accumulator that can store bytes—the X and Y registers). Line 16 loads the Accumulator with #\$00. Line 17 does the real work. It uses a type of command called indirect indexing, which works only with the Y register and a zero page address (hence choosing a zero page address to begin with). STA (\$26),Y says take the contents of the Accumulator (#\$00 from line 16) and store it in a memory address calculated as follows: go to location \$26 to get the low byte of

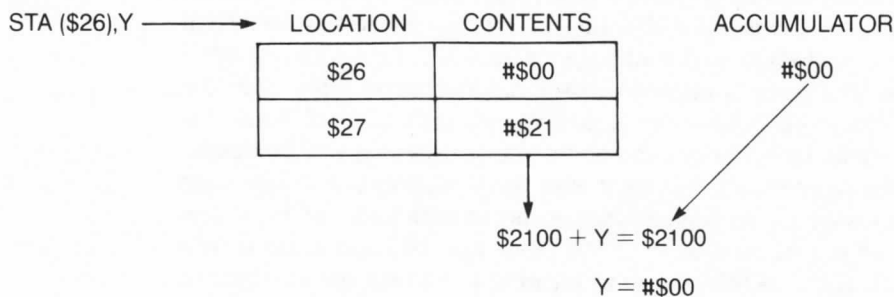
the address and then get the high byte from the next zero page location, i.e., \$27; add the contents of the Y register to get the final address.



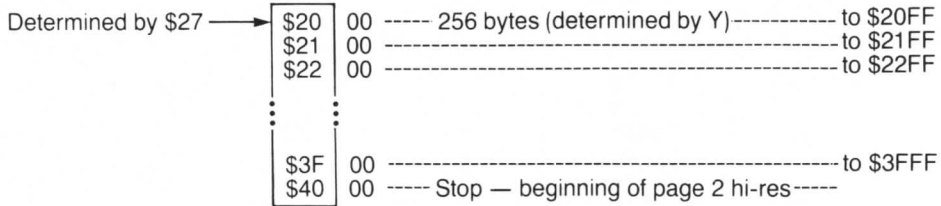
Note what has happened. A zero has been stored at location \$2000, the first location of hi-res screen Page 1, turning it black. We're on our way! Line 18 (INY) now increments the contents of the Y register by one. Y now contains #\$01. Line 19 says if Y has not yet reached zero (incrementing the maximum value [#\$FF] by one results in #\$00), branch back to CLR (line 17). Line 17 now calculates the new address as \$2001.



Now we've blacked out the next screen location at \$2001. This continues until Y is incremented to zero, thus blacking out 256 bytes. Then the number located in address \$27 is incremented by one (line 20). Next we do a comparison to see if we're finished. We load the Accumulator with the byte in \$27 and compare it to #\$40 (line 22). If the Accumulator contains #\$40 we want to stop because this will get us into the Page 2 hi-res screen. The command in line 23 (BLT, Branch if Less Than, a code that can be used by some assemblers in place of the standard BCC, Branch on Carry Clear) says branch or jump to CLR1 if the Accumulator byte is less than #\$40. If it is #\$40, the branch is not taken and the program ends. When we branch to CLR1, we load Y again with #\$00 and line 17 puts a zero at location \$2100.



Each time 256 bytes are blacked out, \$27 is incremented by one and a new page of memory is selected.



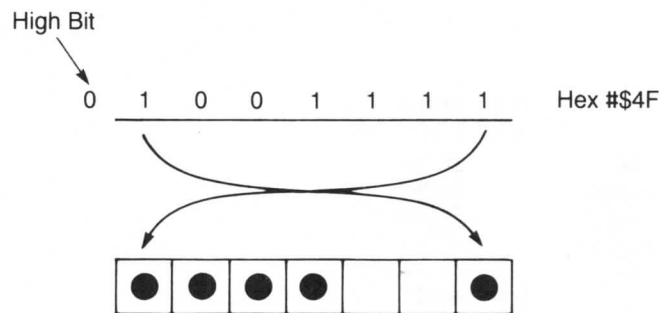
This whole routine takes less than a tenth of a second. Talk about assembly language speed! By the way, if you want to clear hi-res Page 2, place #\$40 in line 13 and #\$60 in line 22. The screen addresses will then be \$4000 to \$5FFF.

DRAWING A SHAPE

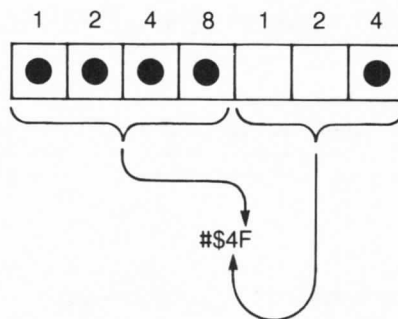
Now that we've displayed the screen and cleared it, let's draw something on it (about time, eh?).

We've seen that if we store a zero at a hi-res screen location, that location turns black. The heart of hi-res drawing is the fact that if we write any byte other than zero to the screen, dots will appear (actually, storing byte #\$80 will also produce no dots—this is a complication we don't need, right? We'll discuss why this happens below). Let's now discuss the relationship of bytes to dot patterns. The details are a bit messy but the application is easy.

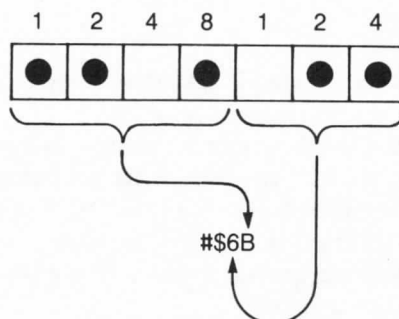
Remember that a byte is a series of 8 bits, each one of which can be off (0) or on (1). You guessed it! If a bit is 0, the screen is black at that point; if a bit is 1, a dot is turned on. But there are complications (you wouldn't want this to be too easy, would you, else how could you impress your friends?). First, only 7 of the 8 bits determine a dot pattern. The leftmost or most significant bit (also called the high bit) is used to select colors for the byte (more on this in a later chapter). This is why storing byte #\$80 will produce no dots. For now, we'll always use 0 as the high bit. Second, the remaining 7 bits are plotted backwards! Why? Don't ask. Let's just see how it works. Here is a byte and the dot pattern that results when this byte is sent to a hi-res screen location.



How does one convert a dot pattern to a byte? Don't fret. It's easy. Place the desired dot pattern in 7 boxes and number the boxes as shown.



Take the rightmost 3 bits and convert them to a hex number. This is the first number of the byte. Then do the same for the leftmost 4 bits. This gives you the second number of the byte. You now have the byte, #4F, that will give you the desired dot pattern. Let's try another example.



Got it? OK. Let's now write a program that will display the dot pattern in the last example, i.e., the one specified by #6B. We're going to put this byte in the first line (line 0) and the first byte (byte 0) of the hi-res screen Page 1 (location \$2000), which is in the upper left-hand corner of the screen. (Be careful to distinguish between the screen byte, which is the location of the horizontal column [0-39 across the screen] where the shape is to be drawn, and the shape byte, which is the byte that determines the dot pattern.)

]PROGRAM 3-4

```

:ASM
6000: 4C 03 60 1          ORG $6000
2          JMP PGM
3          GRAPHICS = $C050
4          HIRES = $C057
5          PAGE1 = $C054
6          MIXOFF = $C052
7          PGM LDA GRAPHICS
8          LDA HIRES
9          LDA PAGE1
10         LDA MIXOFF
11         LDA #$00          ;CLEAR SCREEN PAGE 1
12         STA $26
13         LDA #$20
14         STA $27
6003: AD 50 C0
6006: AD 57 C0
6009: AD 54 C0
600C: AD 52 C0
600F: A9 00
6011: 85 26
6013: A9 20
6015: 85 27

```

```

6017: A0 00      15 CLR1 LDY #00
6019: A9 00      16 LDA #00
601B: 91 26      17 CLR STA ($26),Y
601D: C8         18 INY
601E: D0 FB      19 BNE CLR
6020: E6 27      20 INC $27
6022: A5 27      21 LDA $27
6024: C9 40      22 CMP #$40
6026: 90 EF      23 BLT CLR1
6028: A9 6B      24 LDA #$6B
602A: 8D 00 20   25 STA $2000 ;PLOT BYTE
602D: 60         26 RTS

```

--End assembly--

46 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

```

PGM      =$6003      CLR1    =$6017      CLR      =$601B      GRAPHICS=$C050
MIXOFF   =$C052      PAGE1   =$C054      HIRES    =$C057

```

We've now drawn our first shape; admittedly, it's not much of a shape but we have to start somewhere (actually it does look something like a far-away bird or maybe an airplane—it helps to have imagination in this business). Let's get more ambitious now and draw something more interesting, say, a person. The shape will be 1-byte wide by 6-lines deep. Here is the dot pattern, the corresponding bytes, and the line addresses where the bytes will be drawn.

1	2	4	8	1	2	4	Shape Byte	Line Address
			●				#\$08	\$2000
	●	●	●	●	●		#\$3E	\$2400
●		●	●	●		●	#\$5D	\$2800
		●	●	●			#\$1C	\$2C00
		●		●			#\$14	\$3000
	●				●		#\$22	\$3400

]PROGRAM 3-5
:ASM

```

6000: 4C 03 60   2          ORG $6000
                        JMP PGM
                        3 GRAPHICS = $C050
                        4 HIRES   = $C057
                        5 PAGE1   = $C054
                        6 MIXOFF  = $C052
6003: AD 50 C0   7 PGM    LDA GRAPHICS
6006: AD 57 C0   8          LDA HIRES
6009: AD 54 C0   9          LDA PAGE1
600C: AD 52 C0  10          LDA MIXOFF

```

```

600F: A9 00      11      LDA  #$00      ;CLEAR SCREEN PAGE 1
6011: 85 26      12      STA  $26
6013: A9 20      13      LDA  #$20
6015: 85 27      14      STA  $27
6017: A0 00      15      CLR1  LDY  #$00
6019: A9 00      16      CLR   LDA  #$00
601B: 91 26      17      CLR   STA  ($26),Y
601D: C8         18      INY
601E: D0 FB      19      BNE  CLR
6020: E6 27      20      INC  $27
6022: A5 27      21      LDA  $27
6024: C9 40      22      CMP  #$40
6026: 90 EF      23      BLT  CLR1
6028: A9 08      24      LDA  #$08      ;DRAW SHAPE
602A: 8D 00 20   25      STA  $2000
602D: A9 3E      26      LDA  #$3E
602F: 8D 00 24   27      STA  $2400
6032: A9 5D      28      LDA  #$5D
6034: 8D 00 28   29      STA  $2800
6037: A9 1C      30      LDA  #$1C
6039: 8D 00 2C   31      STA  $2C00
603C: A9 14      32      LDA  #$14
603E: 8D 00 30   33      STA  $3000
6041: A9 22      34      LDA  #$22
6043: 8D 00 34   35      STA  $3400
6046: 60         36      RTS

```

--End assembly--

71 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

PGM	=\$6003	CLR1	=\$6017	CLR	=\$601B	GRAPHICS=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	

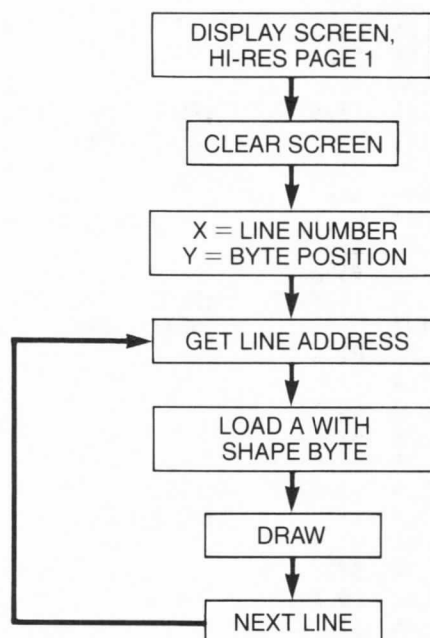
We can put the shape anywhere on the hi-res screen by changing the screen locations. For example, if we want to plot it one byte over (one byte from the left screen border), the addresses would be \$2001, \$2401, \$2801, etc.

LINE ADDRESS TABLES

There's nothing wrong with this program (it works) but it doesn't address (pardon the pun) the major headache in hi-res plotting, i.e., calculating line addresses. We would like to plot the shape from, say, lines 0 to 5 without bothering about the nonconsecutive nature of the screen line addresses. With the procedure I'm about to describe, one can plot a shape at any line and byte position without having to refer to a huge map of all 7680 screen positions. This will become especially important when we deal with animation, which involves moving shapes around the screen. There is more than one way to solve this problem, but the easiest and fastest way is to use table look-ups. The high byte and low byte of each line address is stored in tables. A line number from 0 to 191 is specified; by looking up the table, the correct line address is retrieved.

The byte position (0-39) also is specified and added to the line address to get the correct screen position. Let's see how it works (see Program 3-6).

There are two tables, one labeled HI for the high bytes and one labeled LO for the low bytes. Each table is 192 bytes long for the 192 line addresses. (The BIG MAC Assembler and some others allow the entry of hex numbers without prescripts using the HEX command; some assemblers do not support this instruction and require the code DFB #20, #24, #28, etc. The ORCA/M assembler uses a DC H' directive; refer to your assembler's instructions.) Suppose we want to plot our man shape at byte 0, lines 0 to 5 as before. We'll use the Y register to hold the byte position and the X register to hold the line position.



]PROGRAM 3-6
:ASM

6000: 4C 03 60	1	ORG \$6000	
	2	JMP PGM	
	3	GRAPHICS =	\$C050
	4	HIRES =	\$C057
	5	PAGE1 =	\$C054
	6	MIXOFF =	\$C052
6003: AD 50 C0	7	PGM LDA	GRAPHICS
6006: AD 57 C0	8	LDA	HIRES
6009: AD 54 C0	9	LDA	PAGE1
600C: AD 52 C0	10	LDA	MIXOFF
600F: A9 00	11	LDA	#\$00
			;CLEAR SCREEN PAGE 1
6011: 85 26	12	STA	\$26
6013: A9 20	13	LDA	#\$20
6015: 85 27	14	STA	\$27
6017: A0 00	15	CLR1 LDY	#\$00
6019: A9 00	16	LDA	#\$00
601B: 91 26	17	CLR STA	(\$26),Y
601D: C8	18	INY	
601E: D0 FB	19	BNE	CLR
6020: E6 27	20	INC	\$27
6022: A5 27	21	LDA	\$27

```

6024: C9 40      22      CMP  #$40
6026: 90 EF      23      BLT  CLR1
                                *****
6028: A2 00      25      LDX  #$00      ;LINE NUMBER
602A: A0 00      26      LDY  #$00      ;BYTE NUMBER
602C: BD 86 60   27      LDA  HI,X      ;GET LINE ADDRESS
602F: 85 77      28      STA  $77
6031: BD 46 61   29      LDA  LO,X
6034: 85 76      30      STA  $76
6036: A9 08      31      LDA  #$08
6038: 91 76      32      STA  ($76),Y      ;PLOT
603A: E8        33      INX          ;NEXT LINE
603B: BD 86 60   34      LDA  HI,X
603E: 85 77      35      STA  $77
6040: BD 46 61   36      LDA  LO,X
6043: 85 76      37      STA  $76
6045: A9 3E      38      LDA  #$3E
6047: 91 76      39      STA  ($76),Y      ;PLOT
6049: E8        40      INX          ;NEXT LINE
604A: BD 86 60   41      LDA  HI,X
604D: 85 77      42      STA  $77
604F: BD 46 61   43      LDA  LO,X
6052: 85 76      44      STA  $76
6054: A9 5D      45      LDA  #$5D
6056: 91 76      46      STA  ($76),Y      ;PLOT
6058: E8        47      INX          ;NEXT LINE
6059: BD 86 60   48      LDA  HI,X
605C: 85 77      49      STA  $77
605E: BD 46 61   50      LDA  LO,X
6061: 85 76      51      STA  $76
6063: A9 1C      52      LDA  #$1C
6065: 91 76      53      STA  ($76),Y      ;PLOT
6067: E8        54      INX          ;NEXT LINE
6068: BD 86 60   55      LDA  HI,X
606B: 85 77      56      STA  $77
606D: BD 46 61   57      LDA  LO,X
6070: 85 76      58      STA  $76
6072: A9 14      59      LDA  #$14
6074: 91 76      60      STA  ($76),Y      ;PLOT
6076: E8        61      INX          ;NEXT LINE
6077: BD 86 60   62      LDA  HI,X
607A: 85 77      63      STA  $77
607C: BD 46 61   64      LDA  LO,X
607F: 85 76      65      STA  $76
6081: A9 22      66      LDA  #$22
6083: 91 76      67      STA  ($76),Y      ;PLOT
6085: 60        68      RTS
6086: 20 24 28 69   HI    HEX  2024282C3034383C ; HIGH BYTE LINE ADDRESSES
6089: 2C 30 34 38 3C    HEX  2024282C3034383C
608E: 20 24 28 70      HEX  2125292D3135393D
6091: 2C 30 34 38 3C    HEX  2125292D3135393D
6096: 21 25 29 71      HEX  2125292D3135393D
6099: 2D 31 35 39 3D    HEX  22262A2E32363A3E
609E: 21 25 29 72      HEX  22262A2E32363A3E
60A1: 2D 31 35 39 3D    HEX  23272B2F33373B3F
60A6: 22 26 2A 73      HEX  23272B2F33373B3F
60A9: 2E 32 36 3A 3E    HEX  23272B2F33373B3F
60AE: 22 26 2A 74      HEX  23272B2F33373B3F
60B1: 2E 32 36 3A 3E    HEX  23272B2F33373B3F
60B6: 23 27 2B 75      HEX  23272B2F33373B3F
60B9: 2F 33 37 3B 3F

```

60BE: 23 27 2B 76	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
60C1: 2F 33 37 3B 3F	
60C6: 20 24 28 77	HEX 2024282C3034383C
60C9: 2C 30 34 38 3C	
60CE: 20 24 28 78	HEX 2024282C3034383C
60D1: 2C 30 34 38 3C	
60D6: 21 25 29 79	HEX 2125292D3135393D
60D9: 2D 31 35 39 3D	
60DE: 21 25 29 80	HEX 2125292D3135393D
60E1: 2D 31 35 39 3D	
60E6: 22 26 2A 81	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
60E9: 2E 32 36 3A 3E	
60EE: 22 26 2A 82	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
60F1: 2E 32 36 3A 3E	
60F6: 23 27 2B 83	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
60F9: 2F 33 37 3B 3F	
60FE: 23 27 2B 84	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
6101: 2F 33 37 3B 3F	
6106: 20 24 28 85	HEX 2024282C3034383C
6109: 2C 30 34 38 3C	
610E: 20 24 28 86	HEX 2024282C3034383C
6111: 2C 30 34 38 3C	
6116: 21 25 29 87	HEX 2125292D3135393D
6119: 2D 31 35 39 3D	
611E: 21 25 29 88	HEX 2125292D3135393D
6121: 2D 31 35 39 3D	
6126: 22 26 2A 89	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
6129: 2E 32 36 3A 3E	
612E: 22 26 2A 90	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
6131: 2E 32 36 3A 3E	
6136: 23 27 2B 91	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
6139: 2F 33 37 3B 3F	
613E: 23 27 2B 92	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
6141: 2F 33 37 3B 3F	
6146: 00 00 00 93 LO	HEX 0000000000000000 ; LOW BYTE LINE ADDRESSES
6149: 00 00 00 00 00	
614E: 80 80 80 94	HEX 8080808080808080
6151: 80 80 80 80 80	
6156: 00 00 00 95	HEX 0000000000000000
6159: 00 00 00 00 00	
615E: 80 80 80 96	HEX 8080808080808080
6161: 80 80 80 80 80	
6166: 00 00 00 97	HEX 0000000000000000
6169: 00 00 00 00 00	
616E: 80 80 80 98	HEX 8080808080808080
6171: 80 80 80 80 80	
6176: 00 00 00 99	HEX 0000000000000000
6179: 00 00 00 00 00	
617E: 80 80 80 100	HEX 8080808080808080
6181: 80 80 80 80 80	
6186: 28 28 28 101	HEX 2828282828282828
6189: 28 28 28 28 28	
618E: A8 A8 A8 102	HEX A8A8A8A8A8A8A8A8
6191: A8 A8 A8 A8 A8	
6196: 28 28 28 103	HEX 2828282828282828
6199: 28 28 28 28 28	
619E: A8 A8 A8 104	HEX A8A8A8A8A8A8A8A8
61A1: A8 A8 A8 A8 A8	
61A6: 28 28 28 105	HEX 2828282828282828
61A9: 28 28 28 28 28	
61AE: A8 A8 A8 106	HEX A8A8A8A8A8A8A8A8


```

61B1: A8 A8 A8 A8 A8
61B6: 28 28 28 107      HEX  2828282828282828
61B9: 28 28 28 28 28
61BE: A8 A8 A8 108      HEX  A8A8A8A8A8A8A8A8
61C1: A8 A8 A8 A8 A8
61C6: 50 50 50 109      HEX  5050505050505050
61C9: 50 50 50 50 50
61CE: D0 D0 D0 110      HEX  D0D0D0D0D0D0D0D0
61D1: D0 D0 D0 D0 D0
61D6: 50 50 50 111      HEX  5050505050505050
61D9: 50 50 50 50 50
61DE: D0 D0 D0 112      HEX  D0D0D0D0D0D0D0D0
61E1: D0 D0 D0 D0 D0
61E6: 50 50 50 113      HEX  5050505050505050
61E9: 50 50 50 50 50
61EE: D0 D0 D0 114      HEX  D0D0D0D0D0D0D0D0
61F1: D0 D0 D0 D0 D0
61F6: 50 50 50 115      HEX  5050505050505050
61F9: 50 50 50 50 50
61FE: D0 D0 D0 116      HEX  D0D0D0D0D0D0D0D0
6201: D0 D0 D0 D0 D0

```

--End assembly--

518 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

PGM	=\$6003	CLR1	=\$6017	CLR	=\$601B	HI	=\$6086
LO	=\$6146	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057						

Let's look at the program starting from line 25.

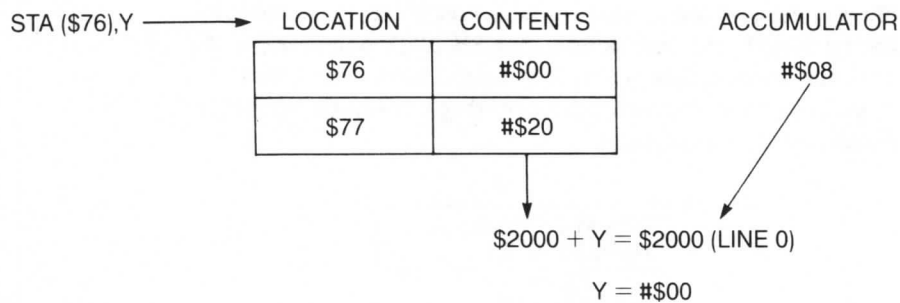
```

LDX #$00    Line number in X register
LDY #$00    Byte number in Y register
LDA HI,X     This instruction is called absolute indexing. The Accumulator is
              loaded with the byte found in location HI + X (remember that HI
              is a label for a particular address). Because X = 0, the first byte in
              the HI table ($20) is loaded into the Accumulator.
STA $77      The contents of the Accumulator ($20) are placed in a zero page
              location.
LDA LO,X     The Accumulator is loaded with the low byte of the line address,
              i.e., the byte in LO + X. Because X = 0, the first byte in the LO
              table ($00) is loaded into the Accumulator.
STA $76      $00 is placed in another zero page location.

              $76 and $77 now contain the low and high bytes of the address of
              line 0 ($2000).
LDA #$08     The first shape byte to be plotted is put into the Accumulator.

```

STA (\$76),Y We've seen this instruction before in the clear screen routine. It stores the Accumulator contents at a screen address retrieved from the contents of zero page addresses \$76 and \$77 plus Y, the byte position.



We've now plotted the first shape byte at line 0, byte 0. The second shape byte now goes on line 1. To plot on this line, we increment X by one and repeat the above steps with the next shape byte.

INX X now contains #\$01

LDA HI,X Loads the Accumulator with the second byte in table HI (HI + 1 = #\$24)

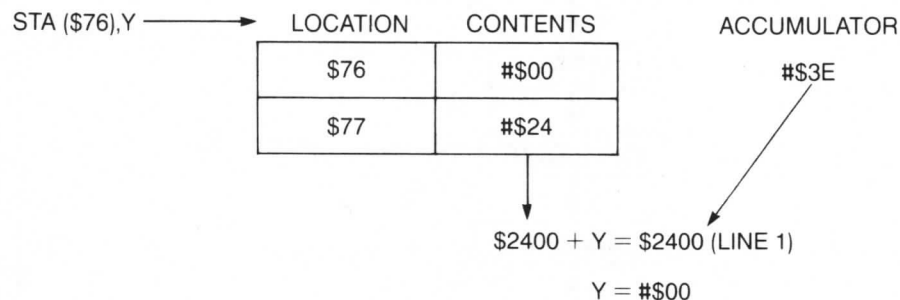
STA \$77 \$77 now contains #\$24.

LDA LO,X Loads the Accumulator with the second byte in table LO (LO + 1 = #\$00).

STA \$76 \$76 now contains #\$00.

LDA #\$3E Loads the Accumulator with the second shape byte.

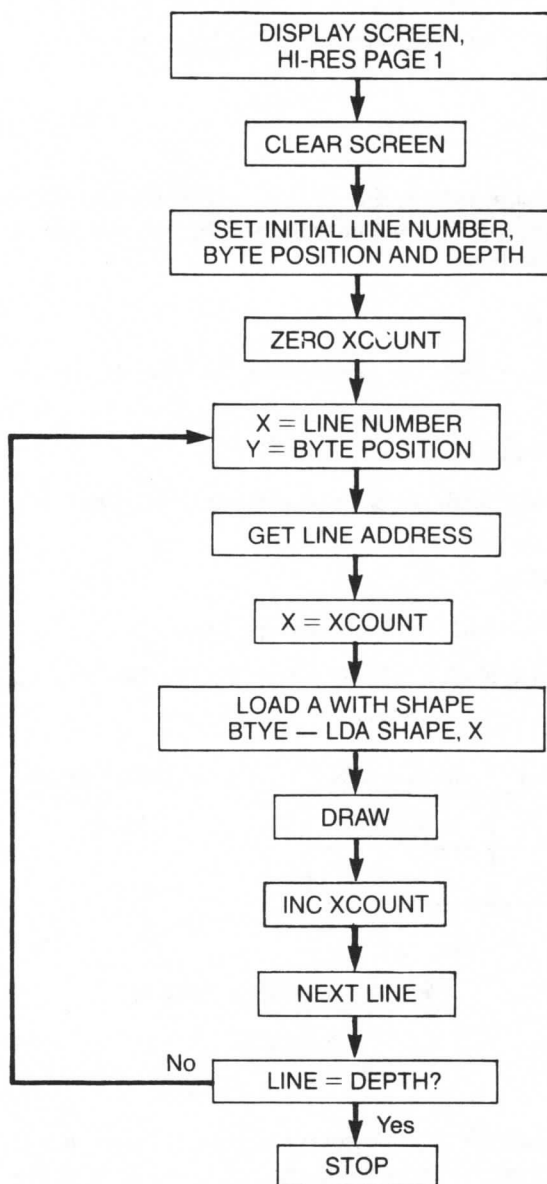
STA (\$76),Y The second shape byte is plotted at \$2400 + Y = \$2400 (line 1).



These steps are repeated until all the shape bytes are drawn. We can change the byte and line locations by putting different values in the Y and X registers. For example, to plot the shape starting at screen line 5 and screen byte 4, place 5 in X and 4 in Y. LDA HI,X and LDA LO,X retrieves the line address \$3400. STA (\$76),Y adds 4 to this address to get the desired screen position, \$3404.

SHAPE TABLES

Simple, no? But not as simple as it can be. There is one further refinement we can use to obtain a more compact and more easily read program. Instead of having a separate draw routine for each byte of the shape, we can store the shape bytes in a table labeled SHAPE and use just one draw routine. Thus, if the shape bytes are stored in a table labeled SHAPE, the instruction LDA SHAPE,X will retrieve the first byte when $X = 0$, the second byte when $X = 1$, and so on. Let's look at a program that puts this all together. We'll plot the man shape at screen byte 4 and the top of the shape starting at screen line 5.



]PROGRAM 3-7
:ASM

```

1          ORG $6000
2 6000: 4C 07 60 2          JMP PGM
3          3          BYTE DS 1
4          4          LINE DS 1
5          5          DEPTH DS 1
6          6          XCOUNT DS 1
7          7          GRAPHICS = $C050
8          8          HIRES = $C057
9          9          PAGE1 = $C054
10         10         MIXOFF = $C052
11         11         HIGH = $1B
12         12         LOW = $1A
13 6007: AD 50 C0 13        PGM LDA GRAPHICS
14 600A: AD 57 C0 14        LDA HIRES
15 600D: AD 54 C0 15        LDA PAGE1
16 6010: AD 52 C0 16        LDA MIXOFF
17 6013: A9 00 17          LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN PAGE 1
18 6015: 85 1A 18          STA LOW
19 6017: A9 20 19          LDA #$20
20 6019: 85 1B 20          STA HIGH
21 601B: A0 00 21          CLR1 LDY #$00
22 601D: A9 00 22          LDA #$00
23 601F: 91 1A 23          CLR STA (LOW),Y
24 6021: C8 24          INY
25 6022: D0 FB 25          BNE CLR
26 6024: E6 1B 26          INC HIGH
27 6026: A5 1B 27          LDA HIGH
28 6028: C9 40 28          CMP #$40
29 602A: 90 EF 29          BLT CLR1
30          *****
31 602C: A9 05 31          LDA #$05
32 602E: 8D 04 60 32        STA LINE ;LINE NUMBER
33 6031: 18 33          CLC
34 6032: 69 06 34          ADC #$06
35 6034: 8D 05 60 35        STA DEPTH ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE
36 6037: A9 04 36          LDA #$04
37 6039: 8D 03 60 37        STA BYTE ;BYTE
38 603C: A9 00 38          LDA #$00
39 603E: 8D 06 60 39        STA XCOUNT ;ZERO XCOUNT
40 6041: AC 03 60 40        DRAW LDY BYTE ;BYTE IN Y REGISTER
41 6044: AE 04 60 41        LDX LINE ;LINE IN X REGISTER
42 6047: BD 6E 60 42        LDA HI,X ;GET LINE ADDRESS
43 604A: 85 1B 43          STA HIGH
44 604C: BD 2E 61 44        LDA LO,X
45 604F: 85 1A 45          STA LOW
46 6051: AE 06 60 46        LDX XCOUNT ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
47 6054: BD 68 60 47        LDA SHAPE,X ;GET SHAPE BYTE
48 6057: 91 1A 48          STA (LOW),Y ;PLOT
49 6059: EE 06 60 49        INC XCOUNT
50 605C: EE 04 60 50        INC LINE ;NEXT LINE
51 605F: AD 04 60 51        LDA LINE
52 6062: CD 05 60 52        CMP DEPTH ;IS SHAPE DONE?
53 6065: 90 DA 53          BLT DRAW ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
54 6067: 60 54          RTS ;IF YES, STOP
55 6068: 08 3E 5D 55        SHAPE HEX 083E5D1C1422
606B: 1C 14 22

```

HI
LO

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	BYTE	=\$6003	LINE	=\$6004
DEPTH	=\$6005	XCOUNT	=\$6006	PGM	=\$6007	CLR1	=\$601B
CLR	=\$601F	DRAW	=\$6041	SHAPE	=\$6068	HI	=\$606E
LO	=\$612E	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057						

HI and **LO** refer to the tables in Program 6-2.

Let's examine the program in some detail, because some new elements of assembler use have been added. We need to reserve some space in the program to hold the values for byte, line, depth of shape, and XCOUNT (the use of XCOUNT will be described below). This is done by using the code DS for Defined Storage. Thus, BYTE DS 1 will reserve one memory location somewhere between \$6000 and PGM and label it BYTE (the precise location is displayed in the Symbol Table at the end of the program listing). Also, in keeping with our desire to remove numbers from the source code, we define zero page addresses \$1A as LOW and \$1B as HIGH, and use these labels also in the clear screen routine. (Using \$1A and \$1B as zero page addresses ensures no conflict with DOS commands or any BASIC program we might want to integrate with our assembly language program—see Chapter 16).

We first enter the initial values for line, byte, and depth of shape (lines 31 to 37). Note that the shape depth is added to the starting line number (lines 33 to 35) so that DEPTH will contain the value $\#05 + \#06 = \#0B$ (ADC means ADD with Carry and must always be preceded with CLC, CLEAr Carry). In the DRAW routine, Y is loaded with the screen byte (line 40) and X with the starting line (line 41). XCOUNT is initially set to zero (lines 38 to 39). Lines 42 to 45 get the line address for the first line to be plotted.

We now need another counter to access the bytes in the shape table but there are no more available—A, X, and Y are being used already. To get around this, we load X temporarily with the value in XCOUNT and use XCOUNT as the shape table counter (X is reloaded with the line number by line 41). Thus, LDA SHAPE,X (line 47) loads A, the Accumulator, with the first byte of the shape table, because X = 0 from the initial value of XCOUNT. STA (LOW),Y (line 48) then plots the first shape byte at line 5, byte 4. XCOUNT is incremented by one (line 49) and now contains the value $\#01$. LINE is also incremented by one (line 50); it now contains the value $\#06$. This new line number is now compared to the value in DEPTH (line 52).

To do a CMP comparison, you must first load A with the number to be compared to (line 51). BLT DRAW (line 53) is an instruction that says if the number in A (the line number) is less than the number in DEPTH, go back to DRAW and continue drawing. At DRAW, X is loaded with the new line number ($\#06$) and a new address is obtained from the HI and LO tables. X is loaded with the new XCOUNT ($\#01$) and LDA SHAPE,X loads A with the second byte of the shape table. This is then plotted at the new line by STA (LOW),Y. Thus, the second shape byte is plotted at screen line 6 and screen byte 4 (in this program, the screen byte isn't changed). This whole process is then repeated until the last line plotted is equal to DEPTH. Then the branch at line 53 is not taken and the program ends.

Compared to the previous program, this program is not only shorter but also easier to read and manipulate. For example, if we don't like the way the shape

looks, we can simply change numbers in the shape table. For larger programs with multiple shapes, the advantage of using shape tables becomes even more apparent.

DRAWING SHAPES WIDER THAN ONE BYTE

We've one more topic to discuss before we leave this chapter. Up to now, we've only plotted shapes of width one screen byte or less. Suppose we want to plot a shape that extends over two bytes or more. A slight change in the drawing routine is required. The following program (Program 3-8) plots the shape of a plane that is 2-bytes wide and 5-lines deep.

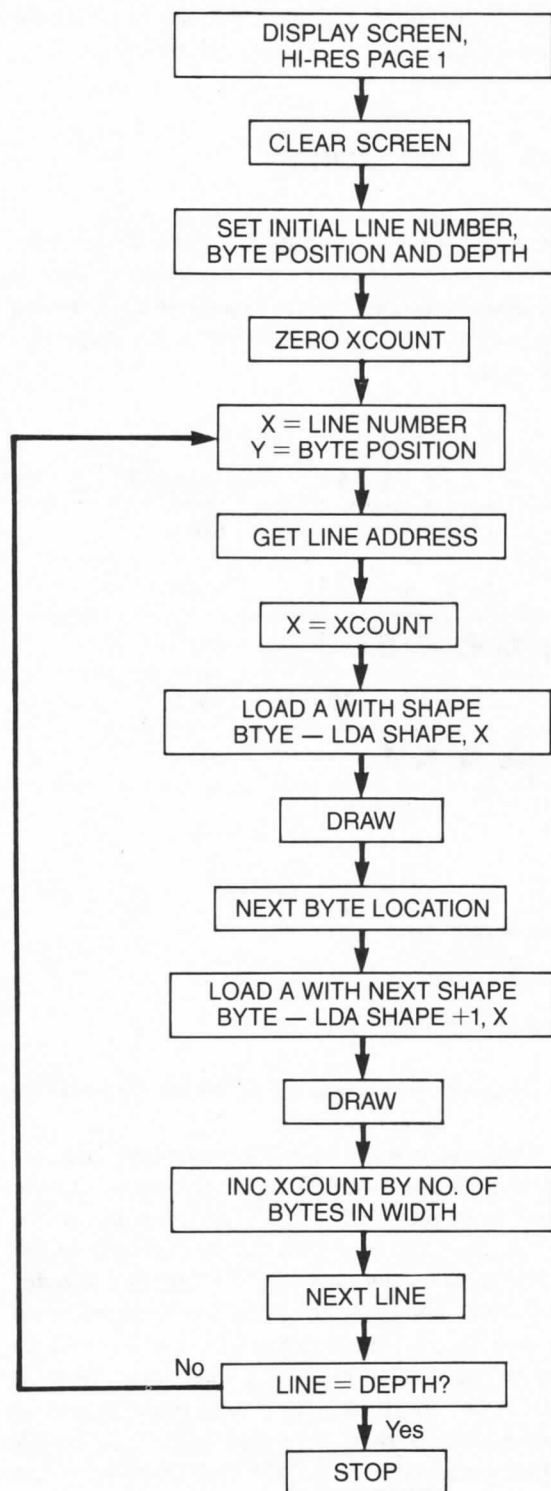
SHAPE BYTES																Screen Byte 1 Screen Byte 2	
1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4				
●	●															#\$03	#\$00
●	●															#\$03	#\$00
●		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●			#\$7D	#\$3F
●														●		#\$01	#\$40
●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●			#\$7F	#\$3F

The order of drawing will be:

- line 1, first screen byte, second screen byte
- line 2, first screen byte, second screen byte
- line 3, first screen byte, second screen byte, etc.

Thus, the order of shape bytes in the shape table is 03 00 03 00 7D 3F 01 40 7F 3F.

In the DRAW routine, we get the address of the first screen line and first screen byte and plot the first byte of the shape table. Then, on the same line, we increment Y (line 49) so that the next plot (STA (LOW),Y) will be at the second screen byte. LDA SHAPE+1,X (line 50) retrieves the second byte of the shape table for this plot. XCOUNT is then incremented by the number of bytes in the shape width; in this case, two. We then go to the next line by incrementing LINE (line 54) and, because the shape isn't finished yet, we go back to DRAW to reset the screen byte to its initial value (line 40) and obtain the new line address. Now LDA SHAPE,X will get the third shape byte because X = 2 from XCOUNT. INY gets us to the next screen byte and LDA SHAPE+1,X retrieves the fourth shape byte. This continues until CMP DEPTH tells us the shape is finished.



]PROGRAM 3-8
:ASM

```

1          ORG $6000
2          JMP PGM
3          BYTE DS 1
4          LINE DS 1
5          DEPTH DS 1
6          XCOUNT DS 1
7          GRAPHICS = $C050
8          HIRES = $C057
9          PAGE1 = $C054
10         MIXOFF = $C052
11         HIGH = $1B
12         LOW = $1A
6007: AD 50 C0 13         PGM LDA GRAPHICS
600A: AD 57 C0 14         LDA HIRES
600D: AD 54 C0 15         LDA PAGE1
6010: AD 52 C0 16         LDA MIXOFF
6013: A9 00 17         LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN PAGE 1
6015: 85 1A 18         STA LOW
6017: A9 20 19         LDA #$20
6019: 85 1B 20         STA HIGH
601B: A0 00 21         CLR1 LDY #$00
601D: A9 00 22         LDA #$00
601F: 91 1A 23         CLR STA (LOW),Y
6021: C8 24         INY
6022: D0 FB 25         BNE CLR
6024: E6 1B 26         INC HIGH
6026: A5 1B 27         LDA HIGH
6028: C9 40 28         CMP #$40
602A: 90 EF 29         BLT CLR1
30         *****
602C: A9 05 31         LDA #$05
602E: 8D 04 60 32         STA LINE ;LINE NUMBER
6031: 18 33         CLC
6032: 69 05 34         ADC #$05
6034: 8D 05 60 35         STA DEPTH ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE
6037: A9 04 36         LDA #$04
6039: 8D 03 60 37         STA BYTE ;BYTE
603C: A9 00 38         LDA #$00
603E: 8D 06 60 39         STA XCOUNT ;ZERO XCOUNT
6041: AC 03 60 40         DRAW LDY BYTE ;BYTE IN Y REGISTER
6044: AE 04 60 41         LDX LINE ;LINE IN X REGISTER
6047: BD 7B 60 42         LDA HI,X ;GET LINE ADDRESS
604A: 85 1B 43         STA HIGH
604C: BD 3B 61 44         LDA LO,X
604F: 85 1A 45         STA LOW
6051: AE 06 60 46         LDX XCOUNT ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
6054: BD 71 60 47         LDA SHAPE,X ;GET SHAPE BYTE
6057: 91 1A 48         STA (LOW),Y ;PLOT
6059: C8 49         INY ;NEXT BYTE
605A: BD 72 60 50         LDA SHAPE+1,X ;NEXT SHAPE BYTE
605D: 91 1A 51         STA (LOW),Y ;PLOT
605F: EE 06 60 52         INC XCOUNT ;INC XCOUNT BY NO. OF
6062: EE 06 60 53         INC XCOUNT ;BYTES IN SHAPE WIDTH
6065: EE 04 60 54         INC LINE ;NEXT LINE
6068: AD 04 60 55         LDA LINE
606B: CD 05 60 56         CMP DEPTH ;IS SHAPE DONE?
606E: 90 D1 57         BLT DRAW ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
6070: 60 58         RTS ;IF YES, STOP

```



```
6071: 03 00 03 59 SHAPE  HEX  030003007D3F01407F3F
6074: 00 7D 3F 01 40 7F 3F
      HI
      LO
```

507 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	BYTE	=\$6003	LINE	=\$6004
DEPTH	=\$6005	XCOUNT	=\$6006	PGM	=\$6007	CLR1	=\$601B
CLR	=\$601F	DRAW	=\$6041	SHAPE	=\$6071	HI	=\$607B
LO	=\$613B	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057						

Program 3-8 illustrates the general principles of DRAW routines for shapes of any width. For example, here is a routine for a shape 3-bytes wide:

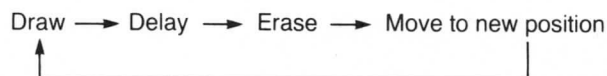
```
DRAW  LDY BYTE
      LDX LINE
      LDA HI,X
      STA HIGH
      LDA LO,X
      STA LOW
      LDX XCOUNT
      LDA SHAPE,X      First shape byte
      STA (LOW),Y      Plot at first screen byte
      INY
      LDA SHAPE+1,X    Second shape byte
      STA (LOW),Y      Plot at second screen byte
      INY
      LDA SHAPE+2,X    Third shape byte
      STA (LOW),Y      Plot at third screen byte
      INC XCOUNT      Increment XCOUNT by shape width
      INC XCOUNT
      INC XCOUNT
      INC LINE
      LDA LINE
      CMP DEPTH
      BLT DRAW
      RTS
```

We now know how to display any shape anywhere on the hi-res screen using shape tables and line address tables. Following chapters will discuss how to move shapes around the screen using animation routines.

Vertical Animation

*There was a young man named Brown
On whose brow Program 4-2 produced a frown,
"I understand it all right
But there's been an oversight
What goes up is not coming down."*

Computer animation is an illusion. Shapes do not move in a continuous, unbroken path but rather in fits and starts, bit by bit (literally!), or sometimes byte by byte. The illusion is created essentially by speed, in the same way that rapidly changing still pictures create the illusion of movement in movie films. We touched on this before in discussing why the speed of assembly language is essential to animation. But speed is not the only factor. The basic cycle for any animation routine is as follows:



If the new position is close to the old one and if the process is fast enough, the illusion of continuous movement is created. The reason for the time delay is to ensure that the shape is on the screen longer than it is off; otherwise, excessive flicker will result.

ERASING A SHAPE

Before we get to the actual vertical animation programs, we first have to discuss the problem of the shape erase. We could erase a shape by clearing the entire screen with our clear screen routine but obviously this would be inappropriate if there are other shapes on the screen we want to retain. We could also just store zeros in the general shape area, but there is an easier and neater way. For this we have to introduce another assembly language instruction, EOR (Exclusive-OR). EOR compares a byte, bit by bit, with a byte in the Accumula-

tor. If either bit, but not both, is one, the result is one; otherwise, the result is zero. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Example:

Accumulator	1 1 0 1 0 0 1 1
EOR byte	0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0
	<hr/>
Result in Accumulator	1 0 1 1 1 0 0 1

Let's see how the EOR instruction can be used to erase a shape. Suppose we load the Accumulator with a shape byte from a particular screen location. Then if we EOR the Accumulator with the same shape byte and store the result at the same screen location, the shape will be erased.

		<i>Content of screen location \$NNNN</i>
LDA \$NNNN	0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 (in Accumulator)	#\$2D
EOR #\$2D	0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1	
	<hr/>	
Result	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 (in Accumulator)	
STA \$NNNN		#\$00

Pretty neat, eh? But wait, there's more. We can use this same EOR routine not only to erase, but also to draw a shape. All that's necessary is to have a zero stored at the screen location initially.

		<i>Content of screen location \$NNNN</i>
LDA \$NNNN	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 (in Accumulator)	#\$00
EOR #\$2D	0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1	
	<hr/>	
Result	0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 (in Accumulator)	
STA \$NNNN		#\$2D

This makes life a bit easier for beleaguered assembly language programmers (us), because now we can use a single routine to both draw and erase a shape. The shape is drawn if the screen location contains a zero, and erased if the screen location already contains the shape byte. Alternate calls to the EOR routine will produce a draw-erase cycle. To recapitulate briefly:

Ordinary draw routine	LDA shape byte STA screen location
Draw with EOR	LDA screen location contents (zero) EOR shape byte STA same screen location

```

Erase with EOR          LDA screen location contents (shape byte)
                        EOR same shape byte
                        STA same screen location

```

TIME DELAYS

We now need a routine to introduce a time delay in our programs. For this we can take advantage of certain subroutines built into the Apple's operating system (for details, see the Apple Reference Manual). These subroutines perform many functions, from ringing a bell to printing a character. The subroutine we're interested in is at memory location \$FCA8. When \$FCA8 is accessed, a delay results, the length of which depends on the number in the Accumulator. For example, the following instructions:

```

LDA #$40
JSR $FCA8 (JSR means Jump to SubRoutine)

```

will produce a delay of approximately 0.01 second. The larger the number in the Accumulator, the longer the delay. In most of our programs, we're going to define the label WAIT as \$FCA8 and reserve a memory location for the number to be loaded into the Accumulator; we'll call this DELAY. We then can load DELAY with a number:

```

LDA #$40
STA DELAY

```

A delay is then produced by:

```

LDA DELAY
JSR WAIT

```

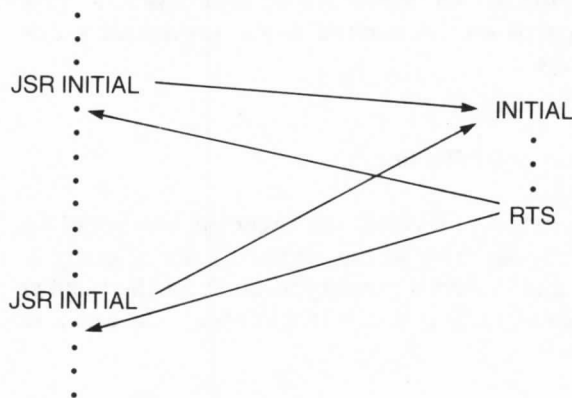
This comes in handy if we want the same delay in several different routines. To see the effect of different delay times, we need change only the value in DELAY. For programs using different delays, we would LDA with the appropriate byte and do a JSR WAIT.

VERTICAL ANIMATION—ONE SHAPE MOVING DOWN

Let's get now to our first vertical animation program. The concept of vertical animation is relatively simple—we draw a shape, delay, erase it, and redraw it either one line down if we're moving down or one line up if we're moving up. We then access the routine repeatedly to traverse the screen (we actually could move any number of lines at a time but a one-line move produces the smoothest results—we're going to use one-line moves for the programs in this chapter).

Our first program (Program 4-1) will move an old friend, the person shape, from the top of the screen to the bottom in a straight line. When it reaches the bottom, the shape will disappear only to reappear at the top for another screen traversal. This will continue ad infinitum until the program is stopped with CONTROL RESET. The program will be using EOR draw routines and also a few things we haven't seen before, so let's discuss some of the details.

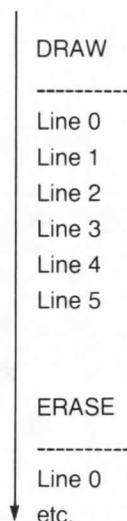
First of all, we're going to use the JSR (Jump to SubRoutine) instruction rather extensively. JSR is equivalent to the GOSUB instruction in BASIC. All subroutines called by JSR must end with RTS (ReTurn from Subroutine) in the same way that BASIC subroutines must end with the RETURN instruction.



Although using subroutines does slow a program somewhat (it takes time for any jump instruction), the time lost in most programs is insignificant and is certainly overshadowed by the great advantage, especially for beginners, of providing greater clarity in designing and reading the program. The use of subroutines allows one to divide a program conveniently in two parts—the MAIN PROGRAM and SUBROUTINES. The MAIN PROGRAM gives us an overall view of the program's organization, whereas the SUBROUTINES supply most of the details. In the program we're about to discuss, for example, one can look at the MAIN PROGRAM and take in, almost at a glance, what's going on.

Program 4-1 starts with the usual display and clear screen routines. In addition, #\$40 is chosen as the DELAY byte (lines 37 to 38). Let's now look at the MAIN PROGRAM in some detail.

START	JSR INITIAL	A call to the INITIAL subroutine sets the initial byte position, line number, and depth of the shape.
START1	JSR DRAW	The shape is drawn with an EOR routine.
	LDA DELAY	
	JSR WAIT	A time delay is introduced.
	LDA LINEA	
	STA LINE	Because the shape is drawn line-by-line starting from the top and working down, to erase the shape using the same EOR-draw routine, the starting line number for the erase has to be reset to its original value; e.g.,



LINEA is used as a repository for the original line number—unlike LINE, it is not changed by the DRAW subroutine.

JSR DRAW This call to the DRAW subroutine now erases the shape since the screen locations already contain the shape bytes.

```

INC DEPTH
INC LINEA
LDA LINEA
STA LINE

```

Because we're moving the shape down, we want the top of the shape to begin at a new line, one down from the previous position. To move down a line, we increment, as lines are counted 0 to 191, top to bottom. The new line number is stored in LINE and also in LINEA so that it can be recalled for the erase routine. Note that we do not do an INC LINE because LINE has been altered by the DRAW subroutine. DEPTH is also incremented so that the DRAW routine will draw the entire shape.

CMP #\$BB This compares the new line number in the Accumulator to the value #\$BB to see if the shape has reached the bottom of the screen. If it has, we want to erase the last drawn shape and start over from the beginning, or at least do something other than allowing the shape to go beyond the screen border. If this happens, the shape may appear in unexpected locations and you will lose control of your program (you could always pull the plug at this point to show who's boss, but let's be more elegant). To see why we selected #\$BB as the comparison byte, we should look at how the shape is drawn as it approaches south of the border.

LINE NUMBER				
Decimal	Hex			
185	#\$B9	●		
186	#\$BA	● ● ● ● ●	●	
187	#\$BB	● ● ● ● ●	● ● ● ● ●	●
188	#\$BC	● ● ●	● ● ● ● ●	● ● ● ● ●
189	#\$BD	● ●	● ● ●	● ● ● ● ●
190	#\$BE	● ●	● ●	● ● ●
191 (bottom)	#\$BF		● ●	● ●

The value we want to use in this comparison is the top or starting line of the shape (it doesn't have to be; it's just that we're drawing the shape from top to bottom). Thus, the last shape we want to draw (and erase) starts at line 186 (#\$BA). If we start a shape at line 187 (#\$BB), part of it will be off the screen.

BGE START

JMP START1 BGE (Branch if Greater or Equal) can be used by some assemblers in place of the normal BCS (Branch if Carry Set). Together with the CMP #\$BB instruction, it says that if the number in the Accumulator (the new line number) is greater than or equal to #\$BB, branch back to START to begin animation from the initial parameters, i.e., the top of the screen. This branch will be taken when the line number reaches #\$BB. If the line number is less than #\$BB, the branch will not be taken and the JMP instruction sends the program back to continue drawing from the last line number.

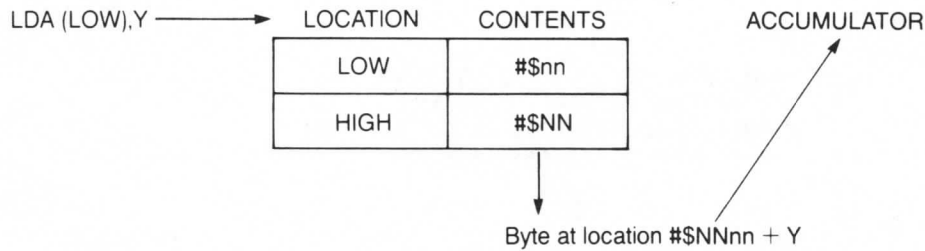
The rule of thumb when using these instructions to test for the bottom of the screen is to subtract the shape depth from 193 ($193 - 6 = 187 = \text{#$BB}$). It really isn't all that complicated once you understand the principles involved (right?).

Finally, note that the last JSR DRAW before this comparison is a shape erase. Thus, we are not left with a shape on the screen when we start again from the top of the screen.

The INITIAL subroutine in this program is essentially self-explanatory. It is here we set the initial line number (0 for top of screen) and the screen byte position—I've chosen #\$10 (decimal 16) just to get the shape away from the border.

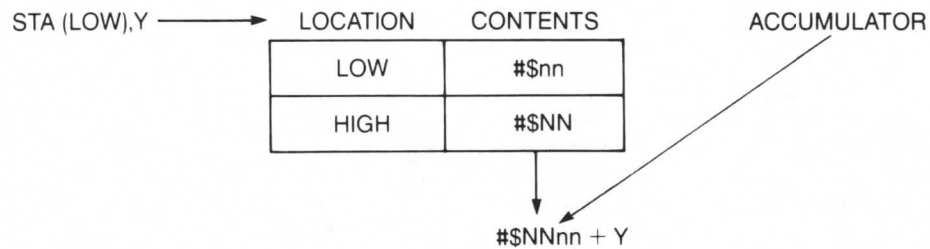
The DRAW subroutine should be familiar to you. We load Y with the byte position, X with the line number, use the HI and LO tables to get line addresses, and XCOUNT for accessing the shape table. We then use an EOR routine for both drawing and erasing.

LDA (LOW),Y Load the Accumulator with the byte at the screen position determined by X and Y.

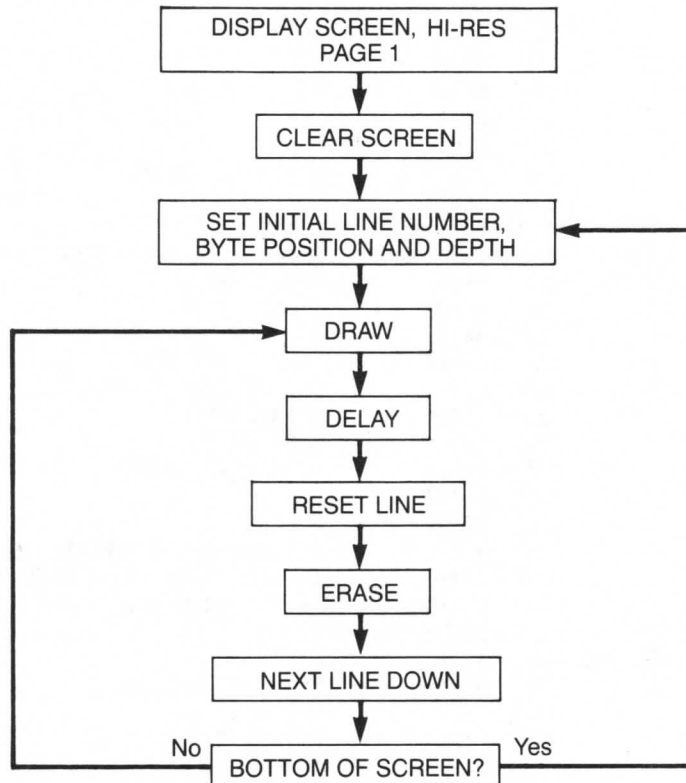


EOR SHAPE,X EOR the Accumulator with a byte from the shape table (X is loaded from XCOUNT).

STA (LOW),Y Store the result at the same screen position.



Because the screen initially is clear, when first accessed these instructions will draw. When accessed next, they will erase.



]PROGRAM 4-1
:ASM

```

1  *ONE SHAPE VERTICAL MOVING DOWN
2  *****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 6 BYTES DEEP
4  *****
5          ORG $6000
6000: 4C 09 60 6      JMP PGM
7          XCOUNT DS 1
8          BYTE DS 1
9          LINE DS 1
10         LINEA DS 1
11         DEPTH DS 1
12         DELAY DS 1
13         GRAPHICS = $C050
14         MIXOFF = $C052
15         HIRES = $C057
16         PAGE1 = $C054
17         HIGH = $1B
18         LOW = $1A
19         WAIT = $FCA8
20         PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
21         LDA MIXOFF
22         LDA HIRES
23         LDA PAGE1
24         LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
25         STA LOW
26         LDA #$20
27         STA HIGH
28         CLR1 LDY #$00
29         LDA #$00
30         CLR STA (LOW),Y
31         INY
32         BNE CLR
33         INC HIGH
34         LDA HIGH
35         CMP #$40
36         BLT CLR1
37         LDA #$40 ;LOAD TIME DELAY
38         STA DELAY
39         ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
40         START JSR INITIAL ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
41         START1 JSR DRAW ;DRAW SHAPE
42         LDA DELAY ;DELAY
43         JSR WAIT
44         LDA LINEA ;RESET LINE TO
45         STA LINE ORIGINAL LINE
46         JSR DRAW ;ERASE SHAPE
47         INC DEPTH ;NEXT DEPTH
48         INC LINEA & NEXT LINE
49         LDA LINEA
50         STA LINE
51         CMP #$BB ;IS LINE AT BOTTOM OF SCREEN?
52         BGE START ;IF YES, DRAW FROM INITIAL VALUES
53         JMP START1 ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
54         ***** SUBROUTINES *****
55         INITIAL LDA #$10
56         STA BYTE ;SET STARTING BYTE
57         LDA #$00
58         STA LINE ;SET STARTING LINE

```

```

6065: 8D 06 60 59      STA LINEA
6068: 18                CLC
6069: 69 06            ADC #$06      ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO LINE
606B: 8D 07 60 62      STA DEPTH
606E: 60                RTS
606F: A9 00            LDA #$00
6071: 8D 03 60 65      STA XCOUNT ;ZERO XCOUNT
6074: AC 04 60 66      DRAW1 LDY BYTE ;LOAD BYTE
6077: AE 05 60 67      LDX LINE ;LOAD LINE
607A: BD A3 60 68      LDA HI,X ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
607D: 85 1B            STA HIGH
607F: BD 63 61 70      LDA LO,X
6082: 85 1A            STA LOW
6084: AE 03 60 72      LDX XCOUNT ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
6087: B1 1A            LDA (LOW),Y ;GET BYTE FROM SCREEN
6089: 5D 9D 60 74      EOR SHAPE,X ;EOR BYTE FROM SHAPE ADDRESS+X
608C: 91 1A            STA (LOW),Y ;PLOT BYTE
608E: EE 03 60 76      INC XCOUNT
6091: EE 05 60 77      INC LINE ;NEXT LINE
6094: AD 05 60 78      LDA LINE
6097: CD 07 60 79      CMP DEPTH ;FINISH SHAPE?
609A: 90 D8            BLT DRAW1 ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
609C: 60                RTS ;IF YES, NEXT DRAW CYCLE
609D: 08 3E 5D 82      SHAPE HEX 083E5D1C1422 ;SHAPE TABLE
60A0: 1C 14 22

```

HI
LO

547 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
PGM	=\$6009	CLR1	=\$601D	CLR	=\$6021	START	=\$6033
START1	=\$6036	INITIAL	=\$605B	DRAW	=\$606F	DRAW1	=\$6074
SHAPE	=\$609D	HI	=\$60A3	LO	=\$6163	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8

ONE SHAPE MOVING UP

Suppose now we want to move a shape up, from the bottom to the top of the screen (see Program 4-2). There are very few changes that have to be made. First, in the INITIAL subroutine, we set the starting line to #\$BA (186). The shape is 6 lines deep, so the first shape will be drawn from lines 186 to 191, just at the bottom border. Second, in the MAIN PROGRAM, we decrement (DEC) LINE and DEPTH instead of increment, because going up means lower line numbers. Then, to test for the top border, we check if LINE has reached zero:

```

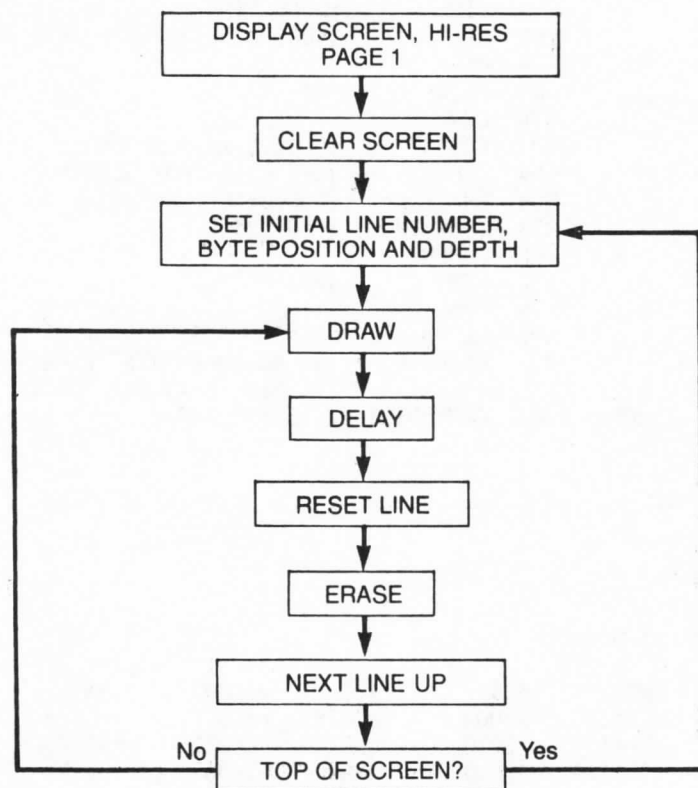
LDA LINEA
STA LINE
BEQ START
JMP START1

```

A CMP #\$00 is not needed here because BEQ executes a branch if the result of a previous operation was zero. Thus, when LINE equals zero, the branch is taken

and the shape begins another journey from the screen bottom. These instructions actually stop (and erase) the shape at line 1. This is of little import in our programs, as a one-line difference at a screen border is hardly noticeable.

Finally, the shape has been changed (easy to do just by changing bytes in the shape table) from a person to a sort of spaceship, as it's a bit disquieting to see a person rising without any visible means of support.



]PROGRAM 4-2
:ASM

```

1  *ONE SHAPE VERTICAL MOVING UP
2  *****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 6 BYTES DEEP
4  *****
5          ORG  $6000
6          JMP  PGM
7  XCOUNT DS  1
8  BYTE    DS  1
9  LINE     DS  1
10 LINEA   DS  1
11 DEPTH    DS  1
12 DELAY    DS  1
13 GRAPHICS =  $C050
14 MIXOFF   =  $C052
15 HIRES    =  $C057

```

```

16 PAGE1 = $C054
17 HIGH = $1B
18 LOW = $1A
19 WAIT = $FCA8
6009: AD 50 C0 20 PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
600C: AD 52 C0 21 LDA MIXOFF
600F: AD 57 C0 22 LDA HIRES
6012: AD 54 C0 23 LDA PAGE1
6015: A9 00 24 LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6017: 85 1A 25 STA LOW
6019: A9 20 26 LDA #$20
601B: 85 1B 27 STA HIGH
601D: A0 00 28 CLR1 LDY #$00
601F: A9 00 29 LDA #$00
6021: 91 1A 30 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6023: C8 31 INY
6024: D0 FB 32 BNE CLR
6026: E6 1B 33 INC HIGH
6028: A5 1B 34 LDA HIGH
602A: C9 40 35 CMP #$40
602C: 90 EF 36 BLT CLR1
602E: A9 40 37 LDA #$40 ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6030: 8D 08 60 38 STA DELAY
39 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6033: 20 59 60 40 START JSR INITIAL ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
6036: 20 6D 60 41 START1 JSR DRAW ;DRAW SHAPE
6039: AD 08 60 42 LDA DELAY ;DELAY
603C: 20 A8 FC 43 JSR WAIT
603F: AD 06 60 44 LDA LINEA ;RESET LINE TO
6042: 8D 05 60 45 STA LINE ORIGINAL LINE
6045: 20 6D 60 46 JSR DRAW ;ERASE SHAPE
6048: CE 07 60 47 DEC DEPTH ;NEXT DEPTH
604B: CE 06 60 48 DEC LINEA & NEXT LINE
604E: AD 06 60 49 LDA LINEA
6051: 8D 05 60 50 STA LINE ;IS LINE AT TOP OF SCREEN?
6054: F0 DD 51 BEQ START ;IF YES, DRAW FROM INITIAL VALUES
6056: 4C 36 60 52 JMP START1 ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
53 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6059: A9 10 54 INITIAL LDA #$10
605B: 8D 04 60 55 STA BYTE ;SET STARTING BYTE
605E: A9 BA 56 LDA #$BA
6060: 8D 05 60 57 STA LINE ;SET STARTING LINE
6063: 8D 06 60 58 STA LINEA
6066: 18 59 CLC
6067: 69 06 60 ADC #$06 ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO LINE
6069: 8D 07 60 61 STA DEPTH
606C: 60 62 RTS
606D: A9 00 63 DRAW LDA #$00
606F: 8D 03 60 64 STA XCOUNT ;ZERO XCOUNT
6072: AC 04 60 65 DRAW1 LDY BYTE ;LOAD BYTE
6075: AE 05 60 66 LDX LINE ;LOAD LINE
6078: BD A1 60 67 LDA HI,X ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
607B: 85 1B 68 STA HIGH
607D: BD 61 61 69 LDA LO,X
6080: 85 1A 70 STA LOW
6082: AE 03 60 71 LDX XCOUNT ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
6085: B1 1A 72 LDA (LOW),Y ;GET BYTE FROM SCREEN

```

```

6087: 5D 9B 60 73      EOR  SHAPE,X      ;EOR BYTE FROM SHAPE ADDRESS+X
608A: 91 1A      74      STA  (LOW),Y      ;PLOT BYTE
608C: EE 03 60 75      INC  XCOUNT
608F: EE 05 60 76      INC  LINE          ;NEXT LINE
6092: AD 05 60 77      LDA  LINE
6095: CD 07 60 78      CMP  DEPTH          ;FINISH SHAPE?
6098: 90 D8      79      BLT  DRAW1          ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
609A: 60      80      RTS          ;IF YES, NEXT DRAW CYCLE
609B: 08 1C 22 81      SHAPE  HEX  081C223E227F ;SHAPE TABLE
609E: 3E 22 7F

```

HI
LO

545 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
PGM	=\$6009	CLR1	=\$601D	CLR	=\$6021	START	=\$6033
START1	=\$6036	INITIAL	=\$6059	DRAW	=\$606D	DRAW1	=\$6072
SHAPE	=\$609B	HI	=\$60A1	LO	=\$6161	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8

48

DRAW-DRAW ROUTINES

We've seen, in the previous two programs, how to erase a shape using the EOR instruction. Let's call this type of routine DRAW-ERASE. There is yet another way to erase a shape and that is by drawing over it, a process that has advantages as well as disadvantages. We'll call this type of routine DRAW-DRAW. The salient point here is that when a byte is sent to a screen position, the byte (if any) already present at that position is replaced by the new byte.

Example

Contents of screen location \$NNNN

```

                                #$17
LDA #$23
STA $NNNN                      #$23

```

Let's adapt the DRAW-DRAW routine to Program 4-1, moving a shape down the screen (see Program 4-3). The shape is drawn with an ordinary draw (LDA shape byte, STA screen location) instead of the EOR routine. The shape is moved down one line at a time without any erase routine. Let's follow the shape moving down two lines.

LINE		NEXT LINE DOWN	NEXT LINE DOWN
0	•	•	•
1	• • • • •	•	•
2	• • • • •	• • • • •	•
3	• • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •
4	• •	• • •	• • • • •
5	• •	• •	• • •
6		• •	• •
7			• •

As you can see, each shape byte, as it moves down one line, erases the byte that was there before, thus preserving the shape. As you can also see, something's not quite right. We're always left with the top byte on the screen, because nothing moves into those positions. We solve this problem by providing the shape with a border of #00 at the top. Now see what happens.

LINE		NEXT LINE DOWN	NEXT LINE DOWN
0	#00		
1	•	#00	
2	• • • • •	•	#00
3	• • • • •	• • • • •	•
4	• • •	• • • • •	• • • • •
5	• •	• • •	• • • • •
6	• •	• •	• • •
7		• •	• •
8			• •

The border is always placed behind the direction of movement and serves to erase the first line of the shape. To introduce the border into the person shape, we add #00 at the beginning of the shape table. Thus, the person-shape table with a trailing border is 00083E5D1C1422 (compare to Program 4-1). We must also remember to change the shape depth from 6 to 7 in the INITIAL subroutine. A general rule is that the border size has to equal the maximum shape move. Thus, if we're moving a shape two lines at a time, the trailing border would be two #00's.

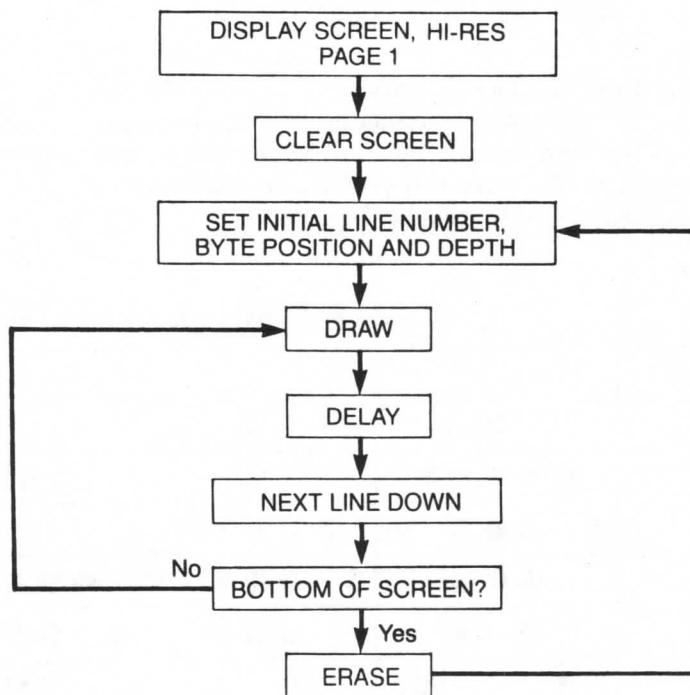
There is one further complication we have to deal with in programs that use DRAW-DRAW routines. For example, in the program we're discussing, when the shape reaches the bottom of the screen, it will stop and then appear again from

the top. Then, because we have no erase instructions, the shape at the bottom stays on the screen. We have to introduce an erase routine to erase the last shape when it reaches a border. For this, we can use our usual EOR instructions in a routine called ERASE. Thus, in the MAIN PROGRAM of Program 4-3,

CMP #\$BA #\$BA is used instead of #\$BB as in Program 4-1 because this shape is 7 lines deep due to the border ($193 - 7 = 186 = \text{\$BA}$).

BGE ERASE

JMP START1 Now the comparison tells us if the shape is at the screen bottom, go to the ERASE routine, which erases the shape and then sends the program back to START to continue the animation from the initial parameters, i.e., top of the screen.



]PROGRAM 4-3
:ASM

```

1  *ONE SHAPE VERTICAL MOVING DOWN; DRAW-DRAW CYCLE
2  *****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 7 BYTES DEEP
4  *****
5          ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 09 60 6  JMP  PGM
7          XCOUNT DS  1
8          BYTE    DS  1
9          LINE     DS  1
10         LINEA    DS  1
11         DEPTH    DS  1
12         DELAY    DS  1
13         GRAPHICS = $C050
14         MIXOFF   = $C052
15         HIRES    = $C057
16         PAGE1    = $C054
  
```

```

17 HIGH = $1B
18 LOW = $1A
19 WAIT = $FCAB
6009: AD 50 C0 20 PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
600C: AD 52 C0 21 LDA MIXOFF
600F: AD 57 C0 22 LDA HIRES
6012: AD 54 C0 23 LDA PAGE1
6015: A9 00 24 LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6017: 85 1A 25 STA LOW
6019: A9 20 26 LDA #$20
601B: 85 1B 27 STA HIGH
601D: A0 00 28 CLR1 LDY #$00
601F: A9 00 29 LDA #$00
6021: 91 1A 30 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6023: C8 31 INY
6024: D0 FB 32 BNE CLR
6026: E6 1B 33 INC HIGH
6028: A5 1B 34 LDA HIGH
602A: C9 40 35 CMP #$40
602C: 90 EF 36 BLT CLR1
602E: A9 40 37 LDA #$40 ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6030: 8D 08 60 38 STA DELAY
39 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6033: 20 52 60 40 START JSR INITIAL ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
6036: 20 66 60 41 START1 JSR DRAW ;DRAW SHAPE
6039: AD 08 60 42 LDA DELAY ;DELAY
603C: 20 A8 FC 43 JSR WAIT
603F: EE 07 60 44 INC DEPTH ;NEXT DEPTH
6042: EE 06 60 45 INC LINEA & NEXT LINE
6045: AD 06 60 46 LDA LINEA
6048: 8D 05 60 47 STA LINE
604B: C9 BA 48 CMP #$BA ;IS LINE AT BOTTOM OF SCREEN?
604D: B0 43 49 BGE ERASE ;IF YES, ERASE SHAPE, START OVER
604F: 4C 36 60 50 JMP START1 ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
51 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6052: A9 10 52 INITIAL LDA #$10
6054: 8D 04 60 53 STA BYTE ;SET STARTING BYTE
6057: A9 00 54 LDA #$00
6059: 8D 05 60 55 STA LINE ;SET STARTING LINE
605C: 8D 06 60 56 STA LINEA
605F: 18 57 CLC
6060: 69 07 58 ADC #$07 ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO LINE
6062: 8D 07 60 59 STA DEPTH
6065: 60 60 RTS
6066: A9 00 61 DRAW LDA #$00
6068: 8D 03 60 62 STA XCOUNT ;ZERO XCOUNT
606B: AC 04 60 63 DRAW1 LDY BYTE ;LOAD BYTE
606E: AE 05 60 64 LDX LINE ;LOAD LINE
6071: BD CC 60 65 LDA HI,X ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
6074: 85 1B 66 STA HIGH
6076: BD 8C 61 67 LDA LO,X
6079: 85 1A 68 STA LOW
607B: AE 03 60 69 LDX XCOUNT ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
607E: BD C5 60 70 LDA SHAPE,X ;LOAD SHAPE BYTE
6081: 91 1A 71 STA (LOW),Y ;PLOT BYTE
6083: EE 03 60 72 INC XCOUNT
6086: EE 05 60 73 INC LINE ;NEXT LINE
6089: AD 05 60 74 LDA LINE
608C: CD 07 60 75 CMP DEPTH ;FINISH SHAPE?
608F: 90 DA 76 BLT DRAW1 ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
6091: 60 77 RTS ;IF YES, NEXT DRAW CYCLE

```



```

6092: CE 05 60 78  ERASE  DEC  LINE
6095: A9 00 79      LDA  #$00      ;ZERO XCOUNT
6097: 8D 03 60 80      STA  XCOUNT
609A: AC 04 60 81  ERASE1  LDY  BYTE
609D: AE 05 60 82      LDX  LINE
60A0: BD CC 60 83      LDA  HI,X
60A3: 85 1B 84      STA  HIGH
60A5: BD 8C 61 85      LDA  LO,X
60A8: 85 1A 86      STA  LOW
60AA: AE 03 60 87      LDX  XCOUNT
60AD: B1 1A 88      LDA  (LOW),Y
60AF: 5D C5 60 89      EOR  SHAPE,X
60B2: 91 1A 90      STA  (LOW),Y      ;ERASE
60B4: EE 03 60 91      INC  XCOUNT
60B7: EE 05 60 92      INC  LINE
60BA: AD 05 60 93      LDA  LINE
60BD: CD 07 60 94      CMP  DEPTH
60C0: 90 D8 95      BLT  ERASE1
60C2: 4C 33 60 96      JMP  START
60C5: 00 08 3E 97  SHAPE  HEX  00083E5D1C1422 ;SHAPE TABLE
60C8: 5D 1C 14 22

```

HI
LO

588 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
PGM	=\$6009	CLR1	=\$601D	CLR	=\$6021	START	=\$6033
START1	=\$6036	INITIAL	=\$6052	DRAW	=\$6066	DRAW1	=\$606B
ERASE	=\$6092	ERASE1	=\$609A	SHAPE	=\$60C5	HI	=\$60CC
LO	=\$618C	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

We mentioned before that DRAW-DRAW routines have certain advantages and disadvantages. As there is no erase cycle as such, shapes animated by DRAW-DRAW move faster and with essentially no flicker. (It should be pointed out that "flicker" is a subjective term and depends to some extent on the image retention characteristics of the monitor or TV you're using—long retention times minimize flicker, whereas short times emphasize it, and retention times vary greatly among different brands of display screens.) On the other hand, DRAW-DRAW requires two routines, one to draw and one to erase the last shape (unless, of course, a shape is to stay on the screen). Also, collision detection is difficult with DRAW-DRAW routines (but only with horizontally moving shapes as we'll see in Chapter 7).

In addition, the speed advantage of DRAW-DRAW, at least in simple programs, is more theoretical than practical. If you compare Programs 4-1 and 4-3, you'll see that the shape traverses the screen at about the same speed in both cases. This is because the determining factor is the time delay, which is #540 in both programs. So while the speed of DRAW-DRAW is greater than DRAW-ERASE, the speed differential is much less than the time delay. The speed advantage of DRAW-DRAW becomes important only in programs with larger and more complicated shapes where drawing and erasing the shape takes up an appreciable amount of time. It should also be noted that a time delay in DRAW-DRAW

routines is not necessary to reduce flicker by ensuring that the shape is on the screen longer than it is off because the shape is not erased. However, delays are still generally required to slow a program down to a reasonable pace.

One further drawback of DRAW-DRAW is that it is inappropriate for drawing over backgrounds—this will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 14.

The decision whether to use DRAW-DRAW or DRAW-ERASE routines depends on the particular requirements of the program. If the shape is not involved in collision detection, if you're not drawing over a background, and if more speed and the absence of flicker are desirable, use DRAW-DRAW. If speed and flicker are not problems and collision detection (for shapes moving horizontally) is required, use DRAW-ERASE. The final game program uses DRAW-ERASE routines, mostly because it makes the program easier to write and read, requiring only one draw routine, and speed and flicker are not problems. This should not be construed in any way as relegating DRAW-DRAW routines to second-class status. They are quite useful for smooth and rapid animation and should be kept in mind for your own programs, and indeed for the game program itself; in fact the reader may find it a useful and instructive exercise to modify parts of the final program to DRAW-DRAW. With this in mind, I've included, in later chapters, some routines in both DRAW-ERASE and DRAW-DRAW modes. There will be more on program modifications in the last chapter.

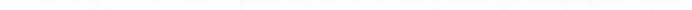
.....


• • • • •


.....


Actually, the example just shown is a special case (one dot at the leftmost position). Let's look at a more general example.


Actually, the example just shown is a special case (one dot at the leftmost position). Let's look at a more general example.


Next screen byte  03 00


Next plot  06 00

Next plot  0C 00

Next plot  18 00

Next plot  30 00

Next plot  60 00

Next plot  40 01

the one-dot shape in the first example.

To summarize, horizontal movement for one-bit moves requires:

1. Seven shape tables for each shape.
2. Shape tables with an extra screen byte in the direction of movement.

Obviously a higher level of complication has been introduced compared to vertical animation, but that's the way it is. There's no way to get around it unless we want to move a shape just one screen byte at a time. In some cases this may be satisfactory, but usually the large distances involved produce an unacceptably jumpy animation.

Let's now look at some actual shape tables we're going to use in our game program. The following diagrams illustrate the seven shape tables for a two-

Shape Number	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	Shape Tables
0																						02 00 00 06 00 00 7E 1F 00 7E 37 00 7E 7F 00
1																						04 00 00 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00 7C 6F 00 7C 7F 01
2																						08 00 00 18 00 00 78 7F 00 78 5F 01 78 7F 03
3																						10 00 00 30 00 00 70 7F 01 70 3F 03 70 7F 07
4																						20 00 00 60 00 00 60 7F 03 60 7F 06 60 7F 0F
5																						40 00 00 40 01 00 40 7F 07 40 7F 0D 40 7F 1F
6																						00 01 00 00 03 00 00 7F 0F 00 7F 1B 00 7F 3F

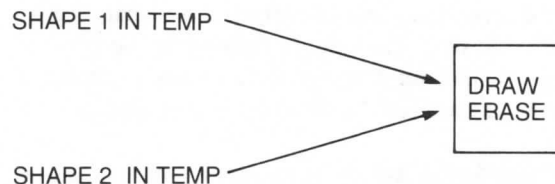
screen-byte-wide airplane that's going to move horizontally across the screen, left to right, one bit position at a time (the tables are labelled 0 to 6 instead of 1 to 7, because they will be referred to by these numbers in the program to facilitate routines that access them).

The trick to incorporating these shapes into a program is to direct each of the seven shapes to its proper location. The following program (5-1) illustrates one approach to this problem. The program moves the plane shape across the screen from left to right. When the shape reaches the right border, it disappears and then reappears at the left border for another screen journey ad infinitum. Thus, we're also going to discuss in this program tests for the vertical ends of screens. Pay attention to Program 5-1 because we're going to use its routines in our final game program.

TEMP AND SHAPE ADDRESS TABLES

A programming technique I generally strive for is to minimize the number of drawing routines as much as possible. This produces a more compact program, easier to write and understand. Program 5-1 has only a single draw routine for all seven preshifted shapes, and both draws and erases using the EOR instruction.

One way to use a single draw routine accessing seven different shape tables is to store the shape bytes temporarily in an area of memory we'll call TEMP (aren't we clever with our labels), and use TEMP instead of the shape tables in the draw routine. To draw any of the seven shapes, we load TEMP with the appropriate shape bytes and access the draw routine. Another advantage in using TEMP is that for the shape erase, TEMP doesn't have to be reloaded because it already contains the appropriate shape bytes, i.e.,



To load the shape bytes into TEMP, the program has to know where in memory the shape tables are located. To do this, we construct a shape address table and let's label it SHPADR (more clever labelling). This table will store the beginning memory locations of each of the seven shape tables. For example, in Program 5-1, the SHAPE1 table begins at location \$60F5, SHAPE2 at \$6104, SHAPE3 at \$6113, and so on. The SHPADR table will look like this:

SHPADR	F5	(SHAPE1)
	60	
	04	(SHAPE2)
	61	
	13	(SHAPE3)
	61	
	etc.	

Shape address tables contain 14 bytes, 2 for each address of the 7 shape tables (note that the shape table addresses are stored low byte first). Now we

can access each shape table by referring only to SHPADR—this allows us to use a single routine for loading all the shape tables into TEMP. SHPADR and SHPADR+1 will give us the address of SHAPE1, SHPADR+2 and SHPADR+3 will give us the address of SHAPE2, SHPADR+4 and SHPADR+5 will give us the address of SHAPE3, and so on. More specifics about this technique will be discussed below.

For now we have to discuss how the SHPADR table is constructed. This depends on the type of assembler you're using. Full-feature assemblers support instructions that allow the assembler to construct a shape address table directly from within the program. This is illustrated in Program 5-1. Look at the SHPADR table starting at line 22. The instruction DFB #<SHAPE1 loads the low byte of the SHAPE1 table; DFB #>SHAPE1 loads the high byte (the DOS Tool Kit assembler does this backwards—#> for the low byte and #< for the high byte—the ORCA/M assembler uses the instruction DC A 'shape table'—a good reason to read your assembler's instructions!). The entire SHPADR table is constructed by the assembler using these DFB instructions for all seven shape tables. If your assembler doesn't have this capability, you have a problem, but one that is not insurmountable, merely inconvenient. In this situation, the problem is you (and the assembler) don't know the shape table memory addresses until after the program is assembled, because assemblers simply start at the ORG and then fill up memory sequentially. The solution in this case is to assemble the program without a SHPADR table, write down the memory addresses of the shape tables, and use the edit feature of the assembler to add the SHPADR table at the end of the program. It doesn't make any difference where in the program the SHPADR table is located, as it is accessed by reference to its label and not to a specific memory address.

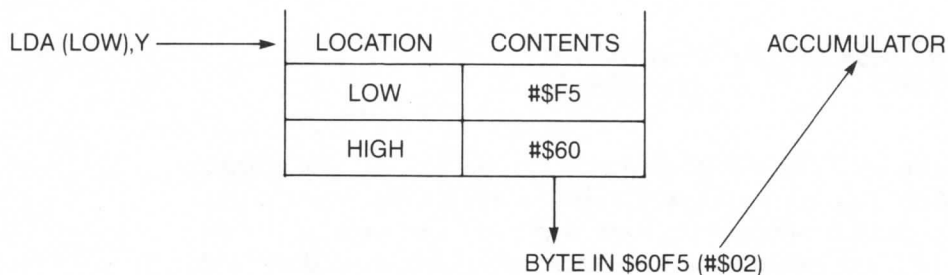
Now that we've constructed the SHPADR table, let's see how it's used to load TEMP with shape bytes. First we have to reserve an area of memory for TEMP. To do this we have to know the total number of bytes in each shape table. The plane shape is 2 screen bytes wide by 5 lines deep. Following the general rule discussed before, the shape table will cover 3 screen bytes. Thus, each shape table will contain 15 bytes (3×5). Space for TEMP then is reserved by the instruction TEMP DS 15 (line 12).

Before we load TEMP with shape bytes, we have to specify which of the seven shape tables we're going to use. Let's start the screen traversal at the left border with SHAPE1. In the MAIN PROGRAM section of Program 5-1, the shape number is loaded into a reserved memory location I've labeled SHPNO. For reasons that will soon become clear, SHAPE1 is selected by loading SHPNO with 0 (lines 57 and 58). The next line sends the program to the LOADSHP subroutine—it is here TEMP is loaded with the shape bytes. First, the Accumulator is loaded with the value in SHPNO (LDA SHPNO, line 83). At this point, the value is 0. The next instruction, ASL, is a mnemonic for Arithmetic Shift Left (if the contents of the Accumulator are to be shifted, some assemblers require an A as the operand—the BIG MAC does not). What this does is move each bit in the Accumulator one position to the left—the result is to multiply the number in the Accumulator by 2, i.e.,

128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1	Decimal
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	6
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	12
0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	24

The result of the ASL instruction is stored in the Accumulator. Because the Accumulator contained 0, the result is still 0. The next instruction (TAX—Transfer Accumulator to X-Register) does what it says—the number in the Accumulator is transferred to the X register. X now contains 0. Now the instruction LDA SHPADR,X loads the Accumulator with the byte found at address SHPADR + X; because X = 0, A is loaded with the value #\$F5, the byte at location SHPADR. This byte is stored in a zero page location, LOW or \$1A. The Accumulator is then loaded with the next byte in the SHPADR table, #\$60, by the instruction LDA SHPADR+1,X. This byte is stored in another zero page location, HIGH or \$1B. LOW and HIGH now contain the low byte and high byte respectively, of the address of SHAPE1 (\$60F5). This completes the process of selecting which shape table is to be loaded into TEMP. The next step is to load TEMP with the shape bytes.

The Y register is loaded with 0 (line 90). The next instruction on line 91 (LDA(LOW),Y) is one we've seen before—indirect indexing. It says load the Accumulator with the byte to be found at a memory address calculated as follows—get the low byte of the address from LOW, the high byte from HIGH, and add the contents of the Y register. The byte found at this address is then loaded into the Accumulator.



The Accumulator now contains the first byte of the SHAPE1 table. The next instruction, STA TEMP,Y stores this byte in the first position of TEMP. The Y register is then incremented by one (INY) and, if it is less than the number of bytes in the shape table (15 or #\$0F), CPY #\$0F (compare Y to #\$0F) and BLT (Branch if Less Than) LOADSHP1 sends the program back to LDA (LOW),Y (line 91) to load the second byte of SHAPE1 into the second position of TEMP, i.e.,

\$60F5 + 0; 1st byte in SHAPE1 loaded into 1st position of TEMP
 \$60F5 + 1; 2nd byte in SHAPE1 loaded into 2nd position of TEMP
 \$60F5 + 2; 3rd byte in SHAPE1 loaded into 3rd position of TEMP
 ...
 \$60F5 + 14; 15th (last) byte in SHAPE1 loaded into last position of TEMP
 \$60F5 + 15; stop and return to MAIN PROGRAM

The shape in TEMP is then drawn and erased with the EOR routine we've seen before, except TEMP instead of a shape table is accessed to obtain the shape bytes. We'll discuss the draw routine in more detail below.

Now we would like to draw the next shape, SHAPE2. To do this we increment SHPNO by one (line 64) so that SHPNO now contains the value 1. The

LOADSHP subroutine (line 83) multiplies this by 2 (result = 2), and the result is then placed in the X register (line 85). The instruction LDA SHPADR,X (line 86) now loads the Accumulator with the third byte of the SHPADR table (SHPADR + 2), which is the low byte of the address of SHAPE2 (\$04). This byte is stored in LOW. LDA SHPADR+1,X loads the Accumulator with the fourth byte of SHPADR, which is the high byte of the address of SHAPE2 (\$61). This byte is stored in HIGH. Thus, LOW and HIGH now contain the low and high bytes, respectively, of the address of SHAPE2. The subsequent instructions load the bytes from SHAPE2 into TEMP in preparation for drawing and erasing. In the same way, SHAPE3 is selected by loading SHPNO with 2, SHAPE4 by loading SHPNO with 3, and so on, i.e.,

SHPNO	ASL	X	LDA SHPADR,X	LDA SHPADR+1,X	SHAPE TABLE
0	0	0	SHPADR + 0	SHPADR + 1	1
1	2	2	SHPADR + 2	SHPADR + 3	2
2	4	4	SHPADR + 4	SHPADR + 5	3
3	6	6	SHPADR + 6	SHPADR + 7	4
4	8	8	SHPADR + 8	SHPADR + 9	5
5	10	10	SHPADR + 10	SHPADR + 11	6
6	12	12	SHPADR + 12	SHPADR + 13	7

ACCESSING SEQUENTIAL SHAPES AND TESTING FOR END OF SCREEN

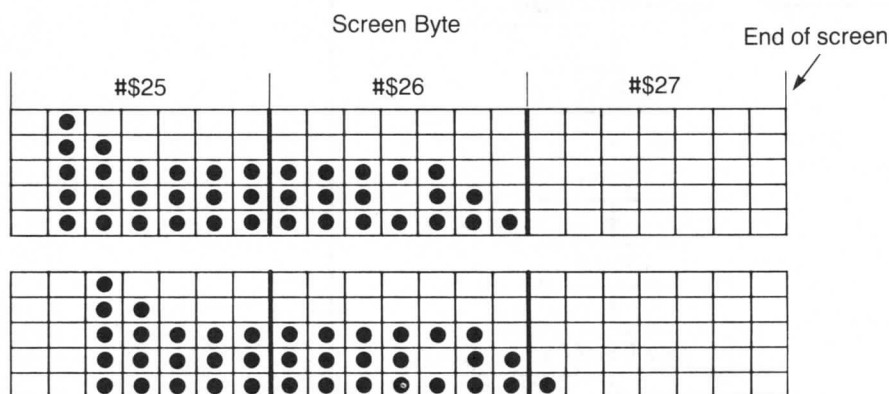
Let's look at the MAIN PROGRAM section of Program 5-1. The first instruction accesses the INITIAL subroutine, which sets the initial screen byte and line (0 in both cases) and also specifies the shape depth. Because we want to start with SHAPE1, SHPNO is loaded with 0. We then load TEMP, draw, delay, and erase. The erase is accomplished by the DRAW routine itself because we're using the EOR (DRAW-ERASE) technique discussed in previous chapters. Note that TEMP already contains the bytes of the shape we want to erase and so TEMP does not have to be reloaded with shape bytes for the erase routine.

We're now ready to draw and erase SHAPE2. To do this we first load SHPNO with 1 by INC SHPNO. The next instructions (LDA SHPNO, CMP #\$07, BLT START2) say if the value in SHPNO is less than 7, continue the program at START2; i.e., load TEMP, draw, delay, erase. SHPNO is incremented again for the next shape and so on until SHPNO contains the value 7. At this point, we've plotted the seven shapes (0 to 6 in SHPNO) in the first screen byte.

We now want to start over with SHAPE1 but at the next screen byte. Because SHPNO contains the value 7, the branch BLT START2 (line 67) is not taken and the program skips to the next line (INC BYTE), which increments BYTE by 1. The DRAW routine will now draw in the next screen byte. Before we draw, however, we have to test to see if the shape has reached the right end of the screen because we can't allow the shape to go beyond the screen boundaries. To do this, we load the Accumulator with the value in BYTE and compare it to the value #\$26 (decimal 38). If the value is less than #\$26, the branch in line 71 (BLT START1) is taken and the program continues with all seven shapes

drawn in the next screen byte starting with SHAPE1. This continues until the value in BYTE is #\$26, at which point the branch is not taken and the program skips to line 72 (JMP START), which starts the program from the beginning; i.e., the shape now begins its screen traversal in the first (leftmost) screen byte. Because we always follow a draw with an erase, the last shape at the right border is not left on the screen when the shape begins its new journey on the left.

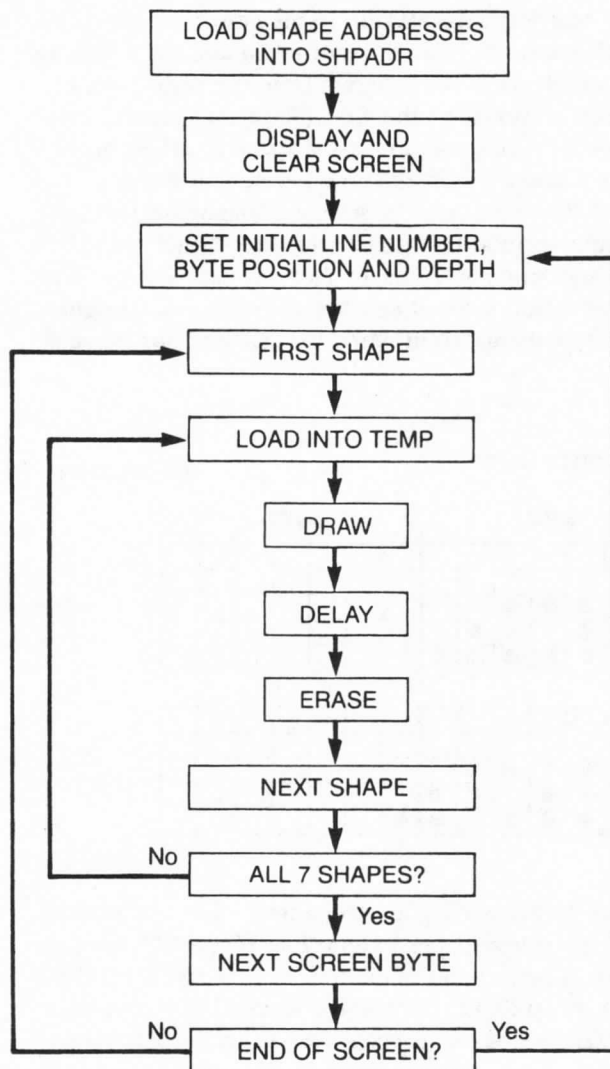
The reason for choosing #\$26 for the end of screen comparison warrants some discussion, because it might seem at first glance that we should use #\$27 (decimal 39) for the comparison since #\$27 is in fact the last screen byte (remember screen bytes are numbered 0 to 39 or #\$00 to #\$27, left to right). The reason for choosing #\$26 becomes apparent when we examine our shape as it approaches the right border.



Here we see the first two shapes drawn starting at screen byte #\$25. It's obvious that once we get past SHAPE1, the other shapes extend into byte #\$27, the last screen byte, as the shape table is 3 bytes wide. If we start at byte #\$26, SHAPE2 to SHAPE7 will extend beyond byte #\$27, i.e., beyond the screen border. So once the value for BYTE reaches #\$26, we want to start over from the left screen position.

This discussion emphasizes the importance of examining a program in great detail before choosing numbers or instructions that seem right. The best way to debug a program is to get it right from the start, admittedly an ideal seldom realized. But if you make prior examination of details a habit, you will save yourself many headaches later on.

Finally, the DRAW routine in Program 5-1 is essentially the same as ones we've seen in previous chapters. It is a DRAW-ERASE type of routine, using EOR both to draw and erase the shape. However, instead of accessing a shape table, TEMP is accessed to obtain the shape bytes. Also, at the end of the routine, LINE is reset to its starting value (from LINEA) in preparation for the next cycle. (Remember that LINE, but not LINEA, is changed in the DRAW routine and so must be reset for the erase cycle because we want to start drawing each shape on the same line—otherwise, it wouldn't be horizontal movement.)



]PROGRAM 5-1
 :ASM

```

1  *1 SHAPE HORIZONTAL*
2  *2 BYTES WIDE, 5 LINES DEEP
3
4      ORG  $6000
5      JMP  PGM
6000: 4C 27 60
5  LINE   DS  1
6  LINEA  DS  1
7  BYTE   DS  1
8  DEPTH  DS  1
9  XCOUNT DS  1
10 SHPNO  DS  1
11 DELAY  DS  1
12 TEMP   DS  15
13 GRAPHICS = $C050
14 MIXOFF  = $C052
15 HIRES   = $C057
16 PAGE1   = $C054
17 HIGH    = $1B
18 LOW     = $1A
  
```

```

19 WAIT = $FCA8
20 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
21 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6019: F7 22 SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
601A: 60 23 DFB #>SHAPE1
601B: 06 24 DFB #<SHAPE2
601C: 61 25 DFB #>SHAPE2
601D: 15 26 DFB #<SHAPE3
601E: 61 27 DFB #>SHAPE3
601F: 24 28 DFB #<SHAPE4
6020: 61 29 DFB #>SHAPE4
6021: 33 30 DFB #<SHAPE5
6022: 61 31 DFB #>SHAPE5
6023: 42 32 DFB #<SHAPE6
6024: 61 33 DFB #>SHAPE6
6025: 51 34 DFB #<SHAPE7
6026: 61 35 DFB #>SHAPE7
6027: AD 50 CO 36 PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
602A: AD 52 CO 37 LDA MIXOFF
602D: AD 57 CO 38 LDA HIRES
6030: AD 54 CO 39 LDA PAGE1
6033: A9 00 40 LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6035: 85 1A 41 STA LOW
6037: A9 20 42 LDA #$20
6039: 85 1B 43 STA HIGH
603B: A0 00 44 CLR1 LDY #$00
603D: A9 00 45 LDA #$00
603F: 91 1A 46 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6041: C8 47 INY
6042: D0 FB 48 BNE CLR
6044: E6 1B 49 INC HIGH
6046: A5 1B 50 LDA HIGH
6048: C9 40 51 CMP #$40
604A: 90 EF 52 BLT CLR1
604C: A9 60 53 LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
604E: 8D 09 60 54 STA DELAY
55 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6051: 20 7F 60 56 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
6054: A9 00 57 START1 LDA #$00 ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER
6056: 8D 08 60 58 STA SHPNO
6059: 20 91 60 59 START2 JSR LOADSHP ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
605C: 20 AD 60 60 JSR DRAW ;DRAW
605F: AD 09 60 61 LDA DELAY ;DELAY
6062: 20 A8 FC 62 JSR WAIT
6065: 20 AD 60 63 JSR DRAW ;ERASE
6068: EE 08 60 64 INC SHPNO ;NEXT SHAPE NUMBER
606B: AD 08 60 65 LDA SHPNO
606E: C9 07 66 CMP #$07 ;FINISHED ALL 7 SHAPES?
6070: 90 E7 67 BLT START2 ;IF NO, CONTINUE WITH NEXT SHAPE
6072: EE 05 60 68 INC BYTE ;IF YES, NEXT BYTE
6075: AD 05 60 69 LDA BYTE
6078: C9 26 70 CMP #$26 ;END OF SCREEN?
607A: 90 D8 71 BLT START1 ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
607C: 4C 51 60 72 JMP START ;IF YES, START OVER
73 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
607F: A9 00 74 INITIAL LDA #$00
6081: 8D 05 60 75 STA BYTE
6084: 8D 03 60 76 STA LINE
6087: 8D 04 60 77 STA LINEA
608A: 18 78 CLC
608B: 69 05 79 ADC #$05 ;DEPTH OF SHAPE

```

```

608D: 8D 06 60 80          STA DEPTH
6090: 60          81          RTS
6091: AD 08 60 83          *****
LOADSHP LDA SHPNO          ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
6094: 0A          84          ASL
6095: AA          85          TAX
6096: BD 19 60 86          LDA SHPADR,X
6099: 85 1A          87          STA LOW
609B: BD 1A 60 88          LDA SHPADR+1,X
609E: 85 1B          89          STA HIGH
60A0: A0 00          90          LDY #$00
60A2: B1 1A          91          LOADSHP1 LDA (LOW),Y
60A4: 99 0A 60 92          STA TEMP,Y
60A7: C8          93          INY
60A8: C0 0F          94          CPY #$0F
60AA: 90 F6          95          BLT LOADSHP1
60AC: 60          96          RTS
60AD: A9 00          97          *****
60AF: 8D 07 60 99          DRAW LDA #$00
60B2: AC 05 60 100         DRAW1 LDY XCOUNT
60B5: AE 03 60 101         LDX BYTE
60B8: BD 60 61 102         LDA HI,X
60BB: 85 1B          103         STA HIGH
60BD: BD 20 62 104         LDA LO,X
60C0: 85 1A          105         STA LOW
60C2: AE 07 60 106         LDX XCOUNT
60C5: B1 1A          107         LDA (LOW),Y
60C7: 5D 0A 60 108         EOR TEMP,X
60CA: 91 1A          109         STA (LOW),Y
60CC: C8          110         INY
60CD: B1 1A          111         LDA (LOW),Y
60CF: 5D 0B 60 112         EOR TEMP+1,X
60D2: 91 1A          113         STA (LOW),Y
60D4: C8          114         INY
60D5: B1 1A          115         LDA (LOW),Y
60D7: 5D 0C 60 116         EOR TEMP+2,X
60DA: 91 1A          117         STA (LOW),Y
60DC: EE 07 60 118         INC XCOUNT
60DF: EE 07 60 119         INC XCOUNT
60E2: EE 07 60 120         INC XCOUNT
60E5: EE 03 60 121         INC LINE
60E8: AD 03 60 122         LDA LINE
60EB: CD 06 60 123         CMP DEPTH
60EE: 90 C2          124         BLT DRAW1
60F0: AD 04 60 125         LDA LINEA
60F3: 8D 03 60 126         STA LINE          ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
60F6: 60          127         RTS
60F7: 02 00 00 128        SHAPE1 HEX 0200000600007E1F00 ;SHAPE TABLES
60FA: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
6100: 7E 37 00 129         HEX 7E37007E7F00
6103: 7E 7F 00
6106: 04 00 00 130        SHAPE2 HEX 0400000C00007C3F00
6109: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
610F: 7C 6F 00 131         HEX 7C6F007C7F01
6112: 7C 7F 01
6115: 08 00 00 132        SHAPE3 HEX 080000180000787F00
6118: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
611E: 78 5F 01 133         HEX 785F01787F03
6121: 78 7F 03
6124: 10 00 00 134        SHAPE4 HEX 100000300000707F01

```

```

6127: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
612D: 70 3F 03 135      HEX  703F03707F07
6130: 70 7F 07
6133: 20 00 00 136 SHAPE5  HEX  200000600000607F03
6136: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
613C: 60 7F 06 137      HEX  607F06607F0F
613F: 60 7F 0F
6142: 40 00 00 138 SHAPE6  HEX  400000400100407F07
6145: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
614B: 40 7F 0D 139      HEX  407F0D407F1F
614E: 40 7F 1F
6151: 00 01 00 140 SHAPE7  HEX  000100000300007F0F
6154: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F
615A: 00 7F 1B 141      HEX  007F1B007F3F
615D: 00 7F 3F

```

HI
LO

736 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

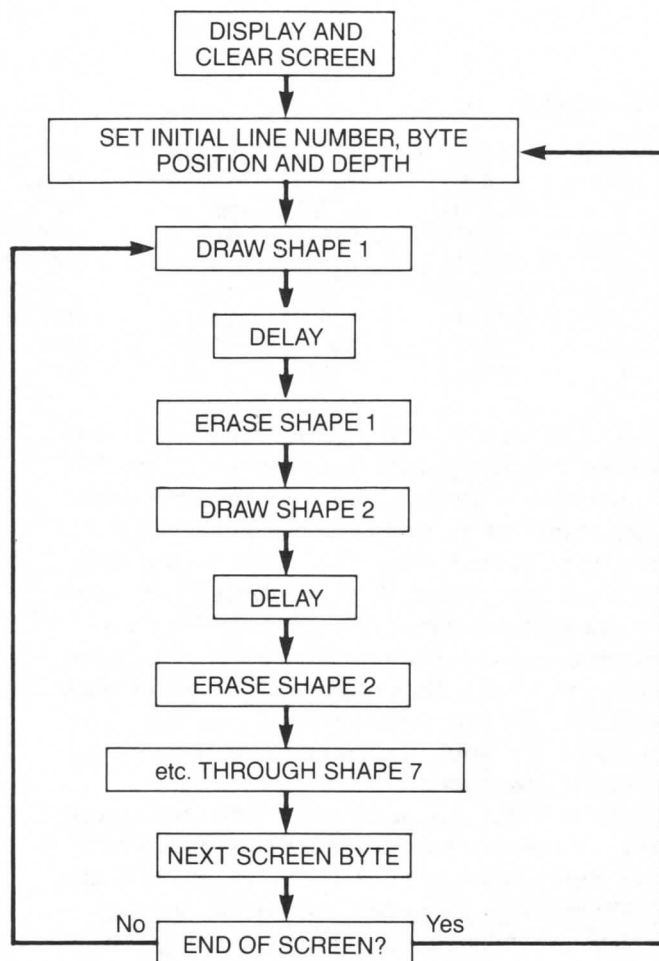
LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
DELAY	=\$6009	TEMP	=\$600A	SHPADR	=\$6019	PGM	=\$6027
CLR1	=\$603B	CLR	=\$603F	START	=\$6051	START1	=\$6054
START2	=\$6059	INITIAL	=\$607F	LOADSHP	=\$6091	LOADSHP1	=\$60A2
DRAW	=\$60AD	DRAW1	=\$60B2	SHAPE1	=\$60F7	SHAPE2	=\$6106
SHAPE3	=\$6115	SHAPE4	=\$6124	SHAPE5	=\$6133	SHAPE6	=\$6142
SHAPE7	=\$6151	HI	=\$6160	LO	=\$6220	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8

The more astute among you might wonder why TEMP is used at all, as multiple shape tables can be accessed directly by using a counter (i.e., a number stored in the X register) with the instruction LDA SHAPE,X if the shape tables begin with a single label, SHAPE. If each of the seven shapes contains 10 bytes, the first shape can be called by LDA SHAPE,X when X = 0, the second shape when X = 10, the third shape when X = 20, etc. By manipulating X, all seven shape tables can be addressed. The problem here is that the X register (as well as the Y register and the Accumulator) can contain only a single byte, which has a maximum value of 255 decimal (\$FF hex). Thus, if the total number of bytes in all seven shape tables is large, we may have a problem if X cannot be large enough to access all the shape bytes. We would then have to use two or more counters and/or a more complicated draw routine.

Lest you think this an unusual situation, look at the shape tables in Program 5-4. Each shape contains 39 bytes; the seven shapes together contain 273 bytes, and this for shapes that are not particularly large. The use of TEMP solves this problem to a large extent. TEMP also uses a counter (see line 94 of Program 5-1), but only to load a single shape, so the limitation here is that a single shape must contain 256 bytes or less. I suppose it's conceivable that in a state of programming frenzy, you might want to draw and animate horizontally a shape that contains more than 256 bytes, although it would be so large, say 10 screen bytes wide by 30 lines deep, that it would hardly have room to move. This can be done (didn't I say at the beginning that versatility is one of the virtues of assembly language?), but not with the exact routines described here. I'll leave

this to you as a problem you should be able to solve after reading this book (hint: divide the shape into less than 256 byte sections, use multiple TEMPs, and modify the draw routine).

Using TEMP and a single draw routine makes for a neat and compact program but the price we pay is an increase in program execution time because TEMP has to be loaded for each draw. Ordinarily this is not a problem, and it certainly isn't for our game program, but if extra speed is required, we can do away with TEMP and use seven different draw routines, each accessing one of the seven shape tables. This would also eliminate the need for shape address tables and counting shape numbers, and the program flow would be relatively simple—we would just draw and erase each shape in turn, testing only for the end of the screen. The program size would increase, and dramatically so with large numbers of shapes, but the program would run faster. The next program (Program 5-2) illustrates the point—it's the same as Program 5-1 but without TEMP and shape address tables.



]PROGRAM 5-2
:ASM

```

1      *1 SHAPE HORIZONTAL* 7 DRAW ROUTINES
2      *2 BYTES WIDE, 5 LINES DEEP
3      ORG $6000
6000: 4C 09 60 4      JMP PGM
5      LINE DS 1
6      LINEA DS 1
7      BYTE DS 1
8      DEPTH DS 1
9      XCOUNT DS 1
10     DELAY DS 1
11     GRAPHICS = $C050
12     MIXOFF = $C052
13     HIRES = $C057
14     PAGE1 = $C054
15     HIGH = $1B
16     LOW = $1A
17     WAIT = $FCA8
6009: AD 50 C0 18     PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
600C: AD 52 C0 19     LDA MIXOFF
600F: AD 57 C0 20     LDA HIRES
6012: AD 54 C0 21     LDA PAGE1
6015: A9 00 22     LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6017: 85 1A 23     STA LOW
6019: A9 20 24     LDA #$20
601B: 85 1B 25     STA HIGH
601D: A0 00 26     CLR1 LDY #$00
601F: A9 00 27     LDA #$00
6021: 91 1A 28     CLR STA (LOW),Y
6023: C8 29     INY
6024: D0 FB 30     BNE CLR
6026: E6 1B 31     INC HIGH
6028: A5 1B 32     LDA HIGH
602A: C9 40 33     CMP #$40
602C: 90 EF 34     BLT CLR1
602E: A9 60 35     LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
6030: 8D 08 60 36     STA DELAY
37     ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6033: 20 97 60 38     START JSR INITIAL
6036: 20 BD 60 39     START1 JSR DRAW1 ;DRAW
6039: AD 08 60 40     LDA DELAY
603C: 20 A8 FC 41     JSR WAIT
603F: 20 BD 60 42     JSR DRAW1 ;ERASE
6042: 20 F7 60 43     JSR DRAW2 ;DRAW
6045: AD 08 60 44     LDA DELAY
6048: 20 A8 FC 45     JSR WAIT
604B: 20 F7 60 46     JSR DRAW2 ;ERASE
604E: 20 31 61 47     JSR DRAW3 ;DRAW
6051: AD 08 60 48     LDA DELAY
6054: 20 A8 FC 49     JSR WAIT
6057: 20 31 61 50     JSR DRAW3 ;ERASE
605A: 20 6B 61 51     JSR DRAW4 ;DRAW
605D: AD 08 60 52     LDA DELAY
6060: 20 A8 FC 53     JSR WAIT
6063: 20 6B 61 54     JSR DRAW4 ;ERASE
6066: 20 A5 61 55     JSR DRAW5 ;DRAW
6069: AD 08 60 56     LDA DELAY
606C: 20 A8 FC 57     JSR WAIT
606F: 20 A5 61 58     JSR DRAW5 ;ERASE
6072: 20 DF 61 59     JSR DRAW6 ;DRAW

```



```

6075: AD 08 60 60      LDA  DELAY
6078: 20 A8 FC 61      JSR  WAIT
607B: 20 DF 61 62      JSR  DRAW6      ;ERASE
607E: 20 19 62 63      JSR  DRAW7      ;DRAW
6081: AD 08 60 64      LDA  DELAY
6084: 20 A8 FC 65      JSR  WAIT
6087: 20 19 62 66      JSR  DRAW7      ;ERASE
608A: EE 05 60 67      INC  BYTE
608D: AD 05 60 68      LDA  BYTE
6090: C9 26 69      CMP  #$26
6092: 90 A2 70      BLT  START1
6094: 4C 33 60 71      JMP  START
72 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6097: A9 00 73      INITIAL LDA  #$00
6099: 8D 05 60 74      STA  BYTE
609C: 8D 03 60 75      STA  LINE
609F: 8D 04 60 76      STA  LINEA
60A2: 18 77      CLC
60A3: 69 05 78      ADC  #$05      ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
60A5: 8D 06 60 79      STA  DEPTH
60A8: 60 80      RTS
81 *****
60A9: AC 05 60 82      SETUP  LDY  BYTE
60AC: AE 03 60 83      LDX  LINE
60AF: BD BC 62 84      LDA  HI,X
60B2: 85 1B 85      STA  HIGH
60B4: BD 7C 63 86      LDA  LO,X
60B7: 85 1A 87      STA  LOW
60B9: AE 07 60 88      LDX  XCOUNT
60BC: 60 89      RTS
90 *****
60BD: A9 00 91      DRAW1  LDA  #$00
60BF: 8D 07 60 92      STA  XCOUNT
60C2: 20 A9 60 93      DRAW1A JSR  SETUP
60C5: B1 1A 94      LDA  (LOW),Y
60C7: 5D 53 62 95      EOR  SHAPE1,X
60CA: 91 1A 96      STA  (LOW),Y
60CC: C8 97      INY
60CD: B1 1A 98      LDA  (LOW),Y
60CF: 5D 54 62 99      EOR  SHAPE1+1,X
60D2: 91 1A 100      STA  (LOW),Y
60D4: C8 101      INY
60D5: B1 1A 102      LDA  (LOW),Y
60D7: 5D 55 62 103      EOR  SHAPE1+2,X
60DA: 91 1A 104      STA  (LOW),Y
60DC: EE 07 60 105      INC  XCOUNT
60DF: EE 07 60 106      INC  XCOUNT
60E2: EE 07 60 107      INC  XCOUNT
60E5: EE 03 60 108      INC  LINE
60E8: AD 03 60 109      LDA  LINE
60EB: CD 06 60 110      CMP  DEPTH
60EE: 90 D2 111      BLT  DRAW1A
60F0: AD 04 60 112      LDA  LINEA
60F3: 8D 03 60 113      STA  LINE
60F6: 60 114      RTS
60F7: A9 00 115      DRAW2  LDA  #$00
60F9: 8D 07 60 116      STA  XCOUNT
60FC: 20 A9 60 117      DRAW2A JSR  SETUP
60FF: B1 1A 118      LDA  (LOW),Y
6101: 5D 62 62 119      EOR  SHAPE2,X
6104: 91 1A 120      STA  (LOW),Y

```

6106:	C8	121	INY
6107:	B1 1A	122	LDA (LOW),Y
6109:	5D 63 62	123	EOR SHAPE2+1,X
610C:	91 1A	124	STA (LOW),Y
610E:	C8	125	INY
610F:	B1 1A	126	LDA (LOW),Y
6111:	5D 64 62	127	EOR SHAPE2+2,X
6114:	91 1A	128	STA (LOW),Y
6116:	EE 07 60	129	INC XCOUNT
6119:	EE 07 60	130	INC XCOUNT
611C:	EE 07 60	131	INC XCOUNT
611F:	EE 03 60	132	INC LINE
6122:	AD 03 60	133	LDA LINE
6125:	CD 06 60	134	CMP DEPTH
6128:	90 D2	135	BLT DRAW2A
612A:	AD 04 60	136	LDA LINEA
612D:	8D 03 60	137	STA LINE
6130:	60	138	RTS
6131:	A9 00	139	DRAW3 LDA #\$00
6133:	8D 07 60	140	STA XCOUNT
6136:	20 A9 60	141	DRAW3A JSR SETUP
6139:	B1 1A	142	LDA (LOW),Y
613B:	5D 71 62	143	EOR SHAPE3,X
613E:	91 1A	144	STA (LOW),Y
6140:	C8	145	INY
6141:	B1 1A	146	LDA (LOW),Y
6143:	5D 72 62	147	EOR SHAPE3+1,X
6146:	91 1A	148	STA (LOW),Y
6148:	C8	149	INY
6149:	B1 1A	150	LDA (LOW),Y
614B:	5D 73 62	151	EOR SHAPE3+2,X
614E:	91 1A	152	STA (LOW),Y
6150:	EE 07 60	153	INC XCOUNT
6153:	EE 07 60	154	INC XCOUNT
6156:	EE 07 60	155	INC XCOUNT
6159:	EE 03 60	156	INC LINE
615C:	AD 03 60	157	LDA LINE
615F:	CD 06 60	158	CMP DEPTH
6162:	90 D2	159	BLT DRAW3A
6164:	AD 04 60	160	LDA LINEA
6167:	8D 03 60	161	STA LINE
616A:	60	162	RTS
616B:	A9 00	163	DRAW4 LDA #\$00
616D:	8D 07 60	164	STA XCOUNT
6170:	20 A9 60	165	DRAW4A JSR SETUP
6173:	B1 1A	166	LDA (LOW),Y
6175:	5D 80 62	167	EOR SHAPE4,X
6178:	91 1A	168	STA (LOW),Y
617A:	C8	169	INY
617B:	B1 1A	170	LDA (LOW),Y
617D:	5D 81 62	171	EOR SHAPE4+1,X
6180:	91 1A	172	STA (LOW),Y
6182:	C8	173	INY
6183:	B1 1A	174	LDA (LOW),Y
6185:	5D 82 62	175	EOR SHAPE4+2,X
6188:	91 1A	176	STA (LOW),Y
618A:	EE 07 60	177	INC XCOUNT
618D:	EE 07 60	178	INC XCOUNT
6190:	EE 07 60	179	INC XCOUNT
6193:	EE 03 60	180	INC LINE
6196:	AD 03 60	181	LDA LINE

6199:	CD 06 60	182		CMP	DEPTH
619C:	90 D2	183		BLT	DRAW4A
619E:	AD 04 60	184		LDA	LINEA
61A1:	8D 03 60	185		STA	LINE
61A4:	60	186		RTS	
61A5:	A9 00	187	DRAW5	LDA	#\$00
61A7:	8D 07 60	188		STA	XCOUNT
61AA:	20 A9 60	189	DRAW5A	JSR	SETUP
61AD:	B1 1A	190		LDA	(LOW),Y
61AF:	5D 8F 62	191		EOR	SHAPE5,X
61B2:	91 1A	192		STA	(LOW),Y
61B4:	C8	193		INY	
61B5:	B1 1A	194		LDA	(LOW),Y
61B7:	5D 90 62	195		EOR	SHAPE5+1,X
61BA:	91 1A	196		STA	(LOW),Y
61BC:	C8	197		INY	
61BD:	B1 1A	198		LDA	(LOW),Y
61BF:	5D 91 62	199		EOR	SHAPE5+2,X
61C2:	91 1A	200		STA	(LOW),Y
61C4:	EE 07 60	201		INC	XCOUNT
61C7:	EE 07 60	202		INC	XCOUNT
61CA:	EE 07 60	203		INC	XCOUNT
61CD:	EE 03 60	204		INC	LINE
61D0:	AD 03 60	205		LDA	LINE
61D3:	CD 06 60	206		CMP	DEPTH
61D6:	90 D2	207		BLT	DRAW5A
61D8:	AD 04 60	208		LDA	LINEA
61DB:	8D 03 60	209		STA	LINE
61DE:	60	210		RTS	
61DF:	A9 00	211	DRAW6	LDA	#\$00
61E1:	8D 07 60	212		STA	XCOUNT
61E4:	20 A9 60	213	DRAW6A	JSR	SETUP
61E7:	B1 1A	214		LDA	(LOW),Y
61E9:	5D 9E 62	215		EOR	SHAPE6,X
61EC:	91 1A	216		STA	(LOW),Y
61EE:	C8	217		INY	
61EF:	B1 1A	218		LDA	(LOW),Y
61F1:	5D 9F 62	219		EOR	SHAPE6+1,X
61F4:	91 1A	220		STA	(LOW),Y
61F6:	C8	221		INY	
61F7:	B1 1A	222		LDA	(LOW),Y
61F9:	5D A0 62	223		EOR	SHAPE6+2,X
61FC:	91 1A	224		STA	(LOW),Y
61FE:	EE 07 60	225		INC	XCOUNT
6201:	EE 07 60	226		INC	XCOUNT
6204:	EE 07 60	227		INC	XCOUNT
6207:	EE 03 60	228		INC	LINE
620A:	AD 03 60	229		LDA	LINE
620D:	CD 06 60	230		CMP	DEPTH
6210:	90 D2	231		BLT	DRAW6A
6212:	AD 04 60	232		LDA	LINEA
6215:	8D 03 60	233		STA	LINE
6218:	60	234		RTS	
6219:	A9 00	235	DRAW7	LDA	#\$00
621B:	8D 07 60	236		STA	XCOUNT
621E:	20 A9 60	237	DRAW7A	JSR	SETUP
6221:	B1 1A	238		LDA	(LOW),Y
6223:	5D AD 62	239		EOR	SHAPE7,X
6226:	91 1A	240		STA	(LOW),Y
6228:	C8	241		INY	
6229:	B1 1A	242		LDA	(LOW),Y

```

622B: 5D AE 62 243      EOR  SHAPE7+1,X
622E: 91 1A 244      STA  (LOW),Y
6230: C8 245      INY
6231: B1 1A 246      LDA  (LOW),Y
6233: 5D AF 62 247      EOR  SHAPE7+2,X
6236: 91 1A 248      STA  (LOW),Y
6238: EE 07 60 249      INC  XCOUNT
623B: EE 07 60 250      INC  XCOUNT
623E: EE 07 60 251      INC  XCOUNT
6241: EE 03 60 252      INC  LINE
6244: AD 03 60 253      LDA  LINE
6247: CD 06 60 254      CMP  DEPTH
624A: 90 D2 255      BLT  DRAW7A
624C: AD 04 60 256      LDA  LINEA
624F: 8D 03 60 257      STA  LINE
6252: 60 258      RTS
6253: 02 00 00 259  SHAPE1  HEX  02000006000007E1F00 ;SHAPE TABLES
6256: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
625C: 7E 37 00 260      HEX  7E37007E7F00
625F: 7E 7F 00
6262: 04 00 00 261  SHAPE2  HEX  0400000C000007C3F00
6265: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
626B: 7C 6F 00 262      HEX  7C6F007C7F01
626E: 7C 7F 01
6271: 08 00 00 263  SHAPE3  HEX  0800001800000787F00
6274: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
627A: 78 5F 01 264      HEX  785F01787F03
627D: 78 7F 03
6280: 10 00 00 265  SHAPE4  HEX  1000003000000707F01
6283: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
6289: 70 3F 03 266      HEX  703F03707F07
628C: 70 7F 07
628F: 20 00 00 267  SHAPE5  HEX  2000006000000607F03
6292: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
6298: 60 7F 06 268      HEX  607F06607F0F
629B: 60 7F 0F
629E: 40 00 00 269  SHAPE6  HEX  400000400100407F07
62A1: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
62A7: 40 7F 0D 270      HEX  407F0D407F1F
62AA: 40 7F 1F
62AD: 00 01 00 271  SHAPE7  HEX  0001000003000007F0F
62B0: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F
62B6: 00 7F 1B 272      HEX  007F1B007F3F
62B9: 00 7F 3F

```

HI
LO

1084 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

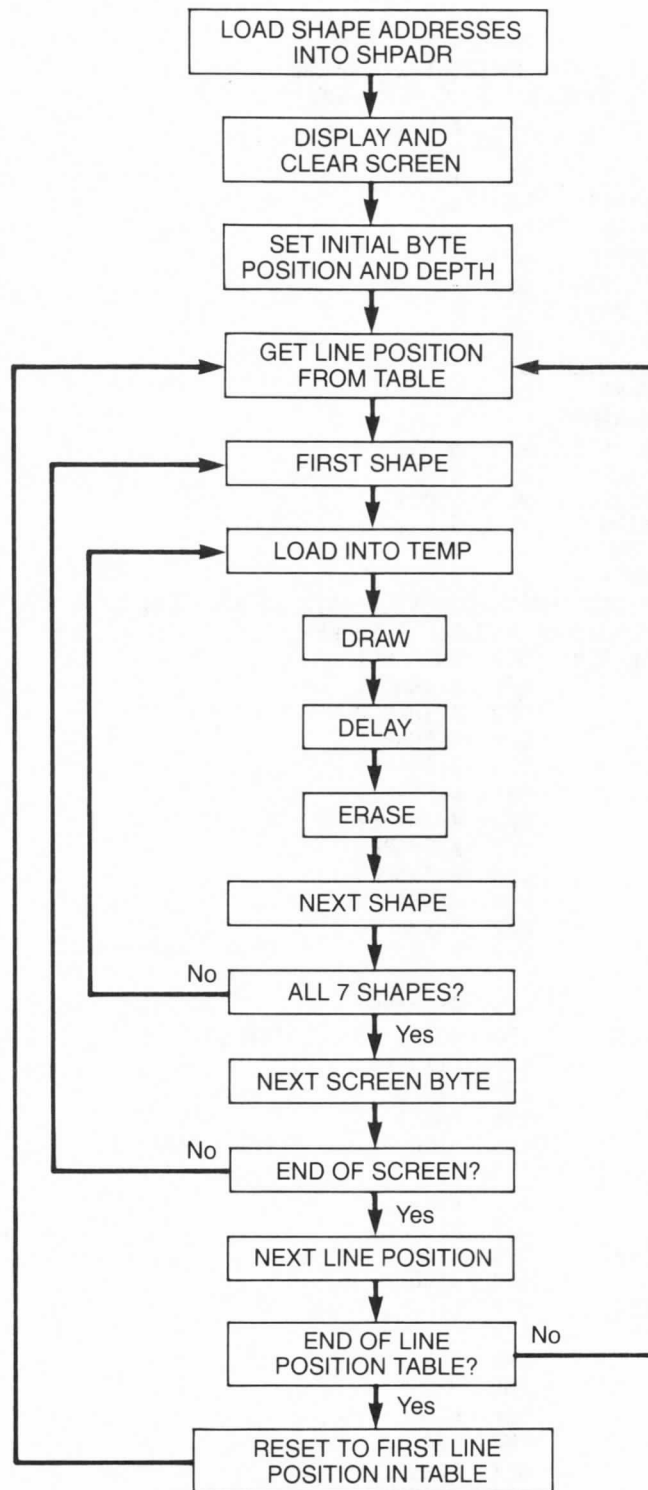
LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
PGM	=\$6009	CLR1	=\$601D	CLR	=\$6021	START	=\$6033
START1	=\$6036	INITIAL	=\$6097	SETUP	=\$60A9	DRAW1	=\$60BD
DRAW1A	=\$60C2	DRAW2	=\$60F7	DRAW2A	=\$60FC	DRAW3	=\$6131
DRAW3A	=\$6136	DRAW4	=\$616B	DRAW4A	=\$6170	DRAW5	=\$61A5
DRAW5A	=\$61AA	DRAW6	=\$61DF	DRAW6A	=\$61E4	DRAW7	=\$6219
DRAW7A	=\$621E	SHAPE1	=\$6253	SHAPE2	=\$6262	SHAPE3	=\$6271
SHAPE4	=\$6280	SHAPE5	=\$628F	SHAPE6	=\$629E	SHAPE7	=\$62AD
HI	=\$62BC	LO	=\$637C	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052
PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8		

As you can see, Program 5-2 is larger than Program 5-1. With more shapes, it would be larger still, but it does run faster, even though it doesn't seem to—the plane traverses the screen in about the same time for both programs but this is because the programs are simple, with only one shape, and so the determining factor is the time delay. The speed difference would be noticeable only with larger and more complicated programs.

SHAPES AT NEW LINE POSITIONS

Before going on to the next section, allow a minor digression—I want to illustrate how easy it is to modify our programs to make them more interesting. In the next program (5-3) we're going to modify Program 5-1 so that the airplanes begin their screen traversal at five different line positions instead of at the same line each time. This makes for a more visually appealing program.

The modifications are fairly simple. In the INITIAL subroutine, the starting line for each traversal is determined by accessing numbers in a table labelled NEWLINE that contains five bytes, one for each new line position. The bytes are selected by LDA NEWLINE,X (line 86) where X contains values 0 to 4. The values for X are loaded from a reserved memory location labeled COUNTER (LDX COUNTER, line 85). Initially, COUNTER is set to 0 (lines 79 and 80) and is incremented by one at the end of each screen traversal (line 75). When the values in COUNTER are from 0 to 4, the branch in line 78 is taken and the shape starts at a new line position. When the value in COUNTER reaches 5, we're at the end of the NEWLINE table and so we want to start over. At this point, the branch at line 78 is not taken and COUNTER is reset to 0 before we begin the next screen journey (lines 79 to 81). To program more or less line positions, place the desired values in NEWLINE and change the CMP value in line 77 to the number of bytes in the NEWLINE table.



]PROGRAM 5-3

:ASM

```

1  *1 SHAPE HORIZONTAL NEWLINE*
2  *2 BYTES WIDE, 5 LINES DEEP
3      ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 28 60 4  JMP  PGM
5  LINE  DS  1
6  LINEA DS  1
7  BYTE  DS  1
8  DEPTH DS  1
9  XCOUNT DS 1
10 SHPNO  DS 1
11 DELAY  DS 1
12 COUNTER DS 1
13 TEMP   DS 15
14 GRAPHICS = $C050
15 MIXOFF   = $C052
16 HIRES    = $C057
17 PAGE1    = $C054
18 HIGH     = $1B
19 LOW      = $1A
20 WAIT     = $FCA8
21 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
22 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
601A: 17 23 SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
601B: 61 24 DFB #>SHAPE1
601C: 26 25 DFB #<SHAPE2
601D: 61 26 DFB #>SHAPE2
601E: 35 27 DFB #<SHAPE3
601F: 61 28 DFB #>SHAPE3
6020: 44 29 DFB #<SHAPE4
6021: 61 30 DFB #>SHAPE4
6022: 53 31 DFB #<SHAPE5
6023: 61 32 DFB #>SHAPE5
6024: 62 33 DFB #<SHAPE6
6025: 61 34 DFB #>SHAPE6
6026: 71 35 DFB #<SHAPE7
6027: 61 36 DFB #>SHAPE7
6028: AD 50 C0 37 PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
602B: AD 52 C0 38 LDA MIXOFF
602E: AD 57 C0 39 LDA HIRES
6031: AD 54 C0 40 LDA PAGE1
6034: A9 00 41 LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6036: 85 1A 42 STA LOW
6038: A9 20 43 LDA #$20
603A: 85 1B 44 STA HIGH
603C: A0 00 45 CLR1 LDY #$00
603E: A9 00 46 LDA #$00
6040: 91 1A 47 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6042: C8 48 INY
6043: D0 FB 49 BNE CLR
6045: E6 1B 50 INC HIGH
6047: A5 1B 51 LDA HIGH
6049: C9 40 52 CMP #$40
604B: 90 EF 53 BLT CLR1
604D: A9 60 54 LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
604F: 8D 09 60 55 STA DELAY
6052: A9 00 56 LDA #$00 ;ZERO COUNTER
6054: 8D 0A 60 57 STA COUNTER
58 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6057: 20 94 60 59 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH

```

```

605A: A9 00      60  START1  LDA  #$00      ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER
605C: 8D 08 60   61          STA  SHPNO
605F: 20 AC 60   62  START2  JSR  LOADSHP  ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
6062: 20 C8 60   63          JSR  DRAW      ;DRAW
6065: AD 09 60   64          LDA  DELAY     ;DELAY
6068: 20 A8 FC   65          JSR  WAIT
606B: 20 C8 60   66          JSR  DRAW      ;ERASE
606E: EE 08 60   67          INC  SHPNO     ;NEXT SHAPE NUMBER
6071: AD 08 60   68          LDA  SHPNO
6074: C9 07      69          CMP  #$07      ;FINISHED ALL 7 SHAPES?
6076: 90 E7      70          BLT  START2    ;IF NO, CONTINUE WITH NEXT SHAPE
6078: EE 05 60   71          INC  BYTE     ;IF YES, NEXT BYTE
607B: AD 05 60   72          LDA  BYTE
607E: C9 26      73          CMP  #$26     ;END OF SCREEN?
6080: 90 D8      74          BLT  START1    ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
6082: EE 0A 60   75          INC  COUNTER  ;IF YES, INCREMENT COUNTER
6085: AD 0A 60   76          LDA  COUNTER
6088: C9 05      77          CMP  #$05     ;FINISHED 5 LINES?
608A: 90 05      78          BLT  CONT     ;IF NO, CONTINUE
608C: A9 00      79          LDA  #$00     ;IF YES, RESET COUNTER
608E: 8D 0A 60   80          STA  COUNTER  TO ZERO AND
6091: 4C 57 60   81  CONT     JMP  START  START OVER
82 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6094: A9 00      83  INITIAL  LDA  #$00
6096: 8D 05 60   84          STA  BYTE
6099: AE 0A 60   85          LDX  COUNTER
609C: BD 12 61   86          LDA  NEWLINE,X
609F: 8D 03 60   87          STA  LINE
60A2: 8D 04 60   88          STA  LINEA
60A5: 18        89          CLC
60A6: 69 05      90          ADC  #$05     ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
60A8: 8D 06 60   91          STA  DEPTH
60AB: 60        92          RTS
93 *****
60AC: AD 08 60   94  LOADSHP  LDA  SHPNO      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
60AF: 0A        95          ASL
60B0: AA        96          TAX
60B1: BD 1A 60   97          LDA  SHPADR,X
60B4: 85 1A      98          STA  LOW
60B6: BD 1B 60   99          LDA  SHPADR+1,X
60B9: 85 1B     100          STA  HIGH
60BB: A0 00     101          LDY  #$00
60BD: B1 1A     102  LOADSHP1 LDA  (LOW),Y
60BF: 99 0B 60  103          STA  TEMP,Y
60C2: C8        104          INY
60C3: C0 0F     105          CPY  #$0F
60C5: 90 F6     106          BLT  LOADSHP1
60C7: 60        107          RTS
108 *****
60C8: A9 00     109  DRAW     LDA  #$00
60CA: 8D 07 60  110          STA  XCOUNT
60CD: AC 05 60  111  DRAW1   LDY  BYTE
60D0: AE 03 60  112          LDX  LINE
60D3: BD 80 61  113          LDA  HI,X
60D6: 85 1B     114          STA  HIGH
60D8: BD 40 62  115          LDA  LO,X
60DB: 85 1A     116          STA  LOW
60DD: AE 07 60  117          LDX  XCOUNT
60E0: B1 1A     118          LDA  (LOW),Y
60E2: 5D 0B 60  119          EOR  TEMP,X
60E5: 91 1A     120          STA  (LOW),Y

```



```

60E7: C8          121      INY
60E8: B1 1A        122      LDA (LOW),Y
60EA: 5D 0C 60     123      EOR TEMP+1,X
60ED: 91 1A        124      STA (LOW),Y
60EF: C8          125      INY
60F0: B1 1A        126      LDA (LOW),Y
60F2: 5D 0D 60     127      EOR TEMP+2,X
60F5: 91 1A        128      STA (LOW),Y
60F7: EE 07 60     129      INC XCOUNT
60FA: EE 07 60     130      INC XCOUNT
60FD: EE 07 60     131      INC XCOUNT
6100: EE 03 60     132      INC LINE
6103: AD 03 60     133      LDA LINE
6106: CD 06 60     134      CMP DEPTH
6109: 90 C2        135      BLT DRAW1
610B: AD 04 60     136      LDA LINEA
610E: 8D 03 60     137      STA LINE ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
6111: 60          138      RTS
6112: 00 A0 14     139      NEWLINE HEX 00A0143060
6115: 30 60
6117: 02 00 00     140      SHAPE1 HEX 0200000600007E1F00 ;SHAPE TABLES
611A: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
6120: 7E 37 00     141      HEX 7E37007E7F00
6123: 7E 7F 00
6126: 04 00 00     142      SHAPE2 HEX 0400000C00007C3F00
6129: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
612F: 7C 6F 00     143      HEX 7C6F007C7F01
6132: 7C 7F 01
6135: 08 00 00     144      SHAPE3 HEX 080000180000787F00
6138: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
613E: 78 5F 01     145      HEX 785F01787F03
6141: 78 7F 03
6144: 10 00 00     146      SHAPE4 HEX 100000300000707F01
6147: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
614D: 70 3F 03     147      HEX 703F03707F07
6150: 70 7F 07
6153: 20 00 00     148      SHAPE5 HEX 200000600000607F03
6156: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
615C: 60 7F 06     149      HEX 607F06607F0F
615F: 60 7F 0F
6162: 40 00 00     150      SHAPE6 HEX 400000400100407F07
6165: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
616B: 40 7F 0D     151      HEX 407F0D407F1F
616E: 40 7F 1F
6171: 00 01 00     152      SHAPE7 HEX 000100000300007F0F
6174: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F
617A: 00 7F 1B     153      HEX 007F1B007F3F
617D: 00 7F 3F

```

HI
LO

768 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
DELAY	=\$6009	COUNTER	=\$600A	TEMP	=\$600B	SHPADR	=\$601A
PGM	=\$6028	CLR1	=\$603C	CLR	=\$6040	START	=\$6057
START1	=\$605A	START2	=\$605F	CONT	=\$6091	INITIAL	=\$6094
LOADSHP	=\$60AC	LOADSHP1	=\$60BD	DRAW	=\$60C8	DRAW1	=\$60CD
NEWLINE	=\$6112	SHAPE1	=\$6117	SHAPE2	=\$6126	SHAPE3	=\$6135
SHAPE4	=\$6144	SHAPE5	=\$6153	SHAPE6	=\$6162	SHAPE7	=\$6171
HI	=\$6180	LO	=\$6240	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052
PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8		

DRAW-DRAW

As a special added attraction, for your edification and programming pleasure, I hereby present Program 5-4, which is the same as Program 5-1, except it uses a DRAW-DRAW routine instead of DRAW-ERASE. Let's look at some of the differences between Program 5-1 and 5-4.

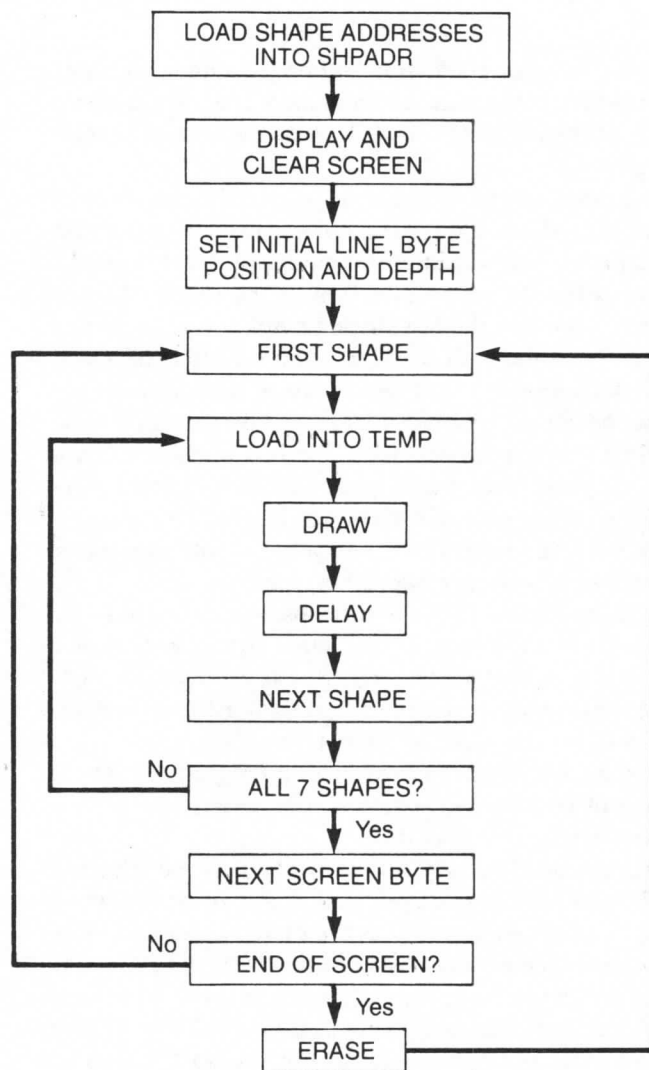
First, since there is no erase step, attention has to be paid to the shape tables to insure that no part of a shape is left on the screen. For vertical animation, we include a border of #\$00's equal to the maximum shape move. For horizontal animation, the situation is somewhat different. If we look at the shape tables at the beginning of this chapter, we see that the last shape (number 6) has no bits in the first byte. Thus when we continue with shape 0 in the second byte, shape 6 is completely erased. Fine. But suppose we drew the shape starting with the first column instead of the second. Shape 6 would then have bits in the first byte. If we then continue with shape 0 in the second byte, the bits in the first byte would remain on the screen. Solution? Draw the shapes so the first byte is empty at shape 6—otherwise, a trailing whole byte of #\$00's will have to be included. This not only would increase the size of the shape tables but would also mean that a shape could not start at a screen border but rather one byte over.

Next, the DRAW routine does not use EOR instructions, but rather plots by LDA shape byte, STA screen location. Note also that the shape bytes are retrieved from TEMP rather than from the shape tables directly, as in Program 5-1. Because we want to erase the shape when it reaches the right border in preparation for a new screen traversal, we do need a separate ERASE routine. This ERASE routine is essentially identical to the DRAW routine of Program 5-1; i.e., it erases using the EOR method of plotting because when accessed, the screen bytes already contain the shape bytes to be erased.

Finally, let's examine some details in the MAIN PROGRAM. First we initialize the shape position and depth, select the first shape, load TEMP, draw, and then delay. We do not erase as was done in Program 5-1, as the erase is necessary only when the shape has reached the screen border. We continue by testing to see if we've drawn all seven shapes and, if we have, we start again at the next screen byte; this continues until we've reached the end of the screen (BYTE = #\$26). At this point, before going to START to begin a new screen traversal, we go to the ERASE routine to erase the last shape. Note that the last shape is drawn starting in screen byte #\$25 but BYTE contains the value #\$26. So the first line in the ERASE routine is DEC BYTE, which puts #\$25 in BYTE in preparation for the erase. The last line of ERASE then sends the program to START for a new beginning.

If we run Programs 5-1 and 5-4, we see very little difference with perhaps somewhat smoother animation in 5-4 on close inspection. The price we pay for this is a somewhat longer program because of the extra erase routine. Again, the choice of DRAW-ERASE or DRAW-DRAW depends on the program's particular requirements. With a larger, more complicated shape, the smoothness inherent in DRAW-DRAW may become more apparent and, of course, if the program doesn't remove shapes from the screen, the extra erase routine would not be needed. On the other hand, Program 5-4 would not be appropriate if the shape were involved in collision detection or were to be drawn over a background.

Programs 5-2, 5-3, and 5-4 are not incorporated into the final game program because I would like you to use them as starting points to ease you into attempting your own modifications to the game once you've finished Part One. Suggestions for modifications and the problems to consider will be discussed in the last chapter.



]PROGRAM 5-4
:ASM

```

1      *1 SHAPE HORIZONTAL - DRAW-DRAW*
2      *2 BYTES WIDE, 5 LINES DEEP
3      ORG $6000
4      JMP PGM
5      LINE DS 1
6      LINEA DS 1
7      BYTE DS 1
8      DEPTH DS 1
9      XCOUNT DS 1
10     SHPNO DS 1
11     DELAY DS 1
12     TEMP DS 15
13     GRAPHICS = $C050
14     MIXOFF = $C052
15     HIRES = $C057
16     PAGE1 = $C054
17     HIGH = $1B
18     LOW = $1A
    
```

```

19 WAIT = $FCA8
20 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
21 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6019: 3D 22 SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
601A: 61 23 DFB #>SHAPE1
601B: 4C 24 DFB #<SHAPE2
601C: 61 25 DFB #>SHAPE2
601D: 5B 26 DFB #<SHAPE3
601E: 61 27 DFB #>SHAPE3
601F: 6A 28 DFB #<SHAPE4
6020: 61 29 DFB #>SHAPE4
6021: 79 30 DFB #<SHAPE5
6022: 61 31 DFB #>SHAPE5
6023: 88 32 DFB #<SHAPE6
6024: 61 33 DFB #>SHAPE6
6025: 97 34 DFB #<SHAPE7
6026: 61 35 DFB #>SHAPE7
6027: AD 50 CO 36 PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
602A: AD 52 CO 37 LDA MIXOFF
602D: AD 57 CO 38 LDA HIRES
6030: AD 54 CO 39 LDA PAGE1
6033: A9 00 40 LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6035: 85 1A 41 STA LOW
6037: A9 20 42 LDA #$20
6039: 85 1B 43 STA HIGH
603B: A0 00 44 CLR1 LDY #$00
603D: A9 00 45 LDA #$00
603F: 91 1A 46 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6041: C8 47 INY
6042: D0 FB 48 BNE CLR
6044: E6 1B 49 INC HIGH
6046: A5 1B 50 LDA HIGH
6048: C9 40 51 CMP #$40
604A: 90 EF 52 BLT CLR1
604C: A9 60 53 LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
604E: 8D 09 60 54 STA DELAY
55 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6051: 20 7C 60 56 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
6054: A9 00 57 START1 LDA #$00 ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER
6056: 8D 08 60 58 STA SHPNO
6059: 20 8E 60 59 START2 JSR LOADSHP ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
605C: 20 AA 60 60 JSR DRAW ;DRAW
605F: AD 09 60 61 LDA DELAY ;DELAY
6062: 20 A8 FC 62 JSR WAIT
6065: EE 08 60 63 INC SHPNO ;NEXT SHAPE NUMBER
6068: AD 08 60 64 LDA SHPNO
606B: C9 07 65 CMP #$07 ;FINISHED ALL 7 SHAPES?
606D: 90 EA 66 BLT START2 ;IF NO, CONTINUE WITH NEXT SHAPE
606F: EE 05 60 67 INC BYTE ;IF YES, NEXT BYTE
6072: AD 05 60 68 LDA BYTE
6075: C9 26 69 CMP #$26 ;END OF SCREEN?
6077: 90 DB 70 BLT START1 ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
6079: 4C EE 60 71 JMP ERASE ;IF YES, ERASE & START OVER
72 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
607C: A9 00 73 INITIAL LDA #$00
607E: 8D 05 60 74 STA BYTE
6081: 8D 03 60 75 STA LINE
6084: 8D 04 60 76 STA LINEA
6087: 18 77 CLC
6088: 69 05 78 ADC #$05 ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
608A: 8D 06 60 79 STA DEPTH

```

```

608D: 60      80      RTS
608E: AD 08 60 81 *****
6091: 0A      82 LOADSHP LDA SHPNO      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
6092: AA      83      ASL
6093: BD 19 60 84      TAX
6096: 85 1A      85      LDA SHPADR,X
6098: BD 1A 60 86      STA LOW
609B: 85 1B      87      LDA SHPADR+1,X
609D: A0 00      88      STA HIGH
609F: B1 1A      89      LDY #$00
60A1: 99 0A 60 90 LOADSHP1 LDA (LOW),Y
60A4: C8      91      STA TEMP,Y
60A5: C0 0F      92      INY
60A7: 90 F6      93      CPY #$0F
60A9: 60      94      BLT LOADSHP1
60AA: A9 00      95      RTS
60AC: 8D 07 60 96 *****
60AF: AC 05 60 97 DRAW      LDA #$00
60B2: AE 03 60 98      STA XCOUNT
60B5: BD A6 61 99 DRAW1     LDY BYTE
60B8: 85 1B      100      LDX LINE
60BA: BD 66 62 101      LDA HI,X
60BD: 85 1A      102      STA HIGH
60BF: AE 07 60 103      LDA LO,X
60C2: BD 0A 60 104      STA LOW
60C5: 91 1A      105      LDX XCOUNT
60C7: C8      106      LDA TEMP,X
60C8: BD 0B 60 107      STA (LOW),Y
60CB: 91 1A      108      INY
60CD: C8      109      LDA TEMP+1,X
60CE: BD 0C 60 110      STA (LOW),Y
60D1: 91 1A      111      INY
60D3: EE 07 60 112      LDA TEMP+2,X
60D6: EE 07 60 113      STA (LOW),Y
60D9: EE 07 60 114      INC XCOUNT
60DC: EE 03 60 115      INC XCOUNT
60DF: AD 03 60 116      INC XCOUNT
60E2: CD 06 60 117      INC LINE
60E5: 90 C8      118      LDA LINE
60E7: AD 04 60 119      CMP DEPTH
60EA: 8D 03 60 120      BLT DRAW1
60ED: 60      121      LDA LINEA
60EE: CE 05 60 122      STA LINE      ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
60F1: A9 00      123      RTS
60F3: 8D 07 60 124 *****
60F6: AC 05 60 125 ERASE     DEC BYTE
60F9: AE 03 60 126      LDA #$00
60FC: BD A6 61 127      STA XCOUNT
60FF: 85 1B      128 ERASE1     LDY BYTE
6101: BD 66 62 129      LDX LINE
6104: 85 1A      130      LDA HI,X
6106: AE 07 60 131      STA HIGH
6109: B1 1A      132      LDA LO,X
610B: 5D 0A 60 133      STA LOW
610E: 91 1A      134      LDX XCOUNT
6110: C8      135      LDA (LOW),Y
6111: B1 1A      136      EOR TEMP,X
6113: 5D 0B 60 137      STA (LOW),Y
        138      INY
        139      LDA (LOW),Y
        140      EOR TEMP+1,X

```

```

6116: 91 1A      141      STA (LOW),Y
6118: C8        142      INY
6119: B1 1A      143      LDA (LOW),Y
611B: 5D 0C 60   144      EOR TEMP+2,X
611E: 91 1A      145      STA (LOW),Y
6120: EE 07 60   146      INC XCOUNT
6123: EE 07 60   147      INC XCOUNT
6126: EE 07 60   148      INC XCOUNT
6129: EE 03 60   149      INC LINE
612C: AD 03 60   150      LDA LINE
612F: CD 06 60   151      CMP DEPTH
6132: 90 C2      152      BLT ERASE1
6134: AD 04 60   153      LDA LINEA
6137: 8D 03 60   154      STA LINE
613A: 4C 51 60   155      JMP START
613D: 02 00 00   156      SHAPE1  HEX 0200000600007E1F00 ;SHAPE TABLES
6140: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
6146: 7E 37 00   157      HEX 7E37007E7F00
6149: 7E 7F 00
614C: 04 00 00   158      SHAPE2  HEX 0400000C00007C3F00
614F: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
6155: 7C 6F 00   159      HEX 7C6F007C7F01
6158: 7C 7F 01
615B: 08 00 00   160      SHAPE3  HEX 080000180000787F00
615E: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
6164: 78 5F 01   161      HEX 785F01787F03
6167: 78 7F 03
616A: 10 00 00   162      SHAPE4  HEX 100000300000707F01
616D: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
6173: 70 3F 03   163      HEX 703F03707F07
6176: 70 7F 07
6179: 20 00 00   164      SHAPE5  HEX 200000600000607F03
617C: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
6182: 60 7F 06   165      HEX 607F06607F0F
6185: 60 7F 0F
6188: 40 00 00   166      SHAPE6  HEX 400000400100407F07
618B: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
6191: 40 7F 0D   167      HEX 407F0D407F1F
6194: 40 7F 1F
6197: 00 01 00   168      SHAPE7  HEX 000100000300007F0F
619A: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F
61A0: 00 7F 1B   169      HEX 007F1B007F3F
61A3: 00 7F 3F

```

HI
LO

806 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
DELAY	=\$6009	TEMP	=\$600A	SHPADR	=\$6019	PGM	=\$6027
CLR1	=\$603B	CLR	=\$603F	START	=\$6051	START1	=\$6054
START2	=\$6059	INITIAL	=\$607C	LOADSHP	=\$608E	LOADSHP1	=\$609F
DRAW	=\$60AA	DRAW1	=\$60AF	ERASE	=\$60EE	ERASE1	=\$60F6
SHAPE1	=\$613D	SHAPE2	=\$614C	SHAPE3	=\$615B	SHAPE4	=\$616A
SHAPE5	=\$6179	SHAPE6	=\$6188	SHAPE7	=\$6197	HI	=\$61A6
LO	=\$6266	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

INTERNAL ANIMATION

Internal animation refers to movement of parts of a shape as the shape itself moves (or doesn't move) around the screen. For example, if we're moving a person shape around, we might want to move his (her) arms and legs to simulate walking or running. This is exactly what we're going to do in the next program (5-5).

The trick to internal animation is simply to have different shape tables displaying various parts of the shape in different positions. This can be done with any type of general movement—vertical, horizontal, diagonal, or curved—or even if the shape is standing still, but it is applied most naturally to horizontal movement, because such movement requires different shape tables anyway. Program 5-5 is virtually identical to Program 5-1 except that the shape is now a person and the seven shape tables display arms and legs in different positions. When these shapes are displayed sequentially, the illusion of walking is produced. The only other change is that a line is drawn along the bottom of the screen (see lines 55 to 65) at screen line `#B7` (decimal 183) so that the person has something to walk on. You could omit the line and have the person walk on air (with a smile on his/her face?), but both the line and the shape tables are going to be incorporated into the final game program, so let's leave it the way it is. Here are the seven shapes for Program 5-5. (One minor note: one arm is shown pointing up and not moving—this is the arm that carries the gun with which the person is going to shoot at airplanes—who said game designs have to make sense?)

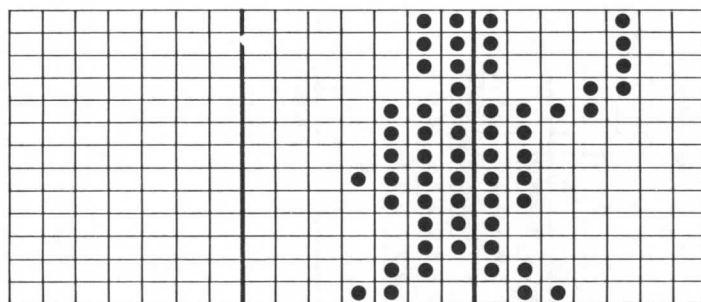
At first glance, it might seem that these shape tables violate the rule of having an extra shape byte in the direction of movement. However, if the shape extends only one bit into the last byte, this is okay because there is room for all seven shapes in the last byte and an extra shape byte is not needed (see shape 6). We could have drawn the shapes over to the left, thus presenting the more usual type of shape tables, but the reason for not doing so is that drawing shapes this way makes it easier to align the fired bullet with the upraised arm, as we'll see in the next chapter.

The principle of internal animation is simple, but the application often is not because greater demands are placed on the artistic talents of the programmer. Even the crude animation of Program 5-5 required much time drawing and re-drawing until I could stop the arms from flapping and keep the legs from placing themselves in anatomically impossible positions. Thank goodness for shape tables—they make this kind of tinkering much easier than if the shape bytes were dispersed throughout the draw routines.

You may envy, and with good reason, the type of internal animation found in some commercial game programs. I'm thinking specifically of Olympic Decathlon, which displays athletes running, jumping hurdles, throwing the javelin, and pole vaulting in exquisite silhouettes. These shapes almost surely were derived from photographs of athletes in action and transferred to the computer screen by talented artists, perhaps working with graphic utility programs on mainframe computers in Apple II simulation mode. But don't despair. I myself, devoid of the tiniest artistic talent, have successfully transferred complicated shapes from photographs by tracing the shape onto graph paper and filling in the dots. I even managed, at one time, to write a program displaying unicorns galloping across the screen, complete with heads bobbing and tails flapping. If I can do this, there is hope for anyone.

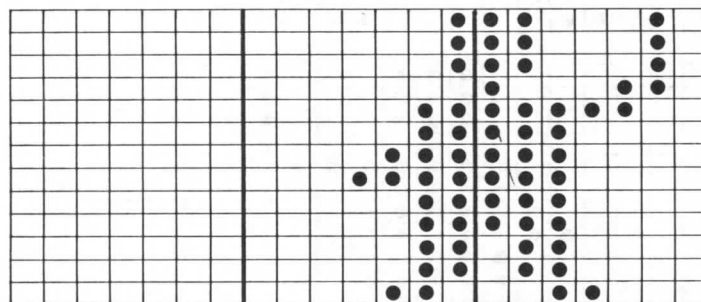
Shape Number	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	Shape Tables
0																						00 0E 01 00 0E 01 00 0E 01 00 44 01 00 7F 00 60 1F 00 30 1F 00 18 1F 00 00 1F 00 00 1F 00 00 1B 00 40 31 00 60 60 00
1																						00 1C 02 00 1C 02 00 1C 02 00 08 03 00 7E 01 00 3E 00 00 3F 00 40 3F 00 00 3E 00 00 3E 00 00 3E 00 00 36 00 00 36 00 00 63 00
2																						00 38 04 00 38 04 00 38 04 00 10 06 00 7C 03 00 7C 00 00 7C 00 00 7E 00 00 7C 00 00 38 00 00 38 00 00 6C 00 00 46 01
3																						00 70 08 00 70 08 00 70 08 00 20 0C 00 78 07 00 78 01 00 78 01 00 78 01 00 78 01 00 70 00 00 70 00 00 70 00 00 70 00

4



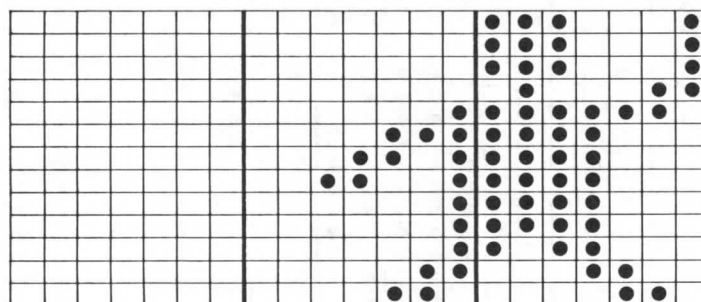
```
00 60 11
00 60 11
00 60 11
00 40 18
00 70 0F
00 70 03
00 70 03
00 78 03
00 70 03
00 60 01
00 60 01
00 30 03
00 18 06
```

5



```
00 40 23
00 40 23
00 40 23
00 00 31
00 60 1F
00 60 07
00 70 07
00 78 07
00 60 07
00 60 07
00 60 06
00 60 06
00 30 0C
```

6



```
00 00 47
00 00 47
00 00 47
00 00 62
00 40 3F
00 70 0F
00 58 0F
00 4C 0F
00 40 0F
00 40 0F
00 40 0D
00 60 18
00 30 30
```

84

]PROGRAM 5-5

:ASM

```

1  *1 SHAPE HORIZONTAL - INTERNAL ANIMATION
2  *2 BYTES WIDE,13 LINES DEEP
3      ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 3F 60 4  JMP  PGM
5  LINE  DS  1
6  LINEA DS  1
7  BYTE  DS  1
8  DEPTH DS  1
9  XCOUNT DS 1
10 SHPNO  DS 1
11 DELAY  DS 1
12 TEMP   DS 39
13 GRAPHICS = $C050
14 MIXOFF   = $C052
15 HIRES    = $C057
16 PAGE1    = $C054
17 HIGH     = $1B
18 LOW      = $1A
```

```

19 WAIT = $FCA8
20 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
21 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6031: 28 22 SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
6032: 61 23 DFB #>SHAPE1
6033: 4F 24 DFB #<SHAPE2
6034: 61 25 DFB #>SHAPE2
6035: 76 26 DFB #<SHAPE3
6036: 61 27 DFB #>SHAPE3
6037: 9D 28 DFB #<SHAPE4
6038: 61 29 DFB #>SHAPE4
6039: C4 30 DFB #<SHAPE5
603A: 61 31 DFB #>SHAPE5
603B: EB 32 DFB #<SHAPE6
603C: 61 33 DFB #>SHAPE6
603D: 12 34 DFB #<SHAPE7
603E: 62 35 DFB #>SHAPE7
603F: AD 50 C0 36 PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
6042: AD 52 C0 37 LDA MIXOFF
6045: AD 57 C0 38 LDA HIRES
6048: AD 54 C0 39 LDA PAGE1
604B: A9 00 40 LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
604D: 85 1A 41 STA LOW
604F: A9 20 42 LDA #$20
6051: 85 1B 43 STA HIGH
6053: A0 00 44 CLR1 LDY #$00
6055: A9 00 45 LDA #$00
6057: 91 1A 46 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6059: C8 47 INY
605A: D0 FB 48 BNE CLR
605C: E6 1B 49 INC HIGH
605E: A5 1B 50 LDA HIGH
6060: C9 40 51 CMP #$40
6062: 90 EF 52 BLT CLR1
6064: A9 60 53 LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
6066: 8D 09 60 54 STA DELAY
6069: A2 B7 55 LDX #$B7 ;DRAW LINE
606B: A0 00 56 LDY #$00
606D: BD 39 62 57 LDA HI,X
6070: 85 1B 58 STA HIGH
6072: BD F9 62 59 LDA LO,X
6075: 85 1A 60 STA LOW
6077: A9 7F 61 LDA #$7F
6079: 91 1A 62 LN STA (LOW),Y
607B: C8 63 INY
607C: C0 27 64 CPY #$27
607E: 90 F9 65 BLT LN
66 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6080: 20 AE 60 67 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
6083: A9 00 68 START1 LDA #$00 ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER
6085: 8D 08 60 69 STA SHPNO
6088: 20 C2 60 70 START2 JSR LOADSHP ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
608B: 20 DE 60 71 JSR DRAW ;DRAW
608E: AD 09 60 72 LDA DELAY ;DELAY
6091: 20 A8 FC 73 JSR WAIT
6094: 20 DE 60 74 JSR DRAW ;ERASE
6097: EE 08 60 75 INC SHPNO ;NEXT SHAPE NUMBER
609A: AD 08 60 76 LDA SHPNO
609D: C9 07 77 CMP #$07 ;FINISHED ALL 7 SHAPES?
609F: 90 E7 78 BLT START2 ;IF NO, CONTINUE WITH NEXT SHAPE
60A1: EE 05 60 79 INC BYTE ;IF YES, NEXT BYTE

```

```

60A4: AD 05 60 80      LDA  BYTE
60A7: C9 26 81         CMP  #$26      ;END OF SCREEN?
60A9: 90 D8 82         BLT  START1    ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
60AB: 4C 80 60 83      JMP  START      ;IF YES, START OVER
84 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
60AE: A9 00 85      INITIAL LDA  #$00
60B0: 8D 05 60 86      STA  BYTE
60B3: A9 AA 87         LDA  #$AA
60B5: 8D 03 60 88      STA  LINE
60B8: 8D 04 60 89      STA  LINEA
60BB: 18 90          CLC
60BC: 69 0D 91         ADC  #$0D      ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
60BE: 8D 06 60 92      STA  DEPTH
60C1: 60 93          RTS
94 *****
60C2: AD 08 60 95      LOADSHP LDA  SHPNO      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
60C5: 0A 96          ASL
60C6: AA 97          TAX
60C7: BD 31 60 98      LDA  SHPADR,X
60CA: 85 1A 99         STA  LOW
60CC: BD 32 60 100     LDA  SHPADR+1,X
60CF: 85 1B 101     STA  HIGH
60D1: A0 00 102     LDY  #$00
60D3: B1 1A 103     LOADSHP1 LDA  (LOW),Y
60D5: 99 0A 60 104     STA  TEMP,Y
60D8: C8 105         INY
60D9: C0 27 106     CPY  #$27
60DB: 90 F6 107     BLT  LOADSHP1
60DD: 60 108         RTS
109 *****
60DE: A9 00 110     DRAW  LDA  #$00
60E0: 8D 07 60 111     STA  XCOUNT
60E3: AC 05 60 112     DRAW1 LDY  BYTE
60E6: AE 03 60 113     LDX  LINE
60E9: BD 39 62 114     LDA  HI,X
60EC: 85 1B 115     STA  HIGH
60EE: BD F9 62 116     LDA  LO,X
60F1: 85 1A 117     STA  LOW
60F3: AE 07 60 118     LDX  XCOUNT
60F6: B1 1A 119     LDA  (LOW),Y
60F8: 5D 0A 60 120     EOR  TEMP,X
60FB: 91 1A 121     STA  (LOW),Y
60FD: C8 122         INY
60FE: B1 1A 123     LDA  (LOW),Y
6100: 5D 0B 60 124     EOR  TEMP+1,X
6103: 91 1A 125     STA  (LOW),Y
6105: C8 126         INY
6106: B1 1A 127     LDA  (LOW),Y
6108: 5D 0C 60 128     EOR  TEMP+2,X
610B: 91 1A 129     STA  (LOW),Y
610D: EE 07 60 130     INC  XCOUNT
6110: EE 07 60 131     INC  XCOUNT
6113: EE 07 60 132     INC  XCOUNT
6116: EE 03 60 133     INC  LINE
6119: AD 03 60 134     LDA  LINE
611C: CD 06 60 135     CMP  DEPTH
611F: 90 C2 136     BLT  DRAW1
6121: AD 04 60 137     LDA  LINEA
6124: 8D 03 60 138     STA  LINE      ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
6127: 60 139         RTS
6128: 00 0E 01 140     SHAPE1 HEX  000E01000E01000E01

```

612B: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01	
6131: 00 44 01 141	HEX 004401007F00601F00
6134: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00	
613A: 30 1F 00 142	HEX 301F00181F00001F00
613D: 18 1F 00 00 1F 00	
6143: 00 1F 00 143	HEX 001F00001B00403100
6146: 00 1B 00 40 31 00	
614C: 60 60 00 144	HEX 606000
614F: 00 1C 02 145 SHAPE2	HEX 001C02001C02001C02
6152: 00 1C 02 00 1C 02	
6158: 00 08 03 146	HEX 000803007E01003E00
615B: 00 7E 01 00 3E 00	
6161: 00 3F 00 147	HEX 003F00403F00003E00
6164: 40 3F 00 00 3E 00	
616A: 00 3E 00 148	HEX 003E00003600003600
616D: 00 36 00 00 36 00	
6173: 00 63 00 149	HEX 006300
6176: 00 38 04 150 SHAPE3	HEX 003804003804003804
6179: 00 38 04 00 38 04	
617F: 00 10 06 151	HEX 001006007C03007C00
6182: 00 7C 03 00 7C 00	
6188: 00 7C 00 152	HEX 007C00007E00007C00
618B: 00 7E 00 00 7C 00	
6191: 00 38 00 153	HEX 003800003800006C00
6194: 00 38 00 00 6C 00	
619A: 00 46 01 154	HEX 004601
619D: 00 70 08 155 SHAPE4	HEX 007008007008007008
61A0: 00 70 08 00 70 08	
61A6: 00 20 0C 156	HEX 00200C007807007801
61A9: 00 78 07 00 78 01	
61AF: 00 78 01 157	HEX 007801007801007801
61B2: 00 78 01 00 78 01	
61B8: 00 70 00 158	HEX 007000007000007000
61BB: 00 70 00 00 70 00	
61C1: 00 70 00 159	HEX 007000
61C4: 00 60 11 160 SHAPE5	HEX 006011006011006011
61C7: 00 60 11 00 60 11	
61CD: 00 40 18 161	HEX 00401800700F007003
61D0: 00 70 0F 00 70 03	
61D6: 00 70 03 162	HEX 007003007803007003
61D9: 00 78 03 00 70 03	
61DF: 00 60 01 163	HEX 006001006001003003
61E2: 00 60 01 00 30 03	
61E8: 00 18 06 164	HEX 001806
61EB: 00 40 23 165 SHAPE6	HEX 004023004023004023
61EE: 00 40 23 00 40 23	
61F4: 00 00 31 166	HEX 00003100601F006007
61F7: 00 60 1F 00 60 07	
61FD: 00 70 07 167	HEX 007007007807006007
6200: 00 78 07 00 60 07	
6206: 00 60 07 168	HEX 006007006006006006
6209: 00 60 06 00 60 06	
620F: 00 30 0C 169	HEX 00300C
6212: 00 00 47 170 SHAPE7	HEX 000047000047000047
6215: 00 00 47 00 00 47	
621B: 00 00 62 171	HEX 00006200403F00700F
621E: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F	
6224: 00 58 0F 172	HEX 00580F004C0F00400F
6227: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F	
622D: 00 40 0F 173	HEX 00400F00400D006018
6230: 00 40 0D 00 60 18	

6236: 00 30 30 174 HEX 003030

HI
LO

953 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
DELAY	=\$6009	TEMP	=\$600A	SHPADR	=\$6031	PGM	=\$603F
CLR1	=\$6053	CLR	=\$6057	LN	=\$6079	START	=\$6080
START1	=\$6083	START2	=\$6088	INITIAL	=\$60AE	LOADSHP	=\$60C2
LOADSHP1	=\$60D3	DRAW	=\$60DE	DRAW1	=\$60E3	SHAPE1	=\$6128
SHAPE2	=\$614F	SHAPE3	=\$6176	SHAPE4	=\$619D	SHAPE5	=\$61C4
SHAPE6	=\$61EB	SHAPE7	=\$6212	HI	=\$6239	LO	=\$62F9
GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

One final note before leaving this chapter. The line drawing routine in Program 5-5 (lines 55-65) works okay, but there is a faster way to do it. Consider the routine from the program:

```

        LDA #$7F
LN      STA (LOW),Y
        INY
        CPY #$27
        BLT LN

```

Now consider the following routine, which draws the same line:

```

        LDY #$27
        LDA #$7F
LN      STA (LOW),Y
        DEY
        BPL LN

```

BPL (Branch on Plus) executes a branch if the result of an operation is in the range of #\$00 to #\$7F. Thus, the branch is taken until Y is decremented to #\$FF. In both cases, a line is drawn from screen byte positions #\$00 to #\$27, but in the second case, the loop is shorter by one instruction because no comparison is done within the loop. This routine, however, while faster, is not as versatile as the first for two reasons: first, it works only if we wish a register to go to zero (or to #\$01 if we use BNE LN)—it cannot be used to draw the line from screen byte #\$27 to #\$05, for example, and second, the loop cannot be initialized with a value greater than #\$7F—this routine for example would not work in the LOADSHP subroutine if the shape were larger than #\$7F. Nevertheless, I mention it because it is an example of good programming technique and while I use the more versatile routine in the programs in this book, the second routine should be kept in mind for program optimization where applicable.

Congratulations! You have now learned the basic principles of hi-res drawing and animation. With this knowledge you now should be able to draw any shape and move it around the screen, even in complicated paths (by changing line positions and screen bytes at the same time instead of just one or the other). This knowledge in itself provides you with a powerful tool for a wide variety of applications. The remaining chapters in Part One will deal with aspects of game design and construction together with techniques of more general applicability such as animating multiple shapes discussed in Chapter 6. The chapters in Part Two discuss other aspects of hi-res animation applicable to both game programs and any other type of program where hi-res animation would be useful.

Paddle and Joystick Controls and Multiple Shapes

How's this for a bit of twaddle—

Try moving a duck shape with a paddle.

If your hand is unsteady

The duck will, are you ready?

Move with a quite pronounced waddle.

What would a game be without a joystick or paddles? A game without a joystick or paddles. Take my keyboard, please. Seriously folks, some games use the keyboard to control shape movement and initiate actions such as shooting bullets, but joystick or paddle controls are much easier to use and are more entertaining—that's why they exist and why most game programs utilize them. In this chapter we're going to see how to use these hand controls to control vertical and horizontal movement and how to use the "firing" buttons. We're also going to discuss the not insignificant problem of how to display two different moving shapes at the same time. Most of the routines in this chapter will be used in the final game program.

PADDLE AND JOYSTICK CONTROLS

Paddles have rotary knobs and come in sets of two, paddle 0 and paddle 1, each with its own "firing" button. A joystick combines both paddles into a single instrument—the two joystick buttons are equivalent to the paddle buttons. Thus, joysticks and paddles can be used interchangeably although finer control is afforded by paddles. By choosing the appropriate instructions, one can access either paddle 0 or paddle 1 (equivalent to joystick left-right or forward-back) or either button. When using a joystick, it doesn't make any difference which button is chosen but with paddles, one should choose the button appropriate to the paddle—using paddle 0 with button 1 or paddle 1 with button 0 would require a certain amount of dexterity certain not to be appreciated by the program's user.

"Reading" a paddle or joystick (i.e., determining the position of the knob or stick) fortunately is made easy by accessing a built-in Apple II subroutine located at memory address \$FB1E, which is labelled PREAD in our programs. The number of the hand control you want to access is placed in the X register and a

JSR PREAD then returns a number from 0 to 255 ($\$00$ to $\$FF$) in the Y register, the particular number depending on the hand control position. Thus:

LDX $\$00$ Read paddle 0 (stick left-right)

JSR PREAD Returns 0-255 in Y register

LDX $\$01$ Read paddle 1 (stick forward-back)

JSR PREAD Returns 0-255 in Y register

The number in Y can then be manipulated to select screen byte for horizontal movement or line for vertical movement (more about this soon).

To test whether a button is pressed or not requires only reading soft switches, $\$C061$ for button 0 and $\$C062$ for button 1. In conjunction with the opcode BMI (Branch on Minus), the branch is taken if the button is pressed and not taken if the button is not pressed. Thus:

```

        LDA  $\$C061$ 
        BMI CONT    If button 0 is pressed, branch to CONT
        RTS
CONT    JSR DRAW

        LDA  $\$C062$ 
        BMI CONT    If button 1 is pressed, branch to CONT
        RTS
CONT    JSR DRAW

```

That's all there is to it! Let's see now how we can adapt these routines to moving shapes around the screen (for convenience, from now on I will use the term paddle to refer to both paddle and joystick).

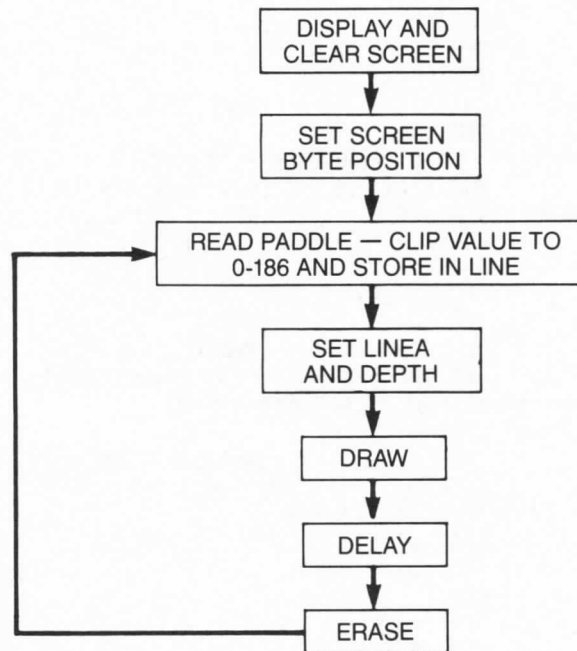
PADDLE CONTROL OF VERTICAL MOVEMENT

The next program (Program 6-1) is essentially identical to Program 4-2 (moving a spaceship vertically), except now we're going to control the spaceship's vertical movement by paddle 1. Let's examine Program 6-1 in some detail.

First, in the beginning of the program, we define $\$FB1E$ as PREAD. Then, in the MAIN PROGRAM, we go to the INITIAL subroutine to set the screen byte. We do not set the line position here because LINE will be determined by the paddle position and we do not set DEPTH here either, as DEPTH depends on LINE. The next instruction sends the program to the PDLE subroutine—it is here that we read paddle 1 and return a value of 0-255 in the Y register (LDX $\$01$, JSR PREAD), and we're going to use the value in Y to set the line position. However, as there are only 192 screen lines (0-191), we first have to clip the maximum value in Y to keep the shape on the screen. Because the shape is 6 lines deep and is drawn from the top line down, the maximum line position we want in LINE is 186 ($\$BA$)—the shape will then be drawn from lines 186 to 191. The instructions in lines 63 to 67 accomplish the clipping. We compare the value in Y to 187 ($\$BB$) and if it less than this, we store the value in Y in LINE. If it is equal to or greater than 187, we store the value 186 ($\$BA$) in Y and then store Y in LINE (LDA $\$BA$, TAY [Transfer A to Y], STY LINE). Thus, no matter

what the paddle position, LINE will not contain a value greater than 186 and this keeps the shape on the screen.

We then go back to the MAIN PROGRAM and jump to the DEP subroutine which stores LINE in LINEA and also sets DEPTH—remember that while the shape depth is a constant, the value in DEPTH depends on the value in LINE. Back in the MAIN PROGRAM, we draw the shape with JSR DRAW, delay, and erase with JSR DRAW (we're using the DRAW-ERASE protocol). The next instruction sends the program back to PADDLE for another paddle read and we continue in this loop, continually updating LINE from the paddle position.



]PROGRAM 6-1
:ASM

```

1  *ONE SHAPE VERTICAL CONTROLLED BY PADDLE*
2  *****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 6 BYTES DEEP
4  *****
5      ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 09 60 6  JMP  PGM
7      XCOUNT DS  1
8      BYTE    DS  1
9      LINE     DS  1
10     LINEA    DS  1
11     DEPTH    DS  1
12     DELAY    DS  1
13     GRAPHICS =  $C050
14     MIXOFF   =  $C052
15     HIRES    =  $C057
16     PAGE1    =  $C054
17     HIGH     =  $1B
18     LOW      =  $1A
19     WAIT     =  $FCA8
20     PREAD    =  $FB1E
6009: AD 50 C0 21  PGM  LDA  GRAPHICS  ;HIRES,P.1
600C: AD 52 C0 22  LDA  MIXOFF
  
```



```

600F: AD 57 C0 23      LDA HIRES
6012: AD 54 C0 24      LDA PAGE1
6015: A9 00 25        LDA #$00          ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6017: 85 1A 26        STA LOW
6019: A9 20 27        LDA #$20
601B: 85 1B 28        STA HIGH
601D: A0 00 29      CLR1  LDY #$00
601F: A9 00 30        LDA #$00
6021: 91 1A 31      CLR   STA (LOW),Y
6023: C8 32          INY
6024: D0 FB 33        BNE CLR
6026: E6 1B 34        INC HIGH
6028: A5 1B 35        LDA HIGH
602A: C9 40 36        CMP #$40
602C: 90 EF 37        BLT CLR1
602E: A9 40 38        LDA #$40          ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6030: 8D 08 60 39      STA DELAY
6033: 20 4B 60 41      ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6036: 20 5E 60 42      PADDLE JSR INITIAL      ;SET SCREEN BYTE
6039: 20 51 60 43      JSR PDLE        ;READ PADDLE 1
603C: 20 6E 60 44      JSR DEP          ;SET DEPTH
603F: AD 08 60 45      LDA DELAY        ;DRAW
6042: 20 A8 FC 46      JSR WAIT          ;DELAY
6045: 20 6E 60 47      JSR DRAW          ;ERASE
6048: 4C 36 60 48      JMP PADDLE        ;READ PADDLE AGAIN
604B: A9 10 50          ***** SUBROUTINES *****
604D: 8D 04 60 51      INITIAL LDA #$10
6050: 60 52          STA BYTE          ;SET STARTING BYTE
6051: AD 05 60 54      DEP   LDA LINE      ;SET DEPTH
6054: 8D 06 60 55      STA LINEA
6057: 18 56          CLC
6058: 69 06 57          ADC #$06
605A: 8D 07 60 58      STA DEPTH
605D: 60 59          RTS
605E: A2 01 61          *****
6060: 20 1E FB 62      PDLE   LDX #$01      ;READ PADDLE 1
6063: C0 BB 63          JSR PREAD      ;0-255 IN Y
6065: 90 03 64          CPY #$BB      ;CLIP TO 0-186
6067: A9 BA 65          BLT CONT
6069: A8 66          LDA #$BA
606A: 8C 05 60 67      CONT   STY LINE      ;0-186 IN LINE
606D: 60 68          TAY
606E: A9 00 70          *****
6070: 8D 03 60 71      DRAW   LDA #$00
6073: AC 04 60 72      STA XCOUNT      ;ZERO XCOUNT
6076: AE 05 60 73      DRAW1 LDY BYTE      ;LOAD BYTE
6079: BD A8 60 74      LDX LINE      ;LOAD LINE
607C: 85 1B 75          LDA HI,X      ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
607E: BD 68 61 76      STA HIGH
6081: 85 1A 77          LDA LO,X
6083: AE 03 60 78      STA LOW
6086: B1 1A 79          LDX XCOUNT      ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
6088: 5D A2 60 80      LDA (LOW),Y      ;GET BYTE FROM SCREEN
608B: 91 1A 81          EOR SHAPE,X      ;EOR BYTE FROM SHAPE ADDRESS+X
608D: EE 03 60 82      STA (LOW),Y      ;PLOT BYTE
6090: EE 05 60 83      INC XCOUNT
                                ;NEXT LINE
                                INC LINE

```

```

6093: AD 05 60 84      LDA LINE
6096: CD 07 60 85      CMP DEPTH      ;FINISH SHAPE?
6099: 90 D8 86         BLT DRAW1      ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
609B: AD 06 60 87      LDA LINEA     ;IF YES, RESET LINE AND
609E: 8D 05 60 88      STA LINE     DRAW NEXT CYCLE
60A1: 60 89           RTS
60A2: 08 1C 22 90     SHAPE  HEX 081C223E227F ;SHAPE TABLE
60A5: 3E 22 7F

```

HI
LO

552 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
PGM	=\$6009	CLR1	=\$601D	CLR	=\$6021	PADDLE	=\$6036
INITIAL	=\$604B	DEP	=\$6051	PDLE	=\$605E	CONT	=\$606A
DRAW	=\$606E	DRAW1	=\$6073	SHAPE	=\$60A2	HI	=\$60A8
LO	=\$6168	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8		

PADDLE CONTROL OF HORIZONTAL MOVEMENT

In contrast to paddle control of vertical movement where we specify a particular screen byte position and use a paddle read to select the line position, paddle control of horizontal movement involves specifying a particular line position and using the paddle read to select the screen byte position. However, as you might suspect, things are not always that simple with horizontal movement. Remember that in horizontal movement, each screen byte can contain one of seven shapes. Therefore, we not only have to specify the screen byte position by a paddle read, but also which shape is to be drawn. Specifying shapes was relatively easy in previous programs because we started with the first shape and then accessed the other shapes sequentially. With a paddle read, shape and screen byte selection is accomplished by the use of look-up tables. We'll see how this is done in the next program (Program 6-2), which is based on Program 5-5, the horizontal movement of a person shape with internal animation (Program 6-2 will be incorporated into the final game program).

In Program 6-2, we're going to use the same shape tables and the line for the person to walk on as Program 5-5 and we're going to control horizontal movement by paddle 0. In the MAIN PROGRAM, we first go to the INITIAL subroutine to set LINE and DEPTH. Then we jump to the PDLE subroutine, which reads paddle 0 and returns a value of 0-255 in the Y register.

We first want to convert the value in Y to a screen byte position. We do this by the instruction LDA BYTETBL,Y (line 85) where BYTETBL is a table consisting of 37 lines of 7 bytes each, 7 #\$00's, 7 #\$01's, 7 #\$02's, etc., up to 7 #\$24's. A screen byte from 0 to 36 is selected, depending on the value in Y; i.e.,

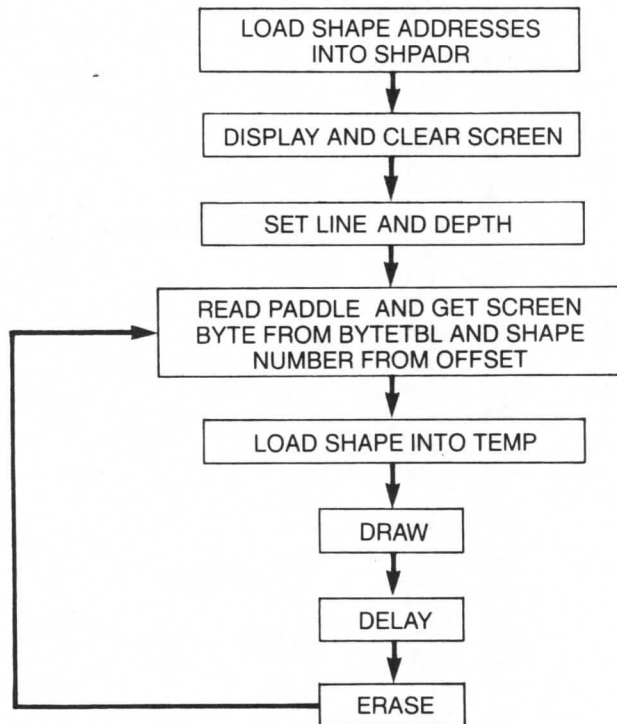
<i>Value in Y</i>	<i>Screen Byte</i>
0-6	0
7-13	1
14-20	2
21-27	3
.	.
.	.
245-251	35
252-255	36

The screen byte obtained is then stored in *HORIZ* (line 86), which will be used in the draw routine to denote the screen byte position. Note that we are accessing only 37 (0-36) screen bytes even though 40 (0-39) are available. This is because *Y* can contain a maximum value of 255 and, to access all 40 screen bytes, a value of 280 would be needed (40 X 7). We could make the *BYTETBL* shorter by storing, for example, 6 bytes per line for 40 lines, but there is a reason for having 7 bytes per line as we'll soon see (if you think this is related to 7 shapes per screen byte, you're right). There are ways to access the extra bytes at the end of the screen, but this would present an unnecessary complication as you would see by running the program—the inability of the shape to move into the last few bytes at the end of the screen is hardly noticeable. The shape can be centered by adding an offset to the byte position so that, for example, bytes 1-38 would be selected, but this is not necessary in our program.

Now that we have the screen byte, we want to specify which of the seven shapes to draw. This is accomplished by using another look-up table. The instruction in line 87 (*LDA OFFSET,Y*) accesses the table labelled *OFFSET* which, like *BYTETBL*, also contains 37 lines of 7 bytes each. But, here, each line contains the same bytes, #\$00 to #\$06. The value in *Y* selects a shape number, 0 to 6; i.e.:

<i>Value in Y</i>	<i>Screen Byte</i>	<i>Shape Number</i>
0	0	0
1	0	1
2	0	2
3	0	3
4	0	4
5	0	5
6	0	6
7	1	0
8	1	1
9	1	2
10	1	3
11	1	4
12	1	5
13	1	6
14	2	0
.	.	.
.	.	.
252	36	0
253	36	1
254	36	2
255	36	3

The instruction LDA OFFSET,Y loads the Accumulator with a shape number and the rest of the PDLE subroutine loads the shape into TEMP using the same instructions we've seen in Chapter 5. The program then draws the shape, delays, erases, and loops back to PADDLE to update the horizontal position continually. The DRAW routine is the same as in previous programs except that Y is loaded with the value in HORIZ instead of BYTE (BYTE is simply not used in this program).



]PROGRAM 6-2
:ASM

```

1  *PADDLE OR JOYSTICK CONTROL OF HORIZONTAL MOVEMENT
2  *2 BYTES WIDE, 13 LINES DEEP
3  ORG $6000
6000: 4C 3E 60 4  JMP PGM
5  LINE DS 1
6  LINEA DS 1
7  DEPTH DS 1
8  HORIZ DS 1
9  XCOUNT DS 1
10 DELAY DS 1
11 TEMP DS 39
12 GRAPHICS = $C050
13 MIXOFF = $C052
14 HIRES = $C057
15 PAGE1 = $C054
16 HIGH = $1B
17 LOW = $1A
18 WAIT = $FCA8
19 PREAD = $FB1E
20 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
21 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
  
```

```

6030: 14      22  SHPADR  DFB  #<SHAPE1
6031: 61      23      DFB  #>SHAPE1
6032: 3B      24      DFB  #<SHAPE2
6033: 61      25      DFB  #>SHAPE2
6034: 62      26      DFB  #<SHAPE3
6035: 61      27      DFB  #>SHAPE3
6036: 89      28      DFB  #<SHAPE4
6037: 61      29      DFB  #>SHAPE4
6038: B0      30      DFB  #<SHAPE5
6039: 61      31      DFB  #>SHAPE5
603A: D7      32      DFB  #<SHAPE6
603B: 61      33      DFB  #>SHAPE6
603C: FE      34      DFB  #<SHAPE7
603D: 61      35      DFB  #>SHAPE7
603E: AD 50 C0 36  PGM    LDA  GRAPHICS  ;HIRES,P.1
6041: AD 52 C0 37      LDA  MIXOFF
6044: AD 57 C0 38      LDA  HIRES
6047: AD 54 C0 39      LDA  PAGE1
604A: A9 00      40      LDA  #$00      ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
604C: 85 1A      41      STA  LOW
604E: A9 20      42      LDA  #$20
6050: 85 1B      43      STA  HIGH
6052: A0 00      44  CLR1   LDY  #$00
6054: A9 00      45      LDA  #$00
6056: 91 1A      46  CLR    STA  (LOW),Y
6058: C8          47      INY
6059: D0 FB      48      BNE  CLR
605B: E6 1B      49      INC  HIGH
605D: A5 1B      50      LDA  HIGH
605F: C9 40      51      CMP  #$40
6061: 90 EF      52      BLT  CLR1
6063: A9 60      53      LDA  #$60      ;LOAD DELAY
6065: 8D 08 60 54      STA  DELAY
6068: A2 B7      55      LDX  #$B7      ;DRAW LINE
606A: A0 00      56      LDY  #$00
606C: BD 2B 64 57      LDA  HI,X
606F: 85 1B      58      STA  HIGH
6071: BD EB 64 59      LDA  LO,X
6074: 85 1A      60      STA  LOW
6076: A9 7F      61      LDA  #$7F
6078: 91 1A      62  LN     STA  (LOW),Y
607A: C8          63      INY
607B: C0 27      64      CPY  #$27
607D: 90 F9      65      BLT  LN
607F: 20 94 60 67      ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6082: 20 A3 60 68  PADDLE JSR  INIT      ;SET LINE & DEPTH
6085: 20 CA 60 69      JSR  PDLE      ;READ PADDLE 0
6088: AD 08 60 70      LDA  DELAY      ;DRAW
608B: 20 A8 FC 71      JSR  WAIT      ;DELAY
608E: 20 CA 60 72      JSR  DRAW      ;ERASE
6091: 4C 82 60 73      JMP  PADDLE      ;READ PADDLE AGAIN
6094: A9 AA      74      ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6096: 8D 03 60 75  INIT    LDA  #$AA
6099: 8D 04 60 76      STA  LINE
609C: 18          77      STA  LINEA
609D: 69 0D      78      CLC
609F: 8D 05 60 79      ADC  #$0D
60A2: 60          80      STA  DEPTH
60A2: 60          81      RTS
60A2: 60          82      *****

```

```

60A3: A2 00      83 PDLE LDX #$00
60A5: 20 1E FB  84 JSR PREAD      ;READ PADDLE 0
60A8: B9 25 62  85 LDA BYTETBL,Y  ;CONVERT TO SCREEN BYTE (0 - 36)
60AB: 8D 06 60  86 STA HORIZ
60AE: B9 28 63  87 LDA OFFSET,Y  ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
60B1: 0A        88 ASL           ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
60B2: AA        89 TAX
60B3: BD 30 60  90 LDA SHPADR,X
60B6: 85 1A     91 STA LOW
60B8: BD 31 60  92 LDA SHPADR+1,X
60BB: 85 1B     93 STA HIGH
60BD: A0 00     94 LDY #$00
60BF: B1 1A     95 LOAD LDA (LOW),Y
60C1: 99 09 60  96 STA TEMP,Y
60C4: C8        97 INY
60C5: C0 27     98 CPY #$27
60C7: 90 F6     99 BLT LOAD
60C9: 60        100 RTS
                        101 *****
60CA: A9 00     102 DRAW LDA #$00
60CC: 8D 07 60  103 STA XCOUNT
60CF: AE 03 60  104 DRAW1 LDX LINE
60D2: AC 06 60  105 LDY HORIZ
60D5: BD 2B 64  106 LDA HI,X
60D8: 85 1B     107 STA HIGH
60DA: BD EB 64  108 LDA LO,X
60DD: 85 1A     109 STA LOW
60DF: AE 07 60  110 LDX XCOUNT
60E2: B1 1A     111 LDA (LOW),Y
60E4: 5D 09 60  112 EOR TEMP,X
60E7: 91 1A     113 STA (LOW),Y
60E9: C8        114 INY
60EA: B1 1A     115 LDA (LOW),Y
60EC: 5D 0A 60  116 EOR TEMP+1,X
60EF: 91 1A     117 STA (LOW),Y
60F1: C8        118 INY
60F2: B1 1A     119 LDA (LOW),Y
60F4: 5D 0B 60  120 EOR TEMP+2,X
      91 1A     121 STA (LOW),Y
      EE 07 60  122 INC XCOUNT
      EE 07 60  123 INC XCOUNT
      EE 07 60  124 INC XCOUNT
      EE 03 60  125 INC LINE
      AD 03 60  126 LDA LINE
      CD 05 60  127 CMP DEPTH
      90 C2     128 BLT DRAW1
      AD 04 60  129 LDA LINEA      ;RESET LINE
      8D 03 60  130 STA LINE
      60        131 RTS
      00 0E 01  132 SHAPE1 HEX 000E01000E01000E01 ;SHAPE TABLES
      00 0E 01  00 0E 01
      00 44 01  133 HEX 004401007F00601F00
      00 7F 00 60 1F 00
      30 1F 00  134 HEX 301F00181F00001F00
      18 1F 00 00 1F 00
      00 1F 00  135 HEX 001F00001B00403100
      00 1B 00 40 31 00
      60 60 00  136 HEX 606000
      00 1C 02  137 SHAPE2 HEX 001C02001C02001C02
      00 1C 02 00 1C 02
      00 08 03  138 HEX 000803007E01003E00

```

```

00 7E 01 00 3E 00
00 3F 00 139          HEX  003F00403F00003E00
40 3F 00 00 3E 00
00 3E 00 140          HEX  003E00003600003600
00 36 00 00 36 00
00 63 00 141          HEX  006300
00 38 04 142 SHAPE3   HEX  003804003804003804
00 38 04 00 38 04
00 10 06 143          HEX  001006007C03007C00
00 7C 03 00 7C 00
00 7C 00 144          HEX  007C00007E00007C00
00 7E 00 00 7C 00
00 38 00 145          HEX  003800003800006C00
00 38 00 00 6C 00
00 46 01 146          HEX  004601
00 70 08 147 SHAPE4   HEX  007008007008007008
00 70 08 00 70 08
00 20 0C 148          HEX  00200C007807007801
00 78 07 00 78 01
00 78 01 149          HEX  007801007801007801
00 78 01 00 78 01
00 70 00 150          HEX  007000007000007000
00 70 00 00 70 00
00 70 00 151          HEX  007000
00 60 11 152 SHAPE5   HEX  006011006011006011
00 60 11 00 60 11
00 40 18 153          HEX  00401800700F007003
00 70 0F 00 70 03
00 70 03 154          HEX  007003007803007003
00 78 03 00 70 03
00 60 01 155          HEX  006001006001003003
00 60 01 00 30 03
00 18 06 156          HEX  001806
00 40 23 157 SHAPE6   HEX  004023004023004023
00 40 23 00 40 23
00 00 31 158          HEX  00003100601F006007
00 60 1F 00 60 07
00 70 07 159          HEX  007007007807006007
00 78 07 00 60 07
61F2: 00 60 07 160          HEX  006007006006006006
61F5: 00 60 06 00 60 06
61FB: 00 30 0C 161          HEX  00300C
61FE: 00 00 47 162 SHAPE7   HEX  000047000047000047
6201: 00 00 47 00 00 47
6207: 00 00 62 163          HEX  00006200403F00700F
620A: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F
6210: 00 58 0F 164          HEX  00580F004C0F00400F
6213: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F
6219: 00 40 0F 165          HEX  00400F00400D006018
621C: 00 40 0D 00 60 18
6222: 00 30 30 166          HEX  003030
6225: 00 00 00 167 BYTETBL   HEX  0000000000000000
6228: 00 00 00 00
622C: 01 01 01 168          HEX  01010101010101
622F: 01 01 01 01
6233: 02 02 02 169          HEX  02020202020202
6236: 02 02 02 02
623A: 03 03 03 170          HEX  03030303030303
623D: 03 03 03 03
6241: 04 04 04 171          HEX  04040404040404
6244: 04 04 04 04

```

6248:	05 05 05	172	HEX	05050505050505
624B:	05 05 05	05		
624F:	06 06 06	173	HEX	06060606060606
6252:	06 06 06	06		
6256:	07 07 07	174	HEX	07070707070707
6259:	07 07 07	07		
625D:	08 08 08	175	HEX	08080808080808
6260:	08 08 08	08		
6264:	09 09 09	176	HEX	09090909090909
6267:	09 09 09	09		
626B:	0A 0A 0A	177	HEX	0A0A0A0A0A0A0A
626E:	0A 0A 0A	0A		
6272:	0B 0B 0B	178	HEX	0B0B0B0B0B0B0B
6275:	0B 0B 0B	0B		
6279:	0C 0C 0C	179	HEX	0C0C0C0C0C0C0C
627C:	0C 0C 0C	0C		
6280:	0D 0D 0D	180	HEX	0D0D0D0D0D0D0D
6283:	0D 0D 0D	0D		
6287:	0E 0E 0E	181	HEX	0E0E0E0E0E0E0E
628A:	0E 0E 0E	0E		
628E:	0F 0F 0F	182	HEX	0F0F0F0F0F0F0F
6291:	0F 0F 0F	0F		
6295:	10 10 10	183	HEX	10101010101010
6298:	10 10 10	10		
629C:	11 11 11	184	HEX	11111111111111
629F:	11 11 11	11		
62A3:	12 12 12	185	HEX	12121212121212
62A6:	12 12 12	12		
62AA:	13 13 13	186	HEX	13131313131313
62AD:	13 13 13	13		
62B1:	14 14 14	187	HEX	14141414141414
62B4:	14 14 14	14		
62B8:	15 15 15	188	HEX	15151515151515
62BB:	15 15 15	15		
62BF:	16 16 16	189	HEX	16161616161616
62C2:	16 16 16	16		
62C6:	17 17 17	190	HEX	17171717171717
62C9:	17 17 17	17		
62CD:	18 18 18	191	HEX	18181818181818
62D0:	18 18 18	18		
62D4:	19 19 19	192	HEX	19191919191919
62D7:	19 19 19	19		
62DB:	1A 1A 1A	193	HEX	1A1A1A1A1A1A1A
62DE:	1A 1A 1A	1A		
62E2:	1B 1B 1B	194	HEX	1B1B1B1B1B1B1B
62E5:	1B 1B 1B	1B		
62E9:	1C 1C 1C	195	HEX	1C1C1C1C1C1C1C
62EC:	1C 1C 1C	1C		
62F0:	1D 1D 1D	196	HEX	1D1D1D1D1D1D1D
62F3:	1D 1D 1D	1D		
62F7:	1E 1E 1E	197	HEX	1E1E1E1E1E1E1E
62FA:	1E 1E 1E	1E		
62FE:	1F 1F 1F	198	HEX	1F1F1F1F1F1F1F
6301:	1F 1F 1F	1F		
6305:	20 20 20	199	HEX	20202020202020
6308:	20 20 20	20		
630C:	21 21 21	200	HEX	21212121212121
630F:	21 21 21	21		
6313:	22 22 22	201	HEX	22222222222222
6316:	22 22 22	22		
631A:	23 23 23	202	HEX	23232323232323

631D: 23 23 23 23		
6321: 24 24 24 203	HEX	24242424242424
6324: 24 24 24 24		
6328: 00 01 02 204	OFFSET	HEX 00010203040506
632B: 03 04 05 06		
632F: 00 01 02 205	HEX	00010203040506
6332: 03 04 05 06		
6336: 00 01 02 206	HEX	00010203040506
6339: 03 04 05 06		
633D: 00 01 02 207	HEX	00010203040506
6340: 03 04 05 06		
6344: 00 01 02 208	HEX	00010203040506
6347: 03 04 05 06		
634B: 00 01 02 209	HEX	00010203040506
634E: 03 04 05 06		
6352: 00 01 02 210	HEX	00010203040506
6355: 03 04 05 06		
6359: 00 01 02 211	HEX	00010203040506
635C: 03 04 05 06		
6360: 00 01 02 212	HEX	00010203040506
6363: 03 04 05 06		
6367: 00 01 02 213	HEX	00010203040506
636A: 03 04 05 06		
636E: 00 01 02 214	HEX	00010203040506
6371: 03 04 05 06		
6375: 00 01 02 215	HEX	00010203040506
6378: 03 04 05 06		
637C: 00 01 02 216	HEX	00010203040506
637F: 03 04 05 06		
6383: 00 01 02 217	HEX	00010203040506
6386: 03 04 05 06		
638A: 00 01 02 218	HEX	00010203040506
638D: 03 04 05 06		
6391: 00 01 02 219	HEX	00010203040506
6394: 03 04 05 06		
6398: 00 01 02 220	HEX	00010203040506
639B: 03 04 05 06		
639F: 00 01 02 221	HEX	00010203040506
63A2: 03 04 05 06		
63A6: 00 01 02 222	HEX	00010203040506
63A9: 03 04 05 06		
63AD: 00 01 02 223	HEX	00010203040506
63B0: 03 04 05 06		
63B4: 00 01 02 224	HEX	00010203040506
63B7: 03 04 05 06		
63BB: 00 01 02 225	HEX	00010203040506
63BE: 03 04 05 06		
63C2: 00 01 02 226	HEX	00010203040506
63C5: 03 04 05 06		
63C9: 00 01 02 227	HEX	00010203040506
63CC: 03 04 05 06		
63D0: 00 01 02 228	HEX	00010203040506
63D3: 03 04 05 06		
63D7: 00 01 02 229	HEX	00010203040506
63DA: 03 04 05 06		
63DE: 00 01 02 230	HEX	00010203040506
63E1: 03 04 05 06		
63E5: 00 01 02 231	HEX	00010203040506
63E8: 03 04 05 06		
63EC: 00 01 02 232	HEX	00010203040506
63EF: 03 04 05 06		

```

63F3: 00 01 02 233      HEX 00010203040506
63F6: 03 04 05 06
63FA: 00 01 02 234      HEX 00010203040506
63FD: 03 04 05 06
6401: 00 01 02 235      HEX 00010203040506
6404: 03 04 05 06
6408: 00 01 02 236      HEX 00010203040506
640B: 03 04 05 06
640F: 00 01 02 237      HEX 00010203040506
6412: 03 04 05 06
6416: 00 01 02 238      HEX 00010203040506
6419: 03 04 05 06
641D: 00 01 02 239      HEX 00010203040506
6420: 03 04 05 06
6424: 00 01 02 240      HEX 00010203040506
6427: 03 04 05 06

```

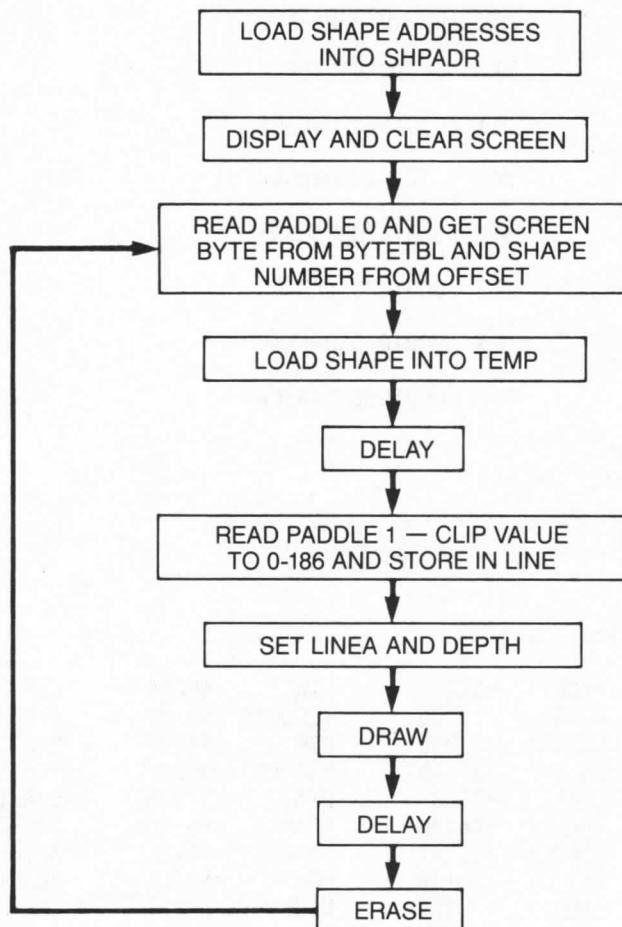
**HI
LO**

1451 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
DEPTH	=\$6005	HORIZ	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
TEMP	=\$6009	SHPADR	=\$6030	PGM	=\$603E	CLR1	=\$6052
CLR	=\$6056	LN	=\$6078	PADDLE	=\$6082	INIT	=\$6094
PDLE	=\$60A3	LOAD	=\$60BF	DRAW	=\$60CA	DRAW1	=\$60CF
SHAPE1	=\$6114	SHAPE2	=\$613B	SHAPE3	=\$6162	SHAPE4	=\$6189
SHAPE5	=\$61B0	SHAPE6	=\$61D7	SHAPE7	=\$61FE	BYTETBL	=\$6225
OFFSET	=\$6328	HI	=\$642B	LO	=\$64EB	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	PREAD	=\$FB1E
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

Although this won't be incorporated into the final game, while we're on the subject let's look at a program that uses the joystick to control vertical and horizontal movement at the same time. (Paddles can also be used, but a joystick is more appropriate, allowing a single control to move the shape in any direction.) The next program (Program 6-3) uses the joystick to control horizontal and vertical movement of the plane shape (so you can practice your takeoffs and landings). The subroutines are exactly as described in the previous programs in this chapter, except, of course, for the INITIAL subroutine which isn't needed, with paddle 0 determining the horizontal position and paddle 1, the vertical position. The MAIN PROGRAM is simplicity itself—both paddles are read, the shape is drawn and erased, and the program loops back for more paddle reads to update the shape position. Note, however, that a delay has to be inserted between reading each paddle. This is to avoid a phenomenon called paddle cross-talk. When PREAD is accessed, a timer starts and Y is incremented until the timer goes off. If the first paddle read has a low value, it will return quickly with the paddle value in Y, but the timer still continues. If you access PREAD immediately again, the timer will not have been reset to zero and Y will return with improper values. The solution is to insert a delay between paddle reads, which can be an artificial delay or some part of the program or both. In Program 6-3, there is program code between each paddle read but the delay is not long enough and so an artificial delay is inserted. The value chosen, #20, was simply arrived at by trial and error—it works and looks good.



]PROGRAM 6-3
:ASM

```

1      *JOYSTICK CONTROL OF HORIZONTAL & VERTICAL MOVEMENT
2      *2 BYTES WIDE, 13 LINES DEEP
3
4      ORG $6000
5      JMP PGM
6000: 4C 26 60
6      LINE      DS 1
7      LINEA     DS 1
8      DEPTH     DS 1
9      HORIZ     DS 1
10     XCOUNT   DS 1
11     DELAY     DS 1
12     TEMP      DS 15
13     GRAPHICS  = $C050
14     MIXOFF    = $C052
15     HIRES     = $C057
16     PAGE1     = $C054
17     HIGH      = $1B
18     LOW       = $1A
19     WAIT      = $FCA8
20     PREAD     = $FB1E
21     *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
22     *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
23     SHPADR    DFB #<SHAPE1
24             DFB #>SHAPE1
6018: F7
6019: 60

```

```

601A: 06      24      DFB #<SHAPE2
601B: 61      25      DFB #>SHAPE2
601C: 15      26      DFB #<SHAPE3
601D: 61      27      DFB #>SHAPE3
601E: 24      28      DFB #<SHAPE4
601F: 61      29      DFB #>SHAPE4
6020: 33      30      DFB #<SHAPE5
6021: 61      31      DFB #>SHAPE5
6022: 42      32      DFB #<SHAPE6
6023: 61      33      DFB #>SHAPE6
6024: 51      34      DFB #<SHAPE7
6025: 61      35      DFB #>SHAPE7
6026: AD 50 C0 36      PGM   LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
6029: AD 52 C0 37      LDA MIXOFF
602C: AD 57 C0 38      LDA HIRES
602F: AD 54 C0 39      LDA PAGE1
6032: A9 00      40      LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6034: 85 1A      41      STA LOW
6036: A9 20      42      LDA #$20
6038: 85 1B      43      STA HIGH
603A: A0 00      44      CLR1  LDY #$00
603C: A9 00      45      LDA #$00
603E: 91 1A      46      CLR   STA (LOW),Y
6040: C8          47      INY
6041: D0 FB      48      BNE CLR
6043: E6 1B      49      INC HIGH
6045: A5 1B      50      LDA HIGH
6047: C9 40      51      CMP #$40
6049: 90 EF      52      BLT CLR1
604B: A9 60      53      LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
604D: 8D 08 60   54      STA DELAY
604D: 8D 08 60   55      ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6050: 20 6A 60   56      PADDLE JSR PDLEO
6053: A9 20      57      LDA #$20
6055: 20 A8 FC   58      JSR WAIT
6058: 20 91 60   59      JSR PDLE1
605B: 20 AD 60   60      JSR DRAW
605E: AD 08 60   61      LDA DELAY
6061: 20 A8 FC   62      JSR WAIT
6064: 20 AD 60   63      JSR DRAW
6067: 4C 50 60   64      JMP PADDLE
6067: 4C 50 60   65      ***** SUBROUTINES *****
606A: A2 00      66      PDLEO  LDX #$00
606C: 20 1E FB   67      JSR PREAD ;READ PADDLE 0
606F: B9 60 61   68      LDA BYTETBL,Y ;CONVERT TO SCREEN BYTE (0 - 36)
6072: 8D 06 60   69      STA HORIZ
6075: B9 63 62   70      LDA OFFSET,Y ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
6078: 0A          71      ASL ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
6079: AA          72      TAX
607A: BD 18 60   73      LDA SHPADR,X
607D: 85 1A      74      STA LOW
607F: BD 19 60   75      LDA SHPADR+1,X
6082: 85 1B      76      STA HIGH
6084: A0 00      77      LDY #$00
6086: B1 1A      78      LOAD  LDA (LOW),Y
6088: 99 09 60   79      STA TEMP,Y
608B: C8          80      INY
608C: C0 0F      81      CPY #$0F
608E: 90 F6      82      BLT LOAD
6090: 60          83      RTS
6091: A2 01      84      PDLE1  LDX #$01

```

```

6093: 20 1E FB 85      JSR  PREAD
6096: C0 BB 86         CPY  #$BB
6098: 90 03 87         BLT  CONT
609A: A9 BA 88         LDA  #$BA
609C: A8 89          TAY
609D: 8C 03 60 90     CONT  STY  LINE
60A0: AD 03 60 91     LDA  LINE
60A3: 8D 04 60 92     STA  LINEA
60A6: 18 93         CLC
60A7: 69 05 94       ADC  #$05
60A9: 8D 05 60 95     STA  DEPTH
60AC: 60 96       RTS
97 *****
60AD: A9 00 98     DRAW  LDA  #$00
60AF: 8D 07 60 99     STA  XCOUNT
60B2: AE 03 60 100   DRAW1 LDX  LINE
60B5: AC 06 60 101   LDY  HORIZ
60B8: BD 66 63 102   LDA  HI,X
60BB: 85 1B 103     STA  HIGH
60BD: BD 26 64 104   LDA  LO,X
60C0: 85 1A 105     STA  LOW
60C2: AE 07 60 106   LDX  XCOUNT
60C5: B1 1A 107     LDA  (LOW),Y
60C7: 5D 09 60 108   EOR  TEMP,X
60CA: 91 1A 109     STA  (LOW),Y
60CC: C8 110      INY
60CD: B1 1A 111     LDA  (LOW),Y
60CF: 5D 0A 60 112   EOR  TEMP+1,X
60D2: 91 1A 113     STA  (LOW),Y
60D4: C8 114      INY
60D5: B1 1A 115     LDA  (LOW),Y
60D7: 5D 0B 60 116   EOR  TEMP+2,X
60DA: 91 1A 117     STA  (LOW),Y
60DC: EE 07 60 118   INC  XCOUNT
60DF: EE 07 60 119   INC  XCOUNT
60E2: EE 07 60 120   INC  XCOUNT
60E5: EE 03 60 121   INC  LINE
60E8: AD 03 60 122   LDA  LINE
60EB: CD 05 60 123   CMP  DEPTH
60EE: 90 C2 124     BLT  DRAW1
60F0: AD 04 60 125   LDA  LINEA      ;RESET LINE
60F3: 8D 03 60 126   STA  LINE
60F6: 60 127      RTS
128 *****
60F7: 02 00 00 129   SHAPE1  HEX  0200000600007E1F00
60FA: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
6100: 7E 37 00 130     HEX  7E37007E7F00
6103: 7E 7F 00
6106: 04 00 00 131   SHAPE2  HEX  0400000C00007C3F00
6109: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
610F: 7C 6F 00 132     HEX  7C6F007C7F01
6112: 7C 7F 01
6115: 08 00 00 133   SHAPE3  HEX  080000180000787F00
6118: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
611E: 78 5F 01 134     HEX  785F01787F03
6121: 78 7F 03
6124: 10 00 00 135   SHAPE4  HEX  100000300000707F01
6127: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
612D: 70 3F 03 136     HEX  703F03707F07
6130: 70 7F 07
6133: 20 00 00 137   SHAPE5  HEX  200000600000607F03

```

```

6136: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
613C: 60 7F 06 138      HEX  607F06607F0F
613F: 60 7F 0F
6142: 40 00 00 139  SHAPE6  HEX  400000400100407F07
6145: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
614B: 40 7F 0D 140      HEX  407F0D407F1F
614E: 40 7F 1F
6151: 00 01 00 141  SHAPE7  HEX  000100000300007F0F
6154: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F
615A: 00 7F 1B 142      HEX  007F1B007F3F
615D: 00 7F 3F

```

BYTETBL
OFFSET
HI
LO

1254 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
DEPTH	=\$6005	HORIZ	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
TEMP	=\$6009	SHPADR	=\$6018	PGM	=\$6026	CLR1	=\$603A
CLR	=\$603E	PADDLE	=\$6050	PDLEO	=\$606A	LOAD	=\$6086
PDLE1	=\$6091	CONT	=\$609D	DRAW	=\$60AD	DRAW1	=\$60B2
SHAPE1	=\$60F7	SHAPE2	=\$6106	SHAPE3	=\$6115	SHAPE4	=\$6124
SHAPE5	=\$6133	SHAPE6	=\$6142	SHAPE7	=\$6151	BYTETBL	=\$6160
OFFSET	=\$6263	HI	=\$6366	LO	=\$6426	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	PREAD	=\$FB1E
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

BYTETBL and **OFFSET** refer to the tables in Program 6-2.

Our programs are now getting quite large because of all the tables and we'll be using these tables in most of the remaining programs in this book. To save yourself a lot of unnecessary typing, do what I do. Load a program that already has these tables, and, using the editing features of your assembler, delete everything you don't need (you might also want to retain the SHPADR and clear and display screen routines). Then insert your new program—another reason for choosing an assembler with full editing features.

MULTIPLE SHAPES—PADDLE CONTROL OF HORIZONTAL MOVEMENT AND SHOOTING BULLETS

This section really consists of two parts, one easy and the other hard. The easy part describes how to shoot bullets using the paddle "firing" button. The hard part, displaying two moving shapes at the same time, takes us into the real nitty-gritty of game design for the first time. The following program, the one that incorporates these features (Program 6-4), is simply an addition to Program 6-2; the person whose movement we'll control by paddle 0 will be made to shoot bullets by pressing button 0. Thus, we have to display and move the bullet shape and the person shape at the same time. Program 6-4 is an essential part of the final game program so it warrants your close attention.

Let's dispense with the easy part first. We'll define the label **BUTTON** as **\$C061** (button 0). Thus if we do a **LDA BUTTON**, **BMI BULLET**, the program will branch to **BULLET** when the button is pressed and not branch when it isn't

pressed. Also, the program is designed so that only one bullet can be fired at a time; i.e., a bullet on the screen must go off before the next one can be drawn (the program doesn't have to have this feature but what the heck, why not). We accomplish this by reserving a memory location labelled BULON and loading it with #00 when a bullet is not on the screen and with #01 when one is. Thus testing BULON for #00 or #01 will tell us the bullet status.

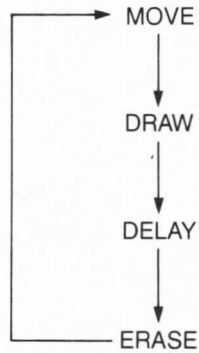
The bullet shape itself is just a single dot, both for convenience and also because it looks fine that way. This simplifies the BTEMP (B for Bullet) loading and also the draw routine. For example, a bullet shape is loaded by retrieving the shape address and loading its contents directly into BTEMP without the need for any counters (see the LOADBUL subroutine). Also, because the bullet shape has a depth of one, the draw routine has no need for XCOUNT, BLINEA, or CMP DEPTH; drawing (and erasing) is accomplished simply by LDA (LOW),Y, EOR BTEMP, STA (LOW),Y (see the BDRAW subroutine). In addition, because the first bullet shape occupies only the first or leftmost bit, the BSHAPE table need only consist of one screen byte—there is no need for an extra byte in the direction of movement.

The bullet is drawn moving up eight lines at a time. The reason for this is not apparent in Program 6-3 but will be when we incorporate the routine into the final game program. The reason is speed. In the game program, we want the bullet to move much faster than a plane moving across the screen. The plane and bullet move once per drawing cycle and the plane moves in 1-bit increments. Moving the bullet up one line at a time, for example, would slow it down so much relative to the plane as to detract seriously from whatever simulation of realism we hope to achieve. Although eight line moves may not be appropriate for most shapes, it works fine with a single dot and the animation simulates a fired bullet quite well.

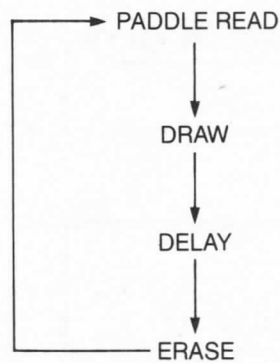
Finally, we have to test for the bullet reaching the top of the screen, at which point it is erased in preparation for the next firing. The bullet starts its screen traversal at line #A4, just above the raised arm of the man. If we keep subtracting 8 from this value to get to a line position near the top of the screen, the nearest line to the top turns out to be 4. Thus, we do a CMP #05 (line 112); if the line position is less than this, we've reached the top; if more, we continue drawing the bullet.

So much for the easy part, now for the mind-bender. Designing a complicated program, such as one that integrates multiple moving shapes, is best done, at least in my experience, by paying particular attention to the program flowchart, long before getting into extensive program details (this is always a good idea but is especially important for difficult programs). We'll be examining the flowchart for Program 6-4 in detail shortly. A further point regarding multiple shape programs, and one alluded to briefly in the bullet section above, is that each shape has essentially its own program within a program. For example, in Program 6-4, the bullet shape employs BINITIAL, BDRAW, BSHPADR, BHORIZ, etc., while the person shape uses its own set of labels and routines such as MINITIAL, MDRAW, MHORIZ, etc. (M stands for Man; let's face it, a man is more likely to be firing bullets at passing planes than a woman [a sad commentary?]. In any case, P for Person is not used because it is used for Plane in later programs.) The use of these separate routines and labels is a necessity, but a welcome one, because they make the program much easier to write and read.

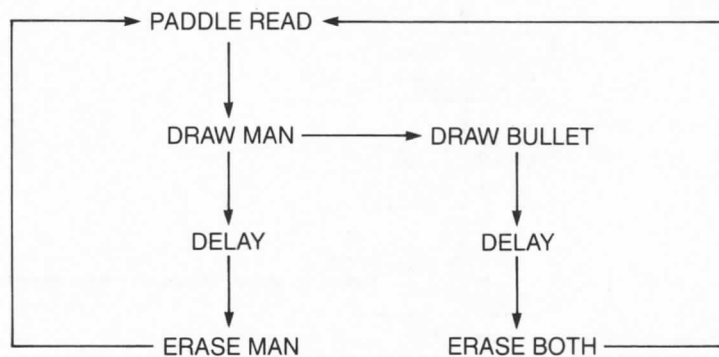
Remember the principles of animation discussed in previous chapters; i.e.:



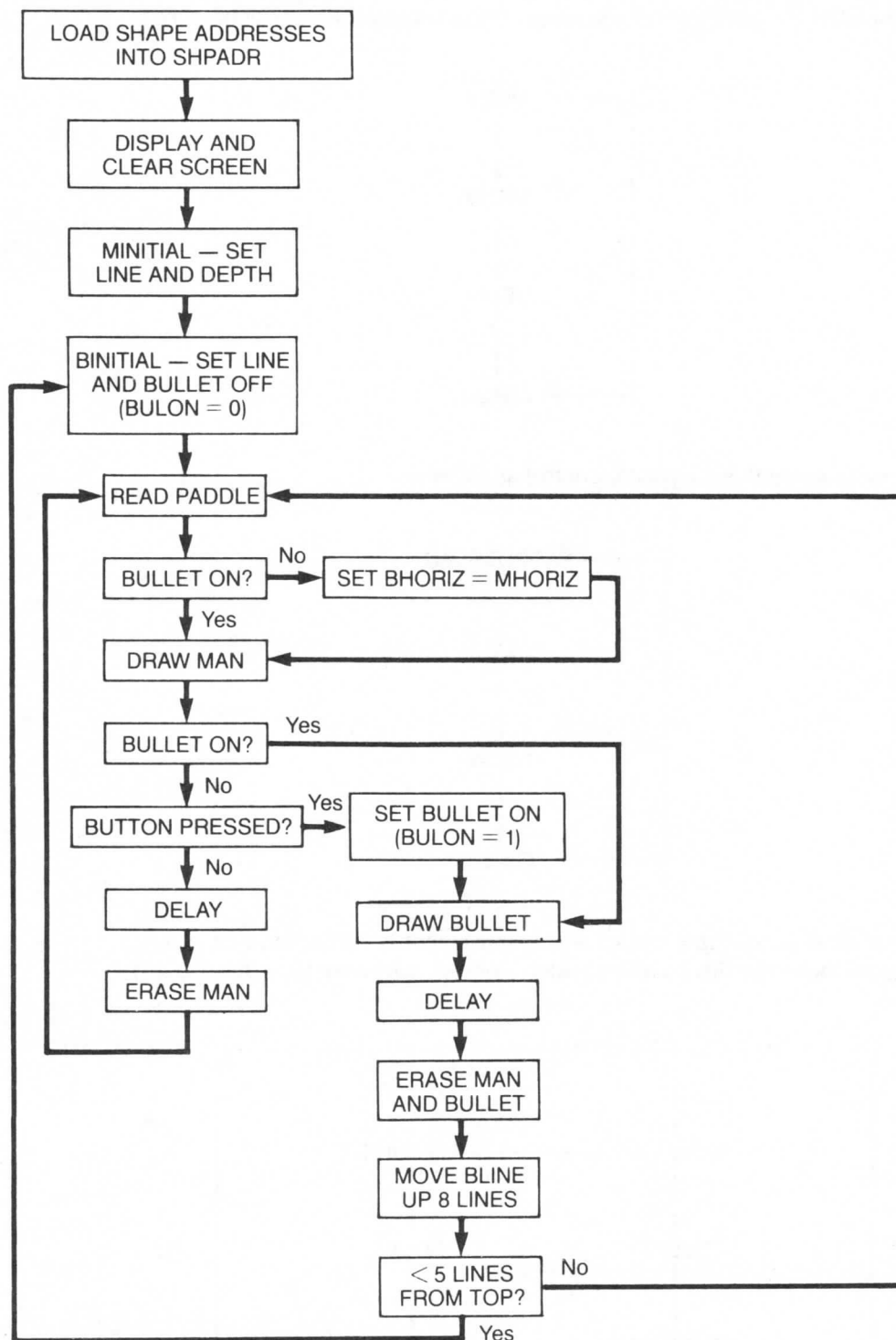
We can modify this for paddle control as follows:



When drawing multiple shapes whose movement is controlled by a paddle, the diagram looks like this (without paddle control, substitute Move for Paddle):



Let's now examine in detail the flowchart for Program 6-4.



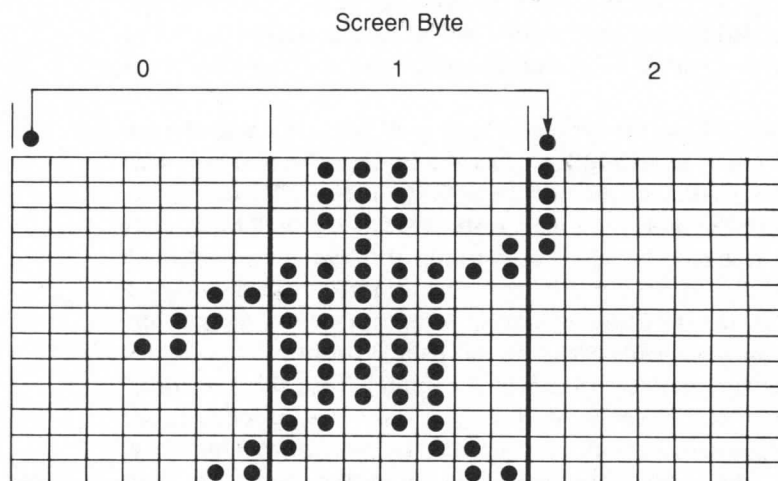
The beginning is fairly straightforward. The separate shape address tables for M (Man) and B (Bullet) are loaded with the addresses of BSHAPES and MSHAPES. The screen is displayed and cleared and the bottom line drawn. We next set the line and depth for M and the starting line position for B (the screen bytes are not set because they will be determined by the paddle read and, as mentioned before, setting depth for B is not necessary because the bullet shape is only 1 line deep). We also load BULON with #\$00 to indicate the bullet is not on the screen. We next do a paddle read and the value returned in Y (0-255) is placed in MHORIZ.

Next we ask if the bullet is on the screen by testing BULON. If it's not on the screen, we set BHORIZ equal to MHORIZ so that if a bullet is fired, it will start from the same horizontal position as the man (BHORIZ and MHORIZ determine the horizontal positions of the bullet and man, respectively). If a bullet is already on the screen, we skip this step because, as we loop through the program to update MHORIZ continually from the paddle read, we want to retain the original value in BHORIZ—this allows the bullet to travel up the screen in a straight line while the man is being moved horizontally by the paddle. In other words, this protocol dissociates the horizontal position of the bullet from the horizontal position of the man once the bullet is fired. (If we omit this procedure, we would get an interesting situation, and one I've actually seen in a commercial game program, where the man's position and the bullet path are both paddle-controlled.)

Whether the bullet is on the screen or not, we go to the next series of instructions which, using MHORIZ, gets the M screen byte and shape number, loads the M shape into MTEMP, and draws the man. We then ask again if the bullet is on the screen. If it is, we go to the bullet drawing routine to continue the bullet draw—if it isn't, we ask if the button is pressed. If it is, we go to the bullet drawing routine to begin the bullet draw—if it isn't, we continue with a delay, erase the man shape, and go back to a paddle read. Thus, if a bullet is not on the screen and if the button isn't pressed, the program looks just like Program 6-2; i.e., we see just the man shape and its horizontal movement controlled by the paddle.

Let's assume now that after we've drawn the man, the bullet is not on the screen but the button is pressed. The bullet is set to on (BULON = #\$01) and the program then branches to the bullet draw routine which gets the B screen byte and shape number from BHORIZ (remember BHORIZ is determined by MHORIZ at the time the bullet was fired), loads the B shape into BTEMP, and finally draws the bullet. After a delay, both the bullet and man are erased. The B line position is then moved up eight lines and tested for the top of the screen. If the new line position is less than five lines from the top of the screen, we consider the bullet's journey ended and the program branches to BINITIAL to reset the bullet starting line. The bullet is now off the screen and the program continues with a paddle read, etc. If the top of screen has not been reached, we branch back to the paddle read without resetting the initial B line position. At this point, the bullet is on the screen. Thus, after another paddle read, BHORIZ is not set to equal MHORIZ because now we want the horizontal position of the bullet to be independent of the horizontal position of the man. Then, after the man is drawn, the program branches to the bullet draw routine to continue drawing and this continues until the bullet has reached the top of the screen.

Courage, we're almost done. Because we've seen all the routines before, there is no need to discuss the details of Program 6-4 except for one point. The following diagram illustrates the position of the man shape when screen byte 0 and shape 0 are selected by the paddle read.



Assuming the bullet is ready to be fired, i.e., it is not already on the screen, the same paddle read also selects screen byte 0 and shape 0 for the bullet shape. B shape 0 is a single dot drawn at the leftmost bit position (shape byte #01) and, if drawn in screen byte 0, will appear to be fired from a position remote from the upraised arm that holds the gun. To align the bullet exactly with the upraised arm, in the LOADBUL subroutine we add 2 to the bullet screen byte position (lines 192 and 193) before drawing. Thus, in this example, bullet shape 0 will be drawn in the leftmost bit position of screen byte 2 and will appear to emerge from the proper position. This relationship holds true throughout the screen range regardless of screen byte or shape number. This is the reason the man shape is drawn the way it is—remember the discussion in Chapter 5 regarding positioning the upraised arm in the leftmost bit position of the third screen byte of the shape table.

]PROGRAM 6-4
:ASM

```

1      *PADDLE CONTROL OF HORIZONTAL MOVEMENT AND SHOOTING BULLETS
2      ORG    $6000
6000: 4C 52 60 3      JMP    PGM
4      MLINE  DS    1
5      MLINEA DS    1
6      BLINE  DS    1
7      DEPTH  DS    1
8      MHORIZ DS    1
9      BHORIZ DS    1
10     HORIZB  DS    1
11     HORIZM  DS    1
12     BULON   DS    1
13     XCOUNT  DS    1
14     DELAY   DS    1
15     BTEMP   DS    1
16     MTEMP   DS    39

```

```

17  GRAPHICS = $C050
18  MIXOFF  = $C052
19  HIRES   = $C057
20  PAGE1   = $C054
21  HIGH    = $1B
22  LOW     = $1A
23  WAIT    = $FCA8
24  PREAD   = $FB1E
25  BUTTON  = $C061 ;BUTTON 0
26  *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
27  *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6036: BE    28  MSHPADR DFB #<MSHAPE1
6037: 61    29          DFB #>MSHAPE1
6038: E5    30          DFB #<MSHAPE2
6039: 61    31          DFB #>MSHAPE2
603A: 0C    32          DFB #<MSHAPE3
603B: 62    33          DFB #>MSHAPE3
603C: 33    34          DFB #<MSHAPE4
603D: 62    35          DFB #>MSHAPE4
603E: 5A    36          DFB #<MSHAPE5
603F: 62    37          DFB #>MSHAPE5
6040: 81    38          DFB #<MSHAPE6
6041: 62    39          DFB #>MSHAPE6
6042: A8    40          DFB #<MSHAPE7
6043: 62    41          DFB #>MSHAPE7
6044: CF    42  BSHPADR DFB #<BSHAPE1
6045: 62    43          DFB #>BSHAPE1
6046: D0    44          DFB #<BSHAPE2
6047: 62    45          DFB #>BSHAPE2
6048: D1    46          DFB #<BSHAPE3
6049: 62    47          DFB #>BSHAPE3
604A: D2    48          DFB #<BSHAPE4
604B: 62    49          DFB #>BSHAPE4
604C: D3    50          DFB #<BSHAPE5
604D: 62    51          DFB #>BSHAPE5
604E: D4    52          DFB #<BSHAPE6
604F: 62    53          DFB #>BSHAPE6
6050: D5    54          DFB #<BSHAPE7
6051: 62    55          DFB #>BSHAPE7
6052: AD 50 C0 56  PGM   LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
6055: AD 52 C0 57          LDA MIXOFF
6058: AD 57 C0 58          LDA HIRES
605B: AD 54 C0 59          LDA PAGE1
605E: A9 00    60          LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6060: 85 1A    61          STA LOW
6062: A9 20    62          LDA #$20
6064: 85 1B    63          STA HIGH
6066: A0 00    64  CLR1  LDY #$00
6068: A9 00    65          LDA #$00
606A: 91 1A    66  CLR   STA (LOW),Y
606C: C8       67          INY
606D: D0 FB    68          BNE CLR
606F: E6 1B    69          INC HIGH
6071: A5 1B    70          LDA HIGH
6073: C9 40    71          CMP #$40
6075: 90 EF    72          BLT CLR1
6077: A9 50    73          LDA #$50 ;LOAD DELAY
6079: 8D 0D 60 74          STA DELAY
607C: A2 B7    75          LDX #$B7 ;DRAW LINE
607E: A0 00    76          LDY #$00
6080: BD DC 64 77          LDA HI,X

```

```

6083: 85 1B      78          STA HIGH
6085: BD 9C 65   79          LDA LO,X
6088: 85 1A      80          STA LOW
608A: A9 7F      81          LDA #$7F
608C: 91 1A      82 LN      STA (LOW),Y
608E: C8         83          INY
608F: C0 27      84          CPY #$27
6091: 90 F9      85          BLT LN
6093: 20 E4 60    86          ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6096: 20 F3 60    87          JSR MINITIAL ;SET LINE & DEPTH OF MAN
6099: 20 FE 60    88          JSR BINITIAL ;SET LINE FOR BULLET
609C: 20 39 61    89 PADDLE JSR PDLE ;READ PADDLE
609F: AD 0B 60    90          JSR MDRAW ;DRAW MAN
60A2: C9 01      91          LDA BULON
60A4: F0 16      92          CMP #$01 ;IS BULLET ON?
60A6: AD 61 C0    93          BEQ BULLET ;IF YES, CONTINUE BULLET DRAW
60A9: 30 0C      94          LDA BUTTON ;IF NO, IS BUTTON PRESSED?
60AB: AD 0D 60    95          BMI BULLET1 ;IF YES, DRAW BULLET
60AE: 20 A8 FC    96          LDA DELAY ;IF NO,
60B1: 20 39 61    97          JSR WAIT ;DELAY AND
60B4: 4C 99 60    98          JSR MDRAW ;ERASE MAN AND
60B7: A9 01      99          JMP PADDLE ;READ PADDLE AGAIN
60B9: 8D 0B 60   100 BULLET1 LDA #$01 ;SET BULLET ON
60BC: 20 83 61   101          STA BULON
60BF: 20 A6 61   102 BULLET JSR LOADBUL ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
60C2: AD 0D 60   103          JSR BDRAW ;DRAW BULLET
60C5: 20 A8 FC   104          LDA DELAY
60C8: 20 A8 FC   105          JSR WAIT ;DELAY
60CB: 20 39 61   106          JSR BDRAW ;ERASE BULLET
60CE: AD 05 60   107          JSR MDRAW ;ERASE MAN
60D1: 38         108          LDA BLINE
60D2: E9 08      109          SEC
60D4: 8D 05 60   110          SBC #$08 ;MOVE BLINE UP 8 LINES
60D7: C9 05      111          STA BLINE
60D9: 90 03      112          CMP #$05 ;LESS THAN 5 LINES FROM TOP?
60DB: 4C 99 60   113          BLT TOP ;IF YES TAKE BRANCH
60DE: 20 F3 60   114          JMP PADDLE ;IF NO, READ PADDLE AGAIN
60E1: 4C 99 60   115 TOP      JSR BINITIAL ;INITIALIZE BULLET LINE
60E4: A9 AA      116          JMP PADDLE ;READ PADDLE
60E6: 8D 03 60   117          ***** SUBROUTINES *****
60E9: 8D 04 60   118 MINITIAL LDA #$AA
60EC: 18         119          STA MLINE
60ED: 69 0D      120          STA MLINEA
60EF: 8D 06 60   121          CLC
60F2: 60         122          ADC #$0D
60F3: A9 00      123          STA DEPTH
60F5: 8D 0B 60   124          RTS
60F8: A9 A4      125          *****
60FA: 8D 05 60   126 BINITIAL LDA #$00 ;BULON = 0 IF
60FD: 60         127          STA BULON ;BULLET NOT ON SCREEN
60FE: A2 00      128          LDA #$A4
6100: 20 1E FB   129          STA BLINE
6103: 98         130          RTS
6104: 8D 07 60   131          *****
6107: AD 0B 60   132 PDLE LDX #$00
610A: C9 01      133          JSR PREAD ;READ PADDLE 0
610C: F0 06      134          TYA
610E: 8D 07 60   135          STA MHORIZ ;0-255 IN MHORIZ
6110: AD 0B 60   136          LDA BULON
6112: C9 01      137          CMP #$01 ;IS BULLET ON?
6114: F0 06      138          BEQ PDLE1 ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH

```

```

610E: AD 07 60 139      LDA MHORIZ      ;IF NO, SET BHORIZ EQUAL
6111: 8D 08 60 140      STA BHORIZ      TO MHORIZ
6114: AC 07 60 141      PDLE1 LDY MHORIZ
6117: B9 D6 62 142      LDA BYTETBL,Y ;CONVERT 0-255 TO 0-36 (BYTE)
611A: 8D 0A 60 143      STA HORIZM    ;MAN BYTE POSITION
611D: B9 D9 63 144      LDA OFFSET,Y ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
6120: 0A      145      ASL          ;LOAD SHAPE INTO MTEMP
6121: AA      146      TAX
6122: BD 36 60 147      LDA MSHPADR,X
6125: 85 1A      148      STA LOW
6127: BD 37 60 149      LDA MSHPADR+1,X
612A: 85 1B      150      STA HIGH
612C: A0 00      151      LDY #$00
612E: B1 1A      152      LOAD LDA (LOW),Y
6130: 99 0F 60 153      STA MTEMP,Y
6133: C8      154      INY
6134: C0 27      155      CPY #$27
6136: 90 F6      156      BLT LOAD
6138: 60      157      RTS
6139: A9 00      158      *****
613B: 8D 0C 60 159      MDRAW LDA #$00
613E: AE 03 60 160      STA XCOUNT
6141: AC 0A 60 161      MDRAW1 LDX MLINE
6144: BD DC 64 162      LDY HORIZM
6147: 85 1B      163      LDA HI,X
6149: BD 9C 65 164      STA HIGH
614C: 85 1A      165      LDA LO,X
614E: AE 0C 60 166      STA LOW
6151: B1 1A      167      LDX XCOUNT
6153: 5D 0F 60 168      LDA (LOW),Y
6156: 91 1A      169      EOR MTEMP,X
6158: C8      170      STA (LOW),Y
6159: B1 1A      171      INY
615B: 5D 10 60 172      LDA (LOW),Y
615E: 91 1A      173      EOR MTEMP+1,X
6160: C8      174      STA (LOW),Y
6161: B1 1A      175      INY
6163: 5D 11 60 176      LDA (LOW),Y
6166: 91 1A      177      EOR MTEMP+2,X
6168: EE 0C 60 178      STA (LOW),Y
616B: EE 0C 60 179      INC XCOUNT
616E: EE 0C 60 180      INC XCOUNT
6171: EE 03 60 181      INC XCOUNT
6174: AD 03 60 182      INC MLINE
6177: CD 06 60 183      LDA MLINE
617A: 90 C2      184      CMP DEPTH
617C: AD 04 60 185      BLT MDRAW1
617F: 8D 03 60 186      LDA MLINEA ;RESET LINE
6182: 60      187      STA MLINE
6183: AC 08 60 188      RTS
6186: B9 D6 62 189      *****
6189: 18      190      LOADBUL LDY BHORIZ ;CONVERTS 0-255 TO
618A: 69 02      191      LDA BYTETBL,Y ;SCREEN BYTE (0-36)
618C: 8D 09 60 192      CLC ;ADD 2 TO ALIGN BULLET
618F: B9 D9 63 193      ADC #$02 ;WITH GUN
6192: 0A      194      STA HORIZB ;BULLET BYTE POSITION
6193: AA      195      LDA OFFSET,Y ;GET BULLET SHAPE NUMBER
6194: BD 44 60 196      ASL ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
6197: 85 1A      197      TAX
6198: 85 1A      198      LDA BSHPADR,X
6199: 85 1A      199      STA LOW

```

```

6199: BD 45 60 200      LDA BSHPADR+1,X
619C: 85 1B 201         STA HIGH
619E: A0 00 202         LDY #$00
61A0: B1 1A 203         LDA (LOW),Y
61A2: 8D 0E 60 204      STA BTEMP
61A5: 60 205           RTS
206 *****
61A6: AE 05 60 207      BDRAW LDX BLINE
61A9: AC 09 60 208      LDY HORIZB
61AC: BD DC 64 209      LDA HI,X
61AF: 85 1B 210         STA HIGH
61B1: BD 9C 65 211      LDA LO,X
61B4: 85 1A 212         STA LOW
61B6: B1 1A 213         LDA (LOW),Y
61B8: 4D 0E 60 214      EOR BTEMP
61BB: 91 1A 215         STA (LOW),Y
61BD: 60 216           RTS
61BE: 00 0E 01 217      MSHAPE1 HEX 000E01000E01000E01 ;MAN SHAPE TABLES
61C1: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01
61C7: 00 44 01 218      HEX 004401007F00601F00
61CA: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00
61D0: 30 1F 00 219      HEX 301F00181F00001F00
61D3: 18 1F 00 00 1F 00
61D9: 00 1F 00 220      HEX 001F00001B00403100
61DC: 00 1B 00 40 31 00
61E2: 60 60 00 221      HEX 606000
61E5: 00 1C 02 222      MSHAPE2 HEX 001C02001C02001C02
61E8: 00 1C 02 00 1C 02
61EE: 00 08 03 223      HEX 000803007E01003E00
61F1: 00 7E 01 00 3E 00
61F7: 00 3F 00 224      HEX 003F00403F00003E00
61FA: 40 3F 00 00 3E 00
6200: 00 3E 00 225      HEX 003E00003600003600
6203: 00 36 00 00 36 00
6209: 00 63 00 226      HEX 006300
620C: 00 38 04 227      MSHAPE3 HEX 003804003804003804
620F: 00 38 04 00 38 04
6215: 00 10 06 228      HEX 001006007C03007C00
6218: 00 7C 03 00 7C 00
621E: 00 7C 00 229      HEX 007C00007E00007C00
6221: 00 7E 00 00 7C 00
6227: 00 38 00 230      HEX 003800003800006C00
622A: 00 38 00 00 6C 00
6230: 00 46 01 231      HEX 004601
6233: 00 70 08 232      MSHAPE4 HEX 007008007008007008
6236: 00 70 08 00 70 08
623C: 00 20 0C 233      HEX 00200C007807007801
623F: 00 78 07 00 78 01
6245: 00 78 01 234      HEX 007801007801007801
6248: 00 78 01 00 78 01
624E: 00 70 00 235      HEX 007000007000007000
6251: 00 70 00 00 70 00
6257: 00 70 00 236      HEX 007000
625A: 00 60 11 237      MSHAPE5 HEX 006011006011006011
625D: 00 60 11 00 60 11
6263: 00 40 18 238      HEX 00401800700F007003
6266: 00 70 0F 00 70 03
626C: 00 70 03 239      HEX 007003007803007003
626F: 00 78 03 00 70 03
6275: 00 60 01 240      HEX 006001006001003003
6278: 00 60 01 00 30 03

```



```

627E: 00 18 06 241      HEX 001806
6281: 00 40 23 242 MSHAPE6 HEX 004023004023004023
6284: 00 40 23 00 40 23
628A: 00 00 31 243      HEX 00003100601F006007
628D: 00 60 1F 00 60 07
6293: 00 70 07 244      HEX 007007007807006007
6296: 00 78 07 00 60 07
629C: 00 60 07 245      HEX 006007006006006006
629F: 00 60 06 00 60 06
62A5: 00 30 0C 246      HEX 00300C
62A8: 00 00 47 247 MSHAPE7 HEX 000047000047000047
62AB: 00 00 47 00 00 47
62B1: 00 00 62 248      HEX 00006200403F00700F
62B4: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F
62BA: 00 58 0F 249      HEX 00580F004C0F00400F
62BD: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F
62C3: 00 40 0F 250      HEX 00400F00400D006018
62C6: 00 40 0D 00 60 18
62CC: 00 30 30 251      HEX 003030
62CF: 01      252 BSHAPE1 HEX 01 ;BULLET SHAPES
62D0: 02      253 BSHAPE2 HEX 02
62D1: 04      254 BSHAPE3 HEX 04
62D2: 08      255 BSHAPE4 HEX 08
62D3: 10      256 BSHAPE5 HEX 10
62D4: 20      257 BSHAPE6 HEX 20
62D5: 40      258 BSHAPE7 HEX 40
      BYTETBL
      OFFSET
      HI
      LO

```

1628 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	MLINE	=\$6003	MLINEA	=\$6004
BLINE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	MHORIZ	=\$6007	BHORIZ	=\$6008
HORIZB	=\$6009	HORIZM	=\$600A	BULON	=\$600B	XCOUNT	=\$600C
DELAY	=\$600D	BTEMP	=\$600E	MTEMP	=\$600F	MSHPADR	=\$6036
BSHPADR	=\$6044	PGM	=\$6052	CLR1	=\$6066	CLR	=\$606A
LN	=\$608C	PADDLE	=\$6099	BULLET1	=\$60B7	BULLET	=\$60BC
TOP	=\$60DE	MINITIAL	=\$60E4	BINITIAL	=\$60F3	PDLE	=\$60FE
PDLE1	=\$6114	LOAD	=\$612E	MDRAW	=\$6139	MDRAW1	=\$613E
LOADBUL	=\$6183	BDRAW	=\$61A6	MSHAPE1	=\$61BE	MSHAPE2	=\$61E5
MSHAPE3	=\$620C	MSHAPE4	=\$6233	MSHAPE5	=\$625A	MSHAPE6	=\$6281
MSHAPE7	=\$62A8	BSHAPE1	=\$62CF	BSHAPE2	=\$62D0	BSHAPE3	=\$62D1
BSHAPE4	=\$62D2	BSHAPE5	=\$62D3	BSHAPE6	=\$62D4	BSHAPE7	=\$62D5
BYTETBL	=\$62D6	OFFSET	=\$63D9	HI	=\$64DC	LO	=\$659C
GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057
BUTTON	=\$C061	PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8		

We've now gotten through the most difficult part of our discussion of game design. The next few chapters will discuss collisions and explosions, scoring, sound, and in Chapter 10, assembling the final game which involves more or less the same technique developed in this chapter, i.e., a detailed examination of the flowchart, except on a larger scale.

Collisions and Explosions

*A scientist from the war games division
Designed a game with the ultimate collision.
Out of mutual fear
Missiles went flying in air,
And then, a final nuclear fission.*

Collision detection is an integral part of almost every game program and can be used for almost any purpose because once a collision is detected, the program can be instructed to do a multitude of things. For example, a shape can be constricted to the lanes of a maze by not allowing movement past lane boundaries if a collision with these boundaries is detected. In our game program, we're going to detect a collision of a bullet with a passing plane and this will be followed by drawing explosion shapes at the area of impact. In later chapters we will see how to integrate sound and scoring with these collision events.

COLLISION DETECTION

The heart of collision detection is the AND instruction. AND compares each bit of the Accumulator with the corresponding bit of a byte, either a direct value or the contents of a memory location, and returns a value of 1 if both bits are 1; otherwise, the result will be 0. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Example

Accumulator	0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1
AND byte	0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1
	<hr/>
Result in Accumulator	0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1

Let's see how we can use this instruction to detect collisions. Suppose we have a bullet shape, a single dot, moving up the screen. We want to ask: does the corresponding bit position of the next screen byte position the bullet is going to move into contain a 1 (i.e., a shape) or a 0 (i.e., no shape)? If the screen bit

contains a 0, ANDing the screen byte with the bullet shape byte will return a 0; if it contains a 1, ANDing will return some number greater than 0.

Example

No collision		
Screen byte in Accumulator (#\$7E)	0 1 1 1 1 1 1 0	Shape on Screen 0 1 1 1 1 1 1
AND with bullet shape (#\$01)	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 0 0 0 0
Result in Accumulator (zero)	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
Collision		
Screen byte in Accumulator (#\$7E)	0 1 1 1 1 1 1 0	Shape on Screen 0 1 1 1 1 1 1
AND with bullet shape (#\$02)	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	0 1 0 0 0 0 0
Result in Accumulator (non-zero)	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	

Note that the screen byte itself does not have to be entirely empty for there to be no collision; only the corresponding bit position must be empty. This is exactly what we want. Suppose the screen byte #\$7E corresponds to the bottom line of a plane shape moving left to right. If a bullet is to move into this screen byte and if the bullet shape byte, by virtue of its horizontal positioning, is #\$01, the AND instruction will return a value of 0, i.e., no collision, which describes the situation perfectly; the bullet will pass just to the left of the plane (see Shape on Screen column above). On the other hand, if the bullet shape byte, by virtue of its horizontal positioning, is #\$02, the bullet will appear to hit the plane and the AND instruction will return a value greater than 0, i.e., a collision. (There is an obvious problem here if the high or leftmost bit is set to 1 for either the screen or shape byte as it is for selecting some colors but we'll get to this problem in the chapter on drawing in color—for now, and for all the programs in Part One, the high bit is set to 0).

Now that these principles have collided with your brain cells, we can describe a general routine for collision detection as follows:

```
LDA Screen Byte
AND Shape Byte    ;RESULT IS ZERO IF NO COLLISION
CMP #$00
BEQ NOHIT         ;BRANCH TO NOHIT IF NO COLLISION
JMP COLLISION     ;GO TO COLLISION IF COLLISION
```

The CMP #\$00 is not really needed here, as BEQ will branch when the result of the previous operation is zero, but it is included to make the program easier to read.

This general routine presents a problem when we want to detect a collision with shapes moving non-vertically using a DRAW-DRAW protocol. Vertical movement with DRAW-DRAW is okay—the screen byte to be AND'ed is one or more lines above or below the shape and is either empty or not. However, non-vertical movement always contains a horizontal vector and in horizontal movement, the same screen byte is repeatedly accessed for each of the seven shapes. Thus, if we use DRAW-DRAW and the AND test for horizontal movement, the first time we draw a shape we're okay. But when we want to draw the next shape, the same screen byte is accessed (except at the screen byte boundaries) and AND'ed with the shape byte. The screen byte still contains the first shape byte because there is no erase cycle and thus a collision will be detected. In

other words, the shape will continually "collide" with itself. Therefore if a shape with horizontal movement is itself to be used for collision detection, it must use the DRAW-ERASE protocol. DRAW-ERASE works because the shape byte is erased before the collision test. Note that with DRAW-ERASE, the shape byte and not the screen byte is erased. Thus, if the screen byte contains an "on" bit from another shape, this bit will not be erased by EOR Shape Byte because with EOR, $0 + 1 = 1$. Thus:

LDA Screen Byte	1 1 1 0 0 0 1	Shape 1	Shape 2
EOR Shape 1 Byte	1 1 1 0 0 0 0	#\$07	#\$40
Result in Accumulator	0 0 0 0 0 0 1	Shape 2 still in screen byte	

As the first shape is both drawn and erased with EOR, the bit from the second shape is always present for the AND test and a collision will result when the first shape enters this bit position.

Let's put all this to work in an actual program. The next program (Program 7-1) is essentially the same as Program 6-3 except now we've drawn a line in the left half of the screen near the top—if a fired bullet hits this line, a long delay will ensue as a collision marker. Shooting the bullet in the right half of the screen will, of course, result in no collision, as there's no line there.

Now to the details of Program 7-1. First, we draw a line in the left half of the screen at screen line position #\$0C (12). There's a good reason for drawing the line at that particular line position as we'll soon see. Next, the program continues in the same way as Program 6-3 until we get to the point where the answer to the questions, "Is the Bullet On?" or "Is the Button Pressed?" is yes.

Now, instead of just drawing the bullet, we first test for a collision; i.e., is there something in the screen bit position where the bullet is to be drawn? The BDRAW routine specifies the line and screen byte where the bullet is to be drawn from BLINE and HORIZB. The instruction LDA (LOW),Y (line 224) loads the Accumulator with the screen byte contents and the next instruction, AND BTEMP, AND's the Accumulator with the bullet shape byte (remember that the value in BTEMP is determined by the horizontal position of the man when the bullet is fired). If the AND result is zero, there will be no collision, the program branches to NOHIT where the bullet is drawn, and the program continues just as in Program 6-3. If the AND result is non-zero, this indicates a collision and the program jumps to COLLISION, which produces a long delay simply as a collision marker, and then initializes the bullet, erases the man, and jumps back for another paddle read. (The BPL instruction [line 238] in the long-delay loop in the COLLISION subroutine continues the delay loop until Y = #\$FF; because Y initially contains #\$10, the LDA #\$FF, JSR WAIT delay will loop 17 times before going to JSR BINITIAL.)

There are a few other details of Program 7-1 we have to consider before going on. First, you might have noticed from the flowchart that the bullet seems not to have been erased after the collision. In fact, it has, because the collision test occurs before the bullet is drawn, not after. In other words, the sequence is draw-erase-test, draw-erase-test, etc. This seems to present another problem, because the bullet is moved up eight lines at a time and thus the last bullet on the screen is eight lines below the collision site. In actuality, however, the bullet is moving so fast that the illusion of a direct hit is preserved. In any event, this is a special situation that arises only when a shape to be tested for a collision is

moved large distances between each test. With the more usual smaller moves, say one or two lines or bits at a time, the direct hit illusion is preserved even with slow-moving shapes—the eye can hardly discern whether a collision is on target or one or two bits or lines away. In any case, if this bothers you, you could incorporate the following routine, which uses a test-draw-erase cycle. The shape is drawn in its next position whether or not a collision has been detected—if detected, COLL is set to 1 and this branches the program to COLLISION, which erases the shape before continuing:

```

                LDA (LOW),Y
                AND BTEMP
                CMP #$00
                BEQ NOHIT
                LDA #$01          ;LOAD COLL WITH ONE IF COLLISION
                STA COLL
NOHIT          LDA (LOW),Y      ;DRAW BULLET
                EOR BTEMP
                STA (LOW),Y
                LDA COLL
                CMP #$01
                BEQ COLLISION    ;JUMP TO COLLISION IF COLLISION
                RTS              ;ELSE RETURN TO MAIN PROGRAM
COLLISION      JSR BXDRAW       ;ERASE BULLET
                etc.

```

Next, you will notice that when the bullet is erased after no collision, we access a routine called BXDRAW instead of BDRAW. This is because BDRAW contains the collision test instructions. If we access BDRAW for the bullet erase, LDA (LOW),Y would load the Accumulator with the content of the screen byte, which is in fact the bullet shape byte because the bullet is already on the screen at that location. Thus, if we then do an AND BTEMP, a collision will always be detected even though the bullet isn't hitting anything (except itself!). Therefore we use BXDRAW to erase—BXDRAW is the same as BDRAW but without the collision test instructions.

Finally, we have to discuss how to ensure that the shapes to collide will occupy the same bit positions at the apparent point of collision, a not inconsequential problem. If a shape to be tested for a collision is moved one bit or line at a time, there is no problem, but if the shape moves in larger increments, the collision test may fail even though a collision appears to take place on the screen. For example, the bullet shape in Program 7-1 is tested for a collision at only every eighth line (because it moves up eight lines at a time) starting from line 164 (\$A4). Thus, a collision will be detected only with shapes that occupy a screen line some multiple of 8 from the starting line—this is why the top line is drawn at line 12 (\$0C).

Try this for yourself. Draw the top line at screen line 11 or 13 and run the program—the bullet will appear to go right through the line with no collision. However, this appears to be much more of a problem than it is. First, in most cases, shapes are moved only one line or bit at a time and in this situation, every screen line or bit position will be collision-tested. Second, in the case of larger movements, such as the bullet move, all we need do is ensure that the shape to be collided with is in the proper position. In the final game program, for example, bullets are fired at passing planes and all we have to do is draw the planes or

some part of the planes at screen lines some multiple of 8 from the bullet starting line. Remember, we are now expert assembly language programmers and so we can draw shapes anywhere we want!

Suppose, however, we can't predict the screen position of a shape to be collided with. For example, suppose we modify the game program so that the planes drop bombs and we want to detect collisions of the bullet with the bombs as well as the planes. The bombs drop in a parabolic curve and at the point of apparent collision with the bullet, may or may not be at one of the multiple of 8 line positions. To get around this, we can use the following BDRAW routine which collision-tests every line position from the last bullet drawn, not just the eighth position up:

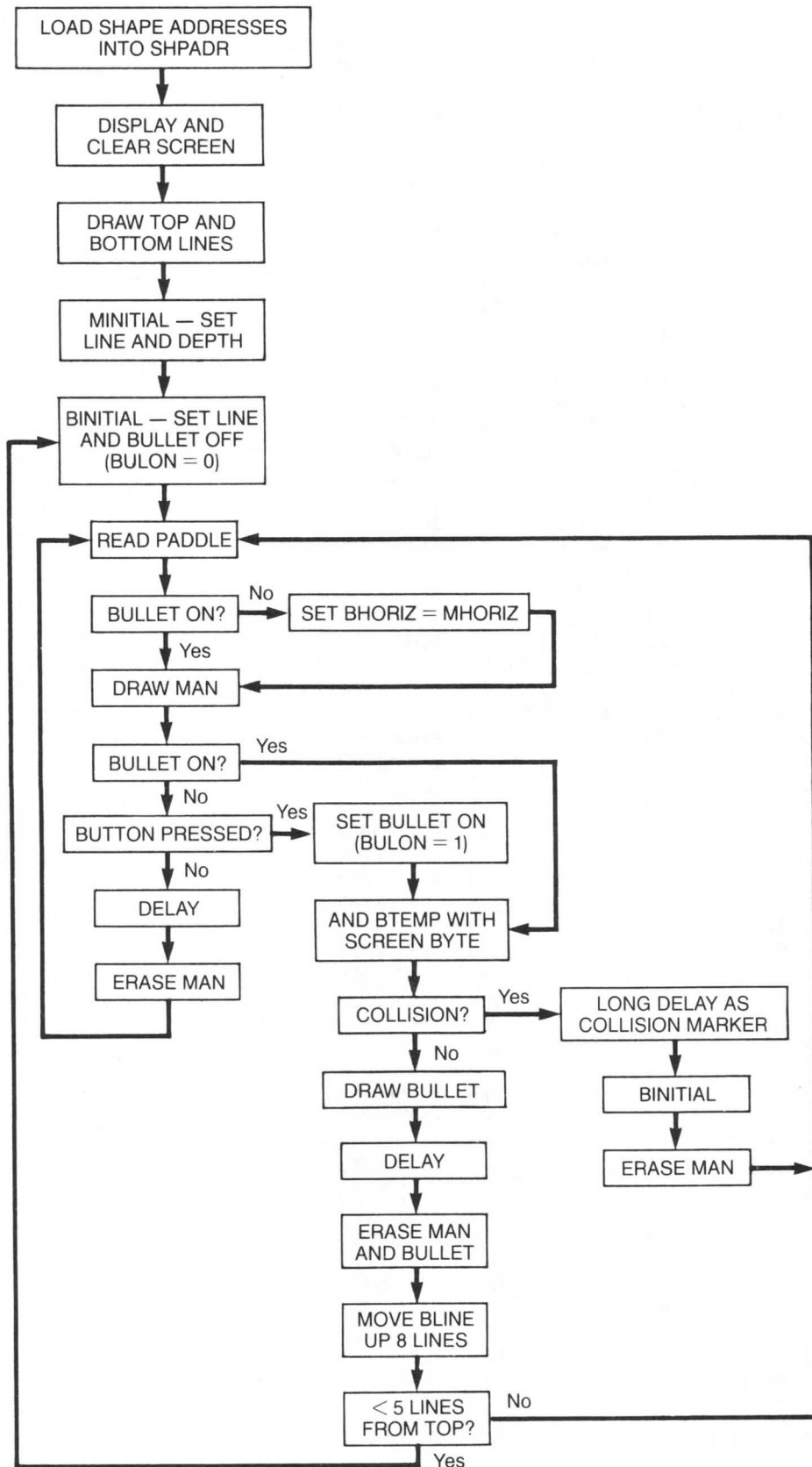
```
BDRAW  LDA BLINE      ;BL IS LOADED WITH BLINE AND
        STA BL        ;CTR WITH BLINE + UP 7 LINES
        SEC
        SBC #$07
        STA CTR

***** TEST COLLISION FROM BL TO CTR *****

COL     LDX BL          ;TEST COLLISION FOR LINE BL
        LDY HORIZB
        LDA HI,X
        STA HIGH
        LDA LO,X
        STA LOW
        LDA (LOW),Y
        AND BTEMP
        CMP #$00        ;IF NO COLLISION, GO TO COL1 TO TEST NEXT LINE
        BEQ COL1
        JMP COLLISION   ;IF COLLISION, JUMP TO COLLISION
COL1    DEC BL          ;TEST NEXT LINE UP
        LDA BL
        CMP CTR
        BGE COL         ;STOP TEST WHEN LINE REACHES CTR
        LDX BLINE       ;IF NO COLLISION, DRAW BULLET
        LDY HORIZB
        LDA HI,X
        STA HIGH
        LDA LO,X
        STA LOW
        LDA (LOW),Y
        EOR BTEMP
        STA (LOW),Y
        RTS
```

Try this routine in Program 7-1. You will find that the bullet will collide with any shape regardless of its screen line position.

One final word about shape positions and collisions. If the shape to be collided with is larger than the movement of the collision test shape, the above type of routine would not be necessary. For example, if we want to test for the collision of a bullet with a shape that at every point is at least 8 lines deep, then obviously some part of the shape will always be at a line position that is some multiple of 8 from the bullet starting line.



```

]PROGRAM 7-1
:ASM
1      *TESTING FOR COLLISION*
2      ORG    $6000
6000: 4C 52 60 3      JMP    PGM
4      MLINE   DS    1
5      MLINEA  DS    1
6      BLINE   DS    1
7      DEPTH   DS    1
8      MHORIZ  DS    1
9      BHORIZ  DS    1
10     HORIZB  DS    1
11     HORIZM  DS    1
12     BULON   DS    1
13     XCOUNT  DS    1
14     DELAY   DS    1
15     BTEMP   DS    1
16     MTEMP   DS    39
17     GRAPHICS =    $C050
18     MIXOFF  =    $C052
19     HIRES   =    $C057
20     PAGE1   =    $C054
21     HIGH    =    $1B
22     LOW     =    $1A
23     WAIT    =    $FCA8
24     PREAD   =    $FB1E
25     BUTTON  =    $C061      ;BUTTON 0
26     *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
27     *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
28     MSHPADR DFB    #<MSHAPE1
29           DFB    #>MSHAPE1
30           DFB    #<MSHAPE2
31           DFB    #>MSHAPE2
32           DFB    #<MSHAPE3
33           DFB    #>MSHAPE3
34           DFB    #<MSHAPE4
35           DFB    #>MSHAPE4
36           DFB    #<MSHAPE5
37           DFB    #>MSHAPE5
38           DFB    #<MSHAPE6
39           DFB    #>MSHAPE6
40           DFB    #<MSHAPE7
41           DFB    #>MSHAPE7
42     BSHPADR DFB    #<BSHAPE1
43           DFB    #>BSHAPE1
44           DFB    #<BSHAPE2
45           DFB    #>BSHAPE2
46           DFB    #<BSHAPE3
47           DFB    #>BSHAPE3
48           DFB    #<BSHAPE4
49           DFB    #>BSHAPE4
50           DFB    #<BSHAPE5
51           DFB    #>BSHAPE5
52           DFB    #<BSHAPE6
53           DFB    #>BSHAPE6
54           DFB    #<BSHAPE7
55           DFB    #>BSHAPE7
6052: AD 50 C0 56     PGM    LDA    GRAPHICS      ;HIRES,P.1
6055: AD 52 C0 57     LDA    MIXOFF
6058: AD 57 C0 58     LDA    HIRES
605B: AD 54 C0 59     LDA    PAGE1

```



```

605E: A9 00      60      LDA    #$00      ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6060: 85 1A      61      STA    LOW
6062: A9 20      62      LDA    #$20
6064: 85 1B      63      STA    HIGH
6066: A0 00      64      CLR1   LDY    #$00
6068: A9 00      65      CLR     LDA    #$00
606A: 91 1A      66      CLR     STA    (LOW),Y
606C: C8         67      INY
606D: D0 FB      68      BNE    CLR
606F: E6 1B      69      INC    HIGH
6071: A5 1B      70      LDA    HIGH
6073: C9 40      71      CMP    #$40
6075: 90 EF      72      BLT    CLR1
6077: A9 50      73      LDA    #$50      ;LOAD DELAY
6079: 8D 0D 60   74      STA    DELAY
607C: A2 B7      75      LDX    #$B7      ;DRAW BOTTOM LINE
607E: A0 00      76      LDY    #$00
6080: BD 2A 65   77      LDA    HI,X
6083: 85 1B      78      STA    HIGH
6085: BD EA 65   79      LDA    LO,X
6088: 85 1A      80      STA    LOW
608A: A9 7F      81      LDA    #$7F
608C: 91 1A      82      LN      STA    (LOW),Y
608E: C8         83      INY
608F: C0 27      84      CPY    #$27
6091: 90 F9      85      BLT    LN
6093: A2 0C      86      LDX    #$0C      ;DRAW TOP LINE
6095: A0 00      87      LDY    #$00
6097: BD 2A 65   88      LDA    HI,X
609A: 85 1B      89      STA    HIGH
609C: BD EA 65   90      LDA    LO,X
609F: 85 1A      91      STA    LOW
60A1: A9 7F      92      LDA    #$7F
60A3: 91 1A      93      LN1    STA    (LOW),Y
60A5: C8         94      INY
60A6: C0 14      95      CPY    #$14
60A8: 90 F9      96      BLT    LN1
60A9:          97      ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
60AA: 20 FB 60   98      JSR    MINITIAL ;SET LINE & DEPTH OF MAN
60AD: 20 0A 61   99      JSR    BINITIAL ;SET LINE FOR BULLET
60B0: 20 15 61  100     PADDLE JSR    PDLE    ;READ PADDLE
60B3: 20 50 61  101      JSR    MDRAW   ;DRAW MAN
60B6: AD 0B 60  102      LDA    BULON
60B9: C9 01     103      CMP    #$01      ;IS BULLET ON?
60BB: F0 16     104      BEQ    BULLET ;IF YES, CONTINUE BULLET DRAW
60BD: AD 61 C0  105      LDA    BUTTON  ;IF NO, IS BUTTON PRESSED?
60C0: 30 0C     106      BMI    BULLET1 ;IF YES, DRAW BULLET
60C2: AD 0D 60  107      LDA    DELAY   ;IF NO,
60C5: 20 A8 FC  108      JSR    WAIT    DELAY AND
60C8: 20 50 61  109      JSR    MDRAW   ERASE MAN AND
60CB: 4C B0 60  110      JMP    PADDLE  READ PADDLE AGAIN
60CE: A9 01     111     BULLET1 LDA    #$01 ;SET BULLET ON
60D0: 8D 0B 60  112      STA    BULON
60D3: 20 9A 61  113     BULLET JSR    LOADBUL ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
60D6: 20 BD 61  114      JSR    BDRAW  ;DRAW BULLET & TEST FOR COLLISION
60D9: AD 0D 60  115      LDA    DELAY
60DC: 20 A8 FC  116      JSR    WAIT    ;DELAY
60DF: 20 F4 61  117      JSR    BXDRAW  ;ERASE BULLET
60E2: 20 50 61  118      JSR    MDRAW   ;ERASE MAN
60E5: AD 05 60  119      LDA    BLINE
60E8: 38         120      SEC

```



```

60E9: E9 08      121      SBC  #$08      ;MOVE BLINE UP 8 LINES
60EB: 8D 05 60   122      STA  BLINE
60EE: C9 05      123      CMP  #$05      ;LESS THAN 5 LINES FROM TOP?
60F0: 90 03      124      BLT  TOP      ;IF YES TAKE BRANCH
60F2: 4C B0 60   125      JMP  PADDLE   ;IF NO, READ PADDLE AGAIN
60F5: 20 0A 61   126      TOP   JSR  BINITIAL ;INITIALIZE BULLET LINE
60F8: 4C B0 60   127      JMP  PADDLE   ;READ PADDLE
128 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
60FB: A9 AA      129      MINITIAL LDA  #$AA
60FD: 8D 03 60   130      STA  MLINE
6100: 8D 04 60   131      STA  MLINEA
6103: 18        132      CLC
6104: 69 0D      133      ADC  #$0D
6106: 8D 06 60   134      STA  DEPTH
6109: 60        135      RTS
136 *****
610A: A9 00      137      BINITIAL LDA  #$00      ;BULON = 0 IF
610C: 8D 0B 60   138      STA  BULON      BULLET NOT ON SCREEN
610F: A9 A4      139      LDA  #$A4
6111: 8D 05 60   140      STA  BLINE
6114: 60        141      RTS
142 *****
6115: A2 00      143      PDLE   LDX  #$00
6117: 20 1E FB   144      JSR  PREAD      ;READ PADDLE 0
611A: 98        145      TYA
611B: 8D 07 60   146      STA  MHORIZ      ;0-255 IN MHORIZ
611E: AD 0B 60   147      LDA  BULON
6121: C9 01      148      CMP  #$01      ;IS BULLET ON?
6123: F0 06      149      BEQ  PDLE1     ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH
6125: AD 07 60   150      LDA  MHORIZ      ;IF NO, SET BHORIZ EQUAL
6128: 8D 08 60   151      STA  BHORIZ      TO MHORIZ
612B: AC 07 60   152      PDLE1  LDY  MHORIZ
612E: B9 24 63   153      LDA  BYTETBL,Y    ;CONVERT 0-255 TO 0-36 (BYTE)
6131: 8D 0A 60   154      STA  HORIZM      ;MAN BYTE POSITION
6134: B9 27 64   155      LDA  OFFSET,Y    ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
6137: 0A        156      ASL          ;LOAD SHAPE INTO MTEMP
6138: AA        157      TAX
6139: BD 36 60   158      LDA  MSHPADR,X
613C: 85 1A      159      STA  LOW
613E: BD 37 60   160      LDA  MSHPADR+1,X
6141: 85 1B      161      STA  HIGH
6143: A0 00      162      LDY  #$00
6145: B1 1A      163      LOAD   LDA  (LOW),Y
6147: 99 0F 60   164      STA  MTEMP,Y
614A: C8        165      INY
614B: C0 27      166      CPY  #$27
614D: 90 F6      167      BLT  LOAD
614F: 60        168      RTS
169 *****
6150: A9 00      170      MDRAW  LDA  #$00
6152: 8D 0C 60   171      STA  XCOUNT
6155: AE 03 60   172      MDRAW1 LDX  MLINE
6158: AC 0A 60   173      LDY  HORIZM
615B: BD 2A 65   174      LDA  HI,X
615E: 85 1B      175      STA  HIGH
6160: BD EA 65   176      LDA  LO,X
6163: 85 1A      177      STA  LOW
6165: AE 0C 60   178      LDX  XCOUNT
6168: B1 1A      179      LDA  (LOW),Y
616A: 5D 0F 60   180      EOR  MTEMP,X
616D: 91 1A      181      STA  (LOW),Y

```

```

616F: C8      182      INY
6170: B1 1A    183      LDA (LOW),Y
6172: 5D 10 60 184      EOR MTEMP+1,X
6175: 91 1A    185      STA (LOW),Y
6177: C8      186      INY
6178: B1 1A    187      LDA (LOW),Y
617A: 5D 11 60 188      EOR MTEMP+2,X
617D: 91 1A    189      STA (LOW),Y
617F: EE 0C 60 190      INC XCOUNT
6182: EE 0C 60 191      INC XCOUNT
6185: EE 0C 60 192      INC XCOUNT
6188: EE 03 60 193      INC MLINE
618B: AD 03 60 194      LDA MLINE
618E: CD 06 60 195      CMP DEPTH
6191: 90 C2     196      BLT MDRAW1
6193: AD 04 60 197      LDA MLINEA      ;RESET LINE
6196: 8D 03 60 198      STA MLINE
6199: 60      199      RTS
200 *****
619A: AC 08 60 201 LOADBUL LDY BHORIZ      ;CONVERTS 0-255 TO
619D: B9 24 63 202      LDA BYTETBL,Y      SCREEN BYTE (0-36)
61A0: 18      203      CLC      ;ADD 2 TO ALIGN BULLET
61A1: 69 02    204      ADC #$02      WITH GUN
61A3: 8D 09 60 205      STA HORIZB      ;BULLET BYTE POSITION
61A6: B9 27 64 206      LDA OFFSET,Y      ;GET BULLET SHAPE NUMBER
61A9: 0A      207      ASL      ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
61AA: AA      208      TAX
61AB: BD 44 60 209      LDA BSHPADR,X
61AE: 85 1A    210      STA LOW
61B0: BD 45 60 211      LDA BSHPADR+1,X
61B3: 85 1B    212      STA HIGH
61B5: A0 00    213      LDY #$00
61B7: B1 1A    214      LDA (LOW),Y
61B9: 8D 0E 60 215      STA BTEMP
61BC: 60      216      RTS
217 *****
61BD: AE 05 60 218 BDRAW LDX BLINE
61C0: AC 09 60 219      LDY HORIZB
61C3: BD 2A 65 220      LDA HI,X
61C6: 85 1B    221      STA HIGH
61C8: BD EA 65 222      LDA LO,X
61CB: 85 1A    223      STA LOW
61CD: B1 1A    224      LDA (LOW),Y
61CF: 2D 0E 60 225      AND BTEMP      ;RESULT IS 0 IF NO COLLISION
61D2: C9 00    226      CMP #$00
61D4: F0 03    227      BEQ NOHIT
61D6: 4C E1 61 228      JMP COLLISION
61D9: B1 1A    229      LDA (LOW),Y      ;CONTINUE BULLET DRAW
61DB: 4D 0E 60 230      EOR BTEMP
61DE: 91 1A    231      STA (LOW),Y
61E0: 60      232      RTS
233 *****
61E1: A0 10    234 COLLISION LDY #$10      ;LONG TIME DELAY
61E3: A9 FF    235 COL1 LDA #$FF
61E5: 20 A8 FC 236      JSR WAIT
61E8: 88      237      DEY
61E9: 10 F8    238      BPL COL1
61EB: 20 0A 61 239      JSR BINITIAL
61EE: 20 50 61 240      JSR MDRAW      ;ERASE MAN
61F1: 4C B0 60 241      JMP PADDLE
242 *****

```

```

61F4: AE 05 60 243 BXDRAW LDX BLINE ;BDRAW WITHOUT COLLISION TEST
61F7: AC 09 60 244 LDY HORIZB
61FA: BD 2A 65 245 LDA HI,X
61FD: 85 1B 246 STA HIGH
61FF: BD EA 65 247 LDA LO,X
6202: 85 1A 248 STA LOW
6204: B1 1A 249 LDA (LOW),Y
6206: 4D 0E 60 250 EOR BTEMP
6209: 91 1A 251 STA (LOW),Y
620B: 60 252 RTS
        253 *****
620C: 00 0E 01 254 MSHAPE1 HEX 000E01000E01000E01 ;MAN SHAPE TABLES
620F: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01
6215: 00 44 01 255 HEX 004401007F00601F00
6218: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00
621E: 30 1F 00 256 HEX 301F00181F00001F00
6221: 18 1F 00 00 1F 00
6227: 00 1F 00 257 HEX 001F00001B00403100
622A: 00 1B 00 40 31 00
6230: 60 60 00 258 HEX 606000
6233: 00 1C 02 259 MSHAPE2 HEX 001C02001C02001C02
6236: 00 1C 02 00 1C 02
623C: 00 08 03 260 HEX 000803007E01003E00
623F: 00 7E 01 00 3E 00
6245: 00 3F 00 261 HEX 003F00403F00003E00
6248: 40 3F 00 00 3E 00
624E: 00 3E 00 262 HEX 003E00003600003600
6251: 00 36 00 00 36 00
6257: 00 63 00 263 HEX 006300
625A: 00 38 04 264 MSHAPE3 HEX 003804003804003804
625D: 00 38 04 00 38 04
6263: 00 10 06 265 HEX 001006007C03007C00
6266: 00 7C 03 00 7C 00
626C: 00 7C 00 266 HEX 007C00007E00007C00
626F: 00 7E 00 00 7C 00
6275: 00 38 00 267 HEX 003800003800006C00
6278: 00 38 00 00 6C 00
627E: 00 46 01 268 HEX 004601
6281: 00 70 08 269 MSHAPE4 HEX 007008007008007008
6284: 00 70 08 00 70 08
628A: 00 20 0C 270 HEX 00200C007807007801
628D: 00 78 07 00 78 01
6293: 00 78 01 271 HEX 007801007801007801
6296: 00 78 01 00 78 01
629C: 00 70 00 272 HEX 007000007000007000
629F: 00 70 00 00 70 00
62A5: 00 70 00 273 HEX 007000
62A8: 00 60 11 274 MSHAPE5 HEX 006011006011006011
62AB: 00 60 11 00 60 11
62B1: 00 40 18 275 HEX 00401800700F007003
62B4: 00 70 0F 00 70 03
62BA: 00 70 03 276 HEX 007003007803007003
62BD: 00 78 03 00 70 03
62C3: 00 60 01 277 HEX 006001006001003003
62C6: 00 60 01 00 30 03
62CC: 00 18 06 278 HEX 001806
62CF: 00 40 23 279 MSHAPE6 HEX 004023004023004023
62D2: 00 40 23 00 40 23
62D8: 00 00 31 280 HEX 00003100601F006007
62DB: 00 60 1F 00 60 07
62E1: 00 70 07 281 HEX 007007007807006007

```

```

62E4: 00 78 07 00 60 07
62EA: 00 60 07 282          HEX 006007006006006006
62ED: 00 60 06 00 60 06
62F3: 00 30 0C 283          HEX 00300C
62F6: 00 00 47 284 MSHAPE7 HEX 000047000047000047
62F9: 00 00 47 00 00 47
62FF: 00 00 62 285          HEX 00006200403F00700F
6302: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F
6308: 00 58 0F 286          HEX 00580F004C0F00400F
630B: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F
6311: 00 40 0F 287          HEX 00400F00400D006018
6314: 00 40 0D 00 60 18
631A: 00 30 30 288          HEX 003030
631D: 01          289 BSHAPE1 HEX 01          ;BULLET SHAPES
631E: 02          290 BSHAPE2 HEX 02
631F: 04          291 BSHAPE3 HEX 04
6320: 08          292 BSHAPE4 HEX 08
6321: 10          293 BSHAPE5 HEX 10
6322: 20          294 BSHAPE6 HEX 20
6323: 40          295 BSHAPE7 HEX 40

      BYTETBL
      OFFSET
      HI
      LO

```

1706 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	MLINE	=\$6003	MLINEA	=\$6004
BLINE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	MHORIZ	=\$6007	BHORIZ	=\$6008
HORIZB	=\$6009	HORIZM	=\$600A	BULON	=\$600B	XCOUNT	=\$600C
DELAY	=\$600D	BTEMP	=\$600E	MTEMP	=\$600F	MSHPADR	=\$6036
BSHPADR	=\$6044	PGM	=\$6052	CLR1	=\$6066	CLR	=\$606A
LN	=\$608C	LN1	=\$60A3	PADDLE	=\$60B0	BULLET1	=\$60CE
BULLET	=\$60D3	TOP	=\$60F5	MINITIAL	=\$60FB	BINITIAL	=\$610A
PDLE	=\$6115	PDLE1	=\$612B	LOAD	=\$6145	MDRAW	=\$6150
MDRAW1	=\$6155	LOADBUL	=\$619A	BDRAW	=\$61BD	NOHIT	=\$61D9
COLLISION	=\$61E1	COL1	=\$61E3	BXDRAW	=\$61F4	MSHAPE1	=\$620C
MSHAPE2	=\$6233	MSHAPE3	=\$625A	MSHAPE4	=\$6281	MSHAPE5	=\$62A8
MSHAPE6	=\$62CF	MSHAPE7	=\$62F6	BSHAPE1	=\$631D	BSHAPE2	=\$631E
BSHAPE3	=\$631F	BSHAPE4	=\$6320	BSHAPE5	=\$6321	BSHAPE6	=\$6322
BSHAPE7	=\$6323	BYTETBL	=\$6324	OFFSET	=\$6427	HI	=\$652A
LO	=\$65EA	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	BUTTON	=\$C061	PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8

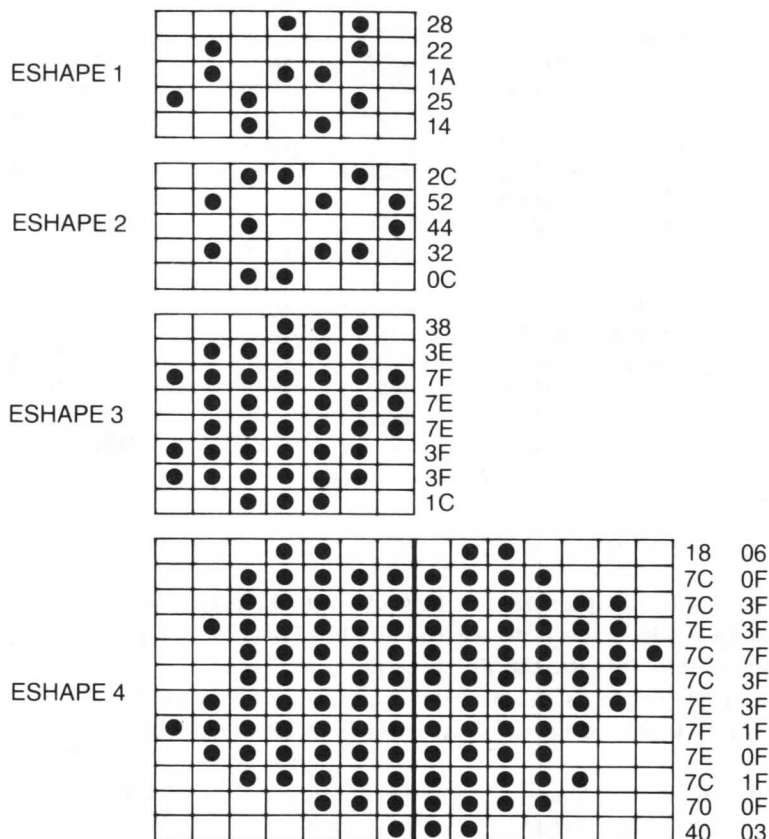
EXPLOSIONS

Collisions don't always result in explosions but they often do (and they will in our final game program), so let's see how we can modify Program 7-1 to display an explosion when a bullet hits the top line (see Program 7-2).

There are two problems associated with explosion routines. One, how do we draw the explosion and two, where do we draw it? Let's tackle the second problem first.

Obviously we want to draw the explosion at the point of impact. How do we determine where this is? Easy. The horizontal position of the explosion is

For example, suppose we modify the game program so that planes appear at several different line positions—to know where to draw the explosion we would use `HORIZB` and `BLINE`. In programs involving collisions with multiple shapes, it's also important to know which shape is hit, because (as we'll see in the game program, although not in the programs in this chapter) the first thing we do after detecting a collision is to erase the target shape. Consider a program where a plane is dropping bombs and we want to detect collisions with both. We know the line position of the plane and so if `BLINE` tells us we're at that line, we know we've hit the plane. If `BLINE` tells us the collision is below the plane line, we know we've hit a bomb. Now consider a more complicated example. Suppose we have planes appearing at different lines, each dropping bombs. It's conceivable that a bullet may hit a bomb just at the line position of one of the planes. In this case if we rely just on `BLINE`, we won't know which shape we've hit. To solve this problem we would use both the bomb and bullet shapes as collision testers. If the bomb and bullet hit something, we know we've hit a bomb. If only the bullet hits something, we know we've hit a plane. Let's take this one step



further. Suppose the bomb hits something but the bullet doesn't. This means the bomb has hit either the bottom line or the man and we can distinguish between these two alternatives by determining at what line the collision took place.

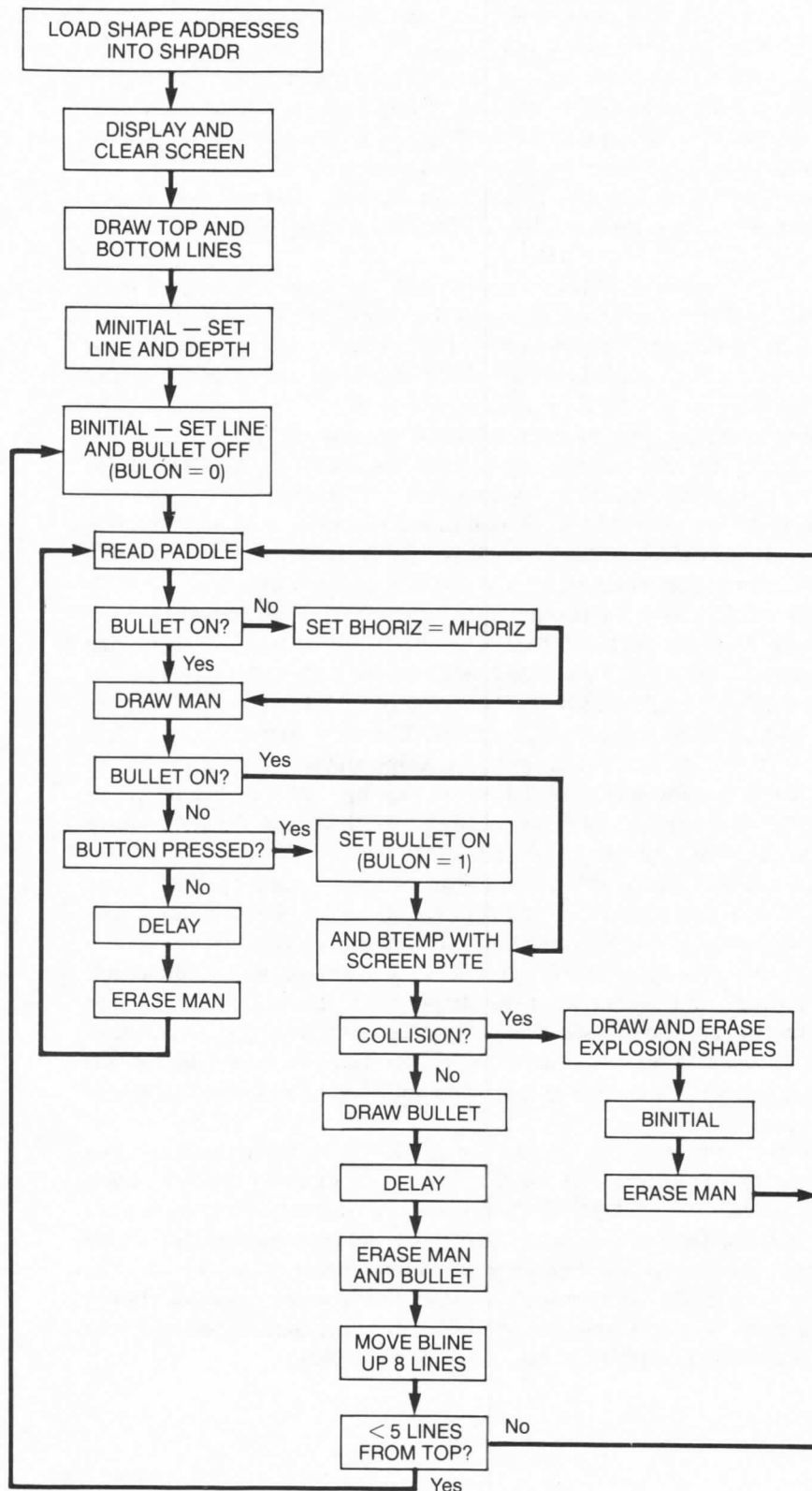
Now let's get to the explosion draw routines. There are many ways to display explosion shapes, from starbursts to splaying of fragments to fireballs, etc. For Program 7-2 and for the game program, we're going to use the fireball type of display. To simulate an explosion, we draw (and erase), at the point of impact, the four shapes (shown on opposite page) in succession—the first two shapes are just random dots, the third is a filled-in "fireball," and the fourth is a larger "fireball."

In Program 7-2, when a collision is detected, the program jumps to the COLLISION subroutine, which then accesses the EXPLOSION subroutine (line 237). Here each of the four shapes in turn is initialized, drawn, delayed, and erased. The program then returns to the COLLISION routine to initialize the bullet, erase the man, and go back for another paddle read.

Each explosion shape has its own initialization routine, labelled INITE1, INITE2, etc., which sets the starting line (ELINE and ELINEA), depth of shape (EDEPTH), and XCOUNT. XCOUNT is specified for each shape because the ESHAPE shape table is accessed in a way that doesn't involve an ESHPADR table, both because it's convenient and because it serves to illustrate that we should not be a slave to any particular type of routine if other routines are equally feasible. In the explosion draw routines, the shape byte is retrieved by EOR ESHAPE,X where X is specified by XCOUNT. Thus, to draw the first shape, we set XCOUNT to zero (lines 323 and 324). Because the first shape contains five bytes, the second shape begins at the sixth position of ESHAPE. Therefore, we set XCOUNT to #05 for the second shape ($\text{ESHAPE} + 5 = \text{sixth byte of table}$). Similarly, we set XCOUNT to #0A for the third shape and to #12 for the fourth shape. This type of routine works well if we're dealing with small numbers of shapes and if the shape table is not overly large (we discussed the problem of using this protocol with large shape tables in Chapter 5).

The value for ELINE can be determined from BLINE, the line position of the bullet when the AND test indicates a collision, but as we know where the target is (at screen line #0C), this becomes unnecessary in this case. However, the particular values we choose for ELINE depend to some extent on how the shape table is constructed and how we want the shapes to be displayed. This is done more or less by trial and error—we simply try different lines to see what looks right. Explosion shapes 1 and 2 are started at line #09 and because a hot fireball always moves up, shape 3 is started at line #05 and shape 4 at line #01, i.e., at higher screen positions.

The explosion draw routines are the usual DRAW-ERASE type except that we have to use two routines, one for the first three shapes (DRAW1) and another for the fourth shape (DRAW2), as the fourth shape is 2 bytes wide but the others only 1. For the erase cycle, we first delay and then reinitialize to reset the appropriate parameters—we then go to the draw routine again to erase. The delay times for each shape are also set by trial and error—the ones I've chosen seem to work best. Finally, as mentioned above, the horizontal position of the explosion is determined by HORIZB (see lines 279 and 298).



]PROGRAM 7-2
:ASM

```

1      *COLLISION AND EXPLOSION*
2      ORG $6000
6000: 4C 55 60 3      JMP PGM
4      MLINE DS 1
5      MLINEA DS 1
6      BLINE DS 1
7      DEPTH DS 1
8      MHORIZ DS 1
9      BHORIZ DS 1
10     HORIZB DS 1
11     HORIZM DS 1
12     BULON DS 1
13     XCOUNT DS 1
14     DELAY DS 1
15     BTEMP DS 1
16     MTEMP DS 39
17     ELINE DS 1
18     ELINEA DS 1
19     EDEPTH DS 1
20     GRAPHICS = $C050
21     MIXOFF = $C052
22     HIRES = $C057
23     PAGE1 = $C054
24     HIGH = $1B
25     LOW = $1A
26     WAIT = $FCA8
27     PREAD = $FB1E
28     BUTTON = $C061 ;BUTTON 0
29     *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
30     *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6039: 09 31     MSHPADR DFB #<MSHAPE1
603A: 63 32     DFB #>MSHAPE1
603B: 30 33     DFB #<MSHAPE2
603C: 63 34     DFB #>MSHAPE2
603D: 57 35     DFB #<MSHAPE3
603E: 63 36     DFB #>MSHAPE3
603F: 7E 37     DFB #<MSHAPE4
6040: 63 38     DFB #>MSHAPE4
6041: A5 39     DFB #<MSHAPE5
6042: 63 40     DFB #>MSHAPE5
6043: CC 41     DFB #<MSHAPE6
6044: 63 42     DFB #>MSHAPE6
6045: F3 43     DFB #<MSHAPE7
6046: 63 44     DFB #>MSHAPE7
6047: 1A 45     BSHPADR DFB #<BSHAPE1
6048: 64 46     DFB #>BSHAPE1
6049: 1B 47     DFB #<BSHAPE2
604A: 64 48     DFB #>BSHAPE2
604B: 1C 49     DFB #<BSHAPE3
604C: 64 50     DFB #>BSHAPE3
604D: 1D 51     DFB #<BSHAPE4
604E: 64 52     DFB #>BSHAPE4
604F: 1E 53     DFB #<BSHAPE5
6050: 64 54     DFB #>BSHAPE5
6051: 1F 55     DFB #<BSHAPE6
6052: 64 56     DFB #>BSHAPE6
6053: 20 57     DFB #<BSHAPE7
6054: 64 58     DFB #>BSHAPE7
6055: AD 50 C0 59     PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1

```



```

6058: AD 52 C0 60      LDA MIXOFF
605B: AD 57 C0 61      LDA HIRES
605E: AD 54 C0 62      LDA PAGE1
6061: A9 00 63      LDA #$00      ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6063: 85 1A 64      STA LOW
6065: A9 20 65      LDA #$20
6067: 85 1B 66      STA HIGH
6069: A0 00 67      CLR1 LDY #$00
606B: A9 00 68      LDA #$00
606D: 91 1A 69      CLR STA (LOW),Y
606F: C8 70      INY
6070: D0 FB 71      BNE CLR
6072: E6 1B 72      INC HIGH
6074: A5 1B 73      LDA HIGH
6076: C9 40 74      CMP #$40
6078: 90 EF 75      BLT CLR1
607A: A9 50 76      LDA #$50      ;LOAD DELAY
607C: 8D 0D 60 77      STA DELAY
607F: A2 B7 78      LDX #$B7      ;DRAW BOTTOM LINE
6081: A0 00 79      LDY #$00
6083: BD 51 66 80      LDA HI,X
6086: 85 1B 81      STA HIGH
6088: BD 11 67 82      LDA LO,X
608B: 85 1A 83      STA LOW
608D: A9 7F 84      LDA #$7F
608F: 91 1A 85      LN STA (LOW),Y
6091: C8 86      INY
6092: C0 27 87      CPY #$27
6094: 90 F9 88      BLT LN
6096: A2 0C 89      LDX #$0C      ;DRAW TOP LINE
6098: A0 00 90      LDY #$00
609A: BD 51 66 91      LDA HI,X
609D: 85 1B 92      STA HIGH
609F: BD 11 67 93      LDA LO,X
60A2: 85 1A 94      STA LOW
60A4: A9 7F 95      LDA #$7F
60A6: 91 1A 96      LN1 STA (LOW),Y
60A8: C8 97      INY
60A9: C0 14 98      CPY #$14
60AB: 90 F9 99      BLT LN1
60AD: 20 FE 60 100 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
60B0: 20 0D 61 102      JSR MINITIAL ;SET LINE & DEPTH OF MAN
60B3: 20 18 61 103      PADDLE JSR PDLE ;SET LINE FOR BULLET
60B6: 20 53 61 104      JSR MDRAW ;READ PADDLE
60B9: AD 0B 60 105      LDA BULON ;DRAW MAN
60BC: C9 01 106      CMP #$01 ;IS BULLET ON?
60BE: F0 16 107      BEQ BULLET ;IF YES, CONTINUE BULLET DRAW
60C0: AD 61 C0 108      LDA BUTTON ;IF NO, IS BUTTON PRESSED?
60C3: 30 0C 109      BMI BULLET1 ;IF YES, DRAW BULLET
60C5: AD 0D 60 110      LDA DELAY ;IF NO,
60C8: 20 A8 FC 111      JSR WAIT DELAY AND
60CB: 20 53 61 112      JSR MDRAW ERASE MAN AND
60CE: 4C B3 60 113      JMP PADDLE READ PADDLE AGAIN
60D1: A9 01 114      BULLET1 LDA #$01 ;SET BULLET ON
60D3: 8D 0B 60 115      STA BULON
60D6: 20 9D 61 116      BULLET JSR LOADBUL ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
60D9: 20 C0 61 117      JSR BDRAW ;DRAW BULLET & TEST FOR COLLISION
60DC: AD 0D 60 118      LDA DELAY
60DF: 20 A8 FC 119      JSR WAIT ;DELAY
60E2: 20 F0 61 120      JSR BXDRAW ;ERASE BULLET

```

```

60E5: 20 53 61 121      JSR  MDRAW      ;ERASE MAN
60E8: AD 05 60 122      LDA  BLINE
60EB: 38                SEC
60EC: E9 08            SBC  #$08      ;MOVE BLINE UP 8 LINES
60EE: 8D 05 60 125      STA  BLINE
60F1: C9 05            CMP  #$05      ;LESS THAN 5 LINES FROM TOP?
60F3: 90 03            BLT  TOP       ;IF YES TAKE BRANCH
60F5: 4C B3 60 128      JMP  PADDLE   ;IF NO, READ PADDLE AGAIN
60F8: 20 0D 61 129      JSR  BINITIAL ;INITIALIZE BULLET LINE
60FB: 4C B3 60 130      JMP  PADDLE   ;READ PADDLE
131 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
60FE: A9 AA            MINITIAL LDA  #$AA
6100: 8D 03 60 133      STA  MLINE
6103: 8D 04 60 134      STA  MLINEA
6106: 18                CLC
6107: 69 0D            ADC  #$0D
6109: 8D 06 60 137      STA  DEPTH
610C: 60                RTS
139 *****
610D: A9 00            BINITIAL LDA  #$00      ;BULON = 0 IF
610F: 8D 0B 60 141      STA  BULON      BULLET NOT ON SCREEN
6112: A9 A4            LDA  #$A4
6114: 8D 05 60 143      STA  BLINE
6117: 60                RTS
145 *****
6118: A2 00            PDLE    LDX  #$00
611A: 20 1E FB 147      JSR  PREAD      ;READ PADDLE 0
611D: 98                TYA
611E: 8D 07 60 149      STA  MHORIZ   ;0-255 IN MHORIZ
6121: AD 0B 60 150      LDA  BULON
6124: C9 01            CMP  #$01      ;IS BULLET ON?
6126: F0 06            BEQ  PDLE1     ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH
6128: AD 07 60 153      LDA  MHORIZ   ;IF NO, SET BHORIZ EQUAL
612B: 8D 08 60 154      STA  BHORIZ      TO MHORIZ
612E: AC 07 60 155      PDLE1   LDY  MHORIZ
6131: B9 4B 64 156      LDA  BYTETBL,Y ;CONVERT 0-255 TO 0-36 (BYTE)
6134: 8D 0A 60 157      STA  HORIZM   ;MAN BYTE POSITION
6137: B9 4E 65 158      LDA  OFFSET,Y ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
613A: 0A                ASL           ;LOAD SHAPE INTO MTEMP
613B: AA                TAX
613C: BD 39 60 161      LDA  MSHPADR,X
613F: 85 1A            STA  LOW
6141: BD 3A 60 163      LDA  MSHPADR+1,X
6144: 85 1B            STA  HIGH
6146: A0 00            LDY  #$00
6148: B1 1A            LOAD    LDA  (LOW),Y
614A: 99 0F 60 167      STA  MTEMP,Y
614D: C8                INY
614E: C0 27            CPY  #$27
6150: 90 F6            BLT  LOAD
6152: 60                RTS
171 *****
6153: A9 00            MDRAW   LDA  #$00
6155: 8D 0C 60 174      STA  XCOUNT
6158: AE 03 60 175      MDRAW1  LDX  MLINE
615B: AC 0A 60 176      LDY  HORIZM
615E: BD 51 66 177      LDA  HI,X
6161: 85 1B            STA  HIGH
6163: BD 11 67 179      LDA  LO,X
6166: 85 1A            STA  LOW
6168: AE 0C 60 181      LDX  XCOUNT

```

```

616B: B1 1A      182      LDA (LOW),Y
616D: 5D 0F 60   183      EOR MTEMP,X
6170: 91 1A      184      STA (LOW),Y
6172: C8         185      INY
6173: B1 1A      186      LDA (LOW),Y
6175: 5D 10 60   187      EOR MTEMP+1,X
6178: 91 1A      188      STA (LOW),Y
617A: C8         189      INY
617B: B1 1A      190      LDA (LOW),Y
617D: 5D 11 60   191      EOR MTEMP+2,X
6180: 91 1A      192      STA (LOW),Y
6182: EE 0C 60   193      INC XCOUNT
6185: EE 0C 60   194      INC XCOUNT
6188: EE 0C 60   195      INC XCOUNT
618B: EE 03 60   196      INC MLINE
618E: AD 03 60   197      LDA MLINE
6191: CD 06 60   198      CMP DEPTH
6194: 90 C2      199      BLT MDRAW1
6196: AD 04 60   200      LDA MLINEA      ;RESET LINE
6199: 8D 03 60   201      STA MLINE
619C: 60         202      RTS
                203      *****
619D: AC 08 60   204      LOADBUL LDY BHORIZ      ;CONVERTS 0-255 TO
61A0: B9 4B 64   205      LDA BYTETBL,Y      SCREEN BYTE (0-36)
61A3: 18         206      CLC      ;ADD 2 TO ALIGN BULLET
61A4: 69 02      207      ADC #$02      WITH GUN
61A6: 8D 09 60   208      STA HORIZB      ;BULLET BYTE POSITION
61A9: B9 4E 65   209      LDA OFFSET,Y      ;GET BULLET SHAPE NUMBER
61AC: 0A         210      ASL      ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
61AD: AA         211      TAX
61AE: BD 47 60   212      LDA BSHPADR,X
61B1: 85 1A      213      STA LOW
61B3: BD 48 60   214      LDA BSHPADR+1,X
61B6: 85 1B      215      STA HIGH
61B8: A0 00      216      LDY #$00
61BA: B1 1A      217      LDA (LOW),Y
61BC: 8D 0E 60   218      STA BTEMP
61BF: 60         219      RTS
                220      *****
61C0: AE 05 60   221      BDRAW LDX BLINE
61C3: AC 09 60   222      LDY HORIZB
61C6: BD 51 66   223      LDA HI,X
61C9: 85 1B      224      STA HIGH
61CB: BD 11 67   225      LDA LO,X
61CE: 85 1A      226      STA LOW
61D0: B1 1A      227      LDA (LOW),Y
61D2: 2D 0E 60   228      AND BTEMP      ;RESULT IS 0 IF NO COLLISION
61D5: C9 00      229      CMP #$00
61D7: F0 03      230      BEQ NOHIT
61D9: 4C E4 61   231      JMP COLLISION
61DC: B1 1A      232      NOHIT LDA (LOW),Y      ;DRAW BULLET
61DE: 4D 0E 60   233      EOR BTEMP
61E1: 91 1A      234      STA (LOW),Y
61E3: 60         235      RTS
                236      *****
61E4: 20 08 62   237      COLLISION JSR EXPLODE
61E7: 20 0D 61   238      JSR BINITIAL
61EA: 20 53 61   239      JSR MDRAW      ;ERASE MAN
61ED: 4C B3 60   240      JMP PADDLE
                241      *****
61F0: AE 05 60   242      BXDRAW LDX BLINE      ;BDRAW WITHOUT COLLISION TEST

```

```

61F3: AC 09 60 243      LDY  HORIZB
61F6: BD 51 66 244      LDA  HI,X
61F9: 85 1B 245         STA  HIGH
61FB: BD 11 67 246      LDA  LO,X
61FE: 85 1A 247         STA  LOW
6200: B1 1A 248         LDA  (LOW),Y
6202: 4D 0E 60 249      EOR  BTEMP
6205: 91 1A 250         STA  (LOW),Y
6207: 60 251           RTS
252 *****
6208: 20 B9 62 253 EXPLODE JSR  INITE1
620B: 20 4D 62 254         JSR  DRAWE1      ;DRAW
620E: A9 60 255         LDA  #$60
6210: 20 A8 FC 256         JSR  WAIT
6213: 20 B9 62 257         JSR  INITE1
6216: 20 4D 62 258         JSR  DRAWE1      ;ERASE
6219: 20 CD 62 259         JSR  INITE2
621C: 20 4D 62 260         JSR  DRAWE1      ;DRAW
621F: A9 BB 261         LDA  #$BB
6221: 20 A8 FC 262         JSR  WAIT
6224: 20 CD 62 263         JSR  INITE2
6227: 20 4D 62 264         JSR  DRAWE1      ;ERASE
622A: 20 E1 62 265         JSR  INITE3
622D: 20 4D 62 266         JSR  DRAWE1      ;DRAW
6230: A9 BB 267         LDA  #$BB
6232: 20 A8 FC 268         JSR  WAIT
6235: 20 E1 62 269         JSR  INITE3
6238: 20 4D 62 270         JSR  DRAWE1      ;ERASE
623B: 20 F5 62 271         JSR  INITE4
623E: 20 7C 62 272         JSR  DRAWE2      ;DRAW
6241: A9 FF 273         LDA  #$FF
6243: 20 A8 FC 274         JSR  WAIT
6246: 20 F5 62 275         JSR  INITE4
6249: 20 7C 62 276         JSR  DRAWE2      ;ERASE
624C: 60 277           RTS
278 *****
624D: AC 09 60 279 DRAWWE1 LDY  HORIZB      ;ROUTINE FOR FIRST 3
6250: AE 36 60 280         LDX  ELINE      EXPLOSION SHAPES
6253: BD 51 66 281         LDA  HI,X
6256: 85 1B 282         STA  HIGH
6258: BD 11 67 283         LDA  LO,X
625B: 85 1A 284         STA  LOW
625D: AE 0C 60 285         LDX  XCOUNT
6260: B1 1A 286         LDA  (LOW),Y
6262: 5D 21 64 287         EOR  ESHAPE,X
6265: 91 1A 288         STA  (LOW),Y
6267: EE 0C 60 289         INC  XCOUNT
626A: EE 36 60 290         INC  ELINE
626D: AD 36 60 291         LDA  ELINE
6270: CD 38 60 292         CMP  EDEPTH
6273: 90 D8 293         BLT  DRAWE1
6275: AD 37 60 294         LDA  ELINEA
6278: 8D 36 60 295         STA  ELINE
627B: 60 296           RTS
297 *****
627C: AC 09 60 298 DRAWWE2 LDY  HORIZB      ;ROUTINE FOR FOURTH
627F: AE 36 60 299         LDX  ELINE      EXPLOSION SHAPE
6282: BD 51 66 300         LDA  HI,X
6285: 85 1B 301         STA  HIGH
6287: BD 11 67 302         LDA  LO,X
628A: 85 1A 303         STA  LOW

```

```

628C: AE 0C 60 304      LDX  XCOUNT
628F: B1 1A 305      LDA  (LOW),Y
6291: 5D 21 64 306      EOR  ESHAPE,X
6294: 91 1A 307      STA  (LOW),Y
6296: EE 0C 60 308      INC  XCOUNT
6299: C8 309      INY
629A: AE 0C 60 310      LDX  XCOUNT
629D: B1 1A 311      LDA  (LOW),Y
629F: 5D 21 64 312      EOR  ESHAPE,X
62A2: 91 1A 313      STA  (LOW),Y
62A4: EE 0C 60 314      INC  XCOUNT
62A7: EE 36 60 315      INC  ELINE
62AA: AD 36 60 316      LDA  ELINE
62AD: CD 38 60 317      CMP  EDEPTH
62B0: 90 CA 318      BLT  DRAW2
62B2: AD 37 60 319      LDA  ELINEA
62B5: 8D 36 60 320      STA  ELINE
62B8: 60 321      RTS
322 *****
62B9: A9 00 323  INITE1  LDA  #$00      ;INITIALIZE FIRST EXPLOSION
62BB: 8D 0C 60 324      STA  XCOUNT
62BE: A9 09 325      LDA  #$09
62C0: 8D 37 60 326      STA  ELINEA
62C3: 8D 36 60 327      STA  ELINE
62C6: 18 328      CLC
62C7: 69 05 329      ADC  #$05
62C9: 8D 38 60 330      STA  EDEPTH
62CC: 60 331      RTS
62CD: A9 05 332  INITE2  LDA  #$05      ;INITIALIZE SECOND EXPLOSION
62CF: 8D 0C 60 333      STA  XCOUNT
62D2: A9 09 334      LDA  #$09
62D4: 8D 37 60 335      STA  ELINEA
62D7: 8D 36 60 336      STA  ELINE
62DA: 18 337      CLC
62DB: 69 05 338      ADC  #$05
62DD: 8D 38 60 339      STA  EDEPTH
62E0: 60 340      RTS
62E1: A9 0A 341  INITE3  LDA  #$0A      ;INITIALIZE THIRD EXPLOSION
62E3: 8D 0C 60 342      STA  XCOUNT
62E6: A9 05 343      LDA  #$05
62E8: 8D 37 60 344      STA  ELINEA
62EB: 8D 36 60 345      STA  ELINE
62EE: 18 346      CLC
62EF: 69 08 347      ADC  #$08
62F1: 8D 38 60 348      STA  EDEPTH
62F4: 60 349      RTS
62F5: A9 12 350  INITE4  LDA  #$12      ;INITIALIZE FOURTH EXPLOSION
62F7: 8D 0C 60 351      STA  XCOUNT
62FA: A9 01 352      LDA  #$01
62FC: 8D 37 60 353      STA  ELINEA
62FF: 8D 36 60 354      STA  ELINE
6302: 18 355      CLC
6303: 69 0C 356      ADC  #$0C
6305: 8D 38 60 357      STA  EDEPTH
6308: 60 358      RTS
359 *****
6309: 00 0E 01 360  MSHAPE1  HEX  000E01000E01000E01  ;MAN SHAPE TABLES
630C: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01
6312: 00 44 01 361      HEX  004401007F00601F00
6315: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00
631B: 30 1F 00 362      HEX  301F00181F00001F00

```

631E:	18 1F 00 00 1F 00		
6324:	00 1F 00 363	HEX	001F00001B00403100
6327:	00 1B 00 40 31 00		
632D:	60 60 00 364	HEX	606000
6330:	00 1C 02 365 MSHAPE2	HEX	001C02001C02001C02
6333:	00 1C 02 00 1C 02		
6339:	00 08 03 366	HEX	000803007E01003E00
633C:	00 7E 01 00 3E 00		
6342:	00 3F 00 367	HEX	003F00403F00003E00
6345:	40 3F 00 00 3E 00		
634B:	00 3E 00 368	HEX	003E00003600003600
634E:	00 36 00 00 36 00		
6354:	00 63 00 369	HEX	006300
6357:	00 38 04 370 MSHAPE3	HEX	003804003804003804
635A:	00 38 04 00 38 04		
6360:	00 10 06 371	HEX	001006007C03007C00
6363:	00 7C 03 00 7C 00		
6369:	00 7C 00 372	HEX	007C00007E00007C00
636C:	00 7E 00 00 7C 00		
6372:	00 38 00 373	HEX	003800003800006C00
6375:	00 38 00 00 6C 00		
637B:	00 46 01 374	HEX	004601
637E:	00 70 08 375 MSHAPE4	HEX	007008007008007008
6381:	00 70 08 00 70 08		
6387:	00 20 0C 376	HEX	00200C007807007801
638A:	00 78 07 00 78 01		
6390:	00 78 01 377	HEX	007801007801007801
6393:	00 78 01 00 78 01		
6399:	00 70 00 378	HEX	007000007000007000
639C:	00 70 00 00 70 00		
63A2:	00 70 00 379	HEX	007000
63A5:	00 60 11 380 MSHAPE5	HEX	006011006011006011
63A8:	00 60 11 00 60 11		
63AE:	00 40 18 381	HEX	00401800700F007003
63B1:	00 70 0F 00 70 03		
63B7:	00 70 03 382	HEX	007003007803007003
63BA:	00 78 03 00 70 03		
63C0:	00 60 01 383	HEX	006001006001003003
63C3:	00 60 01 00 30 03		
63C9:	00 18 06 384	HEX	001806
63CC:	00 40 23 385 MSHAPE6	HEX	004023004023004023
63CF:	00 40 23 00 40 23		
63D5:	00 00 31 386	HEX	00003100601F006007
63D8:	00 60 1F 00 60 07		
63DE:	00 70 07 387	HEX	007007007807006007
63E1:	00 78 07 00 60 07		
63E7:	00 60 07 388	HEX	006007006006006006
63EA:	00 60 06 00 60 06		
63F0:	00 30 0C 389	HEX	00300C
63F3:	00 00 47 390 MSHAPE7	HEX	000047000047000047
63F6:	00 00 47 00 00 47		
63FC:	00 00 62 391	HEX	00006200403F00700F
63FF:	00 40 3F 00 70 0F		
6405:	00 58 0F 392	HEX	00580F004C0F00400F
6408:	00 4C 0F 00 40 0F		
640E:	00 40 0F 393	HEX	00400F00400D006018
6411:	00 40 0D 00 60 18		
6417:	00 30 30 394	HEX	003030
641A:	01 395 BSHAPE1	HEX	01 ;BULLET SHAPES
641B:	02 396 BSHAPE2	HEX	02
641C:	04 397 BSHAPE3	HEX	04

```

641D: 08      398 BSHAPE4 HEX 08
641E: 10      399 BSHAPE5 HEX 10
641F: 20      400 BSHAPE6 HEX 20
6420: 40      401 BSHAPE7 HEX 40
6421: 28 22 1A 402 ESHAPE HEX 28221A2514 ;EXPLOSION SHAPES - NO. 1
6424: 25 14
6426: 2C 52 44 403      HEX 2C5244320C ;NO. 2
6429: 32 0C
642B: 38 3E 7F 404      HEX 383E7F7E7E3F3F1C ;NO. 3
642E: 7E 7E 3F 3F 1C
6433: 18 06 7C 405      HEX 18067C0F7C3F7E3F ;NO. 4
6436: 0F 7C 3F 7E 3F
643B: 7C 7F 7C 406      HEX 7C7F7C3F7E3F7F1F
643E: 3F 7E 3F 7F 1F
6443: 7E 0F 7C 407      HEX 7E0F7C1F700F4003
6446: 1F 70 0F 40 03

```

BYTETBL
 OFFSET
 HI
 LO

2001 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	MLINE	=\$6003	MLINEA	=\$6004
BLINE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	MHORIZ	=\$6007	BHORIZ	=\$6008
HORIZB	=\$6009	HORIZM	=\$600A	BULON	=\$600B	XCOUNT	=\$600C
DELAY	=\$600D	BTEMP	=\$600E	MTEMP	=\$600F	ELINE	=\$6036
ELINEA	=\$6037	EDEPTH	=\$6038	MSHPADR	=\$6039	BSHPADR	=\$6047
PGM	=\$6055	CLR1	=\$6069	CLR	=\$606D	LN	=\$608F
LN1	=\$60A6	PADDLE	=\$60B3	BULLET1	=\$60D1	BULLET	=\$60D6
TOP	=\$60F8	MINITIAL	=\$60FE	BINITIAL	=\$610D	PDLE	=\$6118
PDLE1	=\$612E	LOAD	=\$6148	MDRAW	=\$6153	MDRAW1	=\$6158
LOADBUL	=\$619D	BDRAW	=\$61C0	NOHIT	=\$61DC	COLLISION	=\$61E4
BXDRAW	=\$61F0	EXPLODE	=\$6208	DRAW1	=\$624D	DRAW2	=\$627C
INITE1	=\$62B9	INITE2	=\$62CD	INITE3	=\$62E1	INITE4	=\$62F5
MSHAPE1	=\$6309	MSHAPE2	=\$6330	MSHAPE3	=\$6357	MSHAPE4	=\$637E
MSHAPE5	=\$63A5	MSHAPE6	=\$63CC	MSHAPE7	=\$63F3	BSHAPE1	=\$641A
BSHAPE2	=\$641B	BSHAPE3	=\$641C	BSHAPE4	=\$641D	BSHAPE5	=\$641E
BSHAPE6	=\$641F	BSHAPE7	=\$6420	ESHAPE	=\$6421	BYTETBL	=\$644B
OFFSET	=\$654E	HI	=\$6651	LO	=\$6711	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	BUTTON	=\$C061
PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

One last point. Run Program 7-2 and pay particular attention to the paddle control of the man movement while the explosion shapes are being drawn. You will see, if you look carefully enough, that the man becomes unresponsive to the paddle control until the explosion shapes are finished. An examination of the Program 7-2 flowchart will tell you why this is happening. The entire explosion routine is run before the program branches back for another paddle read. Because the explosion routine uses up some amount of time caused by all the delays between shapes, the program is interrupted momentarily. In many cases, however, including this one and the game program, such an interruption is acceptable because it is of fairly short duration and the man is not moving at some constant speed and thus doesn't appear to "freeze" during the delay. In fact, the user's attention would probably be riveted on the explosion rather than

on trying to move the man and so would hardly notice the unresponsiveness of the paddle (it's hardly noticeable even when you're paying attention).

Suppose, however, we have two plane shapes moving across the screen at the same time. When one is hit, the other will freeze in position until the explosion shapes have all been drawn and erased. This would be noticeable and should be avoided. We can solve this problem in the following way. In the EXPLODE subroutine, instead of inserting a delay between each draw and erase, we branch to a routine that will erase the man and read the paddle for another man draw and then return to the explosion. In other words, a program loop will replace the delays. The protocol would then be draw-loop-erase-draw-loop-erase, etc. The loop cannot use the same paddle read routine that's already in the program because we don't want to go through another bullet draw and collision test, and so we would have another routine that would consist of just erase man—paddle read—draw man. The time for the loop will almost assuredly not be as long as the delays already in the explosion routine and so we would probably have to introduce some time delay between the draw and erase cycles. The exact delays to insert would again be a matter of trial and error—we would just try different values until that second plane moved properly.

This discussion emphasizes an important point about game design (or for that matter any program that is doing more than one thing at a time on the screen) and that is the time delays that are necessary to reduce shape flicker (and sometimes to slow the program down) are exactly the points where one can introduce program loops when one is expanding the program to do more things. We will see, for example, when we get to the game program, that an explosion sound routine is inserted in place of the delay between drawing and erasing the first explosion shape. The sound routine itself provides the necessary delay, and we end up with a program where the explosion looks the same as before, but now with an extra feature.

Scoring, Stopping and Restarting

*A salesman with motives deplorable
Showed an Apple game to a customer adorable.
He said, "This game we'll now play
Scores every which way,
But scoring with you is preferable."*

Scoring in game programs is almost a law of nature. I can't think of one game program I've tried over the years that didn't have some type of score routine. Of course now that we're experts in hi-res graphics, we can devise any type of scoring display we desire. We can choose our own number shapes, put them anywhere on the screen we want, enclose them in a scoring box with a title, even count in Roman numerals! But let's not get too ambitious. The first program in this chapter discusses a simple scoring routine that's used in the game program. The second program presents a routine of more general utility. We're also going to discuss how to stop a program at a predetermined score and how to start it again from the keyboard.

COUNTING BY ONES

In the following program (Program 8-1), we're going to modify Program 7-2 so that a score display, initially set to 000, increments by 1 each time the top line is hit by a bullet. When the score reaches 100, the program stops and can be restarted by pressing any key. The scoring routine in this program will be incorporated into the game program.

The numbers we'll be using to display the score are simply hi-res shapes depicting digits 0 to 9 (big surprise, eh?). Each number shape is 1 byte wide by 8 lines deep and the 10 shapes are stored in a table labeled NSHAPE. These shapes are accessed and printed in a way we haven't seen before, just for variety's sake and to show off our assembly language dexterity. In the PRINT subroutine, the beginning of each number shape is accessed by LDA NSHAPE,X. Because each number contains 8 bytes, when X = 0, the beginning of the first shape (digit 0) is accessed, when X = 8, the second shape (digit 1) is accessed, when X = 16, the third shape (digit 2 is accessed), etc. Once X is specified, PRINT

then accesses each byte of the designated shape in turn by LDA NSHAPE+1,X, LDA NSHAPE+2,X LDA NSHAPE+7,X. As each byte of the number shape is retrieved, it is printed on a separate line, starting from line 184 to line 191, i.e., just below the bottom line the man is walking on.

The lines where the shapes are to be drawn are specified as direct addresses from the hi-res screen memory map instead of from the line address tables—this saves execution time and program space and is easy to do when dealing with small routines such as PRINT. (In fact, in some programs, if they're large and complicated enough, the use of direct addresses may be called for just to get the program to run fast enough, as a table look-up is a time-consuming process.) The draw instruction has the form STA \$23D0,Y (this is for line 184)—\$23D0 specifies the line, whereas Y specifies the horizontal position where the byte is to be drawn.

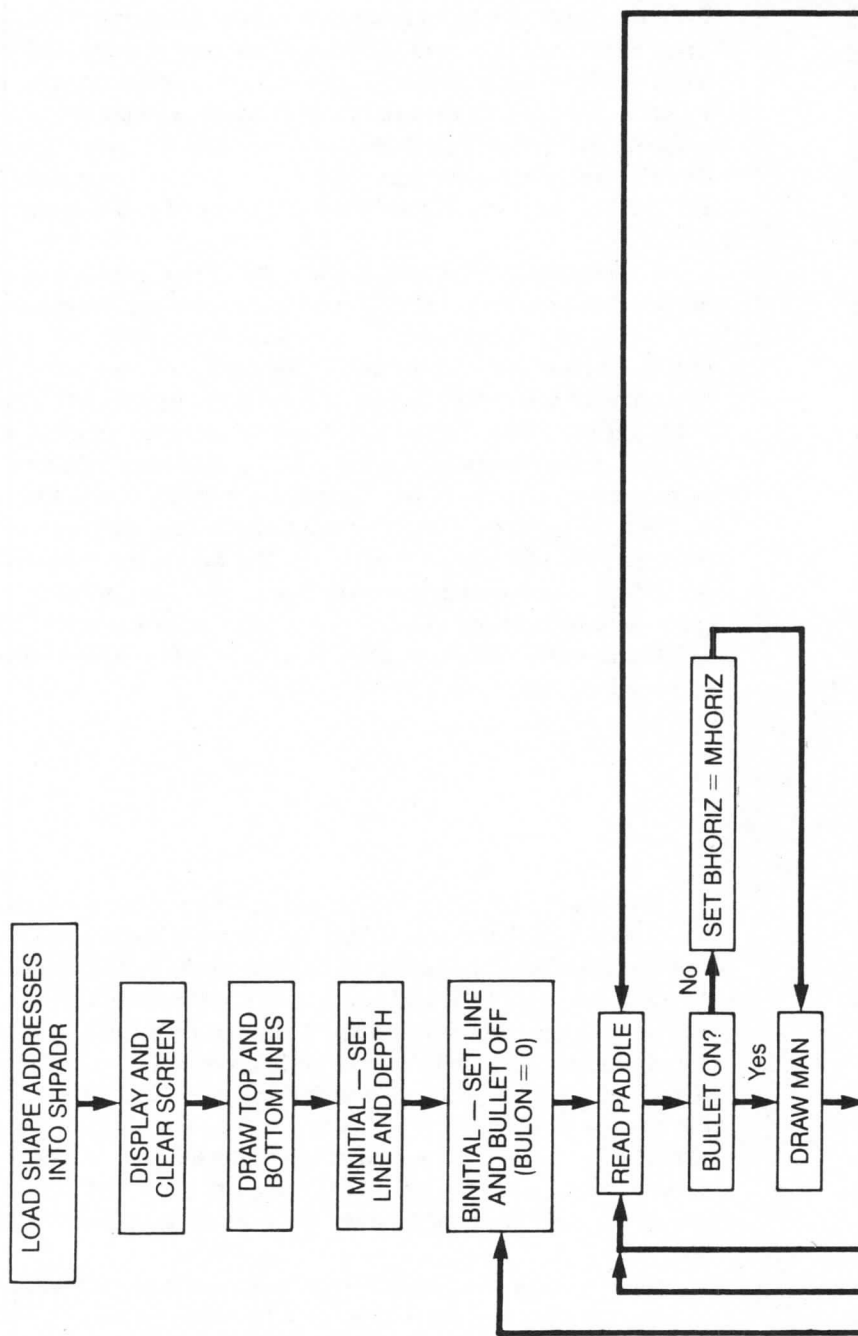
To summarize—X specifies the number shape from 0 to 9, the line positions are specified directly in PRINT, and Y specifies the horizontal position.

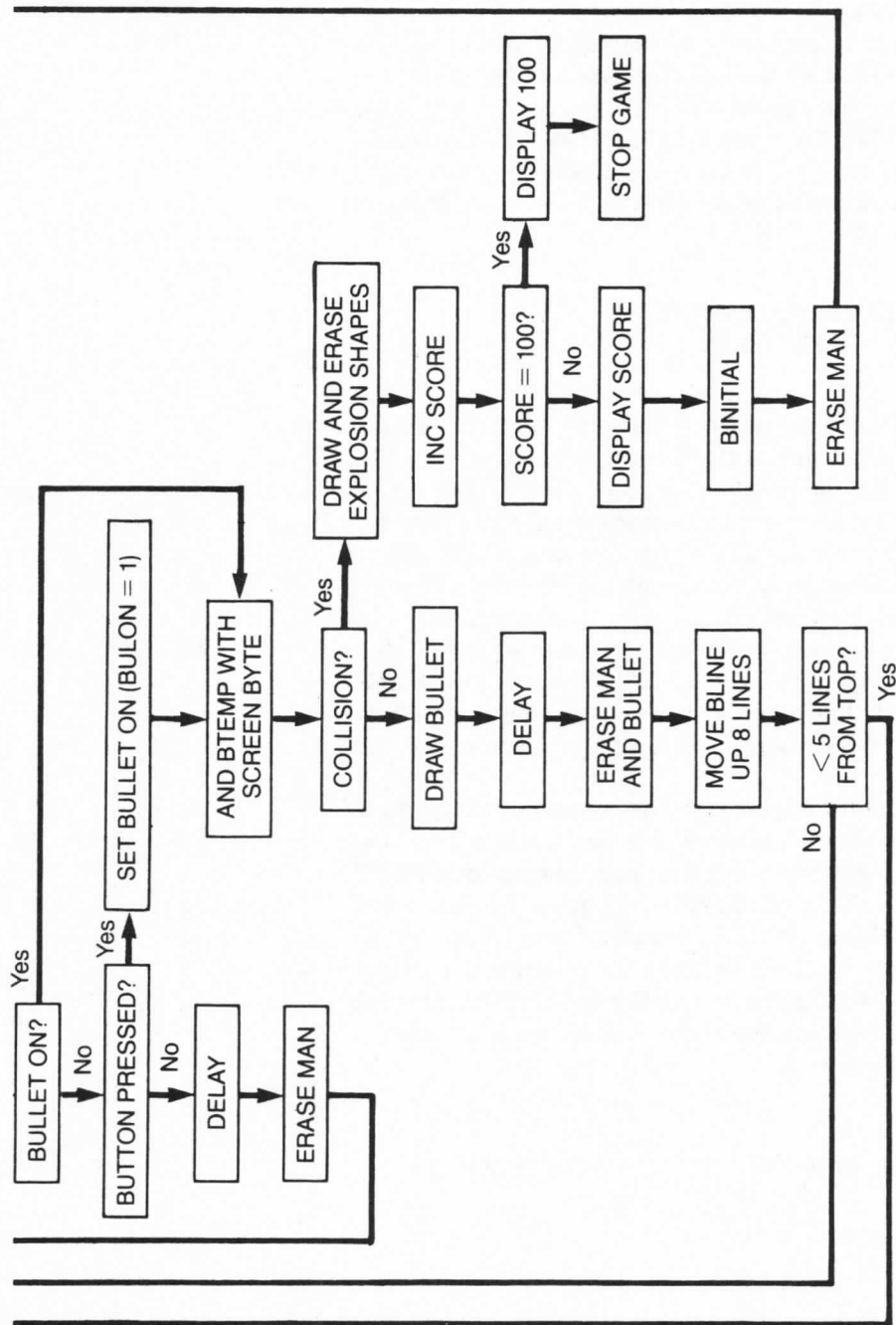
To see how all this works, let's look at the SINITIAL subroutine that prints 000 just below the bottom line at the center of the screen. This is done at the beginning of the program (line 105) to zero the counter. First, the Accumulator is loaded with #\$00 (line 149). Memory locations labelled SUM and COUNTER are also zeroed (we'll get to these later). The next instruction, TAX (line 152), transfers the contents of the Accumulator, #\$00, to the X register. Because X = 0, when we go to the PRINT subroutine the first number shape (digit 0) will be printed. Line 153 loads Y with #\$11, the horizontal position of the first or leftmost digit in the counter display. JSR PRINT then prints 0 at that position. Y is then incremented and another 0 is printed at position #\$12. Finally, a third 0 is printed at #\$13—the loop stops when Y = #\$14. The relationship of Y then to the counter digits is as follows:

#\$11	#\$12	#\$13
.....
0	0	0

Now that we've zeroed the counter, let's see how we count collision events. Every time a collision is detected, we do a INC SUM and JSR SCORE (lines 252 and 253) in the COLLISION subroutine. In the SCORE subroutine, we load the Accumulator with SUM and compare the value to 10 (10A). If it's not equal to 10, we skip the branch in line 378 and multiply the number by 8. (Remember ASL multiplies by 2 and so three ASLs gives $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$; if you don't understand this, return this book for an immediate refund.) We multiply by 8 to access the proper number shape. Thus, when SUM = 1, X = 8 and digit 1 is accessed; when SUM = 2, X = 16 and digit 2 is accessed, and so on. We then transfer the number to X, load Y with #\$13, and print with a JSR PRINT. The number is printed in the rightmost counter position so the counter will now display 001, 002, etc.

Suppose now the number in SUM has been incremented to 10. The branch at line 378 is taken and we go to C10 to increment COUNTER and load the Accumulator with COUNTER (lines 386 and 387). If the number in COUNTER is not equal to 10, the branch in line 389 is not taken and the number in COUNTER is multiplied by 8, transferred to X, and printed at position #\$12 (Y = #\$12, line 394). The middle counter digit will then be 1. We then zero SUM and jump back to SCORE to print a zero in the rightmost position. The counter now





displays 010, which is what we want because $SUM = 10$. Now when we increment again, SUM will contain 1 and a 1 will be printed at $Y = \$13$. Because SUM is again less than 10, the branch to C10 is not taken and $COUNTER$ retains its value of 1. Thus, the counter will display 011. The counting then continues. Each time SUM gets to 10, $COUNTER$ is incremented by 1 and SUM is zeroed; $COUNTER$ is printed in $Y = \$12$ and SUM in $Y = \$13$.

With this routine we can count to essentially any number simply by specifying other counters, such as $COUNTER1$ for the 100s column, $COUNTER2$ for the 1000s column, etc., and modifying the routine to access these counters at the appropriate times; e.g., when $COUNTER$ reaches 10, $COUNTER1$ is incremented by 1 and printed in $\$11$, and so on. Also, we're not limited by the fact that a memory location can hold a maximum value of $\$FF$, as SUM and $COUNTER$ never contain values greater than 10.

STOPPING AT A PREDETERMINED SCORE AND RESTARTING WITH A KEYPRESS

SUM is the counter for the 1's column and $COUNTER$ for the 10's column. Thus, when $COUNTER$ gets to 10, it means the score has reached 100. The branch at line 389 is then taken and the program jumps to $STOP1$. Here 100 is printed in the counter display and the program then goes to $STOP$. At this routine, the instruction $BIT \$C000$ accesses a soft switch that says watch for any keypress. BIT —Compare Accumulator BITS with contents of memory—is an instruction whose main functions I simply do not want to get into and you wouldn't want to either if you saw what it does. Maybe in some future book on advanced techniques (Volume DCMXIII?) I'll discuss it, but for now I use it only to illustrate one of its more arcane but useful features—it can replace LDA or STA to access a soft switch, and it does so without damaging the contents of the Accumulator.

To get back to line 407, $BIT \$C000$ says watch for any keypress and the next line ($BPL STOP$) says if no key is pressed, go back and watch again. This loop continues until any key is pressed, at which point the program continues to $BIT \$C010$, which accesses a soft switch to clear the keyboard strobe (the keyboard holds the last key pressed until either another key is pressed or until the strobe is cleared), and then finally to $JMP PGM$ which starts the program over. Note that we don't have to go back to the program starting line at $\$6000$ for a restart because everything from $\$6000$ to PGM has already been done and is in memory. (See flowchart on pages 142 and 143.)

]PROGRAM 8-1
:ASM

	1	*COLLISION AND EXPLOSION WITH SCORING*
	2	ORG \$6000
6000: 4C 57 60	3	JMP PGM
	4	MLINE DS 1
	5	MLINEA DS 1
	6	BLINE DS 1
	7	DEPTH DS 1
	8	MHORIZ DS 1
	9	BHORIZ DS 1
	10	HORIZB DS 1
	11	HORIZM DS 1
	12	BULON DS 1
	13	XCOUNT DS 1

```

14  DELAY      DS      1
15  BTEMP     DS      1
16  MTEMP     DS     39
17  ELINE     DS      1
18  ELINEA    DS      1
19  EDEPTH    DS      1
20  SUM       DS      1
21  COUNTER   DS      1
22  GRAPHICS  =     $C050
23  MIXOFF    =     $C052
24  HIRES     =     $C057
25  PAGE1     =     $C054
26  HIGH      =     $1B
27  LOW       =     $1A
28  WAIT      =     $FCA8
29  PREAD     =     $FB1E
30  BUTTON    =     $C061      ;BUTTON 0
31  *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
32  *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
603B: F3      33  MSHPADR  DFB  #<MSHAPE1
603C: 63      34          DFB  #>MSHAPE1
603D: 1A      35          DFB  #<MSHAPE2
603E: 64      36          DFB  #>MSHAPE2
603F: 41      37          DFB  #<MSHAPE3
6040: 64      38          DFB  #>MSHAPE3
6041: 68      39          DFB  #<MSHAPE4
6042: 64      40          DFB  #>MSHAPE4
6043: 8F      41          DFB  #<MSHAPE5
6044: 64      42          DFB  #>MSHAPE5
6045: B6      43          DFB  #<MSHAPE6
6046: 64      44          DFB  #>MSHAPE6
6047: DD      45          DFB  #<MSHAPE7
6048: 64      46          DFB  #>MSHAPE7
6049: 04      47  BSHPADR  DFB  #<BSHAPE1
604A: 65      48          DFB  #>BSHAPE1
604B: 05      49          DFB  #<BSHAPE2
604C: 65      50          DFB  #>BSHAPE2
604D: 06      51          DFB  #<BSHAPE3
604E: 65      52          DFB  #>BSHAPE3
604F: 07      53          DFB  #<BSHAPE4
6050: 65      54          DFB  #>BSHAPE4
6051: 08      55          DFB  #<BSHAPE5
6052: 65      56          DFB  #>BSHAPE5
6053: 09      57          DFB  #<BSHAPE6
6054: 65      58          DFB  #>BSHAPE6
6055: 0A      59          DFB  #<BSHAPE7
6056: 65      60          DFB  #>BSHAPE7
6057: AD 50 CO 61  PGM     LDA  GRAPHICS      ;HIRES,P.1
605A: AD 52 CO 62          LDA  MIXOFF
605D: AD 57 CO 63          LDA  HIRES
6060: AD 54 CO 64          LDA  PAGE1
6063: A9 00      65          LDA  #$00      ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6065: 85 1A      66          STA  LOW
6067: A9 20      67          LDA  #$20
6069: 85 1B      68          STA  HIGH
606B: A0 00      69  CLR1   LDY  #$00
606D: A9 00      70          LDA  #$00
606F: 91 1A      71  CLR     STA  (LOW),Y
6071: C8          72          INY
6072: D0 FB      73          BNE  CLR
6074: E6 1B      74          INC  HIGH

```

```

6076: A5 1B      75      LDA HIGH
6078: C9 40      76      CMP #$40
607A: 90 EF      77      BLT CLR1
607C: A9 50      78      LDA #$50      ;LOAD DELAY
607E: 8D 0D 60   79      STA DELAY
6081: A2 B7      80      LDX #$B7      ;DRAW BOTTOM LINE
6083: A0 00      81      LDY #$00
6085: BD 3B 67   82      LDA HI,X
6088: 85 1B      83      STA HIGH
608A: BD FB 67   84      LDA LO,X
608D: 85 1A      85      STA LOW
608F: A9 7F      86      LDA #$7F
6091: 91 1A      87      LN      STA (LOW),Y
6093: C8         88      INY
6094: C0 27      89      CPY #$27
6096: 90 F9      90      BLT LN
6098: A2 0C      91      LDX #$0C      ;DRAW TOP LINE
609A: A0 00      92      LDY #$00
609C: BD 3B 67   93      LDA HI,X
609F: 85 1B      94      STA HIGH
60A1: BD FB 67   95      LDA LO,X
60A4: 85 1A      96      STA LOW
60A6: A9 7F      97      LDA #$7F
60A8: 91 1A      98      LN1     STA (LOW),Y
60AA: C8         99      INY
60AB: C0 14     100     CPY #$14
60AD: 90 F9     101     BLT LN1
102 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
60AF: 20 03 61   103     JSR MINITIAL ;SET LINE & DEPTH OF MAN
60B2: 20 12 61   104     JSR BINITIAL ;SET LINE FOR BULLET
60B5: 20 1D 61   105     JSR SINITIAL ;ZERO SCORE COUNTER
60B8: 20 31 61   106     PADDLE JSR PDLE ;READ PADDLE
60BB: 20 6C 61   107     JSR MDRAW ;DRAW MAN
60BE: AD 0B 60   108     LDA BULON
60C1: C9 01     109     CMP #$01 ;IS BULLET ON?
60C3: F0 16     110     BEQ BULLET ;IF YES, CONTINUE BULLET DRAW
60C5: AD 61 C0   111     LDA BUTTON ;IF NO, IS BUTTON PRESSED?
60C8: 30 0C     112     BMI BULLET1 ;IF YES, DRAW BULLET
60CA: AD 0D 60   113     LDA DELAY ;IF NO,
60CD: 20 A8 FC   114     JSR WAIT DELAY AND
60D0: 20 6C 61   115     JSR MDRAW ERASE MAN AND
60D3: 4C B8 60   116     JMP PADDLE READ PADDLE AGAIN
60D6: A9 01     117     BULLET1 LDA #$01 ;SET BULLET ON
60D8: 8D 0B 60   118     STA BULON
60DB: 20 B6 61   119     BULLET JSR LOADBUL ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
60DE: 20 D9 61   120     JSR BDRAW ;DRAW BULLET & TEST FOR COLLISION
60E1: AD 0D 60   121     LDA DELAY
60E4: 20 A8 FC   122     JSR WAIT ;DELAY
60E7: 20 0F 62   123     JSR BXDRAW ;ERASE BULLET
60EA: 20 6C 61   124     JSR MDRAW ;ERASE MAN
60ED: AD 05 60   125     LDA BLINE
60F0: 38         126     SEC
60F1: E9 08     127     SBC #$08 ;MOVE BLINE UP 8 LINES
60F3: 8D 05 60   128     STA BLINE
60F6: C9 05     129     CMP #$05 ;LESS THAN 5 LINES FROM TOP?
60F8: 90 03     130     BLT TOP ;IF YES TAKE BRANCH
60FA: 4C B8 60   131     JMP PADDLE ;IF NO, READ PADDLE AGAIN
60FD: 20 12 61   132     TOP JSR BINITIAL ;INITIALIZE BULLET LINE
6100: 4C B8 60   133     JMP PADDLE ;READ PADDLE
134 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6103: A9 AA     135     MINITIAL LDA #$AA

```

```

6105: 8D 03 60 136      STA  MLINE
6108: 8D 04 60 137      STA  MLINEA
610B: 18                138      CLC
610C: 69 0D            139      ADC  #$0D
610E: 8D 06 60 140      STA  DEPTH
6111: 60                141      RTS
                        142 *****
6112: A9 00            143 BINITIAL LDA  #$00      ;BULON = 0 IF
6114: 8D 0B 60 144      STA  BULON      BULLET NOT ON SCREEN
6117: A9 A4            145      LDA  #$A4
6119: 8D 05 60 146      STA  BLINE
611C: 60                147      RTS
                        148 *****
611D: A9 00            149 SINITIAL LDA  #$00      ;SCORE DISPLAYS THREE 0'S
611F: 8D 39 60 150      STA  SUM
6122: 8D 3A 60 151      STA  COUNTER
6125: AA                152      TAX
6126: A0 11            153      LDY  #$11
6128: 20 72 63 154 PR   JSR  PRINT
612B: C8                155      INY
612C: C0 14            156      CPY  #$14
612E: 90 F8            157      BLT  PR
6130: 60                158      RTS
                        159 *****
6131: A2 00            160 PDLE   LDX  #$00
6133: 20 1E FB 161      JSR  PREAD      ;READ PADDLE 0
6136: 98                162      TYA
6137: 8D 07 60 163      STA  MHORIZ      ;0-255 IN MHORIZ
613A: AD 0B 60 164      LDA  BULON
613D: C9 01            165      CMP  #$01      ;IS BULLET ON?
613F: F0 06            166      BEQ  PDLE1      ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH
6141: AD 07 60 167      LDA  MHORIZ      ;IF NO, SET BHORIZ EQUAL
6144: 8D 08 60 168      STA  BHORIZ      TO MHORIZ
6147: AC 07 60 169 PDLE1 LDY  MHORIZ
614A: B9 35 65 170      LDA  BYTETBL,Y ;CONVERT 0-255 TO 0-36 (BYTE)
614D: 8D 0A 60 171      STA  HORIZM      ;MAN BYTE POSITION
6150: B9 38 66 172      LDA  OFFSET,Y ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
6153: 0A                173      ASL      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO MTEMP
6154: AA                174      TAX
6155: BD 3B 60 175      LDA  MSHPADR,X
6158: 85 1A            176      STA  LOW
615A: BD 3C 60 177      LDA  MSHPADR+1,X
615D: 85 1B            178      STA  HIGH
615F: A0 00            179      LDY  #$00
6161: B1 1A            180 LOAD   LDA  (LOW),Y
6163: 99 0F 60 181      STA  MTEMP,Y
6166: C8                182      INY
6167: C0 27            183      CPY  #$27
6169: 90 F6            184      BLT  LOAD
616B: 60                185      RTS
                        186 *****
616C: A9 00            187 MDRAW  LDA  #$00
616E: 8D 0C 60 188      STA  XCOUNT
6171: AE 03 60 189 MDRAW1 LDX  MLINE
6174: AC 0A 60 190      LDY  HORIZM
6177: BD 3B 67 191      LDA  HI,X
617A: 85 1B            192      STA  HIGH
617C: BD FB 67 193      LDA  LO,X
617F: 85 1A            194      STA  LOW
6181: AE 0C 60 195      LDX  XCOUNT
6184: B1 1A            196      LDA  (LOW),Y

```



```

6186: 5D 0F 60 197      EOR  MTEMP,X
6189: 91 1A      198      STA  (LOW),Y
618B: C8      199      INY
618C: B1 1A      200      LDA  (LOW),Y
618E: 5D 10 60 201      EOR  MTEMP+1,X
6191: 91 1A      202      STA  (LOW),Y
6193: C8      203      INY
6194: B1 1A      204      LDA  (LOW),Y
6196: 5D 11 60 205      EOR  MTEMP+2,X
6199: 91 1A      206      STA  (LOW),Y
619B: EE 0C 60 207      INC  XCOUNT
619E: EE 0C 60 208      INC  XCOUNT
61A1: EE 0C 60 209      INC  XCOUNT
61A4: EE 03 60 210      INC  MLINE
61A7: AD 03 60 211      LDA  MLINE
61AA: CD 06 60 212      CMP  DEPTH
61AD: 90 C2      213      BLT  MDRAW1
61AF: AD 04 60 214      LDA  MLINEA      ;RESET LINE
61B2: 8D 03 60 215      STA  MLINE
61B5: 60      216      RTS
        217      *****
61B6: AC 08 60 218      LOADBUL LDY  BHoriz      ;CONVERTS 0-255 TO
61B9: B9 35 65 219      LDA  BYTETBL,Y      SCREEN BYTE (0-36)
61BC: 18      220      CLC      ;ADD 2 TO ALIGN BULLET
61BD: 69 02      221      ADC  #$02      WITH GUN
61BF: 8D 09 60 222      STA  HorizB      ;BULLET BYTE POSITION
61C2: B9 38 66 223      LDA  OFFSET,Y      ;GET BULLET SHAPE NUMBER
61C5: 0A      224      ASL      ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
61C6: AA      225      TAX
61C7: BD 49 60 226      LDA  BSHPADR,X
61CA: 85 1A      227      STA  LOW
61CC: BD 4A 60 228      LDA  BSHPADR+1,X
61CF: 85 1B      229      STA  HIGH
61D1: A0 00      230      LDY  #$00
61D3: B1 1A      231      LDA  (LOW),Y
61D5: 8D 0E 60 232      STA  BTEMP
61D8: 60      233      RTS
        234      *****
61D9: AE 05 60 235      BDRAW  LDX  BLINE
61DC: AC 09 60 236      LDY  HorizB
61DF: BD 3B 67 237      LDA  HI,X
61E2: 85 1B      238      STA  HIGH
61E4: BD FB 67 239      LDA  LO,X
61E7: 85 1A      240      STA  LOW
61E9: B1 1A      241      LDA  (LOW),Y
61EB: 2D 0E 60 242      AND  BTEMP      ;RESULT IS 0 IF NO COLLISION
61EE: C9 00      243      CMP  #$00
61F0: F0 03      244      BEQ  NOHIT
61F2: 4C FD 61 245      JMP  COLLISION
61F5: B1 1A      246      NOHIT  LDA  (LOW),Y      ;DRAW BULLET
61F7: 4D 0E 60 247      EOR  BTEMP
61FA: 91 1A      248      STA  (LOW),Y
61FC: 60      249      RTS
        250      *****
61FD: 20 27 62 251      COLLISION JSR  EXPLODE
6200: EE 39 60 252      INC  SUM      ;ADD 1 TO SCORE
6203: 20 28 63 253      JSR  SCORE      ;DISPLAY SCORE
6206: 20 12 61 254      JSR  BINITIAL
6209: 20 6C 61 255      JSR  MDRAW      ;ERASE MAN
620C: 4C B8 60 256      JMP  PADDLE
        257      *****

```

```

620F: AE 05 60 258 BXDRAW LDX BLINE ;BDRAW WITHOUT COLLISION TEST
6212: AC 09 60 259 LDY HORIZB
6215: BD 3B 67 260 LDA HI,X
6218: 85 1B 261 STA HIGH
621A: BD FB 67 262 LDA LO,X
621D: 85 1A 263 STA LOW
621F: B1 1A 264 LDA (LOW),Y
6221: 4D 0E 60 265 EOR BTEMP
6224: 91 1A 266 STA (LOW),Y
6226: 60 267 RTS
268 *****
6227: 20 D8 62 269 EXPLODE JSR INITE1
622A: 20 6C 62 270 JSR DRAW1 ;DRAW
622D: A9 60 271 LDA #$60
622F: 20 A8 FC 272 JSR WAIT
6232: 20 D8 62 273 JSR INITE1
6235: 20 6C 62 274 JSR DRAW1 ;ERASE
6238: 20 EC 62 275 JSR INITE2
623B: 20 6C 62 276 JSR DRAW1 ;DRAW
623E: A9 BB 277 LDA #$BB
6240: 20 A8 FC 278 JSR WAIT
6243: 20 EC 62 279 JSR INITE2
6246: 20 6C 62 280 JSR DRAW1 ;ERASE
6249: 20 00 63 281 JSR INITE3
624C: 20 6C 62 282 JSR DRAW1 ;DRAW
624F: A9 BB 283 LDA #$BB
6251: 20 A8 FC 284 JSR WAIT
6254: 20 00 63 285 JSR INITE3
6257: 20 6C 62 286 JSR DRAW1 ;ERASE
625A: 20 14 63 287 JSR INITE4
625D: 20 9B 62 288 JSR DRAW2 ;DRAW
6260: A9 FF 289 LDA #$FF
6262: 20 A8 FC 290 JSR WAIT
6265: 20 14 63 291 JSR INITE4
6268: 20 9B 62 292 JSR DRAW2 ;ERASE
626B: 60 293 RTS
294 *****
626C: AC 09 60 295 DRAW1 LDY HORIZB ;ROUTINE FOR FIRST 3
626F: AE 36 60 296 LDX ELINE EXPLOSION SHAPES
6272: BD 3B 67 297 LDA HI,X
6275: 85 1B 298 STA HIGH
6277: BD FB 67 299 LDA LO,X
627A: 85 1A 300 STA LOW
627C: AE 0C 60 301 LDX XCOUNT
627F: B1 1A 302 LDA (LOW),Y
6281: 5D 0B 65 303 EOR ESHAPE,X
6284: 91 1A 304 STA (LOW),Y
6286: EE 0C 60 305 INC XCOUNT
6289: EE 36 60 306 INC ELINE
628C: AD 36 60 307 LDA ELINE
628F: CD 38 60 308 CMP EDEPTH
6292: 90 D8 309 BLT DRAW1
6294: AD 37 60 310 LDA ELINEA
6297: 8D 36 60 311 STA ELINE
629A: 60 312 RTS
313 *****
629B: AC 09 60 314 DRAW2 LDY HORIZB ;ROUTINE FOR FOURTH
629E: AE 36 60 315 LDX ELINE EXPLOSION SHAPE
62A1: BD 3B 67 316 LDA HI,X
62A4: 85 1B 317 STA HIGH
62A6: BD FB 67 318 LDA LO,X

```

```

62A9: 85 1A      319      STA  LOW
62AB: AE 0C 60  320      LDX  XCOUNT
62AE: B1 1A      321      LDA  (LOW),Y
62B0: 5D 0B 65  322      EOR  ESHAPE,X
62B3: 91 1A      323      STA  (LOW),Y
62B5: EE 0C 60  324      INC  XCOUNT
62B8: C8         325      INY
62B9: AE 0C 60  326      LDX  XCOUNT
62BC: B1 1A      327      LDA  (LOW),Y
62BE: 5D 0B 65  328      EOR  ESHAPE,X
62C1: 91 1A      329      STA  (LOW),Y
62C3: EE 0C 60  330      INC  XCOUNT
62C6: EE 36 60  331      INC  ELINE
62C9: AD 36 60  332      LDA  ELINE
62CC: CD 38 60  333      CMP  EDEPTH
62CF: 90 CA      334      BLT  DRAW2
62D1: AD 37 60  335      LDA  ELINEA
62D4: 8D 36 60  336      STA  ELINE
62D7: 60         337      RTS
                               338 *****
62D8: A9 00      339      INITE1 LDA  #$00      ;INITIALIZE FIRST EXPLOSION
62DA: 8D 0C 60  340      STA  XCOUNT
62DD: A9 09      341      LDA  #$09
62DF: 8D 37 60  342      STA  ELINEA
62E2: 8D 36 60  343      STA  ELINE
62E5: 18         344      CLC
62E6: 69 05      345      ADC  #$05
62E8: 8D 38 60  346      STA  EDEPTH
62EB: 60         347      RTS
62EC: A9 05      348      INITE2 LDA  #$05      ;INITIALIZE SECOND EXPLOSION
62EE: 8D 0C 60  349      STA  XCOUNT
62F1: A9 09      350      LDA  #$09
62F3: 8D 37 60  351      STA  ELINEA
62F6: 8D 36 60  352      STA  ELINE
62F9: 18         353      CLC
62FA: 69 05      354      ADC  #$05
62FC: 8D 38 60  355      STA  EDEPTH
62FF: 60         356      RTS
6300: A9 0A      357      INITE3 LDA  #$0A      ;INITIALIZE THIRD EXPLOSION
6302: 8D 0C 60  358      STA  XCOUNT
6305: A9 05      359      LDA  #$05
6307: 8D 37 60  360      STA  ELINEA
630A: 8D 36 60  361      STA  ELINE
630D: 18         362      CLC
630E: 69 08      363      ADC  #$08
6310: 8D 38 60  364      STA  EDEPTH
6313: 60         365      RTS
6314: A9 12      366      INITE4 LDA  #$12      ;INITIALIZE FOURTH EXPLOSION
6316: 8D 0C 60  367      STA  XCOUNT
6319: A9 01      368      LDA  #$01
631B: 8D 37 60  369      STA  ELINEA
631E: 8D 36 60  370      STA  ELINE
6321: 18         371      CLC
6322: 69 0C      372      ADC  #$0C
6324: 8D 38 60  373      STA  EDEPTH
6327: 60         374      RTS
                               375 *****
6328: AD 39 60  376      SCORE LDA  SUM      ;GET SCORE (0-9)
632B: C9 0A      377      CMP  #$0A      ;EQUAL TO 10?
632D: F0 0A      378      BEQ  C10      ;IF YES, BRANCH
632F: 0A         379      ASL           ;IF NO, MULTIPLY BY 8

```

```

6330: 0A      380      ASL
6331: 0A      381      ASL
6332: AA      382      TAX
6333: A0 13    383      LDY  #$13      ;BYTE POSITION FOR FIRST DIGIT
6335: 20 72 63 384      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
6338: 60      385      RTS
6339: EE 3A 60 386      C10  INC  COUNTER  ;INC COUNTER (INITIALLY 0)
633C: AD 3A 60 387      LDA  COUNTER
633F: C9 0A    388      CMP  #$0A      ;EQUAL TO 10?
6341: F0 11    389      BEQ  STOP1     ;IF YES, PRINT 100 AND STOP GAME
6343: 0A      390      ASL      ;IF NO, MULTIPLY BY 8
6344: 0A      391      ASL
6345: 0A      392      ASL
6346: AA      393      TAX
6347: A0 12    394      LDY  #$12      ;BYTE POSITION OF MIDDLE DIGIT
6349: 20 72 63 395      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
634C: A9 00    396      LDA  #$00      ;ZERO SUM AND
634E: 8D 39 60 397      STA  SUM      RETURN TO PRINT 0
6351: 4C 28 63 398      JMP  SCORE     IN FIRST DIGIT POSITION
6354: A2 08    399      STOP1 LDX  #$08      ;ACCESSES DIGIT "1"
6356: A0 11    400      LDY  #$11      ;BYTE POSITION OF LEFTMOST DIGIT
6358: 20 72 63 401      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
635B: A2 00    402      LDX  #$00      ;ACCESSES DIGIT "0"
635D: A0 12    403      LDY  #$12      ;BYTE POSITION OF MIDDLE DIGIT
635F: 20 72 63 404      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
6362: A0 13    405      LDY  #$13      ;BYTE POSITION OF FIRST DIGIT
6364: 20 72 63 406      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
6367: 2C 00 C0 407      STOP  BIT  $C000    ;ANY KEY PRESSED?
636A: 10 FB    408      BPL  STOP      ;IF NO, BRANCH BACK & WAIT
636C: 2C 10 C0 409      BIT  $C010    ;IF YES, CLEAR KEYBOARD STROBE AND
636F: 4C 57 60 410      JMP  PGM      START PROGRAM OVER
411 *****
6372: BD A3 63 412      PRINT LDA  NSHAPE,X  ;RETRIEVE NUMBER SHAPE
6375: 99 D0 23 413      STA  $23D0,Y  ;LINE #$B8 (184)
6378: BD A4 63 414      LDA  NSHAPE+1,X
637B: 99 D0 27 415      STA  $27D0,Y  ;LINE #$B9 (185)
637E: BD A5 63 416      LDA  NSHAPE+2,X
6381: 99 D0 2B 417      STA  $2BD0,Y  ;LINE #$BA (186)
6384: BD A6 63 418      LDA  NSHAPE+3,X
6387: 99 D0 2F 419      STA  $2FD0,Y  ;LINE #$BB (187)
638A: BD A7 63 420      LDA  NSHAPE+4,X
638D: 99 D0 33 421      STA  $33D0,Y  ;LINE #$BC (188)
6390: BD A8 63 422      LDA  NSHAPE+5,X
6393: 99 D0 37 423      STA  $37D0,Y  ;LINE #$BD (189)
6396: BD A9 63 424      LDA  NSHAPE+6,X
6399: 99 D0 3B 425      STA  $3BD0,Y  ;LINE #$BE (190)
639C: BD AA 63 426      LDA  NSHAPE+7,X
639F: 99 D0 3F 427      STA  $3FD0,Y  ;LINE #$BF (191)
63A2: 60      428      RTS
429 *****
63A3: 00 1C 22 430      NSHAPE HEX  001C2222222221C  ;NUMBER SHAPES - "0"
63A6: 22 22 22 22 1C
63AB: 00 08 0C 431      HEX  00080C080808081C  ;"1"
63AE: 08 08 08 08 1C
63B3: 00 1C 22 432      HEX  001C22201008043E  ;"2"
63B6: 20 10 08 04 3E
63BB: 00 1C 22 433      HEX  001C22201C20221C  ;"3"
63BE: 20 1C 20 22 1C
63C3: 00 10 18 434      HEX  00101814123E1010  ;"4"
63C6: 14 12 3E 10 10
63CB: 00 3E 02 435      HEX  003E021E2020201E  ;"5"

```

63CE: 1E 20 20 20 1E			
63D3: 00 1C 22 436	HEX	001C22021E22221C	;"6"
63D6: 02 1E 22 22 1C			
63DB: 00 3E 20 437	HEX	003E201008040404	;"7"
63DE: 10 08 04 04 04			
63E3: 00 1C 22 438	HEX	001C22221C22221C	;"8"
63E6: 22 1C 22 22 1C			
63EB: 00 1C 22 439	HEX	001C22223C20221C	;"9"
63EE: 22 3C 20 22 1C			
63F3: 00 0E 01 440 MSHAPE1	HEX	000E01000E01000E01	;MAN SHAPE TABLES
63F6: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01			
63FC: 00 44 01 441	HEX	004401007F00601F00	
63FF: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00			
6405: 30 1F 00 442	HEX	301F00181F00001F00	
6408: 18 1F 00 00 1F 00			
640E: 00 1F 00 443	HEX	001F00001B00403100	
6411: 00 1B 00 40 31 00			
6417: 60 60 00 444	HEX	606000	
641A: 00 1C 02 445 MSHAPE2	HEX	001C02001C02001C02	
641D: 00 1C 02 00 1C 02			
6423: 00 08 03 446	HEX	000803007E01003E00	
6426: 00 7E 01 00 3E 00			
642C: 00 3F 00 447	HEX	003F00403F00003E00	
642F: 40 3F 00 00 3E 00			
6435: 00 3E 00 448	HEX	003E00003600003600	
6438: 00 36 00 00 36 00			
643E: 00 63 00 449	HEX	006300	
6441: 00 38 04 450 MSHAPE3	HEX	003804003804003804	
6444: 00 38 04 00 38 04			
644A: 00 10 06 451	HEX	001006007C03007C00	
644D: 00 7C 03 00 7C 00			
6453: 00 7C 00 452	HEX	007C00007E00007C00	
6456: 00 7E 00 00 7C 00			
645C: 00 38 00 453	HEX	003800003800006C00	
645F: 00 38 00 00 6C 00			
6465: 00 46 01 454	HEX	004601	
6468: 00 70 08 455 MSHAPE4	HEX	007008007008007008	
646B: 00 70 08 00 70 08			
6471: 00 20 0C 456	HEX	00200C007807007801	
6474: 00 78 07 00 78 01			
647A: 00 78 01 457	HEX	007801007801007801	
647D: 00 78 01 00 78 01			
6483: 00 70 00 458	HEX	007000007000007000	
6486: 00 70 00 00 70 00			
648C: 00 70 00 459	HEX	007000	
648F: 00 60 11 460 MSHAPE5	HEX	006011006011006011	
6492: 00 60 11 00 60 11			
6498: 00 40 18 461	HEX	00401800700F007003	
649B: 00 70 0F 00 70 03			
64A1: 00 70 03 462	HEX	007003007803007003	
64A4: 00 78 03 00 70 03			
64AA: 00 60 01 463	HEX	006001006001003003	
64AD: 00 60 01 00 30 03			
64B3: 00 18 06 464	HEX	001806	
64B6: 00 40 23 465 MSHAPE6	HEX	004023004023004023	
64B9: 00 40 23 00 40 23			
64BF: 00 00 31 466	HEX	00003100601F006007	
64C2: 00 60 1F 00 60 07			
64C8: 00 70 07 467	HEX	007007007807006007	
64CB: 00 78 07 00 60 07			
64D1: 00 60 07 468	HEX	006007006006006006	

```

64D4: 00 60 06 00 60 06
64DA: 00 30 0C 469      HEX  00300C
64DD: 00 00 47 470 MSHAPE7  HEX  000047000047000047
64E0: 00 00 47 00 00 47
64E6: 00 00 62 471      HEX  00006200403F00700F
64E9: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F
64EF: 00 58 0F 472      HEX  00580F004C0F00400F
64F2: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F
64F8: 00 40 0F 473      HEX  00400F00400D006018
64FB: 00 40 0D 00 60 18
6501: 00 30 30 474      HEX  003030
6504: 01      475 BSHAPE1  HEX  01      ;BULLET SHAPES
6505: 02      476 BSHAPE2  HEX  02
6506: 04      477 BSHAPE3  HEX  04
6507: 08      478 BSHAPE4  HEX  08
6508: 10      479 BSHAPE5  HEX  10
6509: 20      480 BSHAPE6  HEX  20
650A: 40      481 BSHAPE7  HEX  40
650B: 28 22 1A 482 ESHAPE  HEX  28221A2514 ;EXPLOSION SHAPES - NO. 1
650E: 25 14
6510: 2C 52 44 483      HEX  2C5244320C ;NO. 2
6513: 32 0C
6515: 38 3E 7F 484      HEX  383E7F7E7E3F3F1C ;NO. 3
6518: 7E 7E 3F 3F 1C
651D: 18 06 7C 485      HEX  18067C0F7C3F7E3F ;NO. 4
6520: 0F 7C 3F 7E 3F
6525: 7C 7F 7C 486      HEX  7C7F7C3F7E3F7F1F
6528: 3F 7E 3F 7F 1F
652D: 7E 0F 7C 487      HEX  7E0F7C1F700F4003
6530: 1F 70 0F 40 03

```

BYTETBL
OFFSET
HI
LO

2235 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	MLINE	=\$6003	MLINEA	=\$6004
BLINE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	MHORIZ	=\$6007	BHORIZ	=\$6008
HORIZB	=\$6009	HORIZM	=\$600A	BULON	=\$600B	XCOUNT	=\$600C
DELAY	=\$600D	BTEMP	=\$600E	MTEMP	=\$600F	ELINE	=\$6036
ELINEA	=\$6037	EDEPTH	=\$6038	SUM	=\$6039	COUNTER	=\$603A
MSHPADR	=\$603B	BSHPADR	=\$6049	PGM	=\$6057	CLR1	=\$606B
CLR	=\$606F	LN	=\$6091	LN1	=\$60A8	PADDLE	=\$60B8
BULLET1	=\$60D6	BULLET	=\$60DB	TOP	=\$60FD	MINITIAL	=\$6103
BINITIAL	=\$6112	SINITIAL	=\$611D	PR	=\$6128	PDLE	=\$6131
PDLE1	=\$6147	LOAD	=\$6161	MDRAW	=\$616C	MDRAW1	=\$6171
LOADBUL	=\$61B6	BDRAW	=\$61D9	NOHIT	=\$61F5	COLLISION	=\$61FD
BXDRAW	=\$620F	EXPLODE	=\$6227	DRAW1	=\$626C	DRAW2	=\$629B
INITE1	=\$62D8	INITE2	=\$62EC	INITE3	=\$6300	INITE4	=\$6314
SCORE	=\$6328	C10	=\$6339	STOP1	=\$6354	STOP	=\$6367
PRINT	=\$6372	NSHAPE	=\$63A3	MSHAPE1	=\$63F3	MSHAPE2	=\$641A
MSHAPE3	=\$6441	MSHAPE4	=\$6468	MSHAPE5	=\$648F	MSHAPE6	=\$64B6
MSHAPE7	=\$64DD	BSHAPE1	=\$6504	BSHAPE2	=\$6505	BSHAPE3	=\$6506
BSHAPE4	=\$6507	BSHAPE5	=\$6508	BSHAPE6	=\$6509	BSHAPE7	=\$650A
ESHAPE	=\$650B	BYTETBL	=\$6535	OFFSET	=\$6638	HI	=\$673B
LO	=\$67FB	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	BUTTON	=\$C061	PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8

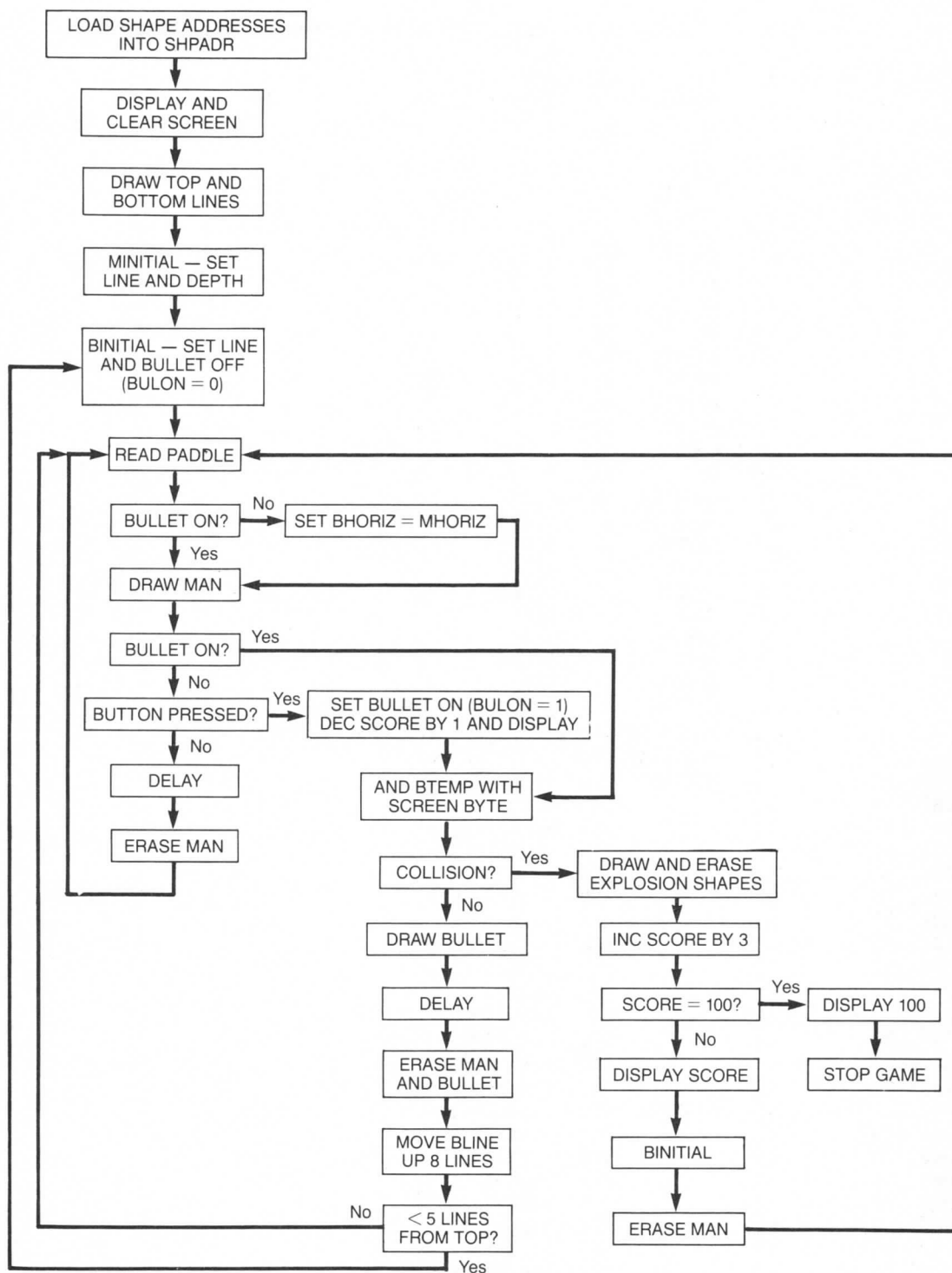
COUNTING BY MULTIPLES AND DECREMENTING SCORE
.....

The counting routine in Program 8-1 fits in well with our game program where we increment the score by 1 every time a plane is hit, and stop the program when we reach 100 (or until 100 planes have appeared). However, it does have some limitations. First, if we want to increment in jumps greater than one, we have a problem. If we increment by 3 and go from 9 to 12, for example, the counter will display 010 because SUM is zeroed after we increment COUNTER. Second, if we want to decrement the score, say by 1 each time the bullet is fired, the routine will not handle this at the 9-0 boundaries (e.g., from 10 to 9), and there would also be a problem if the score is decremented while at 000. The following program (Program 8-2) presents a score routine that solves all these problems.

The SINIITAL and PRINT subroutines are the same in Program 8-2 as in Program 8-1 and again we use SUM as the 1's counter and COUNTER as the 10's counter. The differences are in the MAIN PROGRAM, COLLISION, and SCORE routines. In the MAIN PROGRAM, we decrement the score by one each time a bullet is fired and jump to SCORE to display the count (lines 119 and 120). In COLLISION, SUM is incremented by three each time a collision is detected (lines 254 to 256). Let's see how the SCORE routine handles these changes.

First, we load the Accumulator with SUM and compare to #\$FF. If SUM initially contains zero, as it would if the count were 010, 020, 030, etc., and is then decremented by 1 before we jump to the SCORE routine, we want to change its value to 9 and then decrement COUNTER by 1. Decrementing #\$00 by 1 results in a value of #\$FF. Thus, SUM would contain #\$FF and the branch at line 382 would not be taken. The program would continue to line 383 where #\$09 is loaded into SUM and COUNTER is decremented by 1. We now want to see if the score was at 000 at the time SUM was decremented by a bullet firing—obviously at this point we don't want to decrement the score, but rather retain the 000 display. If the score is 000, then both SUM and COUNTER contain zero. Thus, decrementing COUNTER will yield a value of #\$FF and the branch at line 388 will not be taken. The program would continue to line 389 where COUNTER and SUM are both set to zero in preparation for printing 000. These CMP #\$FF instructions then are used for the special situations where either SUM = 0 and is decremented, or where both SUM and COUNTER = 0 and SUM is decremented.

If SUM doesn't contain zero before decrementing or is simply not decremented, SUM will not contain #\$FF, the branch at line 382 is taken, and the program proceeds to C1 (line 392). Here SUM is compared to 10 and if less than 10, the program branches to C10 for the same print routine as in Program 8-1. If SUM equals or is greater than 10, the branch at line 394 is not taken, COUNTER is incremented by 1, 10 is subtracted from SUM, and the count is then printed. Thus, if SUM contains 12, subtracting 10 leaves 2 in SUM. This figure is then printed in the rightmost digit position, and COUNTER will contain 1, which is printed in the middle digit position, producing the display 012.



]PROGRAM 8-2
:ASM

```

6000: 4C 57 60  1  *COLLISION AND EXPLOSION WITH SCORING*DECREMENTING SCORE
2              ORG  $6000
3              JMP  PGM
4  MLINE      DS  1
5  MLINEA     DS  1
6  BLINE      DS  1
7  DEPTH      DS  1
8  MHORIZ     DS  1
9  BHORIZ     DS  1
10 HORIZB     DS  1
11 HORIZM     DS  1
12 BULON      DS  1
13 XCOUNT    DS  1
14 DELAY      DS  1
15 BTEMP      DS  1
16 MTEMP      DS  39
17 ELINE      DS  1
18 ELINEA     DS  1
19 EDEPTH     DS  1
20 SUM        DS  1
21 COUNTER    DS  1
22 GRAPHICS   =  $C050
23 MIXOFF     =  $C052
24 HIRES      =  $C057
25 PAGE1      =  $C054
26 HIGH       =  $1B
27 LOW        =  $1A
28 WAIT       =  $FCA8
29 PREAD      =  $FB1E
30 BUTTON     =  $C061      ;BUTTON 0
31 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
32 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
603B: 1E      33  MSHPADR  DFB  #<MSHAPE1
603C: 64      34          DFB  #>MSHAPE1
603D: 45      35          DFB  #<MSHAPE2
603E: 64      36          DFB  #>MSHAPE2
603F: 6C      37          DFB  #<MSHAPE3
6040: 64      38          DFB  #>MSHAPE3
6041: 93      39          DFB  #<MSHAPE4
6042: 64      40          DFB  #>MSHAPE4
6043: BA      41          DFB  #<MSHAPE5
6044: 64      42          DFB  #>MSHAPE5
6045: E1      43          DFB  #<MSHAPE6
6046: 64      44          DFB  #>MSHAPE6
6047: 08      45          DFB  #<MSHAPE7
6048: 65      46          DFB  #>MSHAPE7
6049: 2F      47  BSHPADR  DFB  #<BSHAPE1
604A: 65      48          DFB  #>BSHAPE1
604B: 30      49          DFB  #<BSHAPE2
604C: 65      50          DFB  #>BSHAPE2
604D: 31      51          DFB  #<BSHAPE3
604E: 65      52          DFB  #>BSHAPE3
604F: 32      53          DFB  #<BSHAPE4
6050: 65      54          DFB  #>BSHAPE4
6051: 33      55          DFB  #<BSHAPE5
6052: 65      56          DFB  #>BSHAPE5
6053: 34      57          DFB  #<BSHAPE6

```

```

6054: 65      58      DFB #>BSHAPE6
6055: 35      59      DFB #<BSHAPE7
6056: 65      60      DFB #>BSHAPE7
6057: AD 50 CO 61      PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
605A: AD 52 CO 62      LDA MIXOFF
605D: AD 57 CO 63      LDA HIRES
6060: AD 54 CO 64      LDA PAGE1
6063: A9 00      65      LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6065: 85 1A      66      STA LOW
6067: A9 20      67      LDA #$20
6069: 85 1B      68      STA HIGH
606B: A0 00      69      CLR1 LDY #$00
606D: A9 00      70      LDA #$00
606F: 91 1A      71      CLR STA (LOW),Y
6071: C8          72      INY
6072: D0 FB      73      BNE CLR
6074: E6 1B      74      INC HIGH
6076: A5 1B      75      LDA HIGH
6078: C9 40      76      CMP #$40
607A: 90 EF      77      BLT CLR1
607C: A9 50      78      LDA #$50 ;LOAD DELAY
607E: 8D 0D 60 79      STA DELAY
6081: A2 B7      80      LDX #$B7 ;DRAW BOTTOM LINE
6083: A0 00      81      LDY #$00
6085: BD 66 67 82      LDA HI,X
6088: 85 1B      83      STA HIGH
608A: BD 26 68 84      LDA LO,X
608D: 85 1A      85      STA LOW
608F: A9 7F      86      LDA #$7F
6091: 91 1A      87      LN STA (LOW),Y
6093: C8          88      INY
6094: C0 27      89      CPY #$27
6096: 90 F9      90      BLT LN
6098: A2 0C      91      LDX #$0C ;DRAW TOP LINE
609A: A0 00      92      LDY #$00
609C: BD 66 67 93      LDA HI,X
609F: 85 1B      94      STA HIGH
60A1: BD 26 68 95      LDA LO,X
60A4: 85 1A      96      STA LOW
60A6: A9 7F      97      LDA #$7F
60A8: 91 1A      98      LN1 STA (LOW),Y
60AA: C8          99      INY
60AB: C0 14     100      CPY #$14
60AD: 90 F9     101      BLT LN1
102 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
60AF: 20 09 61 103      JSR MINITIAL ;SET LINE & DEPTH OF MAN
60B2: 20 18 61 104      JSR BINITIAL ;SET LINE FOR BULLET
60B5: 20 23 61 105      JSR SINITIAL ;ZERO SCORE COUNTER
60B8: 20 37 61 106      PADDLE JSR PDLE ;READ PADDLE
60BB: 20 72 61 107      JSR MDRAW ;DRAW MAN
60BE: AD 0B 60 108      LDA BULON
60C1: C9 01     109      CMP #$01 ;IS BULLET ON?
60C3: F0 1C     110      BEQ BULLET ;IF YES, CONTINUE BULLET DRAW
60C5: AD 61 CO 111      LDA BUTTON ;IF NO, IS BUTTON PRESSED?
60C8: 30 0C     112      BMI BULLET1 ;IF YES, DRAW BULLET
60CA: AD 0D 60 113      LDA DELAY ;IF NO,
60CD: 20 A8 FC 114      JSR WAIT DELAY AND
60D0: 20 72 61 115      JSR MDRAW ERASE MAN AND

```

```

60D3: 4C B8 60 116      JMP  PADDLE          READ PADDLE AGAIN
60D6: A9 01 117  BULLET1 LDA  #$01          ;SET BULLET ON
60D8: 8D 0B 60 118      STA  BULON
60DB: CE 39 60 119      DEC  SUM           ;DECREMENT SUM AND
60DE: 20 34 63 120      JSR  SCORE          DISPLAY SCORE
60E1: 20 BC 61 121  BULLET JSR  LOADBUL        ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
60E4: 20 DF 61 122      JSR  BDRAW          ;DRAW BULLET & TEST FOR COLLISION
60E7: AD 0D 60 123      LDA  DELAY
60EA: 20 A8 FC 124      JSR  WAIT           ;DELAY
60ED: 20 1B 62 125      JSR  BXDRAW          ;ERASE BULLET
60F0: 20 72 61 126      JSR  MDRAW          ;ERASE MAN
60F3: AD 05 60 127      LDA  BLINE
60F6: 38 128      SEC
60F7: E9 08 129      SBC  #$08          ;MOVE BLINE UP 8 LINES
60F9: 8D 05 60 130      STA  BLINE
60FC: C9 05 131      CMP  #$05          ;LESS THAN 5 LINES FROM TOP?
60FE: 90 03 132      BLT  TOP           ;IF YES TAKE BRANCH
6100: 4C B8 60 133      JMP  PADDLE          ;IF NO, READ PADDLE AGAIN
6103: 20 18 61 134  TOP    JSR  BINITIAL        ;INITIALIZE BULLET LINE
6106: 4C B8 60 135      JMP  PADDLE          ;READ PADDLE
136 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6109: A9 AA 137  MINITIAL LDA  #$AA
610B: 8D 03 60 138      STA  MLINE
610E: 8D 04 60 139      STA  MLINEA
6111: 18 140      CLC
6112: 69 0D 141      ADC  #$0D
6114: 8D 06 60 142      STA  DEPTH
6117: 60 143      RTS
144 *****
6118: A9 00 145  BINITIAL LDA  #$00          ;BULON = 0 IF
611A: 8D 0B 60 146      STA  BULON          BULLET NOT ON SCREEN
611D: A9 A4 147      LDA  #$A4
611F: 8D 05 60 148      STA  BLINE
6122: 60 149      RTS
150 *****
6123: A9 00 151  SINITIAL LDA  #$00          ;SCORE DISPLAYS THREE 0'S
6125: 8D 39 60 152      STA  SUM
6128: 8D 3A 60 153      STA  COUNTER
612B: AA 154      TAX
612C: A0 11 155      LDY  #$11
612E: 20 9D 63 156  PR    JSR  PRINT
6131: C8 157      INY
6132: C0 14 158      CPY  #$14
6134: 90 F8 159      BLT  PR
6136: 60 160      RTS
161 *****
6137: A2 00 162  PDLE    LDX  #$00
6139: 20 1E FB 163      JSR  PREAD          ;READ PADDLE 0
613C: 98 164      TYA
613D: 8D 07 60 165      STA  MHORIZ          ;0-255 IN MHORIZ
6140: AD 0B 60 166      LDA  BULON
6143: C9 01 167      CMP  #$01          ;IS BULLET ON?
6145: F0 06 168      BEQ  PDLE1          ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH
6147: AD 07 60 169      LDA  MHORIZ          ;IF NO, SET BHORIZ EQUAL
614A: 8D 08 60 170      STA  BHORIZ          TO MHORIZ
614D: AC 07 60 171  PDLE1 LDY  MHORIZ
6150: B9 60 65 172      LDA  BYTETBL,Y    ;CONVERT 0-255 TO 0-36 (BYTE)
6153: 8D 0A 60 173      STA  HORIZM          ;MAN BYTE POSITION
6156: B9 63 66 174      LDA  OFFSET,Y    ;GET SHAPE NUMBER

```

```

6159: 0A      175      ASL                      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO MTEMP
615A: AA      176      TAX
615B: BD 3B 60 177      LDA  MSHPADR,X
615E: 85 1A      178      STA  LOW
6160: BD 3C 60 179      LDA  MSHPADR+1,X
6163: 85 1B      180      STA  HIGH
6165: A0 00      181      LDY  #$00
6167: B1 1A      182      LOAD  LDA  (LOW),Y
6169: 99 0F 60 183      STA  MTEMP,Y
616C: C8      184      INY
616D: C0 27      185      CPY  #$27
616F: 90 F6      186      BLT  LOAD
6171: 60      187      RTS
                      188      *****
6172: A9 00      189      MDRAW  LDA  #$00
6174: 8D 0C 60 190      STA  XCOUNT
6177: AE 03 60 191      MDRAW1  LDX  MLINE
617A: AC 0A 60 192      LDY  HORIZM
617D: BD 66 67 193      LDA  HI,X
6180: 85 1B      194      STA  HIGH
6182: BD 26 68 195      LDA  LO,X
6185: 85 1A      196      STA  LOW
6187: AE 0C 60 197      LDX  XCOUNT
618A: B1 1A      198      LDA  (LOW),Y
618C: 5D 0F 60 199      EOR  MTEMP,X
618F: 91 1A      200      STA  (LOW),Y
6191: C8      201      INY
6192: B1 1A      202      LDA  (LOW),Y
6194: 5D 10 60 203      EOR  MTEMP+1,X
6197: 91 1A      204      STA  (LOW),Y
6199: C8      205      INY
619A: B1 1A      206      LDA  (LOW),Y
619C: 5D 11 60 207      EOR  MTEMP+2,X
619F: 91 1A      208      STA  (LOW),Y
61A1: EE 0C 60 209      INC  XCOUNT
61A4: EE 0C 60 210      INC  XCOUNT
61A7: EE 0C 60 211      INC  XCOUNT
61AA: EE 03 60 212      INC  MLINE
61AD: AD 03 60 213      LDA  MLINE
61B0: CD 06 60 214      CMP  DEPTH
61B3: 90 C2      215      BLT  MDRAW1
61B5: AD 04 60 216      LDA  MLINEA      ;RESET LINE
61B8: 8D 03 60 217      STA  MLINE
61BB: 60      218      RTS
                      219      *****
61BC: AC 08 60 220      LOADBUL  LDY  BHoriz      ;CONVERTS 0-255 TO
61BF: B9 60 65 221      LDA  BYTETBL,Y      SCREEN BYTE (0-36)
61C2: 18      222      CLC                      ;ADD 2 TO ALIGN BULLET
61C3: 69 02      223      ADC  #$02      WITH GUN
61C5: 8D 09 60 224      STA  HORIZB      ;BULLET BYTE POSITION
61C8: B9 63 66 225      LDA  OFFSET,Y      ;GET BULLET SHAPE NUMBER
61CB: 0A      226      ASL                      ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
61CC: AA      227      TAX
61CD: BD 49 60 228      LDA  BSHPADR,X
61D0: 85 1A      229      STA  LOW
61D2: BD 4A 60 230      LDA  BSHPADR+1,X
61D5: 85 1B      231      STA  HIGH
61D7: A0 00      232      LDY  #$00
61D9: B1 1A      233      LDA  (LOW),Y

```

```

61DB: 8D 0E 60 234      STA BTEMP
61DE: 60                235      RTS
                               236 *****
61DF: AE 05 60 237      BDRAW   LDX BLINE
61E2: AC 09 60 238      LDY HORIZB
61E5: BD 66 67 239      LDA HI,X
61E8: 85 1B 240      STA HIGH
61EA: BD 26 68 241      LDA LO,X
61ED: 85 1A 242      STA LOW
61EF: B1 1A 243      LDA (LOW),Y
61F1: 2D 0E 60 244      AND BTEMP      ;RESULT IS 0 IF NO COLLISION
61F4: C9 00 245      CMP #$00
61F6: F0 03 246      BEQ NOHIT
61F8: 4C 03 62 247      JMP COLLISION
61FB: B1 1A 248      NOHIT   LDA (LOW),Y      ;DRAW BULLET
61FD: 4D 0E 60 249      EOR BTEMP
6200: 91 1A 250      STA (LOW),Y
6202: 60                251      RTS
                               252 *****
6203: 20 33 62 253      COLLISION JSR EXPLODE
6206: EE 39 60 254      INC SUM      ;ADD 1 TO SCORE
6209: EE 39 60 255      INC SUM
620C: EE 39 60 256      INC SUM
620F: 20 34 63 257      JSR SCORE      ;DISPLAY SCORE
6212: 20 18 61 258      JSR BINITIAL
6215: 20 72 61 259      JSR MDRAW      ;ERASE MAN
6218: 4C B8 60 260      JMP PADDLE
                               261 *****
621B: AE 05 60 262      BXDRAW   LDX BLINE      ;BDRAW WITHOUT COLLISION TEST
621E: AC 09 60 263      LDY HORIZB
6221: BD 66 67 264      LDA HI,X
6224: 85 1B 265      STA HIGH
6226: BD 26 68 266      LDA LO,X
6229: 85 1A 267      STA LOW
622B: B1 1A 268      LDA (LOW),Y
622D: 4D 0E 60 269      EOR BTEMP
6230: 91 1A 270      STA (LOW),Y
6232: 60                271      RTS
                               272 *****
6233: 20 E4 62 273      EXPLODE  JSR INITE1
6236: 20 78 62 274      JSR DRAWE1      ;DRAW
6239: A9 60 275      LDA #$60
623B: 20 A8 FC 276      JSR WAIT
623E: 20 E4 62 277      JSR INITE1
6241: 20 78 62 278      JSR DRAWE1      ;ERASE
6244: 20 F8 62 279      JSR INITE2
6247: 20 78 62 280      JSR DRAWE1      ;DRAW
624A: A9 BB 281      LDA #$BB
624C: 20 A8 FC 282      JSR WAIT
624F: 20 F8 62 283      JSR INITE2
6252: 20 78 62 284      JSR DRAWE1      ;ERASE
6255: 20 0C 63 285      JSR INITE3
6258: 20 78 62 286      JSR DRAWE1      ;DRAW
625B: A9 BB 287      LDA #$BB
625D: 20 A8 FC 288      JSR WAIT
6260: 20 0C 63 289      JSR INITE3
6263: 20 78 62 290      JSR DRAWE1      ;ERASE
6266: 20 20 63 291      JSR INITE4
6269: 20 A7 62 292      JSR DRAWE2      ;DRAW

```

```

626C: A9 FF      293      LDA  #$FF
626E: 20 A8 FC    294      JSR  WAIT
6271: 20 20 63    295      JSR  INITE4
6274: 20 A7 62    296      JSR  DRAWE2      ;ERASE
6277: 60          297      RTS
                               *****
6278: AC 09 60    299      DRAWE1 LDY  HORIZB      ;ROUTINE FOR FIRST 3
627B: AE 36 60    300      LDX  ELINE      EXPLOSION SHAPES
627E: BD 66 67    301      LDA  HI,X
6281: 85 1B       302      STA  HIGH
6283: BD 26 68    303      LDA  LO,X
6286: 85 1A       304      STA  LOW
6288: AE 0C 60    305      LDX  XCOUNT
628B: B1 1A       306      LDA  (LOW),Y
628D: 5D 36 65    307      EOR  ESHAPE,X
6290: 91 1A       308      STA  (LOW),Y
6292: EE 0C 60    309      INC  XCOUNT
6295: EE 36 60    310      INC  ELINE
6298: AD 36 60    311      LDA  ELINE
629B: CD 38 60    312      CMP  EDEPTH
629E: 90 D8       313      BLT  DRAWE1
62A0: AD 37 60    314      LDA  ELINEA
62A3: 8D 36 60    315      STA  ELINE
62A6: 60          316      RTS
                               *****
62A7: AC 09 60    318      DRAWE2 LDY  HORIZB      ;ROUTINE FOR FOURTH
62AA: AE 36 60    319      LDX  ELINE      EXPLOSION SHAPE
62AD: BD 66 67    320      LDA  HI,X
62B0: 85 1B       321      STA  HIGH
62B2: BD 26 68    322      LDA  LO,X
62B5: 85 1A       323      STA  LOW
62B7: AE 0C 60    324      LDX  XCOUNT
62BA: B1 1A       325      LDA  (LOW),Y
62BC: 5D 36 65    326      EOR  ESHAPE,X
62BF: 91 1A       327      STA  (LOW),Y
62C1: EE 0C 60    328      INC  XCOUNT
62C4: C8          329      INY
62C5: AE 0C 60    330      LDX  XCOUNT
62C8: B1 1A       331      LDA  (LOW),Y
62CA: 5D 36 65    332      EOR  ESHAPE,X
62CD: 91 1A       333      STA  (LOW),Y
62CF: EE 0C 60    334      INC  XCOUNT
62D2: EE 36 60    335      INC  ELINE
62D5: AD 36 60    336      LDA  ELINE
62D8: CD 38 60    337      CMP  EDEPTH
62DB: 90 CA       338      BLT  DRAWE2
62DD: AD 37 60    339      LDA  ELINEA
62E0: 8D 36 60    340      STA  ELINE
62E3: 60          341      RTS
                               *****
62E4: A9 00       343      INITE1 LDA  #$00      ;INITIALIZE FIRST EXPLOSION
62E6: 8D 0C 60    344      STA  XCOUNT
62E9: A9 09       345      LDA  #$09
62EB: 8D 37 60    346      STA  ELINEA
62EE: 8D 36 60    347      STA  ELINE
62F1: 18          348      CLC
62F2: 69 05       349      ADC  #$05
62F4: 8D 38 60    350      STA  EDEPTH
62F7: 60          351      RTS

```

```

62F8: A9 05      352  INITE2  LDA  #$05      ;INITIALIZE SECOND EXPLOSION
62FA: 8D 0C 60   353          STA  XCOUNT
62FD: A9 09      354          LDA  #$09
62FF: 8D 37 60   355          STA  ELINEA
6302: 8D 36 60   356          STA  ELINE
6305: 18         357          CLC
6306: 69 05      358          ADC  #$05
6308: 8D 38 60   359          STA  EDEPTH
630B: 60         360          RTS
630C: A9 0A      361  INITE3  LDA  #$0A      ;INITIALIZE THIRD EXPLOSION
630E: 8D 0C 60   362          STA  XCOUNT
6311: A9 05      363          LDA  #$05
6313: 8D 37 60   364          STA  ELINEA
6316: 8D 36 60   365          STA  ELINE
6319: 18         366          CLC
631A: 69 08      367          ADC  #$08
631C: 8D 38 60   368          STA  EDEPTH
631F: 60         369          RTS
6320: A9 12      370  INITE4  LDA  #$12      ;INITIALIZE FOURTH EXPLOSION
6322: 8D 0C 60   371          STA  XCOUNT
6325: A9 01      372          LDA  #$01
6327: 8D 37 60   373          STA  ELINEA
632A: 8D 36 60   374          STA  ELINE
632D: 18         375          CLC
632E: 69 0C      376          ADC  #$0C
6330: 8D 38 60   377          STA  EDEPTH
6333: 60         378          RTS
6334: AD 39 60   379  *****
6337: C9 FF      380  SCORE  LDA  SUM      ;IF SUM = 0 AND
6339: D0 17      381          CMP  #$FF      DECREMENTED TO #$FF
633B: A9 09      382          BNE  C1      THEN
633D: 8D 39 60   383          LDA  #$09      SET SUM TO
6340: CE 3A 60   384          STA  SUM      #$09 AND
6343: AD 3A 60   385          DEC  COUNTER  DECREMENT COUNTER
6346: C9 FF      386          LDA  COUNTER  IF COUNTER = 0
6348: D0 08      387          CMP  #$FF      AND DECREMENTED TO #$FF
634A: A9 00      388          BNE  C1      THEN
634C: 8D 3A 60   389          LDA  #$00      SET COUNTER
634F: 8D 39 60   390          STA  COUNTER  AND SUM
6352: AD 39 60   391          STA  SUM      EQUAL TO ZERO
6355: C9 0A      392  C1      LDA  SUM      ;GET SUM
6357: 90 0C      393          CMP  #$0A      ;LESS THAN 10?
6359: EE 3A 60   394          BLT  C10     ;IF YES, BRANCH TO PRINT
635C: AD 39 60   395          INC  COUNTER  ;IF NO, INCREMENT COUNTER AND
635F: 38         396          LDA  SUM      SUBTRACT 10 FROM SUM
6360: E9 0A      397          SEC
6362: 8D 39 60   398          SBC  #$0A
6365: 0A         399          STA  SUM
6366: 0A         400  C10      ASL          ;MULTIPLY BY 8
6367: 0A         401          ASL
6368: AA         402          ASL
6369: A0 13      403          TAX
636B: 20 9D 63   404          LDY  #$13      ;POSITION FOR FIRST DIGIT
636E: AD 3A 60   405          JSR  PRINT    ;PRINT DIGIT
6371: C9 0A      406          LDA  COUNTER  ;GET COUNTER
6373: B0 0A      407          CMP  #$0A      ;LESS THAN 10?
6375: 0A         408          BGE  STOP1    ;IF NO, PRINT 100 AND STOP GAME
6376: 0A         409          ASL          ;IF YES, MULTIPLY BY 8
6377: 0A         410          ASL

```



```

6377: 0A      411      ASL
6378: AA      412      TAX
6379: A0 12    413      LDY  #$12      ;POSITION OF SECOND DIGIT
637B: 20 9D 63 414      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
637E: 60      415      RTS
                        416 *****
                        417 ** PRINTS 100 AND STOPS GAME **
637F: A2 08    418  STOP1  LDX  #$08      ;ACCESSES DIGIT "1"
6381: A0 11    419      LDY  #$11      ;BYTE POSITION OF LEFTMOST DIGIT
6383: 20 9D 63 420      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
6386: A2 00    421      LDX  #$00      ;ACCESSES DIGIT "0"
6388: A0 12    422      LDY  #$12      ;BYTE POSITION OF MIDDLE DIGIT
638A: 20 9D 63 423      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
638D: A0 13    424      LDY  #$13      ;BYTE POSITION OF FIRST DIGIT
638F: 20 9D 63 425      JSR  PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
6392: 2C 00 C0 426  STOP   BIT   $C000      ;ANY KEY PRESSED?
6395: 10 FB    427      BPL  STOP      ;IF NO, BRANCH BACK & WAIT
6397: 2C 10 C0 428      BIT   $C010      ;IF YES, CLEAR KEYBOARD STROBE AND
639A: 4C 57 60 429      JMP  PGM      START PROGRAM OVER
                        430 *****
639D: BD CE 63 431  PRINT  LDA  NSHAPE,X      ;RETRIEVE NUMBER SHAPE
63A0: 99 D0 23 432      STA  $23D0,Y      ;LINE #$B8 (184)
63A3: BD CF 63 433      LDA  NSHAPE+1,X
63A6: 99 D0 27 434      STA  $27D0,Y      ;LINE #$B9 (185)
63A9: BD D0 63 435      LDA  NSHAPE+2,X
63AC: 99 D0 2B 436      STA  $2BD0,Y      ;LINE #$BA (186)
63AF: BD D1 63 437      LDA  NSHAPE+3,X
63B2: 99 D0 2F 438      STA  $2FD0,Y      ;LINE #$BB (187)
63B5: BD D2 63 439      LDA  NSHAPE+4,X
63B8: 99 D0 33 440      STA  $33D0,Y      ;LINE #$BC (188)
63BB: BD D3 63 441      LDA  NSHAPE+5,X
63BE: 99 D0 37 442      STA  $37D0,Y      ;LINE #$BD (189)
63C1: BD D4 63 443      LDA  NSHAPE+6,X
63C4: 99 D0 3B 444      STA  $3BD0,Y      ;LINE #$BE (190)
63C7: BD D5 63 445      LDA  NSHAPE+7,X
63CA: 99 D0 3F 446      STA  $3FD0,Y      ;LINE #$BF (191)
63CD: 60      447      RTS
                        448 *****
63CE: 00 1C 22 449  NSHAPE  HEX  001C2222222221C      ;NUMBER SHAPES - "0"
63D1: 22 22 22 22 1C
63D6: 00 08 0C 450      HEX  00080C080808081C      ;"1"
63D9: 08 08 08 08 1C
63DE: 00 1C 22 451      HEX  001C22201008043E      ;"2"
63E1: 20 10 08 04 3E
63E6: 00 1C 22 452      HEX  001C22201C20221C      ;"3"
63E9: 20 1C 20 22 1C
63EE: 00 10 18 453      HEX  00101814123E1010      ;"4"
63F1: 14 12 3E 10 10
63F6: 00 3E 02 454      HEX  003E021E2020201E      ;"5"
63F9: 1E 20 20 20 1E
63FE: 00 1C 22 455      HEX  001C22021E22221C      ;"6"
6401: 02 1E 22 22 1C
6406: 00 3E 20 456      HEX  003E201008040404      ;"7"
6409: 10 08 04 04 04
640E: 00 1C 22 457      HEX  001C22221C22221C      ;"8"
6411: 22 1C 22 22 1C
6416: 00 1C 22 458      HEX  001C22223C20221C      ;"9"
6419: 22 3C 20 22 1C
641E: 00 0E 01 459  MSHAPE1  HEX  000E01000E01000E01      ;MAN SHAPE TABLES

```

```

6421: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01
6427: 00 44 01 460      HEX  004401007F00601F00
642A: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00
6430: 30 1F 00 461      HEX  301F00181F00001F00
6433: 18 1F 00 00 1F 00
6439: 00 1F 00 462      HEX  001F00001B00403100
643C: 00 1B 00 40 31 00
6442: 60 60 00 463      HEX  606000
6445: 00 1C 02 464 MSHAPE2 HEX  001C02001C02001C02
6448: 00 1C 02 00 1C 02
644E: 00 08 03 465      HEX  000803007E01003E00
6451: 00 7E 01 00 3E 00
6457: 00 3F 00 466      HEX  003F00403F00003E00
645A: 40 3F 00 00 3E 00
6460: 00 3E 00 467      HEX  003E00003600003600
6463: 00 36 00 00 36 00
6469: 00 63 00 468      HEX  006300
646C: 00 38 04 469 MSHAPE3 HEX  003804003804003804
646F: 00 38 04 00 38 04
6475: 00 10 06 470      HEX  001006007C03007C00
6478: 00 7C 03 00 7C 00
647E: 00 7C 00 471      HEX  007C00007E00007C00
6481: 00 7E 00 00 7C 00
6487: 00 38 00 472      HEX  003800003800006C00
648A: 00 38 00 00 6C 00
6490: 00 46 01 473      HEX  004601
6493: 00 70 08 474 MSHAPE4 HEX  007008007008007008
6496: 00 70 08 00 70 08
649C: 00 20 0C 475      HEX  00200C007807007801
649F: 00 78 07 00 78 01
64A5: 00 78 01 476      HEX  007801007801007801
64A8: 00 78 01 00 78 01
64AE: 00 70 00 477      HEX  007000007000007000
64B1: 00 70 00 00 70 00
64B7: 00 70 00 478      HEX  007000
64BA: 00 60 11 479 MSHAPE5 HEX  006011006011006011
64BD: 00 60 11 00 60 11
64C3: 00 40 18 480      HEX  00401800700F007003
64C6: 00 70 0F 00 70 03
64CC: 00 70 03 481      HEX  007003007803007003
64CF: 00 78 03 00 70 03
64D5: 00 60 01 482      HEX  006001006001003003
64D8: 00 60 01 00 30 03
64DE: 00 18 06 483      HEX  001806
64E1: 00 40 23 484 MSHAPE6 HEX  004023004023004023
64E4: 00 40 23 00 40 23
64EA: 00 00 31 485      HEX  00003100601F006007
64ED: 00 60 1F 00 60 07
64F3: 00 70 07 486      HEX  007007007807006007
64F6: 00 78 07 00 60 07
64FC: 00 60 07 487      HEX  006007006006006006
64FF: 00 60 06 00 60 06
6505: 00 30 0C 488      HEX  00300C
6508: 00 00 47 489 MSHAPE7 HEX  000047000047000047
650B: 00 00 47 00 00 47
6511: 00 00 62 490      HEX  00006200403F00700F
6514: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F
651A: 00 58 0F 491      HEX  00580F004C0F00400F

```

```

651D: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F
6523: 00 40 0F 492      HEX  00400F00400D006018
6526: 00 40 0D 00 60 18
652C: 00 30 30 493      HEX  003030
652F: 01      494 BSHAPE1 HEX  01      ;BULLET SHAPES
6530: 02      495 BSHAPE2 HEX  02
6531: 04      496 BSHAPE3 HEX  04
6532: 08      497 BSHAPE4 HEX  08
6533: 10      498 BSHAPE5 HEX  10
6534: 20      499 BSHAPE6 HEX  20
6535: 40      500 BSHAPE7 HEX  40
6536: 28 22 1A 501 ESHAPE HEX  28221A2514 ;EXPLOSION SHAPES - NO. 1
6539: 25 14
653B: 2C 52 44 502      HEX  2C5244320C ;NO. 2
653E: 32 0C
6540: 38 3E 7F 503      HEX  383E7F7E7E3F3F1C ;NO. 3
6543: 7E 7E 3F 3F 1C
6548: 18 06 7C 504      HEX  18067C0F7C3F7E3F ;NO. 4
654B: 0F 7C 3F 7E 3F
6550: 7C 7F 7C 505      HEX  7C7F7C3F7E3F7F1F
6553: 3F 7E 3F 7F 1F
6558: 7E 0F 7C 506      HEX  7E0F7C1F700F4003
655B: 1F 70 0F 40 03

```

BYTETBL
OFFSET
HI
LO

2278 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	MLINE	=\$6003	MLINEA	=\$6004
BLINE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	MHORIZ	=\$6007	BHORIZ	=\$6008
HORIZB	=\$6009	HORIZM	=\$600A	BULON	=\$600B	XCOUNT	=\$600C
DELAY	=\$600D	BTEMP	=\$600E	MTEMP	=\$600F	ELINE	=\$6036
ELINEA	=\$6037	EDEPTH	=\$6038	SUM	=\$6039	COUNTER	=\$603A
MSHPADR	=\$603B	BSHPADR	=\$6049	PGM	=\$6057	CLR1	=\$606B
CLR	=\$606F	LN	=\$6091	LN1	=\$60A8	PADDLE	=\$60B8
BULLET1	=\$60D6	BULLET	=\$60E1	TOP	=\$6103	MINITIAL	=\$6109
BINITIAL	=\$6118	SINITIAL	=\$6123	PR	=\$612E	PDLE	=\$6137
PDLE1	=\$614D	LOAD	=\$6167	MDRAW	=\$6172	MDRAW1	=\$6177
LOADBUL	=\$61BC	BDRAW	=\$61DF	NOHIT	=\$61FB	COLLISION	=\$6203
BXDRAW	=\$621B	EXPLODE	=\$6233	DRAW1	=\$6278	DRAW2	=\$62A7
INITE1	=\$62E4	INITE2	=\$62F8	INITE3	=\$630C	INITE4	=\$6320
SCORE	=\$6334	C1	=\$6352	C10	=\$6365	STOP1	=\$637F
STOP	=\$6392	PRINT	=\$639D	NSHAPE	=\$63CE	MSHAPE1	=\$641E
MSHAPE2	=\$6445	MSHAPE3	=\$646C	MSHAPE4	=\$6493	MSHAPE5	=\$64BA
MSHAPE6	=\$64E1	MSHAPE7	=\$6508	BSHAPE1	=\$652F	BSHAPE2	=\$6530
BSHAPE3	=\$6531	BSHAPE4	=\$6532	BSHAPE5	=\$6533	BSHAPE6	=\$6534
BSHAPE7	=\$6535	ESHAPE	=\$6536	BYTETBL	=\$6560	OFFSET	=\$6663
HI	=\$6766	LO	=\$6826	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052
PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	BUTTON	=\$C061	PREAD	=\$FB1E
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

The protocols presented in this chapter are not the end-all of scoring routines. I know of at least two others that more or less accomplish the same purpose and I'm sure there are still others lurking in programs somewhere. Perhaps you could devise a better routine yourself. Why not give it a try? If you come up with something better, fame, fortune, and members of the opposite sex (or the same sex?) await you.

Sound Generation: Explosions and Clickety-Clicks

Clickety-click, buzz and wham

Puckety-puckety, pft and slam

Pow and bang

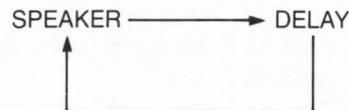
Whoosh and clang

Tinkely-tink, whir and blam.

Sound generation routines are among the easiest to explain but the hardest to apply, at least in game programs, requiring a great deal of trial and error and just plain all around fiddling. This is why other books on assembly language hi-res graphics and most commercial hi-res graphics utility programs omit the subject entirely. Well, there's no getting around it so let's jump in. We'll discuss first the principles of sound generation on the Apple II and then see how to apply these principles to our game program.

THE APPLE SPEAKER AND SOUND GENERATION

Somewhere in your little tan Apple box is what is laughingly called a loud-speaker. Its size is so small it gives new meaning to the term "low fidelity." However, it is capable of producing sounds, if not music. It does this in the following way. The speaker cone is in one of two positions, in or out. By accessing a soft switch located at \$C030, the cone changes position thereby pushing air and producing a sound wave. When the speaker is accessed just once, a click can be heard if you listen carefully. By accessing the speaker in rapid succession, tones are produced; the more frequent the access, the higher the tone or pitch. The basic tone-producing cycle is as follows:



By altering the delay time, different pitches are produced, ranging anywhere from low-pitched clicks (long delay) to high-pitched tones (short delay).

Writing an assembly language program to produce the cycle depicted above is easy to do, especially for us experts, but something else is required lest the tone continue indefinitely (you could always stop the program or pull the plug and lucky Apple IIc owners could always turn down the volume, but let's do it properly). The point is that the cycle has to be interrupted so that we can specify the tone's duration. Let's look at the following program to see how it's done.

```

]PROGRAM 9-1
:ASM
1      **** SOUND ****
2
3      ORG  $6000
4      JMP  PGM
5      DELAY DS 1
6      SPEAKER = $C030
7      WAIT = $FCA8
8      PGM LDA #$60
9      STA DELAY
10     LDY #$02
11     SOUND BIT SPEAKER
12     LDA DELAY
13     JSR WAIT
14     DEY
15     BNE SOUND
16     JMP  PGM

```

--End assembly--

26 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

DELAY	=\$6003	PGM	=\$6004	SOUND	=\$600B	SPEAKER	=\$C030
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

The program loads DELAY with #\$60 and Y with #\$02. At SOUND, the speaker is accessed, using BIT instead of LDA just because I feel like it (\$C030 must be accessed either with LDA or BIT, not STA). There is then a time delay followed by a DEY and BNE SOUND. A BNE that doesn't follow a comparison instruction simply means branch if the previous operation results in a non-zero; in this case, branch if Y hasn't reached zero yet. Because Y is now 1, the program branches for another speaker access and delay. DEY now decrements Y to zero so the branch is not taken and the program jumps to START for another round. What's happening here is that the value in DELAY is specifying the pitch, i.e., the time between speaker accesses, while Y specifies the duration. The duration effect is not readily apparent in this program, because at the end of each tone pulse, the program branches immediately back to the beginning for another cycle. If we replace line 15 with RTS, we would then produce a single tone whose duration would be more obviously controlled by Y.

One problem with this type of routine should be mentioned, although it has no bearing on our game program. The duration of the tone depends not only on Y but also on DELAY, because DELAY contributes to the overall execution time for the routine and, thus, a given Y cannot be used to produce different pitched

tones of equal duration. (By the way, have you ever noticed that tone is an anagram of note? I only mention this to take your mind off the duration control problem.)

To see the effect of the time delay on pitch, run Program 9-1 with different values in DELAY. A value of #\$60 produces a low, rapid clicking. If we increase the delay, the clicks become lower and slower—#\$90 produces a kind of put-put and #\$BB a sort of hoppity-hop (this is by far the hardest part of writing this book, trying to find adjectives to describe these sounds!). Decreasing the delay produces higher pitches and more rapid clicking. A value of #\$40 produces a buzz, and it's only when we get to #\$30 or below that we hear something that resembles a musical tone. A value of #\$05 results in a very high pitched tone, just barely audible and just barely bearable. Try #\$01 and drive every dog in the neighborhood crazy. Isn't this fun? I hope you're enjoying it, because now we're getting to the sticky part.

INTEGRATING SOUND EFFECTS INTO THE GAME PROGRAM

Although we won't be discussing the game program as such until the next chapter, we know enough about the game already to allow us to apply the principles of sound generation to the development of sound effects. The game itself is relatively simple and this limits our options. The sound effects I've decided to include are an explosion sound when a plane is hit and some sort of sound when a plane is traversing the screen.

One problem with integrating sound effects into any type of program is that any sort of sound, except individual clicks, requires a time delay between speaker accesses and we have to be careful that our sound routine doesn't result in an unwanted program interruption. The solution to this problem is to insert sound routines where program delays already exist.

Let's discuss the explosion sound first. In the game program, as in Program 8-1, a collision sends the program to the EXPLODE subroutine where the explosion shapes are drawn and erased. Remember that between each draw and erase, we inserted a time delay. What I've done is substitute the explosion sound routine for the first delay, i.e., between drawing and erasing the first explosion shape. In other words, the sound routine itself provides the delay—in this way we've added an extra feature to the program without altering its execution time. The sound routine itself is listed below:

```
SOUND  LDY  #$02
SOUND1 BIT  SPEAKER
        LDA  #$60
        JSR  WAIT
        DEY
        BNE  SOUND1
        RTS
```

This routine produces a single tone with a delay of #\$60 between speaker accesses. The total delay for this routine can be calculated as follows. The LDA #\$60, JSR WAIT is accessed twice ($Y = 2$). Two times #\$60 equals 2 times 96 = 192 or #\$C0. The original delay time was #\$BB or 187. Thus, even adding a little

extra time for the execution of the sound routine, we see that the total delay is very close to what we had originally.

It might seem, on paper at least, that a single tone is hardly appropriate for an explosion sound but if you run the game program you'll see that it works. That's why so much fiddling is required—what looks bad on paper may be perfectly alright in a program and, unfortunately, vice versa.

In spite of the fact that the routine works, I'm sure that with a little extra fiddling, you or I could come up with something better. Instead of me doing it for you, here is an opportunity for you to display your expertise and imagination (if you think I'm trying to wriggle out of this, you're right). How can we do this? Well, we could try to alter the tone by raising the pitch and duration. Doing this would not increase the total delay time because raising the pitch means less delay between speaker accesses. We could try inserting other tones in other program locations—obvious places would be the time delays between drawing and erasing the other explosion shapes. We could try—well, as I told you in the beginning, there's a lot of trial and error involved in this process, and so on some cold February night, with a blizzard raging, nothing on television, the kids asleep, the dog at the vet, and your wife/hubby in Hoboken for the annual meeting of the International Computer Widows/Widowers Association, give it a try. You have nothing to lose except your sanity.

Now we get to the plane sound. The plane as drawn looks like it's jet- or rocket-powered and so one might imagine that we should strive for something like a whooshing sound. However, computer game programmers are allowed the equivalent of poetic license, which means if it's too hard, we'll do something else. The plane is, in fact, powered by an electric motor. Why? Because I say so—after all, I am its creator (there's nothing like learning assembly language to give one a feeling of omnipotency)—and besides, the motor sound effect somehow seems to work. The sound we want then is a kind of clickety-click (there are those adjectives again) and one way to accomplish this is by clicking the speaker just once each time a plane is moved one bit position. The delay between clicks is accomplished by the program itself as it loops from one plane move to the next. However, when I tried this in the game program I wasn't entirely satisfied because the clicks were too rapid, and so I decided instead to have the speaker click every other plane move. The technique for doing this illustrates a method generally applicable to any situation where we want to access a routine every other cycle, so let's discuss the details.

The Apple II microprocessor contains another register besides the Accumulator, X, and Y, called the Status Register, which can also hold just a single byte. In contrast to the other registers, however, the Status Register is not used to store numbers per se, but rather to indicate certain conditions by having each bit contain a 1 or 0. I'm not going to discuss all the functions of the Status Register bits but the one bit I do want to discuss is called the Carry bit. One function of the Carry bit is to indicate an overflow when a number is added to `#$FF` in the Accumulator. For example, adding `#$01` to `#$FF` zeros the Accumulator and sets the Carry bit to 1. This is why the instruction `ADC` (ADd with Carry) requires a prior `CLC` (CLear Carry) and why `SBC` (SuBtract with Carry) requires a prior `SEC` (SEt Carry). Another function of the Carry bit is as an indicator in comparisons. For example, `CMP` compares a value to the value in the Accumulator. If the value in the Accumulator is less than the compared value, the Carry bit is cleared (0); if more, the Carry bit is set (1). This is why the pseudo-op `BLT` (Branch if Less Than) is used in some Assemblers in place of `BCC` (Branch on Carry Clear), and `BGE` (Branch if Greater or Equal) in place of `BCS` (Branch on Carry Set).

Now we're ready to see how we can use the Carry bit for our every-other-cycle click routine.

The instruction LSR (Logical Shift Right) moves each bit in the Accumulator one position to the right—a zero is moved into bit 7 and bit 0 moves into the Carry. Note that some assemblers require A in the operand column, i.e., LSR A.



LSR can be used to test if the number in the Accumulator is odd or even. If even, bit 0 (this is the 1's column) must contain 0 and after LSR, the Carry bit will be clear; if odd, bit 0 must contain 1 and after LSR the Carry bit will be set. Thus, a BCC will branch the program if the number is even and not branch if the number is odd (here we're using BCC instead of BLT because the standard mnemonic reminds us what the instruction is doing).

Now let's see how to use LSR to alternate the speaker clicks. First, somewhere in the beginning of the program we define a memory location DE. Then, in the MAIN PROGRAM at the point where we draw a plane with JSR PDRAW, we include the following routine:

```

JSR PDRAW      ;DRAW PLANE
INC DE
LDA DE
***           ;CARRY = 0 IF DE IS EVEN
LSR            ;CARRY = 1 IF DE IS ODD
BCC BUL        ;SKIP NEXT LINE IF CARRY = 0
BIT SPEAKER    ;CLICK SPEAKER
BUL etc.
```

Every time a plane is drawn, DE changes from odd to even or vice versa and thus the speaker is accessed only every other plane draw. Because this routine clicks the speaker just once, no time delay is involved (except for the time it takes to run the routine) and the program execution time is not noticeably affected. DE does not have to be set to any particular number in the beginning of the program, as the actual value in DE is immaterial for the odd-even cycle. Note also that DE never fills up because when it reaches #\$FF it simply wraps around to #\$00. In addition, notice that we first load DE into the Accumulator and then do an LSR on the Accumulator contents. The LSR instruction can have a memory location as the operand, but if we perform an LSR DE directly without loading DE into the Accumulator, DE would itself be changed and this would interfere with the odd-even cycling.

This brings us to the end of our preparatory chapters. In the next chapter we will see how to assemble the final game program.

Putting It All Together: The Game

*There once was a girl from Sydney
Who could . . . (never mind).*

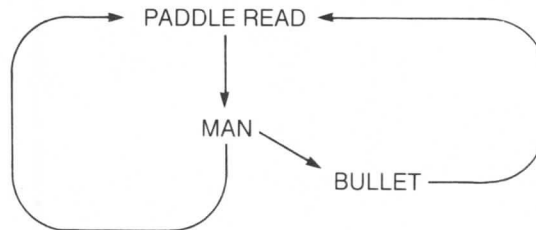
Our goal is finally in sight. All we need do now is to take our expert knowledge of assembly language programming and the routines we've already developed and assemble them into the final game program, but this is easier said than done as we'll soon see.

Essentially what we're going to do is merge Programs 8-1 and 5-1, and add sound routines and a few other embellishments. Before we do this, however, a brief description of the game is in order. A man will move along a bottom line, his movement controlled by a paddle or joystick. Planes will appear, with appropriate sound effects, one at a time near the top of the screen, moving left to right all at the same screen line position. A bullet can be fired by pressing the paddle or joystick button. If a plane isn't hit by a bullet, it continues to the end of the screen where it is erased and a new plane then reappears for another screen traversal. If a plane is hit, it explodes with a (sort of) bang, the score is incremented by 1 and another plane then appears at the left border. The game stops when the score reaches 100 or when 100 planes have appeared. Thus, if 10 planes are missed, the game will stop at a score of 90. In this way, a player can tell how close he came to the ideal of hitting all 100 planes. The game can be restarted by pressing any key.

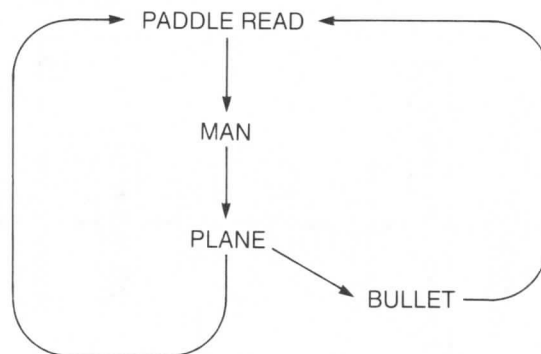
Now to the heart of the matter. As mentioned in a previous chapter, when dealing with a relatively complicated program, it is essential to design the flow-chart first, leaving the details to later. The fact that we already have most of the details is of no matter. It is merely a consequence of the fact that this book is a teaching exercise—an experienced programmer would start with this chapter first and work backwards, so to speak, to fill in the details.

The main problem in designing a game program is ordering the routines in such a way that the desired simulation is achieved. Remember that a computer can do only one thing at a time and in the final program we might want to simulate, at some points at least, simultaneous events, and some events must follow or precede others. We have to consider which shapes to draw first, which to draw last, when to erase, where to insert the paddle read, score, and explosions, etc. The ordering of routines then is the salient dictum.

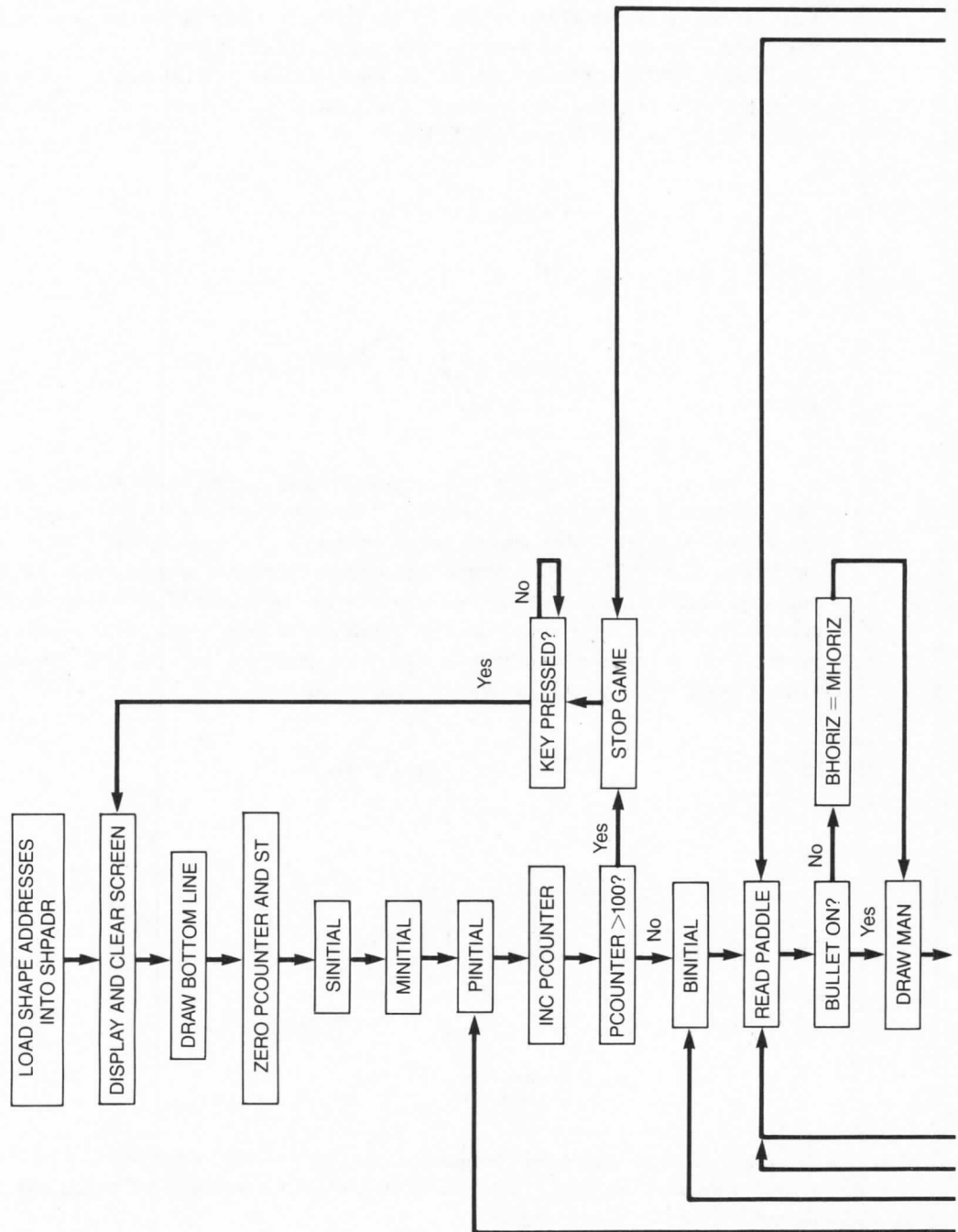
Remember that in Chapter 6 we discussed for the first time how to design a program with two shapes moving at the same time, the man and bullet. The overall design can be depicted as follows:

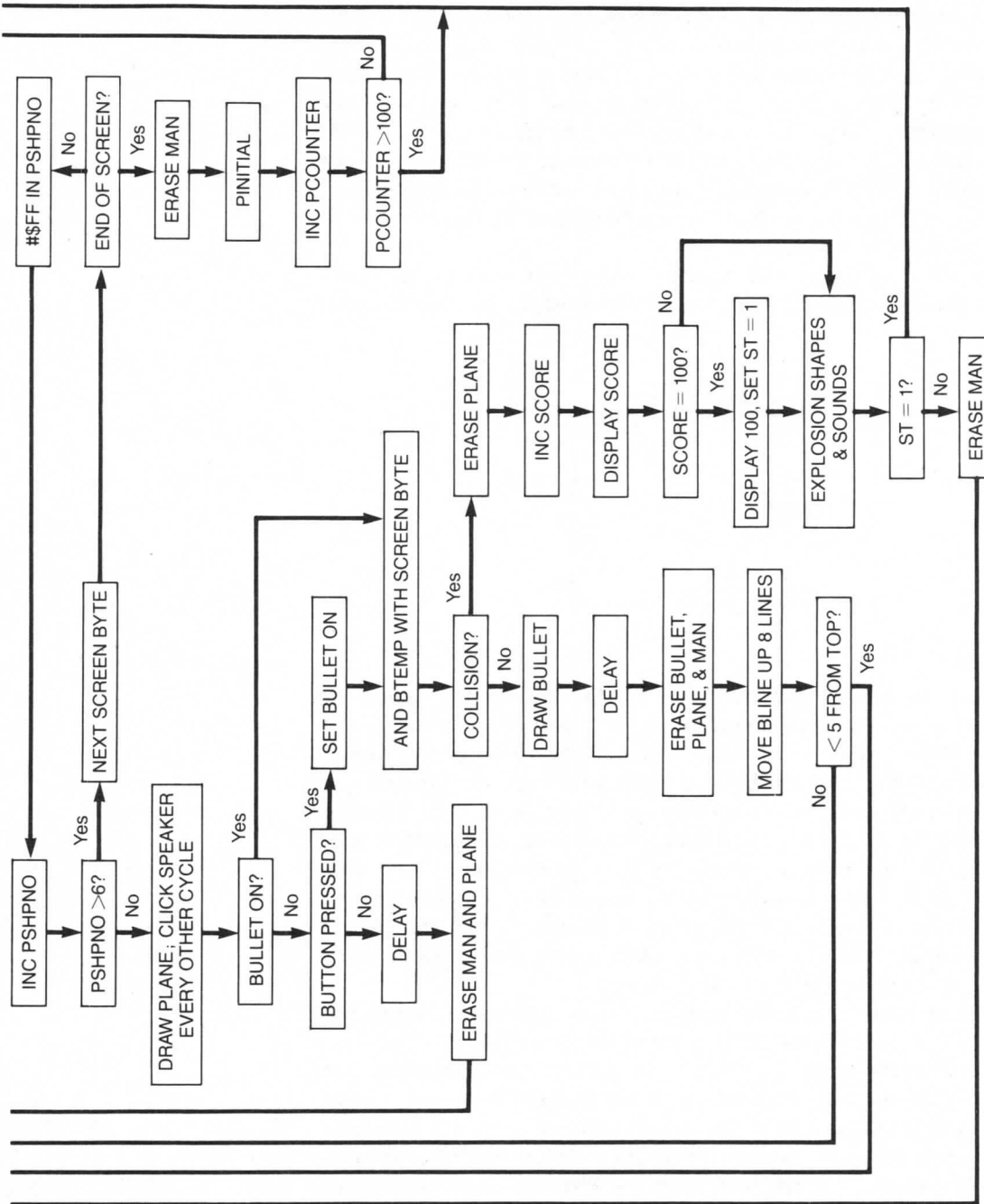


The program continues in this loop indefinitely even if a bullet isn't drawn or if the paddle doesn't change position. The important point is that we created the illusion that the bullet moves at the same time the man's movement is controlled by the paddle even though, of course, each man and bullet move is a separate event. This is a direct consequence of the speed of the program—the time between the bullet move and the paddle-controlled move is so small as to produce the illusion of simultaneity. The game program uses the same principle except here we're drawing a plane after the man draw:



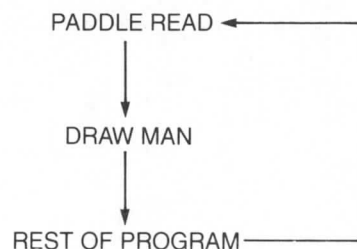
Again, the speed of the program allows us to create the illusion of three shapes moving at the same time. Now, with all this in mind, let's examine the flowchart for the game program.





In the program's beginning, we take care of the "housekeeping" chores—the shape addresses are assembled into shape address tables, the screen is cleared and displayed, the bottom line drawn, counters are zeroed, and we initialize the score, man, plane, and bullet. Let's stop here to discuss a point we haven't seen before. Remember that we want to keep track of how many planes are drawn so we can stop the program when 100 planes have appeared (if the perfect score of 100 has not been attained). We do this in the PINITIAL routine because this routine is accessed when, and only when, a new plane is drawn, either after a plane has been hit or when a plane has reached the end of the screen (and of course for the first plane draw). We accomplish this by incrementing PCOUNTER (initially set to zero at the beginning) for each access to PINITIAL and asking whether PCOUNTER contains a value less than 101. If it does, we continue—if it doesn't, we stop the program (we don't do a comparison to 100 because we want the 100th plane to be drawn).

The program then continues with a paddle read and man draw. If there is such a thing as a grand design for a program, we can illustrate it in the following diagram:



Everything else in the program we want to do, drawing the planes and bullets, keeping score, displaying explosions, all the sound effects, reinitializing, are all done in between paddle reads. The program doesn't have to be designed this way—it's just that the program is fast enough so that paddle reads do not have to be done more frequently. The illusion we're striving for (and attaining) is that the man's position is always responsive to the paddle regardless of whatever else is going on. (But note the caveat discussed in Chapter 7—the man's position becomes momentarily unresponsive to the paddle during the explosion shapes display; but note, too, as also discussed in Chapter 7, that this delay is hardly noticeable and could be eliminated by inserting other paddle reads between drawing and erasing the explosion shapes.)

The paddle read routine, you will remember, also contains a "bullet on?" question. If the bullet is not on, BHORIZ is set equal to MHORIZ so that when the bullet is fired, it will be aligned with the man. If the bullet is already on, this step is skipped to allow the bullet to move up independent of the man's position.

After the paddle read, the man is drawn and then we prepare to draw the plane. Here we access the plane shape number a little differently than before for programming convenience. We first increment PSHPNO. Because we want the first shape, PSHPNO should contain #\$00 after we increment. This is why PSHPNO is loaded with #\$FF in PINITIAL—incrementing #\$FF wraps the value around to #\$00. We then ask if the value in PSHPNO is greater than 6; i.e., have we finished all seven shapes? If no, we continue and draw the plane, clicking the

speaker every other cycle. If yes, we move to the next screen byte and ask if we've reached the end of the screen. If no, we load PSHPNO with #\$FF again and loop back to INC PSHPNO in preparation for the next plane draw, this time with shape 0 at the next screen byte position. If we have reached the end of the screen, we erase the man (the plane has already been erased by the DRAW-ERASE protocol), and initialize the plane again, thereby also incrementing PCOUNTER. We then test PCOUNTER to see if 100 planes have appeared—if yes, we stop the program; if no, we continue with another paddle read which draws the man, and then the plane is drawn again.

After the plane is drawn, we ask if the bullet is on or if the button is pressed. If neither, we skip the bullet draw routine entirely and erase the man and the plane in preparation for another paddle read—the man's position is updated and the plane moves over one bit. Note a general feature of the program; just before a paddle access, we always erase whatever shape (man, plane, or bullet) that happens to be on the screen, in preparation for the next move.

Supposing the button is pressed or the bullet is already on the screen—we then go to the bullet draw routine before we reaccess the paddle (if the button is pressed, the bullet on marker, BULON, is set). The BDRAW routine first does a collision test before the bullet is drawn. If there is no collision, the bullet is drawn and then the bullet, plane, and man are erased in preparation for the next paddle read. Before we access the paddle however, we move the next bullet position up eight lines and ask if it has reached the top (actually, within five lines of the top). If it hasn't, that's fine—we simply go back for another paddle read. If it has, we have to initialize the bullet first before the paddle read.

Suppose a collision is detected. Here I've changed the protocol slightly to produce what I think is a better display. You remember in Program 8-1 we displayed the explosion first and then the score. This was done so that when the score reached 100 (if all 100 planes were hit) the explosion would finish before the score indicated the program should stop; otherwise, we would be left with an unexploded plane on the screen. I found this delay in displaying the score unnerving—I want to see the score right after that plane is blasted! So here we're going to display the score first, before the explosion.

In the COLLISION routine, we first erase the plane (we always erase the shape that's hit), INC SUM, and then go to SCORE routine. In SCORE, if the count is 100, we print 100 in the display and then, instead of stopping the program, we load an indicator labeled ST with #\$01. If the score is not 100, ST contains #\$00. We then jump back to the COLLISION routine, draw and erase the explosion shapes with the accompanying sound effect, and test ST. If ST contains #\$01, it means the score has reached 100 and we stop the program—remember we've already displayed and erased the explosion so we're not left with an unexploded plane. If ST contains #\$00, the score has not reached 100 and we continue by erasing the man (there's no need to erase the bullet, as the collision test is done before the bullet is drawn), initializing the plane and bullet, and reading the paddle again.

We've now come to the end of the flowchart. A good way to check out a program, to make sure it's doing what we want it to do, is to run through the flowchart considering all possible routes, so let's do that now.

Situation—The man and plane are drawn and the bullet is not fired and is not on the screen.

Flow—After a delay, the man and plane are erased and the paddle read again for another man and plane draw. The plane moves across the screen and the man's movement is controlled by the paddle; nothing else happens.

Situation—The man and plane are drawn but PSHPNO indicates the next plane draw will reach the end of the screen.

Flow—The man is erased and the plane initialized so that the next plane will appear at the starting left border position. If 100 planes have appeared, the program stops; if not, the paddle is read again to update the man's position and the next man and plane are drawn.

Situation—The man and plane are drawn and the button is pressed.

Flow—BULON is set to indicate bullet on and the bullet draw routine is accessed. Because the bullet was not on when the paddle was read, BHORIZ is equal to MHORIZ and the bullet is fired from the man's position.

Situation—The man and plane are drawn and the bullet is on the screen.

Flow—BDRAW is accessed but BHORIZ is now independent of MHORIZ, so the bullet can move up independently of the man's position.

Situation—The man and plane are drawn, a bullet is on the screen but not yet at the top, and no collision is detected.

Flow—The bullet is drawn and after a delay, the bullet, man, and plane are erased. The paddle is read again to update the man shape position, the plane moves one bit position and the bullet moves up eight lines. This continues until the bullet has reached the top of the screen or until a plane is hit.

Situation—Same as above but the bullet has reached the top.

Flow—The bullet is initialized, which sets BULON to indicate the bullet is not on and the bullet will not be drawn unless the button is pressed. Thus, we're back to the situation where the man and plane are drawn but the bullet is not on.

Situation—The man and plane are drawn, a bullet is on the screen, and a collision is detected.

Flow—The plane is erased, SUM incremented, the score displayed, and the explosion shapes drawn and erased with the explosion sound effect. If the score is at 100, the program stops. If less than 100, the man is erased, the plane and bullet initialized, and the paddle read in preparation for another cycle.

Situation—A plane has been hit or has reached the end of the screen.

Flow—PCOUNTER is incremented for each such occurrence. After 100 such events, the program stops (unless stopped by the score reaching 100).

This takes us through essentially all the game assembly, as we already know most of the program details. In fact, there is only one minor detail that need be considered. Conditional branch instructions branch to program locations by relative rather than absolute addressing; i.e., the location to be branched to is not specified by a particular address but rather by the distance (in bytes) from the branch instruction. The branching distance is limited, however, by a maximum of 127 bytes forward or 128 bytes back. What do you do if you want to branch to a location outside these limits? Lines 172-174 and 365-368 in Program 10-1 illustrate the solution. In line 172, for example, what we would like to do is

branch to BI with a BLT BI but BI is too far from the branch instruction. So, what we do instead is insert a short branch to a JMP instruction (JMP branches to absolute addresses and thus does not have any distance limitation). The routine is:

```

        BLT LONG
        ....
        ....
LONG    JMP BI

```

By the way, your assembler will tell you, with an error message, when you attempt to branch beyond the distance limits.

And now—fanfare please—it is with great pride (or at least some pride) and little trepidation that I hereby present THE GAME! (Whoops—it has no name! To enter the Name the Game contest, send \$10 in cash, and also an entry if you like, to me, care of the publisher. The winner will receive a thank you note suitable for framing.)

```

]PROGRAM 10-1
:ASM
1      **** THE GAME! ****
2      ORG    $6000
6000: 4C 7C 60 3      JMP    PGM
4      MLINE  DS    1
5      MLINEA DS    1
6      BLINE  DS    1
7      DEPTH  DS    1
8      MHORIZ DS    1
9      BHORIZ DS    1
10     HORIZB  DS    1
11     HORIZM  DS    1
12     BULON   DS    1
13     XCOUNT DS    1
14     DELAY   DS    1
15     BTEMP   DS    1
16     MTEMP   DS    39
17     ELINE   DS    1
18     ELINEA  DS    1
19     EDEPTH  DS    1
20     SUM     DS    1
21     COUNTER DS    1
22     DE      DS    1
23     PCOUNTER DS    1
24     PLINE   DS    1
25     PLINEA  DS    1
26     PBYTE   DS    1
27     PDEPTH  DS    1
28     PSHPNO  DS    1
29     PTEMP   DS    15
30     ST      DS    1
31     GRAPHICS =    $C050
32     MIXOFF  =    $C052
33     HIRES   =    $C057
34     PAGE1   =    $C054
35     HIGH    =    $1B
36     LOW     =    $1A
37     WAIT    =    $FCA8
38     PREAD   =    $FB1E

```

```

39  BUTTON  =  $C061      ;BUTTON 0
40  SPEAKER =  $C030
41  *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
42  *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6052: EE      43  MSHPADR DFB #<MSHAPE1
6053: 64      44          DFB #>MSHAPE1
6054: 15      45          DFB #<MSHAPE2
6055: 65      46          DFB #>MSHAPE2
6056: 3C      47          DFB #<MSHAPE3
6057: 65      48          DFB #>MSHAPE3
6058: 63      49          DFB #<MSHAPE4
6059: 65      50          DFB #>MSHAPE4
605A: 8A      51          DFB #<MSHAPE5
605B: 65      52          DFB #>MSHAPE5
605C: B1      53          DFB #<MSHAPE6
605D: 65      54          DFB #>MSHAPE6
605E: D8      55          DFB #<MSHAPE7
605F: 65      56          DFB #>MSHAPE7
6060: FF      57  BSHPADR DFB #<BSHAPE1
6061: 65      58          DFB #>BSHAPE1
6062: 00      59          DFB #<BSHAPE2
6063: 66      60          DFB #>BSHAPE2
6064: 01      61          DFB #<BSHAPE3
6065: 66      62          DFB #>BSHAPE3
6066: 02      63          DFB #<BSHAPE4
6067: 66      64          DFB #>BSHAPE4
6068: 03      65          DFB #<BSHAPE5
6069: 66      66          DFB #>BSHAPE5
606A: 04      67          DFB #<BSHAPE6
606B: 66      68          DFB #>BSHAPE6
606C: 05      69          DFB #<BSHAPE7
606D: 66      70          DFB #>BSHAPE7
606E: 30      71  PSHPADR DFB #<PSHAPE1
606F: 66      72          DFB #>PSHAPE1
6070: 3F      73          DFB #<PSHAPE2
6071: 66      74          DFB #>PSHAPE2
6072: 4E      75          DFB #<PSHAPE3
6073: 66      76          DFB #>PSHAPE3
6074: 5D      77          DFB #<PSHAPE4
6075: 66      78          DFB #>PSHAPE4
6076: 6C      79          DFB #<PSHAPE5
6077: 66      80          DFB #>PSHAPE5
6078: 7B      81          DFB #<PSHAPE6
6079: 66      82          DFB #>PSHAPE6
607A: 8A      83          DFB #<PSHAPE7
607B: 66      84          DFB #>PSHAPE7
607C: AD 50 C0 85  PGM    LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
607F: AD 52 C0 86          LDA MIXOFF
6082: AD 57 C0 87          LDA HIRES
6085: AD 54 C0 88          LDA PAGE1
6088: A9 00      89          LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
608A: 85 1A      90          STA LOW
608C: A9 20      91          LDA #$20
608E: 85 1B      92          STA HIGH
6090: A0 00      93  CLR1   LDY  #$00
6092: A9 00      94          LDA  #$00
6094: 91 1A      95  CLR     STA  (LOW),Y
6096: C8          96          INY
6097: D0 FB      97          BNE  CLR
6099: E6 1B      98          INC  HIGH
609B: A5 1B      99          LDA  HIGH

```

```

609D: C9 40      100      CMP  #$40
609F: 90 EF      101      BLT  CLR1
60A1: A9 50      102      LDA  #$50      ;LOAD DELAY
60A3: 8D 0D 60   103      STA  DELAY
60A6: A2 B7      104      LDX  #$B7      ;DRAW BOTTOM LINE
60A8: A0 00      105      LDY  #$00
60AA: BD 9F 68   106      LDA  HI,X
60AD: 85 1B      107      STA  HIGH
60AF: BD 5F 69   108      LDA  LO,X
60B2: 85 1A      109      STA  LOW
60B4: A9 7F      110      LDA  #$7F
60B6: 91 1A      111      LN      STA  (LOW),Y
60B8: C8         112      INY
60B9: C0 27      113      CPY  #$27
60BB: 90 F9      114      BLT  LN
60BD: A9 00      115      LDA  #$00
60BF: 8D 3C 60   116      STA  PCOUNTER
60C2: 8D 51 60   117      STA  ST
60C5: 20 70 61   118      ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
60C8: 20 56 61   119      JSR  SINITIAL      ;INITIALIZATION
60CB: 20 84 61   120      JSR  MINITIAL
60CE: 20 65 61   121      PI      JSR  PINITIAL
60D1: 20 C6 61   122      BI      JSR  BINITIAL
60D4: 20 01 62   123      PADDLE JSR  PDLE      ;READ PADDLE
60D7: EE 41 60   124      JSR  MDRAW      ;DRAW MAN
60DA: AD 41 60   125      PSTART INC  PSHPNO      ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER TO ZERO
60DD: C9 07      126      LDA  PSHPNO
60DF: 90 1B      127      CMP  #$07      ;DRAWN ALL 7 SHAPES?
60E1: EE 3F 60   128      BLT  PSTART2      ;IF NO, DRAW PLANE
60E4: AD 3F 60   129      INC  PBYTE      ;IF YES, NEXT SCREEN BYTE
60E7: C9 26      130      LDA  PBYTE
60E9: 90 09      131      CMP  #$26      ;END OF SCREEN?
60EB: 20 84 61   132      BLT  PSTART1      ;IF NO, RESET SHAPE NO. &
60EE: 20 01 62   133      *      CONTINUE DRAW
60F1: 4C D1 60   134      JSR  PINITIAL      ;IF YES, INITIALIZE PLANE AND
60F4: A9 FF      135      JSR  MDRAW      ERASE MAN AND
60F6: 8D 41 60   136      JMP  PADDLE      GO BACK TO PADDLE READ
60F9: 4C D7 60   137      PSTART1 LDA  #$FF
60FC: 20 AA 61   138      STA  PSHPNO
60FF: 20 4B 62   139      JMP  PSTART
6102: EE 3B 60   140      PSTART2 JSR  PLOADSHP
6105: AD 3B 60   141      JSR  PDRAW      ;DRAW PLANE
6108: 4A         142      INC  DE      ;ACCESS SPEAKER EVERY OTHER CYCLE
6109: 90 03      143      LDA  DE
610B: 2C 30 C0   144      **
610E: AD 0B 60   145      LSR         ;C=0 IF DE IS EVEN
6111: C9 01      146      BCC  BUL      ;C=1 IF DE IS ODD
6113: F0 19      147      BIT  SPEAKER
6115: AD 61 C0   148      BUL      LDA  BULON
6118: 30 0F      149      CMP  #$01      ;IS BULLET ON?
611A: AD 0D 60   150      BEQ  BULLET      ;IF YES, CONTINUE BULLET DRAW
611D: 20 A8 FC   151      LDA  BUTTON      ;IF NO, IS BUTTON PRESSED?
6120: 20 01 62   152      BMI  BULLET1      ;IF YES, DRAW BULLET
6123: 20 4B 62   153      LDA  DELAY      ;IF NO,
6126: 4C D1 60   154      JSR  WAIT      DELAY AND
6129: A9 01      155      JSR  MDRAW      ERASE MAN AND
612B: 8D 0B 60   156      JSR  PDRAW      ERASE PLANE
612E: 20 95 62   157      JMP  PADDLE      READ PADDLE AGAIN
6131: A9 01      158      BULLET1 LDA  #$01      ;SET BULLET ON
6134: 8D 0B 60   159      STA  BULON
6137: 20 95 62   160      BULLET JSR  LOADBUL      ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP

```

```

6131: 20 B8 62 161      JSR  BDRAW      ;DRAW BULLET & TEST FOR COLLISION
6134: AD 0D 60 162      LDA  DELAY
6137: 20 A8 FC 163      JSR  WAIT       ;DELAY
613A: 20 F8 62 164      JSR  BXDRAW     ;ERASE BULLET
613D: 20 01 62 165      JSR  MDRAW     ;ERASE MAN
6140: 20 4B 62 166      JSR  PDRAW     ;ERASE PLANE
6143: AD 05 60 167      LDA  BLINE
6146: 38          168      SEC
6147: E9 08          169      SBC  #$08      ;MOVE BLINE UP 8 LINES
6149: 8D 05 60 170      STA  BLINE
614C: C9 05          171      CMP  #$05      ;LESS THAN 5 LINES FROM TOP?
614E: 90 03          172      BLT  LONG      ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH
6150: 4C D1 60 173      JMP  PADDLE     ;IF NO, READ PADDLE AGAIN
6153: 4C CE 60 174      LONG  JMP  BI
175 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6156: A9 AA          176      MINITIAL LDA  #$AA
6158: 8D 03 60 177      STA  MLINE
615B: 8D 04 60 178      STA  MLINEA
615E: 18          179      CLC
615F: 69 0D          180      ADC  #$0D
6161: 8D 06 60 181      STA  DEPTH
6164: 60          182      RTS
183 *****
6165: A9 00          184      BINITIAL LDA  #$00      ;BULON = 0 IF
6167: 8D 0B 60 185      STA  BULON      BULLET NOT ON SCREEN
616A: A9 A4          186      LDA  #$A4
616C: 8D 05 60 187      STA  BLINE
616F: 60          188      RTS
189 *****
6170: A9 00          190      SINITIAL LDA  #$00      ;SCORE DISPLAYS THREE 0'S
6172: 8D 39 60 191      STA  SUM
6175: 8D 3A 60 192      STA  COUNTER
6178: AA          193      TAX
6179: A0 11          194      LDY  #$11
617B: 20 6D 64 195      PR      JSR  PRINT
617E: C8          196      INY
617F: C0 14          197      CPY  #$14
6181: 90 F8          198      BLT  PR
6183: 60          199      RTS
200 *****
6184: A9 FF          201      PINITIAL LDA  #$FF      ;PSHPNO LOADED WITH #$FF SO FIRST
*          202      *          INC  PSHPNO WILL LOAD PSHPNO
*          203      *          WITH ZERO
6186: 8D 41 60 204      STA  PSHPNO
6189: EE 3C 60 205      INC  PCOUNTER      ;PINITIAL AND PCOUNTER ACCESSED
*          206      *          ONLY ON COLLISION OR
*          207      *          END OF SCREEN
618C: AD 3C 60 208      LDA  PCOUNTER
618F: C9 65          209      CMP  #$65      ;PCOUNTER MORE THAN 100?
6191: 90 03          210      BLT  PCONT      ;IF NO, CONTINUE P INITIALIZATION
6193: 4C 62 64 211      JMP  STOP2      ;IF YES, STOP GAME
6196: A9 00          212      PCONT  LDA  #$00
6198: 8D 3F 60 213      STA  PBYTE
619B: A9 08          214      LDA  #$08
619D: 8D 3E 60 215      STA  PLINEA
61A0: 8D 3D 60 216      STA  PLINE
61A3: 18          217      CLC
61A4: 69 05          218      ADC  #$05
61A6: 8D 40 60 219      STA  PDEPTH
61A9: 60          220      RTS
221 *****

```

```

61AA: AD 41 60 222 PLOADSHP LDA PSHPNO
61AD: 0A      223      ASL
61AE: AA      224      TAX
61AF: BD 6E 60 225      LDA PSHPADR,X
61B2: 85 1A      226      STA LOW
61B4: BD 6F 60 227      LDA PSHPADR+1,X
61B7: 85 1B      228      STA HIGH
61B9: A0 00      229      LDY #$00
61BB: B1 1A      230 PLOADSHP1 LDA (LOW),Y
61BD: 99 42 60 231      STA PTEMP,Y
61C0: C8      232      INY
61C1: C0 0F      233      CPY #$0F
61C3: 90 F6      234      BLT PLOADSHP1
61C5: 60      235      RTS
        236 *****
61C6: A2 00      237 PDLE   LDX #$00
61C8: 20 1E FB 238      JSR PREAD      ;READ PADDLE 0
61CB: 98      239      TYA
61CC: 8D 07 60 240      STA MHORIZ      ;0-255 IN MHORIZ
61CF: AD 0B 60 241      LDA BULON
61D2: C9 01      242      CMP #$01      ;IS BULLET ON?
61D4: F0 06      243      BEQ PDLE1      ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH
61D6: AD 07 60 244      LDA MHORIZ      ;IF NO, SET BHORIZ EQUAL
61D9: 8D 08 60 245      STA BHORIZ      TO MHORIZ
61DC: AC 07 60 246 PDLE1  LDY MHORIZ
61DF: B9 99 66 247      LDA BYTETBL,Y ;CONVERT 0-255 TO 0-36 (BYTE)
61E2: 8D 0A 60 248      STA HORIZM      ;MAN BYTE POSITION
61E5: B9 9C 67 249      LDA OFFSET,Y  ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
61E8: 0A      250      ASL      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO MTEMP
61E9: AA      251      TAX
61EA: BD 52 60 252      LDA MSHPADR,X
61ED: 85 1A      253      STA LOW
61EF: BD 53 60 254      LDA MSHPADR+1,X
61F2: 85 1B      255      STA HIGH
61F4: A0 00      256      LDY #$00
61F6: B1 1A      257 LOAD   LDA (LOW),Y
61F8: 99 0F 60 258      STA MTEMP,Y
61FB: C8      259      INY
61FC: C0 27      260      CPY #$27
61FE: 90 F6      261      BLT LOAD
6200: 60      262      RTS
        263 *****
6201: A9 00      264 MDRAW  LDA #$00
6203: 8D 0C 60 265      STA XCOUNT
6206: AE 03 60 266 MDRAW1 LDX MLINE
6209: AC 0A 60 267      LDY HORIZM
620C: BD 9F 68 268      LDA HI,X
620F: 85 1B      269      STA HIGH
6211: BD 5F 69 270      LDA LO,X
6214: 85 1A      271      STA LOW
6216: AE 0C 60 272      LDX XCOUNT
6219: B1 1A      273      LDA (LOW),Y
621B: 5D 0F 60 274      EOR MTEMP,X
621E: 91 1A      275      STA (LOW),Y
6220: C8      276      INY
6221: B1 1A      277      LDA (LOW),Y
6223: 5D 10 60 278      EOR MTEMP+1,X
6226: 91 1A      279      STA (LOW),Y
6228: C8      280      INY
6229: B1 1A      281      LDA (LOW),Y
622B: 5D 11 60 282      EOR MTEMP+2,X

```

```

622E: 91 1A      283      STA (LOW),Y
6230: EE 0C 60   284      INC XCOUNT
6233: EE 0C 60   285      INC XCOUNT
6236: EE 0C 60   286      INC XCOUNT
6239: EE 03 60   287      INC MLINE
623C: AD 03 60   288      LDA MLINE
623F: CD 06 60   289      CMP DEPTH
6242: 90 C2      290      BLT MDRAW1
6244: AD 04 60   291      LDA MLINEA      ;RESET LINE
6247: 8D 03 60   292      STA MLINE
624A: 60         293      RTS
                        294      *****
624B: A9 00      295      PDRAW      LDA #$00
624D: 8D 0C 60   296      STA XCOUNT
6250: AC 3F 60   297      PDRAW1     LDY PBYTE
6253: AE 3D 60   298      LDX PLINE
6256: BD 9F 68   299      LDA HI,X
6259: 85 1B      300      STA HIGH
625B: BD 5F 69   301      LDA LO,X
625E: 85 1A      302      STA LOW
6260: AE 0C 60   303      LDX XCOUNT
6263: B1 1A      304      LDA (LOW),Y
6265: 5D 42 60   305      EOR PTEMP,X
6268: 91 1A      306      STA (LOW),Y
626A: C8         307      INY
626B: B1 1A      308      LDA (LOW),Y
626D: 5D 43 60   309      EOR PTEMP+1,X
6270: 91 1A      310      STA (LOW),Y
6272: C8         311      INY
6273: B1 1A      312      LDA (LOW),Y
6275: 5D 44 60   313      EOR PTEMP+2,X
6278: 91 1A      314      STA (LOW),Y
627A: EE 0C 60   315      INC XCOUNT
627D: EE 0C 60   316      INC XCOUNT
6280: EE 0C 60   317      INC XCOUNT
6283: EE 3D 60   318      INC PLINE
6286: AD 3D 60   319      LDA PLINE
6289: CD 40 60   320      CMP PDEPTH
628C: 90 C2      321      BLT PDRAW1
628E: AD 3E 60   322      LDA PLINEA      ;RESET LINE
6291: 8D 3D 60   323      STA PLINE
6294: 60         324      RTS
                        325      *****
6295: AC 08 60   326      LOADBUL  LDY BHORIZ      ;CONVERTS 0-255 TO
6298: B9 99 66   327      LDA BYTETBL,Y      SCREEN BYTE (0-36)
629B: 18         328      CLC              ;ADD 2 TO ALIGN BULLET
629C: 69 02      329      ADC #$02      WITH GUN
629E: 8D 09 60   330      STA HORIZB      ;BULLET BYTE POSITION
62A1: B9 9C 67   331      LDA OFFSET,Y      ;GET BULLET SHAPE NUMBER
62A4: 0A         332      ASL              ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
62A5: AA         333      TAX
62A6: BD 60 60   334      LDA BSHPADR,X
62A9: 85 1A      335      STA LOW
62AB: BD 61 60   336      LDA BSHPADR+1,X
62AE: 85 1B      337      STA HIGH
62B0: A0 00      338      LDY #$00
62B2: B1 1A      339      LDA (LOW),Y
62B4: 8D 0E 60   340      STA BTEMP
62B7: 60         341      RTS
                        342      *****

```



```

62B8: AE 05 60 343 BDRAW LDX BLINE
62BB: AC 09 60 344 LDY HORIZB
62BE: BD 9F 68 345 LDA HI,X
62C1: 85 1B 346 STA HIGH
62C3: BD 5F 69 347 LDA LO,X
62C6: 85 1A 348 STA LOW
62C8: B1 1A 349 LDA (LOW),Y
62CA: 2D 0E 60 350 AND BTEMP ;RESULT IS 0 IF NO COLLISION
62CD: C9 00 351 CMP #$00
62CF: F0 03 352 BEQ NOHIT
62D1: 4C DC 62 353 JMP COLLISION
62D4: B1 1A 354 NOHIT LDA (LOW),Y ;DRAW BULLET
62D6: 4D 0E 60 355 EOR BTEMP
62D9: 91 1A 356 STA (LOW),Y
62DB: 60 357 RTS
358 *****

62DC: 20 4B 62 359 COLLISION JSR PDRAW ;ERASE PLANE
62DF: EE 39 60 360 INC SUM ;ADD 1 TO SCORE
62E2: 20 1D 64 361 JSR SCORE ;DISPLAY SCORE
62E5: 20 10 63 362 JSR EXPLODE ;EXPLOSION DISPLAY AND SOUND
62E8: AD 51 60 363 LDA ST ;IF COUNT=100,
62EB: C9 01 364 CMP #$01 THEN GO TO
62ED: F0 06 365 BEQ LG STOP PROGRAM
62EF: 20 01 62 366 JSR MDRAW ;ERASE MAN
62F2: 4C CB 60 367 JMP PI ;INITIALIZE P, B, AND READ PADDLE
62F5: 4C 62 64 368 LG JMP STOP2
369 *****

62F8: AE 05 60 370 BXDRAW LDX BLINE ;BDRAW WITHOUT COLLISION TEST
62FB: AC 09 60 371 LDY HORIZB
62FE: BD 9F 68 372 LDA HI,X
6301: 85 1B 373 STA HIGH
6303: BD 5F 69 374 LDA LO,X
6306: 85 1A 375 STA LOW
6308: B1 1A 376 LDA (LOW),Y
630A: 4D 0E 60 377 EOR BTEMP
630D: 91 1A 378 STA (LOW),Y
630F: 60 379 RTS
380 *****

6310: 20 CD 63 381 EXPLODE JSR INITE1
6313: 20 61 63 382 JSR DRAWE1 ;DRAW
6316: 20 53 63 383 JSR SOUND ;EXPLOSION SOUND
6319: 20 CD 63 384 JSR INITE1
631C: 20 61 63 385 JSR DRAWE1 ;ERASE
631F: 20 E1 63 386 JSR INITE2
6322: 20 61 63 387 JSR DRAWE1 ;DRAW
6325: A9 BB 388 LDA #$BB
6327: 20 A8 FC 389 JSR WAIT
632A: 20 E1 63 390 JSR INITE2
632D: 20 61 63 391 JSR DRAWE1 ;ERASE
6330: 20 F5 63 392 JSR INITE3
6333: 20 61 63 393 JSR DRAWE1 ;DRAW
6336: A9 BB 394 LDA #$BB
6338: 20 A8 FC 395 JSR WAIT
633B: 20 F5 63 396 JSR INITE3
633E: 20 61 63 397 JSR DRAWE1 ;ERASE
6341: 20 09 64 398 JSR INITE4
6344: 20 90 63 399 JSR DRAWE2 ;DRAW
6347: A9 FF 400 LDA #$FF
6349: 20 A8 FC 401 JSR WAIT
    
```

```

634C: 20 09 64 402      JSR  INITE4
634F: 20 90 63 403      JSR  DRAWE2      ;ERASE
6352: 60              404      RTS
6353: A0 02          405      *****
6355: 2C 30 C0 407      SOUND LDY  #$02      ;EXPLOSION SOUND
6358: A9 60          408      SOUND1 BIT  SPEAKER
635A: 20 A8 FC 409      LDA  #$60
635D: 88            410      JSR  WAIT
635E: D0 F5          411      DEY
6360: 60            412      BNE  SOUND1
6361: AC 09 60 414      DRAWE1 LDY  HORIZB      ;ROUTINE FOR FIRST 3
6364: AE 36 60 415      LDX  ELINE      EXPLOSION SHAPES
6367: BD 9F 68 416      LDA  HI,X
636A: 85 1B          417      STA  HIGH
636C: BD 5F 69 418      LDA  LO,X
636F: 85 1A          419      STA  LOW
6371: AE 0C 60 420      LDX  XCOUNT
6374: B1 1A          421      LDA  (LOW),Y
6376: 5D 06 66 422      EOR  ESHAPE,X
6379: 91 1A          423      STA  (LOW),Y
637B: EE 0C 60 424      INC  XCOUNT
637E: EE 36 60 425      INC  ELINE
6381: AD 36 60 426      LDA  ELINE
6384: CD 38 60 427      CMP  EDEPTH
6387: 90 D8          428      BLT  DRAWE1
6389: AD 37 60 429      LDA  ELINEA
638C: 8D 36 60 430      STA  ELINE
638F: 60            431      RTS
6390: AC 09 60 433      DRAWE2 LDY  HORIZB      ;ROUTINE FOR FOURTH
6393: AE 36 60 434      LDX  ELINE      EXPLOSION SHAPE
6396: BD 9F 68 435      LDA  HI,X
6399: 85 1B          436      STA  HIGH
639B: BD 5F 69 437      LDA  LO,X
639E: 85 1A          438      STA  LOW
63A0: AE 0C 60 439      LDX  XCOUNT
63A3: B1 1A          440      LDA  (LOW),Y
63A5: 5D 06 66 441      EOR  ESHAPE,X
63A8: 91 1A          442      STA  (LOW),Y
63AA: EE 0C 60 443      INC  XCOUNT
63AD: C8            444      INY
63AE: AE 0C 60 445      LDX  XCOUNT
63B1: B1 1A          446      LDA  (LOW),Y
63B3: 5D 06 66 447      EOR  ESHAPE,X
63B6: 91 1A          448      STA  (LOW),Y
63B8: EE 0C 60 449      INC  XCOUNT
63BB: EE 36 60 450      INC  ELINE
63BE: AD 36 60 451      LDA  ELINE
63C1: CD 38 60 452      CMP  EDEPTH
63C4: 90 CA          453      BLT  DRAWE2
63C6: AD 37 60 454      LDA  ELINEA
63C9: 8D 36 60 455      STA  ELINE
63CC: 60            456      RTS
63CD: A9 00          457      *****
63CD: A9 00          458      INITE1 LDA  #$00      ;INITIALIZE FIRST EXPLOSION

```

```

63CF: 8D 0C 60 459 STA XCOUNT
63D2: A9 09 460 LDA #$09
63D4: 8D 37 60 461 STA ELINEA
63D7: 8D 36 60 462 STA ELINE
63DA: 18 463 CLC
63DB: 69 05 464 ADC #$05
63DD: 8D 38 60 465 STA EDEPTH
63E0: 60 466 RTS
63E1: A9 05 467 INITE2 LDA #$05 ;INITIALIZE SECOND EXPLOSION
63E3: 8D 0C 60 468 STA XCOUNT
63E6: A9 09 469 LDA #$09
63E8: 8D 37 60 470 STA ELINEA
63EB: 8D 36 60 471 STA ELINE
63EE: 18 472 CLC
63EF: 69 05 473 ADC #$05
63F1: 8D 38 60 474 STA EDEPTH
63F4: 60 475 RTS
63F5: A9 0A 476 INITE3 LDA #$0A ;INITIALIZE THIRD EXPLOSION
63F7: 8D 0C 60 477 STA XCOUNT
63FA: A9 05 478 LDA #$05
63FC: 8D 37 60 479 STA ELINEA
63FF: 8D 36 60 480 STA ELINE
6402: 18 481 CLC
6403: 69 08 482 ADC #$08
6405: 8D 38 60 483 STA EDEPTH
6408: 60 484 RTS
6409: A9 12 485 INITE4 LDA #$12 ;INITIALIZE FOURTH EXPLOSION
640B: 8D 0C 60 486 STA XCOUNT
640E: A9 01 487 LDA #$01
6410: 8D 37 60 488 STA ELINEA
6413: 8D 36 60 489 STA ELINE
6416: 18 490 CLC
6417: 69 0C 491 ADC #$0C
6419: 8D 38 60 492 STA EDEPTH
641C: 60 493 RTS
494 *****
641D: AD 39 60 495 SCORE LDA SUM ;GET SCORE (0-9)
6420: C9 0A 496 CMP #$0A ;GREATER THAN 9?
6422: B0 0A 497 BGE C10 ;IF YES, BRANCH
6424: 0A 498 ASL ;IF NO, MULTIPLY BY 8
6425: 0A 499 ASL
6426: 0A 500 ASL
6427: AA 501 TAX
6428: A0 13 502 LDY #$13 ;BYTE POSITION FOR FIRST DIGIT
642A: 20 6D 64 503 JSR PRINT ;PRINT DIGIT
642D: 60 504 RTS
642E: EE 3A 60 505 C10 INC COUNTER ;INC COUNTER (INITIALLY 0)
6431: AD 3A 60 506 LDA COUNTER
6434: C9 0A 507 CMP #$0A ;MORE THAN 9?
6436: B0 11 508 BGE STOP1 ;IF YES, PRINT 100 AND STOP GAME
6438: 0A 509 ASL ;IF NO, MULTIPLY BY 8
6439: 0A 510 ASL
643A: 0A 511 ASL
643B: AA 512 TAX
643C: A0 12 513 LDY #$12 ;BYTE POSITION OF MIDDLE DIGIT
643E: 20 6D 64 514 JSR PRINT ;PRINT DIGIT
6441: A9 00 515 LDA #$00 ;ZERO SUM AND

```

```

6443: 8D 39 60 516      STA SUM          RETURN TO PRINT 0
6446: 4C 1D 64 517      JMP SCORE       IN FIRST DIGIT POSITION
6449: A2 08 518 STOP1   LDX #08         ;PRINT 100 IN COUNTER
644B: A0 11 519      LDY #11
644D: 20 6D 64 520      JSR PRINT
6450: A2 00 521      LDX #00
6452: A0 12 522      LDY #12
6454: 20 6D 64 523      JSR PRINT
6457: A0 13 524      LDY #13
6459: 20 6D 64 525      JSR PRINT
645C: A9 01 526      LDA #01         ;SET ST TO INDICATE
645E: 8D 51 60 527      STA ST         COUNTER=100
6461: 60 528      RTS
6462: 2C 00 C0 529 STOP2  BIT $C000       ;ANY KEY PRESSED?
6465: 10 FB 530      BPL STOP2       ;IF NO, BRANCH BACK & WAIT
531 *              FOR KEYSTROKE
6467: 2C 10 C0 532      BIT $C010       ;IF YES, CLEAR KEYBOARD STROBE
646A: 4C 7C 60 533      JMP PGM         AND START PROGRAM OVER
534 *****
646D: BD 9E 64 535 PRINT  LDA NSHAPE,X   ;RETRIEVE NUMBER SHAPE
6470: 99 D0 23 536      STA $23D0,Y   ;LINE #$B8 (184)
6473: BD 9F 64 537      LDA NSHAPE+1,X
6476: 99 D0 27 538      STA $27D0,Y   ;LINE #$B9 (185)
6479: BD A0 64 539      LDA NSHAPE+2,X
647C: 99 D0 2B 540      STA $2BD0,Y   ;LINE #$BA (186)
647F: BD A1 64 541      LDA NSHAPE+3,X
6482: 99 D0 2F 542      STA $2FD0,Y   ;LINE #$BB (187)
6485: BD A2 64 543      LDA NSHAPE+4,X
6488: 99 D0 33 544      STA $33D0,Y   ;LINE #$BC (188)
648B: BD A3 64 545      LDA NSHAPE+5,X
648E: 99 D0 37 546      STA $37D0,Y   ;LINE #$BD (189)
6491: BD A4 64 547      LDA NSHAPE+6,X
6494: 99 D0 3B 548      STA $3BD0,Y   ;LINE #$BE (190)
6497: BD A5 64 549      LDA NSHAPE+7,X
649A: 99 D0 3F 550      STA $3FD0,Y   ;LINE #$BF (191)
649D: 60 551      RTS
552 *****
649E: 00 1C 22 553 NSHAPE  HEX 001C2222222221C   ;NUMBER SHAPES - "0"
64A1: 22 22 22 22 1C 554      HEX 00080C080808081C   ;"1"
64A6: 00 08 0C 554      HEX 001C22201008043E   ;"2"
64A9: 08 08 08 08 1C 555      HEX 001C22201C20221C   ;"3"
64B1: 20 10 08 04 3E 556      HEX 00101814123E1010   ;"4"
64B6: 00 1C 22 556      HEX 003E021E2020201E   ;"5"
64B9: 20 1C 20 22 1C 557      HEX 001C22021E22221C   ;"6"
64BE: 00 10 18 557      HEX 003E201008040404   ;"7"
64C1: 14 12 3E 10 10 558      HEX 001C22221C22221C   ;"8"
64C6: 00 3E 02 558      HEX 001C22223C20221C   ;"9"
64C9: 1E 20 20 20 1E 559
64CE: 00 1C 22 559
64D1: 02 1E 22 22 1C 560
64D6: 00 3E 20 560
64D9: 10 08 04 04 04 561
64DE: 00 1C 22 561
64E1: 22 1C 22 22 1C 562
64E6: 00 1C 22 562
64E9: 22 3C 20 22 1C 563

```

```

64EE: 00 0E 01 563 MSHAPE1 HEX 000E01000E01000E01 ;MAN SHAPE TABLES
64F1: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01
64F7: 00 44 01 564 HEX 004401007F00601F00
64FA: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00
6500: 30 1F 00 565 HEX 301F00181F00001F00
6503: 18 1F 00 00 1F 00
6509: 00 1F 00 566 HEX 001F00001B00403100
650C: 00 1B 00 40 31 00
6512: 60 60 00 567 HEX 606000
6515: 00 1C 02 568 MSHAPE2 HEX 001C02001C02001C02
6518: 00 1C 02 00 1C 02
651E: 00 08 03 569 HEX 000803007E01003E00
6521: 00 7E 01 00 3E 00
6527: 00 3F 00 570 HEX 003F00403F00003E00
652A: 40 3F 00 00 3E 00
6530: 00 3E 00 571 HEX 003E00003600003600
6533: 00 36 00 00 36 00
6539: 00 63 00 572 HEX 006300
653C: 00 38 04 573 MSHAPE3 HEX 003804003804003804
653F: 00 38 04 00 38 04
6545: 00 10 06 574 HEX 001006007C03007C00
6548: 00 7C 03 00 7C 00
654E: 00 7C 00 575 HEX 007C00007E00007C00
6551: 00 7E 00 00 7C 00
6557: 00 38 00 576 HEX 003800003800006C00
655A: 00 38 00 00 6C 00
6560: 00 46 01 577 HEX 004601
6563: 00 70 08 578 MSHAPE4 HEX 007008007008007008
6566: 00 70 08 00 70 08
656C: 00 20 0C 579 HEX 00200C007807007801
656F: 00 78 07 00 78 01
6575: 00 78 01 580 HEX 007801007801007801
6578: 00 78 01 00 78 01
657E: 00 70 00 581 HEX 007000007000007000
6581: 00 70 00 00 70 00
6587: 00 70 00 582 HEX 007000
658A: 00 60 11 583 MSHAPE5 HEX 006011006011006011
658D: 00 60 11 00 60 11
6593: 00 40 18 584 HEX 00401800700F007003
6596: 00 70 0F 00 70 03
659C: 00 70 03 585 HEX 007003007803007003
659F: 00 78 03 00 70 03
65A5: 00 60 01 586 HEX 006001006001003003
65A8: 00 60 01 00 30 03
65AE: 00 18 06 587 HEX 001806
65B1: 00 40 23 588 MSHAPE6 HEX 004023004023004023
65B4: 00 40 23 00 40 23
65BA: 00 00 31 589 HEX 00003100601F006007
65BD: 00 60 1F 00 60 07
65C3: 00 70 07 590 HEX 007007007807006007
65C6: 00 78 07 00 60 07
65CC: 00 60 07 591 HEX 006007006006006006
65CF: 00 60 06 00 60 06
65D5: 00 30 0C 592 HEX 00300C
65D8: 00 00 47 593 MSHAPE7 HEX 000047000047000047
65DB: 00 00 47 00 00 47
65E1: 00 00 62 594 HEX 00006200403F00700F

```

```

65E4: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F
65EA: 00 58 0F 595
65ED: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F
65F3: 00 40 0F 596
65F6: 00 40 0D 00 60 18
65FC: 00 30 30 597
65FF: 01 598 BSHAPE1 HEX 00580F004C0F00400F
6600: 02 599 BSHAPE2 HEX 00400F00400D006018
6601: 04 600 BSHAPE3 HEX 003030
6602: 08 601 BSHAPE4 HEX 01 ;BULLET SHAPES
6603: 10 602 BSHAPE5 HEX 02
6604: 20 603 BSHAPE6 HEX 04
6605: 40 604 BSHAPE7 HEX 08
6606: 28 22 1A 605 ESHAPE HEX 10
6609: 25 14
660B: 2C 52 44 606 HEX 20
660E: 32 0C
6610: 38 3E 7F 607 HEX 2C5244320C ;NO. 2
6613: 7E 7E 3F 3F 1C
6618: 18 06 7C 608 HEX 383E7F7E7E3F3F1C ;NO. 3
661B: 0F 7C 3F 7E 3F
6620: 7C 7F 7C 609 HEX 18067C0F7C3F7E3F ;NO. 4
6623: 3F 7E 3F 7F 1F
6628: 7E 0F 7C 610 HEX 7C7F7C3F7E3F7F1F
662B: 1F 70 0F 40 03
6630: 02 00 00 611 PSHAPE1 HEX 7E0F7C1F700F4003
6633: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
6639: 7E 37 00 612 HEX 0200000600007E1F00 ;PLANE SHAPES
663C: 7E 7F 00
663F: 04 00 00 613 PSHAPE2 HEX 7E37007E7F00
6642: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
6648: 7C 6F 00 614 HEX 0400000C00007C3F00
664B: 7C 7F 01
664E: 08 00 00 615 PSHAPE3 HEX 7C6F007C7F01
6651: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
6657: 78 5F 01 616 HEX 080000180000787F00
665A: 78 7F 03
665D: 10 00 00 617 PSHAPE4 HEX 785F01787F03
6660: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
6666: 70 3F 03 618 HEX 100000300000707F01
6669: 70 7F 07
666C: 20 00 00 619 PSHAPE5 HEX 703F03707F07
666F: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
6675: 60 7F 06 620 HEX 200000600000607F03
6678: 60 7F 0F
667B: 40 00 00 621 PSHAPE6 HEX 607F06607F0F
667E: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
6684: 40 7F 0D 622 HEX 400000400100407F07
6687: 40 7F 1F
668A: 00 01 00 623 PSHAPE7 HEX 407F0D407F1F
668D: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F
6693: 00 7F 1B 624 HEX 000100000300007F0F
6696: 00 7F 3F
6699: 00 00 00 625 BYTETBL HEX 007F1B007F3F
669C: 00 00 00 00
66A0: 01 01 01 626 HEX 0000000000000000
66A3: 01 01 01 01

```

66A7: 02 02 02 627	HEX 02020202020202
66AA: 02 02 02 02	
66AE: 03 03 03 628	HEX 03030303030303
66B1: 03 03 03 03	
66B5: 04 04 04 629	HEX 04040404040404
66B8: 04 04 04 04	
66BC: 05 05 05 630	HEX 05050505050505
66BF: 05 05 05 05	
66C3: 06 06 06 631	HEX 06060606060606
66C6: 06 06 06 06	
66CA: 07 07 07 632	HEX 07070707070707
66CD: 07 07 07 07	
66D1: 08 08 08 633	HEX 08080808080808
66D4: 08 08 08 08	
66D8: 09 09 09 634	HEX 09090909090909
66DB: 09 09 09 09	
66DF: 0A 0A 0A 635	HEX 0A0A0A0A0A0A0A
66E2: 0A 0A 0A 0A	
66E6: 0B 0B 0B 636	HEX 0B0B0B0B0B0B0B
66E9: 0B 0B 0B 0B	
66ED: 0C 0C 0C 637	HEX 0C0C0C0C0C0C0C
66F0: 0C 0C 0C 0C	
66F4: 0D 0D 0D 638	HEX 0D0D0D0D0D0D0D
66F7: 0D 0D 0D 0D	
66FB: 0E 0E 0E 639	HEX 0E0E0E0E0E0E0E
66FE: 0E 0E 0E 0E	
6702: 0F 0F 0F 640	HEX 0F0F0F0F0F0F0F
6705: 0F 0F 0F 0F	
6709: 10 10 10 641	HEX 10101010101010
670C: 10 10 10 10	
6710: 11 11 11 642	HEX 11111111111111
6713: 11 11 11 11	
6717: 12 12 12 643	HEX 12121212121212
671A: 12 12 12 12	
671E: 13 13 13 644	HEX 13131313131313
6721: 13 13 13 13	
6725: 14 14 14 645	HEX 14141414141414
6728: 14 14 14 14	
672C: 15 15 15 646	HEX 15151515151515
672F: 15 15 15 15	
6733: 16 16 16 647	HEX 16161616161616
6736: 16 16 16 16	
673A: 17 17 17 648	HEX 17171717171717
673D: 17 17 17 17	
6741: 18 18 18 649	HEX 18181818181818
6744: 18 18 18 18	
6748: 19 19 19 650	HEX 19191919191919
674B: 19 19 19 19	
674F: 1A 1A 1A 651	HEX 1A1A1A1A1A1A1A
6752: 1A 1A 1A 1A	
6756: 1B 1B 1B 652	HEX 1B1B1B1B1B1B1B
6759: 1B 1B 1B 1B	
675D: 1C 1C 1C 653	HEX 1C1C1C1C1C1C1C
6760: 1C 1C 1C 1C	
6764: 1D 1D 1D 654	HEX 1D1D1D1D1D1D1D
6767: 1D 1D 1D 1D	
676B: 1E 1E 1E 655	HEX 1E1E1E1E1E1E1E
676E: 1E 1E 1E 1E	
6772: 1F 1F 1F 656	HEX 1F1F1F1F1F1F1F

6775:	1F 1F 1F 1F		
6779:	20 20 20 657	HEX	202020202020
677C:	20 20 20 20		
6780:	21 21 21 658	HEX	212121212121
6783:	21 21 21 21		
6787:	22 22 22 659	HEX	222222222222
678A:	22 22 22 22		
678E:	23 23 23 660	HEX	232323232323
6791:	23 23 23 23		
6795:	24 24 24 661	HEX	242424242424
6798:	24 24 24 24		
679C:	00 01 02 662	OFFSET	HEX 00010203040506
679F:	03 04 05 06		
67A3:	00 01 02 663	HEX	00010203040506
67A6:	03 04 05 06		
67AA:	00 01 02 664	HEX	00010203040506
67AD:	03 04 05 06		
67B1:	00 01 02 665	HEX	00010203040506
67B4:	03 04 05 06		
67B8:	00 01 02 666	HEX	00010203040506
67BB:	03 04 05 06		
67BF:	00 01 02 667	HEX	00010203040506
67C2:	03 04 05 06		
67C6:	00 01 02 668	HEX	00010203040506
67C9:	03 04 05 06		
67CD:	00 01 02 669	HEX	00010203040506
67D0:	03 04 05 06		
67D4:	00 01 02 670	HEX	00010203040506
67D7:	03 04 05 06		
67DB:	00 01 02 671	HEX	00010203040506
67DE:	03 04 05 06		
67E2:	00 01 02 672	HEX	00010203040506
67E5:	03 04 05 06		
67E9:	00 01 02 673	HEX	00010203040506
67EC:	03 04 05 06		
67F0:	00 01 02 674	HEX	00010203040506
67F3:	03 04 05 06		
67F7:	00 01 02 675	HEX	00010203040506
67FA:	03 04 05 06		
67FE:	00 01 02 676	HEX	00010203040506
6801:	03 04 05 06		
6805:	00 01 02 677	HEX	00010203040506
6808:	03 04 05 06		
680C:	00 01 02 678	HEX	00010203040506
680F:	03 04 05 06		
6813:	00 01 02 679	HEX	00010203040506
6816:	03 04 05 06		
681A:	00 01 02 680	HEX	00010203040506
681D:	03 04 05 06		
6821:	00 01 02 681	HEX	00010203040506
6824:	03 04 05 06		
6828:	00 01 02 682	HEX	00010203040506
682B:	03 04 05 06		
682F:	00 01 02 683	HEX	00010203040506
6832:	03 04 05 06		
6836:	00 01 02 684	HEX	00010203040506
6839:	03 04 05 06		
683D:	00 01 02 685	HEX	00010203040506
6840:	03 04 05 06		

6844:	00 01 02 686	HEX 00010203040506
6847:	03 04 05 06	
684B:	00 01 02 687	HEX 00010203040506
684E:	03 04 05 06	
6852:	00 01 02 688	HEX 00010203040506
6855:	03 04 05 06	
6859:	00 01 02 689	HEX 00010203040506
685C:	03 04 05 06	
6860:	00 01 02 690	HEX 00010203040506
6863:	03 04 05 06	
6867:	00 01 02 691	HEX 00010203040506
686A:	03 04 05 06	
686E:	00 01 02 692	HEX 00010203040506
6871:	03 04 05 06	
6875:	00 01 02 693	HEX 00010203040506
6878:	03 04 05 06	
687C:	00 01 02 694	HEX 00010203040506
687F:	03 04 05 06	
6883:	00 01 02 695	HEX 00010203040506
6886:	03 04 05 06	
688A:	00 01 02 696	HEX 00010203040506
688D:	03 04 05 06	
6891:	00 01 02 697	HEX 00010203040506
6894:	03 04 05 06	
6898:	00 01 02 698	HEX 00010203040506
689B:	03 04 05 06	
689F:	20 24 28 699 HI	HEX 2024282C3034383C ; HIGH BYTE LINE ADDRESSES
68A2:	2C 30 34 38 3C	
68A7:	20 24 28 700	HEX 2024282C3034383C
68AA:	2C 30 34 38 3C	
68AF:	21 25 29 701	HEX 2125292D3135393D
68B2:	2D 31 35 39 3D	
68B7:	21 25 29 702	HEX 2125292D3135393D
68BA:	2D 31 35 39 3D	
68BF:	22 26 2A 703	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
68C2:	2E 32 36 3A 3E	
68C7:	22 26 2A 704	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
68CA:	2E 32 36 3A 3E	
68CF:	23 27 2B 705	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
68D2:	2F 33 37 3B 3F	
68D7:	23 27 2B 706	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
68DA:	2F 33 37 3B 3F	
68DF:	20 24 28 707	HEX 2024282C3034383C
68E2:	2C 30 34 38 3C	
68E7:	20 24 28 708	HEX 2024282C3034383C
68EA:	2C 30 34 38 3C	
68EF:	21 25 29 709	HEX 2125292D3135393D
68F2:	2D 31 35 39 3D	
68F7:	21 25 29 710	HEX 2125292D3135393D
68FA:	2D 31 35 39 3D	
68FF:	22 26 2A 711	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
6902:	2E 32 36 3A 3E	
6907:	22 26 2A 712	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
690A:	2E 32 36 3A 3E	
690F:	23 27 2B 713	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
6912:	2F 33 37 3B 3F	
6917:	23 27 2B 714	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
691A:	2F 33 37 3B 3F	
691F:	20 24 28 715	HEX 2024282C3034383C

6922: 2C 30 34 38 3C	
6927: 20 24 28 716	HEX 2024282C3034383C
692A: 2C 30 34 38 3C	
692F: 21 25 29 717	HEX 2125292D3135393D
6932: 2D 31 35 39 3D	
6937: 21 25 29 718	HEX 2125292D3135393D
693A: 2D 31 35 39 3D	
693F: 22 26 2A 719	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
6942: 2E 32 36 3A 3E	
6947: 22 26 2A 720	HEX 22262A2E32363A3E
694A: 2E 32 36 3A 3E	
694F: 23 27 2B 721	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
6952: 2F 33 37 3B 3F	
6957: 23 27 2B 722	HEX 23272B2F33373B3F
695A: 2F 33 37 3B 3F	
695F: 00 00 00 723 LO	HEX 0000000000000000 ; LOW BYTE LINE ADDRESSES
6962: 00 00 00 00 00	
6967: 80 80 80 724	HEX 8080808080808080
696A: 80 80 80 80 80	
696F: 00 00 00 725	HEX 0000000000000000
6972: 00 00 00 00 00	
6977: 80 80 80 726	HEX 8080808080808080
697A: 80 80 80 80 80	
697F: 00 00 00 727	HEX 0000000000000000
6982: 00 00 00 00 00	
6987: 80 80 80 728	HEX 8080808080808080
698A: 80 80 80 80 80	
698F: 00 00 00 729	HEX 0000000000000000
6992: 00 00 00 00 00	
6997: 80 80 80 730	HEX 8080808080808080
699A: 80 80 80 80 80	
699F: 28 28 28 731	HEX 2828282828282828
69A2: 28 28 28 28 28	
69A7: A8 A8 A8 732	HEX A8A8A8A8A8A8A8A8
69AA: A8 A8 A8 A8 A8	
69AF: 28 28 28 733	HEX 2828282828282828
69B2: 28 28 28 28 28	
69B7: A8 A8 A8 734	HEX A8A8A8A8A8A8A8A8
69BA: A8 A8 A8 A8 A8	
69BF: 28 28 28 735	HEX 2828282828282828
69C2: 28 28 28 28 28	
69C7: A8 A8 A8 736	HEX A8A8A8A8A8A8A8A8
69CA: A8 A8 A8 A8 A8	
69CF: 28 28 28 737	HEX 2828282828282828
69D2: 28 28 28 28 28	
69D7: A8 A8 A8 738	HEX A8A8A8A8A8A8A8A8
69DA: A8 A8 A8 A8 A8	
69DF: 50 50 50 739	HEX 5050505050505050
69E2: 50 50 50 50 50	
69E7: D0 D0 D0 740	HEX D0D0D0D0D0D0D0D0
69EA: D0 D0 D0 D0 D0	
69EF: 50 50 50 741	HEX 5050505050505050
69F2: 50 50 50 50 50	
69F7: D0 D0 D0 742	HEX D0D0D0D0D0D0D0D0
69FA: D0 D0 D0 D0 D0	
69FF: 50 50 50 743	HEX 5050505050505050
6A02: 50 50 50 50 50	
6A07: D0 D0 D0 744	HEX D0D0D0D0D0D0D0D0
6A0A: D0 D0 D0 D0 D0	

```

6A0F: 50 50 50 745      HEX  5050505050505050
6A12: 50 50 50 50 50    HEX  D0D0D0D0D0D0D0D0
6A17: D0 D0 D0 D0 746
6A1A: D0 D0 D0 D0 D0

```

--End assembly--

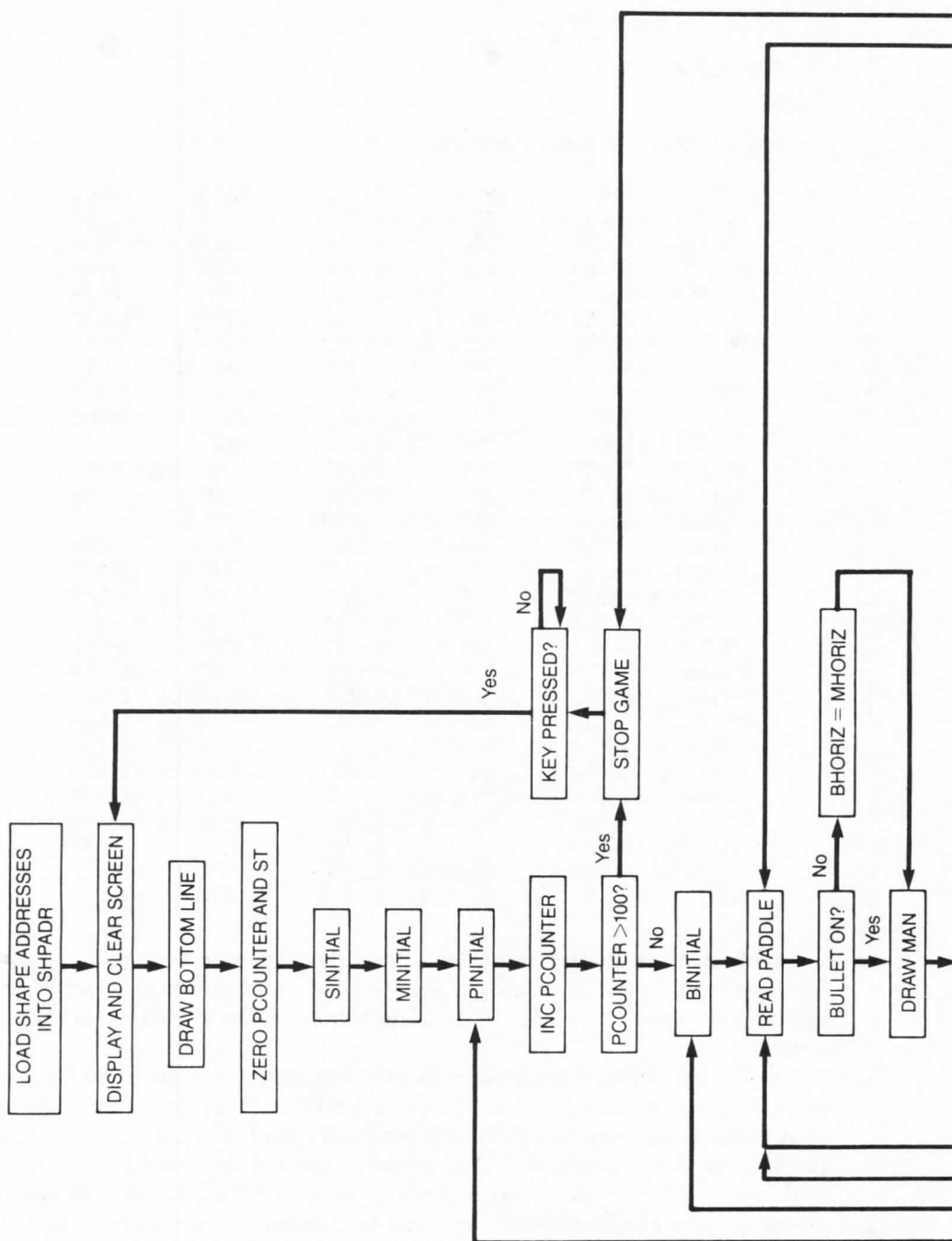
2591 bytes

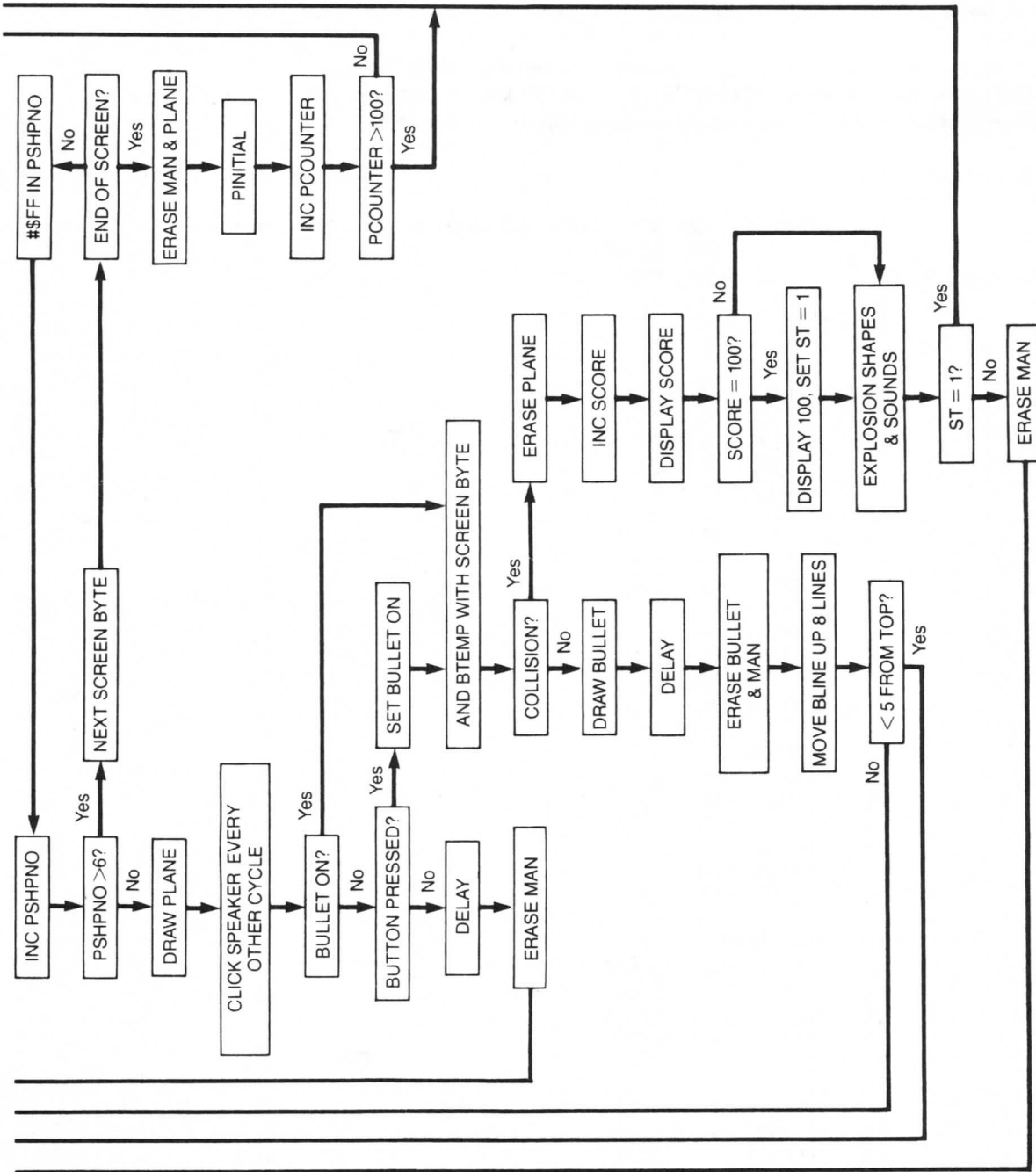
Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	MLINE	=\$6003	MLINEA	=\$6004
BLINE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	MHORIZ	=\$6007	BHORIZ	=\$6008
HORIZB	=\$6009	HORIZM	=\$600A	BULON	=\$600B	XCOUNT	=\$600C
DELAY	=\$600D	BTEMP	=\$600E	MTEMP	=\$600F	ELINE	=\$6036
ELINEA	=\$6037	EDEPTH	=\$6038	SUM	=\$6039	COUNTER	=\$603A
DE	=\$603B	PCOUNTER	=\$603C	PLINE	=\$603D	PLINEA	=\$603E
PBYTE	=\$603F	PDEPTH	=\$6040	PSHPNO	=\$6041	PTEMP	=\$6042
ST	=\$6051	MSHPADR	=\$6052	BSHPADR	=\$6060	PSHPADR	=\$606E
PGM	=\$607C	CLR1	=\$6090	CLR	=\$6094	LN	=\$60B6
PI	=\$60CB	BI	=\$60CE	PADDLE	=\$60D1	PSTART	=\$60D7
PSTART1	=\$60F4	PSTART2	=\$60FC	BUL	=\$610E	BULLET1	=\$6129
BULLET	=\$612E	LONG	=\$6153	MINITIAL	=\$6156	BINITIAL	=\$6165
SINITIAL	=\$6170	PR	=\$617B	PINITIAL	=\$6184	PCONT	=\$6196
PLOADSHP	=\$61AA	PLOADSHP1	=\$61BB	PDLE	=\$61C6	PDLE1	=\$61DC
LOAD	=\$61F6	MDRAW	=\$6201	MDRAW1	=\$6206	PDRAW	=\$624B
PDRAW1	=\$6250	LOADBUL	=\$6295	BDRAW	=\$62B8	NOHIT	=\$62D4
COLLISION	=\$62DC	LG	=\$62F5	BXDRAW	=\$62F8	EXPLODE	=\$6310
SOUND	=\$6353	SOUND1	=\$6355	DRAW1	=\$6361	DRAW2	=\$6390
INITE1	=\$63CD	INITE2	=\$63E1	INITE3	=\$63F5	INITE4	=\$6409
SCORE	=\$641D	C10	=\$642E	STOP1	=\$6449	STOP2	=\$6462
PRINT	=\$646D	NSHAPE	=\$649E	MSHAPE1	=\$64EE	MSHAPE2	=\$6515
MSHAPE3	=\$653C	MSHAPE4	=\$6563	MSHAPE5	=\$658A	MSHAPE6	=\$65B1
MSHAPE7	=\$65D8	BSHAPE1	=\$65FF	BSHAPE2	=\$6600	BSHAPE3	=\$6601
BSHAPE4	=\$6602	BSHAPE5	=\$6603	BSHAPE6	=\$6604	BSHAPE7	=\$6605
ESHAPE	=\$6606	PSHAPE1	=\$6630	PSHAPE2	=\$663F	PSHAPE3	=\$664E
PSHAPE4	=\$665D	PSHAPE5	=\$666C	PSHAPE6	=\$667B	PSHAPE7	=\$668A
BYTETBL	=\$6699	OFFSET	=\$679C	HI	=\$689F	LO	=\$695F
SPEAKER	=\$C030	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	BUTTON	=\$C061	PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8

Well, that's it. Hooray and huzzah. Pop the cork, sound the horn, raise the flag, lean back, light a cigar, and get reacquainted with your loved ones. But don't rest on your laurels too long—there's more to come for all you masochists out there.

In the last chapter, I will make specific suggestions for game modifications using routines discussed in both Part One and Part Two. For now, to get you started and to see how easy it is (and also just for the heck of it), I've decided to present one such modification. The modification is simple—the plane is drawn with the DRAW-DRAW protocol instead of DRAW-ERASE. We can do this because the plane itself is not involved in collision detection, but rather the bullet. Here is the flowchart:





As you can see, very few changes are required and all relate to the plane erase, which is done with a separate PXDRAW routine using the EOR instruction. In contrast to Program 10-1, where the plane is erased before every paddle access, here the plane is erased at only two places—at the end of the screen and after a collision. You might also notice that the plane sound is a bit higher in pitch with faster clicks—this is because DRAW-DRAW takes less time than DRAW-ERASE.

The change, simple as it is, has resulted in a somewhat better program because the plane moves with less flicker. We'll see in the last chapter how we can effect even other modifications to make the program more interesting.

]PROGRAM 10-2

:ASM

```

1      **** THE GAME WITH PLANE DRAWN WITH DRAW-DRAW ****
2      ORG      $6000
6000: 4C 7C 60 3      JMP      PGM
4      MLINE    DS      1
5      MLINEA   DS      1
6      BLINE    DS      1
7      DEPTH    DS      1
8      MHORIZ   DS      1
9      BHORIZ   DS      1
10     HORIZB   DS      1
11     HORIZM   DS      1
12     BULON    DS      1
13     XCOUNT  DS      1
14     DELAY    DS      1
15     BTEMP    DS      1
16     MTEMP    DS      39
17     ELINE    DS      1
18     ELINEA   DS      1
19     EDEPTH   DS      1
20     SUM       DS      1
21     COUNTER   DS      1
22     DE        DS      1
23     PCOUNTER  DS      1
24     PLINE     DS      1
25     PLINEA   DS      1
26     PBYTE     DS      1
27     PDEPTH    DS      1
28     PSHPNO    DS      1
29     PTEMP     DS      15
30     ST        DS      1
31     GRAPHICS  =      $C050
32     MIXOFF    =      $C052
33     HIRES     =      $C057
34     PAGE1     =      $C054
35     HIGH      =      $1B
36     LOW       =      $1A
37     WAIT      =      $FCA8
38     PREAD     =      $FB1E
39     BUTTON    =      $C061      ;BUTTON 0
40     SPEAKER   =      $C030
41     *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
42     *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6052: 32 43     MSHPADR DFB #<MSHAPE1
6053: 65 44     DFB #>MSHAPE1
6054: 59 45     DFB #<MSHAPE2
6055: 65 46     DFB #>MSHAPE2

```


6056:	80	47	DFB	#<MSHAPE3	
6057:	65	48	DFB	#>MSHAPE3	
6058:	A7	49	DFB	#<MSHAPE4	
6059:	65	50	DFB	#>MSHAPE4	
605A:	CE	51	DFB	#<MSHAPE5	
605B:	65	52	DFB	#>MSHAPE5	
605C:	F5	53	DFB	#<MSHAPE6	
605D:	65	54	DFB	#>MSHAPE6	
605E:	1C	55	DFB	#<MSHAPE7	
605F:	66	56	DFB	#>MSHAPE7	
6060:	43	57	BSHPADR	DFB	#<BSHAPE1
6061:	66	58	DFB	#>BSHAPE1	
6062:	44	59	DFB	#<BSHAPE2	
6063:	66	60	DFB	#>BSHAPE2	
6064:	45	61	DFB	#<BSHAPE3	
6065:	66	62	DFB	#>BSHAPE3	
6066:	46	63	DFB	#<BSHAPE4	
6067:	66	64	DFB	#>BSHAPE4	
6068:	47	65	DFB	#<BSHAPE5	
6069:	66	66	DFB	#>BSHAPE5	
606A:	48	67	DFB	#<BSHAPE6	
606B:	66	68	DFB	#>BSHAPE6	
606C:	49	69	DFB	#<BSHAPE7	
606D:	66	70	DFB	#>BSHAPE7	
606E:	74	71	PSHPADR	DFB	#<PSHAPE1
606F:	66	72	DFB	#>PSHAPE1	
6070:	83	73	DFB	#<PSHAPE2	
6071:	66	74	DFB	#>PSHAPE2	
6072:	92	75	DFB	#<PSHAPE3	
6073:	66	76	DFB	#>PSHAPE3	
6074:	A1	77	DFB	#<PSHAPE4	
6075:	66	78	DFB	#>PSHAPE4	
6076:	B0	79	DFB	#<PSHAPE5	
6077:	66	80	DFB	#>PSHAPE5	
6078:	BF	81	DFB	#<PSHAPE6	
6079:	66	82	DFB	#>PSHAPE6	
607A:	CE	83	DFB	#<PSHAPE7	
607B:	66	84	DFB	#>PSHAPE7	
607C:	AD 50 CO	85	PGM	LDA	GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
607F:	AD 52 CO	86		LDA	MIXOFF
6082:	AD 57 CO	87		LDA	HIRES
6085:	AD 54 CO	88		LDA	PAGE1
6088:	A9 00	89		LDA	#\$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
608A:	85 1A	90		STA	LOW
608C:	A9 20	91		LDA	#\$20
608E:	85 1B	92		STA	HIGH
6090:	A0 00	93	CLR1	LDY	#\$00
6092:	A9 00	94		LDA	#\$00
6094:	91 1A	95	CLR	STA	(LOW),Y
6096:	C8	96		INY	
6097:	D0 FB	97		BNE	CLR
6099:	E6 1B	98		INC	HIGH
609B:	A5 1B	99		LDA	HIGH
609D:	C9 40	100		CMP	#\$40
609F:	90 EF	101		BLT	CLR1
60A1:	A9 50	102		LDA	#\$50 ;LOAD DELAY
60A3:	8D 0D 60	103		STA	DELAY
60A6:	A2 B7	104		LDX	#\$B7 ;DRAW BOTTOM LINE
60A8:	A0 00	105		LDY	#\$00
60AA:	BD E3 68	106		LDA	HI,X
60AD:	85 1B	107		STA	HIGH

```

60AF: BD A3 69 108 LDA LO,X
60B2: 85 1A 109 STA LOW
60B4: A9 7F 110 LDA #$7F
60B6: 91 1A 111 LN STA (LOW),Y
60B8: C8 112 INY
60B9: C0 27 113 CPY #$27
60BB: 90 F9 114 BLT LN
60BD: A9 00 115 LDA #$00
60BF: 8D 3C 60 116 STA PCOUNTER
60C2: 8D 51 60 117 STA ST
118 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
60C5: 20 70 61 119 JSR SINITIAL ;INITIALIZATION
60C8: 20 56 61 120 JSR MINITIAL
60CB: 20 84 61 121 PI JSR PINITIAL
60CE: 20 65 61 122 BI JSR BINITIAL
60D1: 20 C6 61 123 PADDLE JSR PDLE ;READ PADDLE
60D4: 20 01 62 124 JSR MDRAW ;DRAW MAN
60D7: EE 41 60 125 PSTART INC PSHPNO ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER TO ZERO
60DA: AD 41 60 126 LDA PSHPNO
60DD: C9 07 127 CMP #$07 ;DRAWN ALL 7 SHAPES?
60DF: 90 21 128 BLT PSTART2 ;IF NO, DRAW PLANE
60E1: EE 3F 60 129 INC PBYTE ;IF YES, NEXT SCREEN BYTE
60E4: AD 3F 60 130 LDA PBYTE
60E7: C9 26 131 CMP #$26 ;END OF SCREEN?
60E9: 90 0F 132 BLT PSTART1 ;IF NO, RESET SHAPE NO. &
133 * CONTINUE DRAW
60EB: 20 01 62 134 JSR MDRAW ;IF YES, ERASE MAN AND
60EE: CE 3F 60 135 DEC PBYTE
60F1: 20 8F 62 136 JSR PXDRAW ERASE PLANE AND
60F4: 20 84 61 137 JSR PINITIAL INITIALIZE PLANE AND
60F7: 4C D1 60 138 JMP PADDLE GO BACK TO PADDLE READ
60FA: A9 FF 139 PSTART1 LDA #$FF
60FC: 8D 41 60 140 STA PSHPNO
60FF: 4C D7 60 141 JMP PSTART
6102: 20 AA 61 142 PSTART2 JSR PLOADSHP
6105: 20 4B 62 143 JSR PDRAW ;DRAW PLANE
6108: EE 3B 60 144 INC DE ;ACCESS SPEAKER EVERY OTHER CYCLE
610B: AD 3B 60 145 LDA DE
146 **
610E: 4A 147 LSR ;C=0 IF DE IS EVEN
610F: 90 03 148 BCC BUL ;C=1 IF DE IS ODD
6111: 2C 30 C0 149 BIT SPEAKER
6114: AD 0B 60 150 BUL LDA BULON
6117: C9 01 151 CMP #$01 ;IS BULLET ON?
6119: F0 16 152 BEQ BULLET ;IF YES, CONTINUE BULLET DRAW
611B: AD 61 C0 153 LDA BUTTON ;IF NO, IS BUTTON PRESSED?
611E: 30 0C 154 BMI BULLET1 ;IF YES, DRAW BULLET
6120: AD 0D 60 155 LDA DELAY ;IF NO,
6123: 20 A8 FC 156 JSR WAIT DELAY AND
6126: 20 01 62 157 JSR MDRAW ERASE MAN AND
6129: 4C D1 60 158 JMP PADDLE READ PADDLE AGAIN
612C: A9 01 159 BULLET1 LDA #$01 ;SET BULLET ON
612E: 8D 0B 60 160 STA BULON
6131: 20 D9 62 161 BULLET JSR LOADBUL ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
6134: 20 FC 62 162 JSR BDRAW ;DRAW BULLET & TEST FOR COLLISION
6137: AD 0D 60 163 LDA DELAY
613A: 20 A8 FC 164 JSR WAIT ;DELAY
613D: 20 3C 63 165 JSR BXDRAW ;ERASE BULLET
6140: 20 01 62 166 JSR MDRAW ;ERASE MAN
6143: AD 05 60 167 LDA BLINE
6146: 38 168 SEC

```

```

6147: E9 08      169      SBC  #$08      ;MOVE BLINE UP 8 LINES
6149: 8D 05 60   170      STA  BLINE
614C: C9 05      171      CMP  #$05      ;LESS THAN 5 LINES FROM TOP?
614E: 90 03      172      BLT  LONG      ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH
6150: 4C D1 60   173      JMP  PADDLE   ;IF NO, READ PADDLE AGAIN
6153: 4C CE 60   174      LONG  JMP  BI
175      ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6156: A9 AA      176      MINITIAL LDA  #$AA
6158: 8D 03 60   177      STA  MLINE
615B: 8D 04 60   178      STA  MLINEA
615E: 18        179      CLC
615F: 69 0D      180      ADC  #$0D
6161: 8D 06 60   181      STA  DEPTH
6164: 60        182      RTS
183      *****
6165: A9 00      184      BINITIAL LDA  #$00      ;BULON = 0 IF
6167: 8D 0B 60   185      STA  BULON      BULLET NOT ON SCREEN
616A: A9 A4      186      LDA  #$A4
616C: 8D 05 60   187      STA  BLINE
616F: 60        188      RTS
189      *****
6170: A9 00      190      SINITIAL LDA  #$00      ;SCORE DISPLAYS THREE 0'S
6172: 8D 39 60   191      STA  SUM
6175: 8D 3A 60   192      STA  COUNTER
6178: AA        193      TAX
6179: A0 11      194      LDY  #$11
617B: 20 B1 64   195      PR    JSR  PRINT
617E: C8        196      INY
617F: C0 14      197      CPY  #$14
6181: 90 F8      198      BLT  PR
6183: 60        199      RTS
200      *****
6184: A9 FF      201      PINITIAL LDA  #$FF      ;PSHPNO LOADED WITH #$FF SO FIRST
202      *      INC  PSHPNO WILL LOAD PSHPNO
203      *      WITH ZERO
6186: 8D 41 60   204      STA  PSHPNO
6189: EE 3C 60   205      INC  PCOUNTER      ;PINITIAL AND PCOUNTER ACCESSED
206      *      ONLY ON COLLISION OR
207      *      END OF SCREEN
618C: AD 3C 60   208      LDA  PCOUNTER
618F: C9 65      209      CMP  #$65      ;PCOUNTER MORE THAN 100?
6191: 90 03      210      BLT  PCONT      ;IF NO, CONTINUE P INITIALIZATION
6193: 4C A6 64   211      JMP  STOP2      ;IF YES, STOP GAME
6196: A9 00      212      PCONT  LDA  #$00
6198: 8D 3F 60   213      STA  PBYTE
619B: A9 08      214      LDA  #$08
619D: 8D 3E 60   215      STA  PLINEA
61A0: 8D 3D 60   216      STA  PLINE
61A3: 18        217      CLC
61A4: 69 05      218      ADC  #$05
61A6: 8D 40 60   219      STA  PDEPTH
61A9: 60        220      RTS
221      *****
61AA: AD 41 60   222      PLOADSHP LDA  PSHPNO
61AD: 0A        223      ASL
61AE: AA        224      TAX
61AF: BD 6E 60   225      LDA  PSHPADR,X
61B2: 85 1A      226      STA  LOW
61B4: BD 6F 60   227      LDA  PSHPADR+1,X
61B7: 85 1B      228      STA  HIGH
61B9: A0 00      229      LDY  #$00

```

```

61BB: B1 1A      230 PLOADSHP1 LDA (LOW),Y
61BD: 99 42 60   231          STA PTEMP,Y
61CO: C8         232          INY
61C1: C0 0F      233          CPY #$0F
61C3: 90 F6      234          BLT PLOADSHP1
61C5: 60         235          RTS
61C6: A2 00      236 *****
61C6: A2 00      237 PDLE    LDX #$00
61C8: 20 1E FB   238          JSR PREAD      ;READ PADDLE 0
61CB: 98         239          TYA
61CC: 8D 07 60   240          STA MHORIZ     ;0-255 IN MHORIZ
61CF: AD 0B 60   241          LDA BULON
61D2: C9 01      242          CMP #$01      ;IS BULLET ON?
61D4: F0 06      243          BEQ PDLE1     ;IF YES, TAKE BRANCH
61D6: AD 07 60   244          LDA MHORIZ     ;IF NO, SET BHORIZ EQUAL
61D9: 8D 08 60   245          STA BHORIZ     TO MHORIZ
61DC: AC 07 60   246 PDLE1    LDY MHORIZ
61DF: B9 DD 66   247          LDA BYTETBL,Y ;CONVERT 0-255 TO 0-36 (BYTE)
61E2: 8D 0A 60   248          STA HORIZM    ;MAN BYTE POSITION
61E5: B9 E0 67   249          LDA OFFSET,Y ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
61E8: 0A         250          ASL      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO MTEMP
61E9: AA         251          TAX
61EA: BD 52 60   252          LDA MSHPADR,X
61ED: 85 1A      253          STA LOW
61EF: BD 53 60   254          LDA MSHPADR+1,X
61F2: 85 1B      255          STA HIGH
61F4: A0 00      256          LDY #$00
61F6: B1 1A      257 LOAD    LDA (LOW),Y
61F8: 99 0F 60   258          STA MTEMP,Y
61FB: C8         259          INY
61FC: C0 27      260          CPY #$27
61FE: 90 F6      261          BLT LOAD
6200: 60         262          RTS
6201: A9 00      263 *****
6201: A9 00      264 MDRAW   LDA #$00
6203: 8D 0C 60   265          STA XCOUNT
6206: AE 03 60   266 MDRAW1  LDX MLINE
6209: AC 0A 60   267          LDY HORIZM
620C: BD E3 68   268          LDA HI,X
620F: 85 1B      269          STA HIGH
6211: BD A3 69   270          LDA LO,X
6214: 85 1A      271          STA LOW
6216: AE 0C 60   272          LDX XCOUNT
6219: B1 1A      273          LDA (LOW),Y
621B: 5D 0F 60   274          EOR MTEMP,X
621E: 91 1A      275          STA (LOW),Y
6220: C8         276          INY
6221: B1 1A      277          LDA (LOW),Y
6223: 5D 10 60   278          EOR MTEMP+1,X
6226: 91 1A      279          STA (LOW),Y
6228: C8         280          INY
6229: B1 1A      281          LDA (LOW),Y
622B: 5D 11 60   282          EOR MTEMP+2,X
622E: 91 1A      283          STA (LOW),Y
6230: EE 0C 60   284          INC XCOUNT
6233: EE 0C 60   285          INC XCOUNT
6236: EE 0C 60   286          INC XCOUNT
6239: EE 03 60   287          INC MLINE
623C: AD 03 60   288          LDA MLINE
623F: CD 06 60   289          CMP DEPTH
6242: 90 C2      290          BLT MDRAW1

```

```

6244: AD 04 60 291      LDA MLINEA      ;RESET LINE
6247: 8D 03 60 292      STA MLINE
624A: 60                293      RTS
                        294 *****
624B: A9 00            295 PDRAW  LDA #$00
624D: 8D 0C 60 296      STA XCOUNT
6250: AC 3F 60 297 PDRAW1 LDY PBYTE
6253: AE 3D 60 298      LDX PLINE
6256: BD E3 68 299      LDA HI,X
6259: 85 1B            300      STA HIGH
625B: BD A3 69 301      LDA LO,X
625E: 85 1A            302      STA LOW
6260: AE 0C 60 303      LDX XCOUNT
6263: BD 42 60 304      LDA PTEMP,X
6266: 91 1A            305      STA (LOW),Y
6268: C8                306      INY
6269: BD 43 60 307      LDA PTEMP+1,X
626C: 91 1A            308      STA (LOW),Y
626E: C8                309      INY
626F: BD 44 60 310      LDA PTEMP+2,X
6272: 91 1A            311      STA (LOW),Y
6274: EE 0C 60 312      INC XCOUNT
6277: EE 0C 60 313      INC XCOUNT
627A: EE 0C 60 314      INC XCOUNT
627D: EE 3D 60 315      INC PLINE
6280: AD 3D 60 316      LDA PLINE
6283: CD 40 60 317      CMP PDEPTH
6286: 90 C8            318      BLT PDRAW1
6288: AD 3E 60 319      LDA PLINEA      ;RESET LINE
628B: 8D 3D 60 320      STA PLINE
628E: 60                321      RTS
                        322 *****
628F: A9 00            323 PXDRAW  LDA #$00
6291: 8D 0C 60 324      STA XCOUNT
6294: AC 3F 60 325 PXDRAW1 LDY PBYTE
6297: AE 3D 60 326      LDX PLINE
629A: BD E3 68 327      LDA HI,X
629D: 85 1B            328      STA HIGH
629F: BD A3 69 329      LDA LO,X
62A2: 85 1A            330      STA LOW
62A4: AE 0C 60 331      LDX XCOUNT
62A7: B1 1A            332      LDA (LOW),Y
62A9: 5D 42 60 333      EOR PTEMP,X
62AC: 91 1A            334      STA (LOW),Y
62AE: C8                335      INY
62AF: B1 1A            336      LDA (LOW),Y
62B1: 5D 43 60 337      EOR PTEMP+1,X
62B4: 91 1A            338      STA (LOW),Y
62B6: C8                339      INY
62B7: B1 1A            340      LDA (LOW),Y
62B9: 5D 44 60 341      EOR PTEMP+2,X
62BC: 91 1A            342      STA (LOW),Y
62BE: EE 0C 60 343      INC XCOUNT
62C1: EE 0C 60 344      INC XCOUNT
62C4: EE 0C 60 345      INC XCOUNT
62C7: EE 3D 60 346      INC PLINE
62CA: AD 3D 60 347      LDA PLINE
62CD: CD 40 60 348      CMP PDEPTH
62D0: 90 C2            349      BLT PXDRAW1
62D2: AD 3E 60 350      LDA PLINEA
62D5: 8D 3D 60 351      STA PLINE

```

```

62D8: 60      352      RTS
353 *****
62D9: AC 08 60 354 LOADBUL LDY BHORIZ ;CONVERTS 0-255 TO
62DC: B9 DD 66 355 LDA BYTETBL,Y ;SCREEN BYTE (0-36)
62DF: 18      356 CLC ;ADD 2 TO ALIGN BULLET
62E0: 69 02 357 ADC #$02 ;WITH GUN
62E2: 8D 09 60 358 STA HORIZB ;BULLET BYTE POSITION
62E5: B9 E0 67 359 LDA OFFSET,Y ;GET BULLET SHAPE NUMBER
62E8: 0A      360 ASL ;LOAD BULLET SHAPE INTO BTEMP
62E9: AA      361 TAX
62EA: BD 60 60 362 LDA BSHPADR,X
62ED: 85 1A 363 STA LOW
62EF: BD 61 60 364 LDA BSHPADR+1,X
62F2: 85 1B 365 STA HIGH
62F4: A0 00 366 LDY #$00
62F6: B1 1A 367 LDA (LOW),Y
62F8: 8D 0E 60 368 STA BTEMP
62FB: 60      369 RTS
370 *****
62FC: AE 05 60 371 BDRAW LDX BLINE
62FF: AC 09 60 372 LDY HORIZB
6302: BD E3 68 373 LDA HI,X
6305: 85 1B 374 STA HIGH
6307: BD A3 69 375 LDA LO,X
630A: 85 1A 376 STA LOW
630C: B1 1A 377 LDA (LOW),Y
630E: 2D 0E 60 378 AND BTEMP ;RESULT IS 0 IF NO COLLISION
6311: C9 00 379 CMP #$00
6313: F0 03 380 BEQ NOHIT
6315: 4C 20 63 381 JMP COLLISION
6318: B1 1A 382 NOHIT LDA (LOW),Y ;DRAW BULLET
631A: 4D 0E 60 383 EOR BTEMP
631D: 91 1A 384 STA (LOW),Y
631F: 60      385 RTS
386 *****
6320: 20 8F 62 387 COLLISION JSR PXDRAW ;ERASE PLANE
6323: EE 39 60 388 INC SUM ;ADD 1 TO SCORE
6326: 20 61 64 389 JSR SCORE ;DISPLAY SCORE
6329: 20 54 63 390 JSR EXPLODE ;EXPLOSION DISPLAY AND SOUND
632C: AD 51 60 391 LDA ST ;IF COUNT=100,
632F: C9 01 392 CMP #$01 THEN GO TO
6331: F0 06 393 BEQ LG STOP PROGRAM
6333: 20 01 62 394 JSR MDRAW ;ERASE MAN
6336: 4C CB 60 395 JMP PI ;INITIALIZE P, B, AND READ PADDLE
6339: 4C A6 64 396 LG JMP STOP2
397 *****
633C: AE 05 60 398 BXDRAW LDX BLINE ;BDRAW WITHOUT COLLISION TEST
633F: AC 09 60 399 LDY HORIZB
6342: BD E3 68 400 LDA HI,X
6345: 85 1B 401 STA HIGH
6347: BD A3 69 402 LDA LO,X
634A: 85 1A 403 STA LOW
634C: B1 1A 404 LDA (LOW),Y
634E: 4D 0E 60 405 EOR BTEMP
6351: 91 1A 406 STA (LOW),Y
6353: 60      407 RTS
408 *****
6354: 20 11 64 409 EXPLODE JSR INITE1
6357: 20 A5 63 410 JSR DRAW1 ;DRAW
635A: 20 97 63 411 JSR SOUND ;EXPLOSION SOUND
635D: 20 11 64 412 JSR INITE1

```

```

6360: 20 A5 63 413      JSR  DRAWE1      ;ERASE
6363: 20 25 64 414      JSR  INITE2
6366: 20 A5 63 415      JSR  DRAWE1      ;DRAW
6369: A9 BB 416          LDA  #$BB
636B: 20 A8 FC 417      JSR  WAIT
636E: 20 25 64 418      JSR  INITE2
6371: 20 A5 63 419      JSR  DRAWE1      ;ERASE
6374: 20 39 64 420      JSR  INITE3
6377: 20 A5 63 421      JSR  DRAWE1      ;DRAW
637A: A9 BB 422          LDA  #$BB
637C: 20 A8 FC 423      JSR  WAIT
637F: 20 39 64 424      JSR  INITE3
6382: 20 A5 63 425      JSR  DRAWE1      ;ERASE
6385: 20 4D 64 426      JSR  INITE4
6388: 20 D4 63 427      JSR  DRAWE2      ;DRAW
638B: A9 FF 428          LDA  #$FF
638D: 20 A8 FC 429      JSR  WAIT
6390: 20 4D 64 430      JSR  INITE4
6393: 20 D4 63 431      JSR  DRAWE2      ;ERASE
6396: 60 432            RTS
                     *****
6397: A0 02 433          SOUND LDY  #$02      ;EXPLOSION SOUND
6399: 2C 30 C0 435      SOUND1 BIT  SPEAKER
639C: A9 60 436          LDA  #$60
639E: 20 A8 FC 437      JSR  WAIT
63A1: 88 438            DEY
63A2: D0 F5 439          BNE  SOUND1
63A4: 60 440            RTS
                     *****
63A5: AC 09 60 442      DRAWE1 LDY  HORIZB      ;ROUTINE FOR FIRST 3
63A8: AE 36 60 443          LDX  ELINE          EXPLOSION SHAPES
63AB: BD E3 68 444          LDA  HI,X
63AE: 85 1B 445          STA  HIGH
63B0: BD A3 69 446          LDA  LO,X
63B3: 85 1A 447          STA  LOW
63B5: AE 0C 60 448          LDX  XCOUNT
63B8: B1 1A 449          LDA  (LOW),Y
63BA: 5D 4A 66 450          EOR  ESHAPE,X
63BD: 91 1A 451          STA  (LOW),Y
63BF: EE 0C 60 452          INC  XCOUNT
63C2: EE 36 60 453          INC  ELINE
63C5: AD 36 60 454          LDA  ELINE
63C8: CD 38 60 455          CMP  EDEPTH
63CB: 90 D8 456          BLT  DRAWE1
63CD: AD 37 60 457          LDA  ELINEA
63D0: 8D 36 60 458          STA  ELINE
63D3: 60 459            RTS
                     *****
63D4: AC 09 60 461      DRAWE2 LDY  HORIZB      ;ROUTINE FOR FOURTH
63D7: AE 36 60 462          LDX  ELINE          EXPLOSION SHAPE
63DA: BD E3 68 463          LDA  HI,X
63DD: 85 1B 464          STA  HIGH
63DF: BD A3 69 465          LDA  LO,X
63E2: 85 1A 466          STA  LOW
63E4: AE 0C 60 467          LDX  XCOUNT
63E7: B1 1A 468          LDA  (LOW),Y
63E9: 5D 4A 66 469          EOR  ESHAPE,X
63EC: 91 1A 470          STA  (LOW),Y
63EE: EE 0C 60 471          INC  XCOUNT
63F1: C8 472            INY
63F2: AE 0C 60 473          LDX  XCOUNT

```



```

63F5: B1 1A      474      LDA (LOW),Y
63F7: 5D 4A 66    475      EOR ESHAPE,X
63FA: 91 1A      476      STA (LOW),Y
63FC: EE 0C 60    477      INC XCOUNT
63FF: EE 36 60    478      INC ELINE
6402: AD 36 60    479      LDA ELINE
6405: CD 38 60    480      CMP EDEPTH
6408: 90 CA      481      BLT DRAW2
640A: AD 37 60    482      LDA ELINEA
640D: 8D 36 60    483      STA ELINE
6410: 60          484      RTS
6411: A9 00      485      *****
6413: 8D 0C 60    486      INITE1 LDA #$00      ;INITIALIZE FIRST EXPLOSION
6416: A9 09      487      STA XCOUNT
6418: 8D 37 60    488      LDA #$09
641B: 8D 36 60    489      STA ELINEA
641E: 18          490      STA ELINE
641F: 69 05      491      CLC
6421: 8D 38 60    492      ADC #$05
6424: 60          493      STA EDEPTH
6425: A9 05      494      RTS
6427: 8D 0C 60    495      INITE2 LDA #$05      ;INITIALIZE SECOND EXPLOSION
642A: A9 09      496      STA XCOUNT
642C: 8D 37 60    497      LDA #$09
642F: 8D 36 60    498      STA ELINEA
6432: 18          499      STA ELINE
6433: 69 05      500      CLC
6435: 8D 38 60    501      ADC #$05
6438: 60          502      STA EDEPTH
6439: A9 0A      503      RTS
643B: 8D 0C 60    504      INITE3 LDA #$0A      ;INITIALIZE THIRD EXPLOSION
643E: A9 05      505      STA XCOUNT
6440: 8D 37 60    506      LDA #$05
6443: 8D 36 60    507      STA ELINEA
6446: 18          508      STA ELINE
6447: 69 08      509      CLC
6449: 8D 38 60    510      ADC #$08
644C: 60          511      STA EDEPTH
644D: A9 12      512      RTS
644F: 8D 0C 60    513      INITE4 LDA #$12      ;INITIALIZE FOURTH EXPLOSION
6452: A9 01      514      STA XCOUNT
6454: 8D 37 60    515      LDA #$01
6457: 8D 36 60    516      STA ELINEA
645A: 18          517      STA ELINE
645B: 69 0C      518      CLC
645D: 8D 38 60    519      ADC #$0C
6460: 60          520      STA EDEPTH
6461: AD 39 60    521      RTS
6462: AD 39 60    522      *****
6464: C9 0A      523      SCORE LDA SUM      ;GET SCORE (0-9)
6466: B0 0A      524      CMP #$0A      ;GREATER THAN 9?
6468: 0A          525      BGE C10      ;IF YES, BRANCH
6469: 0A          526      ASL          ;IF NO, MULTIPLY BY 8
646A: 0A          527      ASL
646B: AA          528      ASL
646C: A0 13      529      TAX
646E: 20 B1 64    530      LDY #$13      ;BYTE POSITION FOR FIRST DIGIT
6471: 60          531      JSR PRINT      ;PRINT DIGIT
6472: EE 3A 60    532      RTS
6475: AD 3A 60    533      C10 INC COUNTER ;INC COUNTER (INITIALLY 0)
6476: AD 3A 60    534      LDA COUNTER

```



```

6478: C9 0A      535      CMP    #$0A      ;MORE THAN 9?
647A: B0 11      536      BGE    STOP1     ;IF YES, PRINT 100 AND STOP GAME
647C: 0A         537      ASL             ;IF NO, MULTIPLY BY 8
647D: 0A         538      ASL
647E: 0A         539      ASL
647F: AA         540      TAX
6480: A0 12      541      LDY    #$12      ;BYTE POSITION OF MIDDLE DIGIT
6482: 20 B1 64    542      JSR    PRINT     ;PRINT DIGIT
6485: A9 00      543      LDA    #$00      ;ZERO SUM AND
6487: 8D 39 60    544      STA    SUM        RETURN TO PRINT 0
648A: 4C 61 64    545      JMP    SCORE     IN FIRST DIGIT POSITION
648D: A2 08      546      LDX    #$08      ;PRINT 100 IN COUNTER
648F: A0 11      547      LDY    #$11
6491: 20 B1 64    548      JSR    PRINT
6494: A2 00      549      LDX    #$00
6496: A0 12      550      LDY    #$12
6498: 20 B1 64    551      JSR    PRINT
649B: A0 13      552      LDY    #$13
649D: 20 B1 64    553      JSR    PRINT
64A0: A9 01      554      LDA    #$01      ;SET ST TO INDICATE
64A2: 8D 51 60    555      STA    ST        COUNTER=100
64A5: 60         556      RTS
64A6: 2C 00 C0    557      STOP2   BIT    $C000    ;ANY KEY PRESSED?
64A9: 10 FB      558      BPL    STOP2    ;IF NO, BRANCH BACK & WAIT
559      *              FOR KEYSTROKE
64AB: 2C 10 C0    560      BIT    $C010    ;IF YES, CLEAR KEYBOARD STROBE
64AE: 4C 7C 60    561      JMP    PGM        AND START PROGRAM OVER
562      *****
64B1: BD E2 64    563      PRINT   LDA    NSHAPE,X    ;RETRIEVE NUMBER SHAPE
64B4: 99 D0 23    564      STA    $23D0,Y    ;LINE #$B8 (184)
64B7: BD E3 64    565      LDA    NSHAPE+1,X
64BA: 99 D0 27    566      STA    $27D0,Y    ;LINE #$B9 (185)
64BD: BD E4 64    567      LDA    NSHAPE+2,X
64C0: 99 D0 2B    568      STA    $2BD0,Y    ;LINE #$BA (186)
64C3: BD E5 64    569      LDA    NSHAPE+3,X
64C6: 99 D0 2F    570      STA    $2FD0,Y    ;LINE #$BB (187)
64C9: BD E6 64    571      LDA    NSHAPE+4,X
64CC: 99 D0 33    572      STA    $33D0,Y    ;LINE #$BC (188)
64CF: BD E7 64    573      LDA    NSHAPE+5,X
64D2: 99 D0 37    574      STA    $37D0,Y    ;LINE #$BD (189)
64D5: BD E8 64    575      LDA    NSHAPE+6,X
64D8: 99 D0 3B    576      STA    $3BD0,Y    ;LINE #$BE (190)
64DB: BD E9 64    577      LDA    NSHAPE+7,X
64DE: 99 D0 3F    578      STA    $3FD0,Y    ;LINE #$BF (191)
64E1: 60         579      RTS
580      *****
64E2: 00 1C 22    581      NSHAPE  HEX    001C2222222221C    ;NUMBER SHAPES - "0"
64E5: 22 22 22    582
64EA: 00 08 0C    582      HEX    00080C080808081C    ;"1"
64ED: 08 08 08    583
64F2: 00 1C 22    583      HEX    001C22201008043E    ;"2"
64F5: 20 10 08    584
64FA: 00 1C 22    584      HEX    001C22201C20221C    ;"3"
64FD: 20 1C 20    585
6502: 00 10 18    585      HEX    00101814123E1010    ;"4"
6505: 14 12 3E    586
650A: 00 3E 02    586      HEX    003E021E2020201E    ;"5"
650D: 1E 20 20    587
6512: 00 1C 22    587      HEX    001C22021E22221C    ;"6"
6515: 02 1E 22    588
651A: 00 3E 20    588      HEX    003E201008040404    ;"7"

```

```

651D: 10 08 04 04 04
6522: 00 1C 22 589
6525: 22 1C 22 22 1C
652A: 00 1C 22 590
652D: 22 3C 20 22 1C
6532: 00 0E 01 591 MSHAPE1
6535: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01
653B: 00 44 01 592
653E: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00
6544: 30 1F 00 593
6547: 18 1F 00 00 1F 00
654D: 00 1F 00 594
6550: 00 1B 00 40 31 00
6556: 60 60 00 595
6559: 00 1C 02 596 MSHAPE2
655C: 00 1C 02 00 1C 02
6562: 00 08 03 597
6565: 00 7E 01 00 3E 00
656B: 00 3F 00 598
656E: 40 3F 00 00 3E 00
6574: 00 3E 00 599
6577: 00 36 00 00 36 00
657D: 00 63 00 600
6580: 00 38 04 601 MSHAPE3
6583: 00 38 04 00 38 04
6589: 00 10 06 602
658C: 00 7C 03 00 7C 00
6592: 00 7C 00 603
6595: 00 7E 00 00 7C 00
659B: 00 38 00 604
659E: 00 38 00 00 6C 00
65A4: 00 46 01 605
65A7: 00 70 08 606 MSHAPE4
65AA: 00 70 08 00 70 08
65B0: 00 20 0C 607
65B3: 00 78 07 00 78 01
65B9: 00 78 01 608
65BC: 00 78 01 00 78 01
65C2: 00 70 00 609
65C5: 00 70 00 00 70 00
65CB: 00 70 00 610
65CE: 00 60 11 611 MSHAPE5
65D1: 00 60 11 00 60 11
65D7: 00 40 18 612
65DA: 00 70 0F 00 70 03
65E0: 00 70 03 613
65E3: 00 78 03 00 70 03
65E9: 00 60 01 614
65EC: 00 60 01 00 30 03
65F2: 00 18 06 615
65F5: 00 40 23 616 MSHAPE6
65F8: 00 40 23 00 40 23
65FE: 00 00 31 617
6601: 00 60 1F 00 60 07
6607: 00 70 07 618
660A: 00 78 07 00 60 07
6610: 00 60 07 619
6613: 00 60 06 00 60 06
6619: 00 30 0C 620
661C: 00 00 47 621 MSHAPE7
661F: 00 00 47 00 00 47

```

HEX 001C22221C22221C ;"8"
 HEX 001C22223C20221C ;"9"
 HEX 000E01000E01000E01 ;MAN SHAPE TABLES
 HEX 004401007F00601F00
 HEX 301F00181F00001F00
 HEX 001F00001B00403100
 HEX 606000
 HEX 001C02001C02001C02
 HEX 000803007E01003E00
 HEX 003F00403F00003E00
 HEX 003E00003600003600
 HEX 006300
 HEX 003804003804003804
 HEX 001006007C03007C00
 HEX 007C00007E00007C00
 HEX 003800003800006C00
 HEX 004601
 HEX 007008007008007008
 HEX 00200C007807007801
 HEX 007801007801007801
 HEX 007000007000007000
 HEX 007000
 HEX 006011006011006011
 HEX 00401800700F007003
 HEX 007003007803007003
 HEX 006001006001003003
 HEX 001806
 HEX 004023004023004023
 HEX 00003100601F006007
 HEX 007007007807006007
 HEX 006007006006006006
 HEX 00300C
 HEX 000047000047000047

```

6625: 00 00 62 622          HEX 00006200403F00700F
6628: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F
662E: 00 58 0F 623          HEX 00580F004C0F00400F
6631: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F
6637: 00 40 0F 624          HEX 00400F00400D006018
663A: 00 40 0D 00 60 18
6640: 00 30 30 625          HEX 003030
6643: 01          626 BSHAPE1 HEX 01          ;BULLET SHAPES
6644: 02          627 BSHAPE2 HEX 02
6645: 04          628 BSHAPE3 HEX 04
6646: 08          629 BSHAPE4 HEX 08
6647: 10          630 BSHAPE5 HEX 10
6648: 20          631 BSHAPE6 HEX 20
6649: 40          632 BSHAPE7 HEX 40
664A: 28 22 1A 633 ESHAPE HEX 28221A2514 ;EXPLOSION SHAPES - NO. 1
664D: 25 14
664F: 2C 52 44 634          HEX 2C5244320C          ;NO. 2
6652: 32 0C
6654: 38 3E 7F 635          HEX 383E7F7E7E3F3F1C          ;NO. 3
6657: 7E 7E 3F 3F 1C
665C: 18 06 7C 636          HEX 18067C0F7C3F7E3F          ;NO. 4
665F: 0F 7C 3F 7E 3F
6664: 7C 7F 7C 637          HEX 7C7F7C3F7E3F7F1F
6667: 3F 7E 3F 7F 1F
666C: 7E 0F 7C 638          HEX 7E0F7C1F700F4003
666F: 1F 70 0F 40 03
6674: 02 00 00 639 PSHAPE1 HEX 0200000600007E1F00          ;PLANE SHAPES
6677: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
667D: 7E 37 00 640          HEX 7E37007E7F00
6680: 7E 7F 00
6683: 04 00 00 641 PSHAPE2 HEX 0400000C00007C3F00
6686: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
668C: 7C 6F 00 642          HEX 7C6F007C7F01
668F: 7C 7F 01
6692: 08 00 00 643 PSHAPE3 HEX 080000180000787F00
6695: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
669B: 78 5F 01 644          HEX 785F01787F03
669E: 78 7F 03
66A1: 10 00 00 645 PSHAPE4 HEX 100000300000707F01
66A4: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
66AA: 70 3F 03 646          HEX 703F03707F07
66AD: 70 7F 07
66B0: 20 00 00 647 PSHAPE5 HEX 200000600000607F03
66B3: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
66B9: 60 7F 06 648          HEX 607F06607F0F
66BC: 60 7F 0F
66BF: 40 00 00 649 PSHAPE6 HEX 400000400100407F07
66C2: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
66C8: 40 7F 0D 650          HEX 407F0D407F1F
66CB: 40 7F 1F
66CE: 00 01 00 651 PSHAPE7 HEX 000100000300007F0F
66D1: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F
66D7: 00 7F 1B 652          HEX 007F1B007F3F
66DA: 00 7F 3F

```

BYTETBL
 OFFSET
 HI
 LO

2659 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	MLINE	=\$6003	MLINEA	=\$6004
BLINE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	MHORIZ	=\$6007	BHORIZ	=\$6008
HORIZB	=\$6009	HORIZM	=\$600A	BULON	=\$600B	XCOUNT	=\$600C
DELAY	=\$600D	BTEMP	=\$600E	MTEMP	=\$600F	ELINE	=\$6036
ELINEA	=\$6037	EDEPTH	=\$6038	SUM	=\$6039	COUNTER	=\$603A
DE	=\$603B	PCOUNTER	=\$603C	PLINE	=\$603D	PLINEA	=\$603E
PBYTE	=\$603F	PDEPTH	=\$6040	PSHPNO	=\$6041	PTIME	=\$6042
ST	=\$6051	MSHPADR	=\$6052	BSHPADR	=\$6060	PSHPADR	=\$606E
PGM	=\$607C	CLR1	=\$6090	CLR	=\$6094	LN	=\$60B6
PI	=\$60CB	BI	=\$60CE	PADDLE	=\$60D1	PSTART	=\$60D7
PSTART1	=\$60FA	PSTART2	=\$6102	BUL	=\$6114	BULLET1	=\$612C
BULLET	=\$6131	LONG	=\$6153	MINITIAL	=\$6156	BINITIAL	=\$6165
SINITIAL	=\$6170	PR	=\$617B	PINITIAL	=\$6184	PCONT	=\$6196
PLOADSHP	=\$61AA	PLOADSHP1	=\$61BB	PDLE	=\$61C6	PDLE1	=\$61DC
LOAD	=\$61F6	MDRAW	=\$6201	MDRAW1	=\$6206	PDRAW	=\$624B
PDRAW1	=\$6250	PXDRAW	=\$628F	PXDRAW1	=\$6294	LOADBUL	=\$62D9
BDRAW	=\$62FC	NOHIT	=\$6318	COLLISION	=\$6320	LG	=\$6339
BXDRAW	=\$633C	EXPLODE	=\$6354	SOUND	=\$6397	SOUND1	=\$6399
DRAW1	=\$63A5	DRAW2	=\$63D4	INITE1	=\$6411	INITE2	=\$6425
INITE3	=\$6439	INITE4	=\$644D	SCORE	=\$6461	C10	=\$6472
STOP1	=\$648D	STOP2	=\$64A6	PRINT	=\$64B1	NSHAPE	=\$64E2
MSHAPE1	=\$6532	MSHAPE2	=\$6559	MSHAPE3	=\$6580	MSHAPE4	=\$65A7
MSHAPE5	=\$65CE	MSHAPE6	=\$65F5	MSHAPE7	=\$661C	BSHAPE1	=\$6643
BSHAPE2	=\$6644	BSHAPE3	=\$6645	BSHAPE4	=\$6646	BSHAPE5	=\$6647
BSHAPE6	=\$6648	BSHAPE7	=\$6649	ESHAPE	=\$664A	PSHAPE1	=\$6674
PSHAPE2	=\$6683	PSHAPE3	=\$6692	PSHAPE4	=\$66A1	PSHAPE5	=\$66B0
PSHAPE6	=\$66BF	PSHAPE7	=\$66CE	BYTETBL	=\$66DD	OFFSET	=\$67E0
HI	=\$68E3	LO	=\$69A3	SPEAKER	=\$C030	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	BUTTON	=\$C061
PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

PART TWO

.....

*Advanced
Techniques*

Drawing in Color

*A computer hack named Muller
Redesigned a dull program for color,
But his technique was so bad
The result was quite sad
For even in color it was duller.*

Those of you who have your Apple hooked up to a color TV or monitor, consider yourself fortunate. There is hardly a game program, or any program for that matter, that uses hi-res graphics, that is not enhanced by a color display. In this chapter we'll look first at the mechanics of color production on the Apple and then see how to animate color shapes. We'll also discuss special problems that arise when testing color shapes for collisions. In the last chapter, I'll make some specific suggestions about using color to enhance the game program.

APPLE COLOR

Apple advertises that the hi-res screen can display six colors, but two of these are black and white. Pretty sneaky, eh? There are in fact only four colors available and they are blue, green, violet, and orange. This is not a particular drawback since, as you would see by examining commercial games, quite a lot can be done with just these few colors. For example, one of the most popular Apple games, Flight Simulator II, uses violet for water, blue for sky, green for ground, orange and blue for instruments, and violet for runway lights in night-time simulation. This works so well that one hardly notices only four colors are used, and this is the rule rather than the exception.

There are two principles involved in hi-res color production. One, if you don't have a color TV or monitor, you won't see color. This point is of such fundamental importance you should make sure you understand it before going any further. Got it? OK. The second principle is that a color shape is produced by plotting in alternate bit positions, that is, in every other column—bits next to each other produce white. In fact, white is produced only by adjacent bits—a single isolated bit is always in one of the four colors. The particular color pro-

duced depends on which columns are used, odd or even, and whether the high bit is set.

Let's discuss these points in some detail. First, the high or most significant bit, which is the left most bit in a byte, is the bit, you will remember, that is not plotted on the screen. Up till now, we've always set the high bit to zero for all our shapes. If the high bit is set to 1, the shape doesn't change, but the shape byte does. For example:

HIGH BIT (BIT 7) NOT SET

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1

SHAPE ON SCREEN

1	2	4	8	1	2	4	(8)
1	0	1	0	1	0	0	(0)

HIGH BIT (BIT 7) SET

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1

SHAPE ON SCREEN

1	2	4	8	1	2	4	(8)
1	0	1	0	1	0	0	(1)

Thus, when the high bit is set, you use it to determine the hex value, remembering that the bit itself does not appear in the shape (actually, if you look carefully on a monochrome monitor, you'll see that dots plotted with a high bit set byte appear about one-half bit position over). This is why #80 is equivalent to #00 in terms of the shape produced, which in this case is no shape, i.e., black. Similarly, #7F and #FF will both produce the same white line. Apple refers to these colors as White 1 and White 2 and Black 1 and Black 2 (now we have eight hi-res colors, right?). Ordinarily, one uses black and white with the high bit off to eliminate any problems with detecting collisions with colors that have the high bit set.

As far as odd-even columns are concerned, we use the convention of numbering the first screen bit position at the left of the screen as 0 or the start of the even columns, and the second position as 1 or the start of the odd columns.

The four hi-res colors are produced by the following combinations:

Even columns—high bit not set—violet
 high bit set—blue

Odd columns—high bit not set—green
 high bit set—orange

Example

<i>Shape on screen</i>	<i>High bit not set</i>	<i>High bit set</i>
1 0 1 0 1 0 1	#\$55 Violet	#\$D5 Blue
0 1 0 1 0 1 0	#\$2A Green	#\$AA Orange

It should be emphasized that the odd-even column assignments always refer to the leftmost screen byte (byte 0). Thus if 1010101 is plotted in screen byte 1, the color will be green or orange, not violet or blue. That's all there is to it, but before we go on to the animation routines, there are two points we must mention. First, because we're plotting shapes as whole bytes, certain color combinations are not allowed. Any contiguous line cannot contain both violet and blue or green and orange because either the high bit is on or it isn't for the particular shape byte. Second, because we're plotting in alternate columns, the 280 dot horizontal resolution of the hi-res screen is reduced by half to 140 dots (the vertical resolution is not affected). This is not as bad as it seems because drawing shapes in different colors often produces an illusion of greater resolution than there really is because of the color contrasts. However, on a black and white monitor or TV, the loss of resolution is readily apparent as color shapes appear to be composed of dotted lines.

COLOR ANIMATION

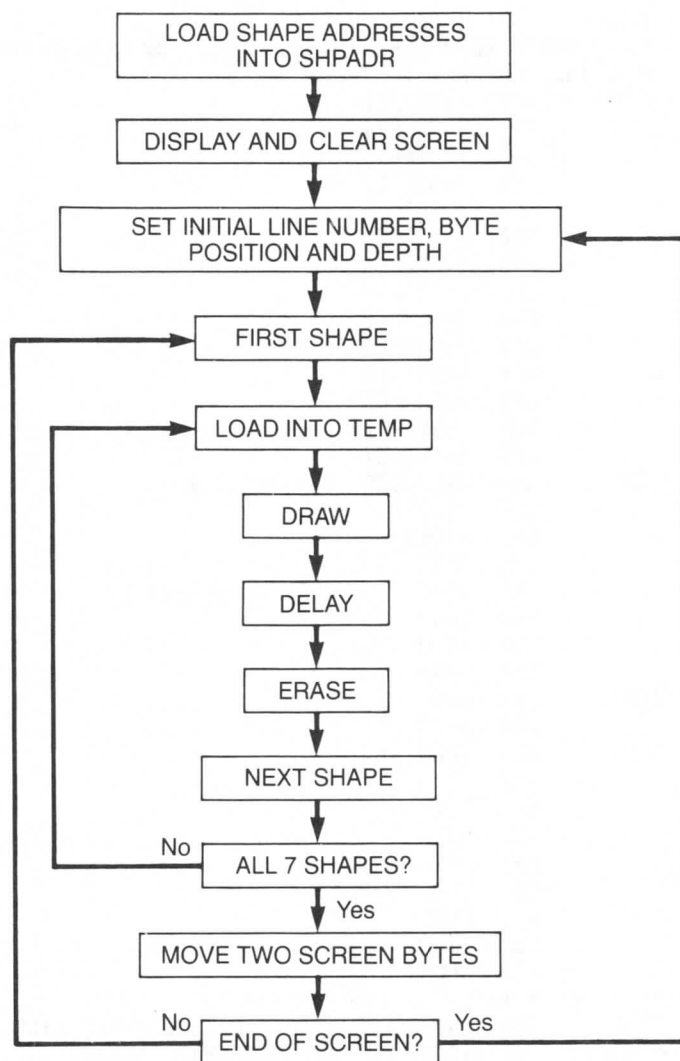
The major problem in animating color shapes is maintaining the color throughout the screen range (you don't have to do this, but if you don't the result is mighty strange). This is not a problem for vertical animation because the shape bits always maintain their even or odd column assignments. The problem arises, as you might expect, only when dealing with movement that involves a horizontal vector; here, moving a shape in 1-bit moves would result in the bits occupying the wrong columns every other move. Fortunately, the solution to this problem is easy—we simply move the shape 2-bit positions at a time rather than 1; in this way the correct column assignments are always retained. Before we go on to discuss the details, it should be mentioned that 2-bit moves are also often useful for animating non-color shapes if we want, for example, to speed up the animation. The increase in jumpiness that results is generally acceptable. Therefore, the discussion that follows is applicable for both color and black and white animation.

In the next program (Program 11-1) we're going to move a blue plane shape continuously across the screen at the same horizontal line position. The plane shape tables and shape bytes are as follows:

		Blue Plane																																
Shape	Number	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	8	Shape Table			
0		●																												81	80	80	80	
		●		●																										85	80	80	80	
		●	●	●		●		●		●		●																	D5	82	80	80		
		●		●		●		●		●		●																	D5	8A	80	80		
		●	●	●	●	●		●		●		●		●															D5	AA	80	80		
1				●																										84	80	80	80	
				●																										94	80	80	80	
				●		●																								D4	8A	80	80	
				●		●		●		●		●																		D4	AA	80	80	
				●		●		●		●		●		●																D4	AA	81	80	
2					●																									90	80	80	80	
					●																									D0	80	80	80	
					●		●																							D0	AA	80	80	
					●		●		●		●		●																	D0	AA	81	80	
					●		●		●		●		●		●		●													D0	AA	85	80	
3						●																								C0	80	80	80	
						●																								C0	82	80	80	
						●	●																							C0	AA	81	80	
						●	●		●		●		●		●		●		●											C0	AA	85	80	
						●	●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●									C0	AA	95	80	
4							●																							80	82	80	80	
							●																							80	8A	80	80	
							●		●																					80	AA	85	80	
							●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●								80	AA	95	80		
							●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●						80	AA	D5	80		
5								●																						80	88	80	80	
								●																						80	A8	80	80	
								●		●																				80	A8	95	80	
								●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●							80	A8	D5	80		
								●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●			80	A8	D5	82		
6									●																					80	A0	80	80	
									●																					80	A0	81	80	
									●		●																			80	A0	D5	80	
									●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●						80	A0	D5	82		
									●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		80	A0	D5	8A		

There are several things that should be noted about these shape tables. Because we want the plane to be blue, the dots are plotted in the even columns only and the shape bytes represent the fact that the high bit is set. Also, note that although the shape itself is 2-screen-bytes wide, the shape table is 4-bytes wide to accommodate all seven shapes. Thus, a general principle—when moving a shape horizontally 2-bit positions at a time, two extra screen bytes in the direction of movement must be included in the shape tables instead of the one extra that we use for 1-bit moves. This necessitates a change in our usual drawing routine. In the MAIN PROGRAM of Program 11-1, when we've finished with all seven shapes, we increment the screen byte by 2 (lines 68 and 69) so that the next draw starts in the appropriate position. We can see this clearly in the shape diagrams above. If shape 0 is drawn in screen byte 0, the next shape 0 must be drawn in screen byte 2 and so on.

That's really all there is. The rest of the program needs no further explanation—we've seen it all before.



]PROGRAM 11-1
:ASM

```

1  *1 SHAPE HORIZONTAL*COLOR - BLUE
2  *2 BYTES WIDE, 5 LINES DEEP
3
4  ORG $6000
5  JMP PGM
6000: 4C 2C 60
6  LINE DS 1
7  LINEA DS 1
8  BYTE DS 1
9  DEPTH DS 1
10 XCOUNT DS 1
11 SHPNO DS 1
12 DELAY DS 1
13 TEMP DS 20
14 GRAPHICS = $C050
15 MIXOFF = $C052
16 HIRES = $C057
17 PAGE1 = $C054
18 HIGH = $1B
19 LOW = $1A

```

```

19 WAIT = $FCA8
20 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
21 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
601E: 0A 22 SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
601F: 61 23 DFB #>SHAPE1
6020: 1E 24 DFB #<SHAPE2
6021: 61 25 DFB #>SHAPE2
6022: 32 26 DFB #<SHAPE3
6023: 61 27 DFB #>SHAPE3
6024: 46 28 DFB #<SHAPE4
6025: 61 29 DFB #>SHAPE4
6026: 5A 30 DFB #<SHAPE5
6027: 61 31 DFB #>SHAPE5
6028: 6E 32 DFB #<SHAPE6
6029: 61 33 DFB #>SHAPE6
602A: 82 34 DFB #<SHAPE7
602B: 61 35 DFB #>SHAPE7
602C: AD 50 CO 36 PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
602F: AD 52 CO 37 LDA MIXOFF
6032: AD 57 CO 38 LDA HIRES
6035: AD 54 CO 39 LDA PAGE1
6038: A9 00 40 LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
603A: 85 1A 41 STA LOW
603C: A9 20 42 LDA #$20
603E: 85 1B 43 STA HIGH
6040: A0 00 44 CLR1 LDY #$00
6042: A9 00 45 LDA #$00
6044: 91 1A 46 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6046: C8 47 INY
6047: D0 FB 48 BNE CLR
6049: E6 1B 49 INC HIGH
604B: A5 1B 50 LDA HIGH
604D: C9 40 51 CMP #$40
604F: 90 EF 52 BLT CLR1
6051: A9 60 53 LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
6053: 8D 09 60 54 STA DELAY
6055: ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6056: 20 87 60 56 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
6059: A9 00 57 START1 LDA #$00 ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER
605B: 8D 08 60 58 STA SHPNO
605E: 20 99 60 59 START2 JSR LOADSHP ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
6061: 20 B5 60 60 JSR DRAW ;DRAW
6064: AD 09 60 61 LDA DELAY ;DELAY
6067: 20 A8 FC 62 JSR WAIT
606A: 20 B5 60 63 JSR DRAW ;ERASE
606D: EE 08 60 64 INC SHPNO ;NEXT SHAPE NUMBER
6070: AD 08 60 65 LDA SHPNO
6073: C9 07 66 CMP #$07 ;FINISHED ALL 7 SHAPES?
6075: 90 E7 67 BLT START2 ;IF NO, CONTINUE WITH NEXT SHAPE
6077: EE 05 60 68 INC BYTE ;IF YES, MOVE TWO BYTES
607A: EE 05 60 69 INC BYTE
607D: AD 05 60 70 LDA BYTE
6080: C9 26 71 CMP #$26 ;END OF SCREEN?
6082: 90 D5 72 BLT START1 ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
6084: 4C 56 60 73 JMP START ;IF YES, START OVER
6087: A9 00 74 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6088: INITIAL LDA #$00
6089: 8D 05 60 76 STA BYTE
608C: 8D 03 60 77 STA LINE
608F: 8D 04 60 78 STA LINEA
6092: 18 79 CLC

```

```

6093: 69 05      80      ADC  #$05      ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
6095: 8D 06 60   81      STA  DEPTH
6098: 60          82      RTS
6099: AD 08 60   83      *****
6099: AD 08 60   84      LOADSHP LDA  SHPNO      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
609C: 0A          85      ASL
609D: AA          86      TAX
609E: BD 1E 60   87      LDA  SHPADR,X
60A1: 85 1A      88      STA  LOW
60A3: BD 1F 60   89      LDA  SHPADR+1,X
60A6: 85 1B      90      STA  HIGH
60A8: A0 00      91      LDY  #$00
60AA: B1 1A      92      LOADSHP1 LDA (LOW),Y
60AC: 99 0A 60   93      STA  TEMP,Y
60AF: C8          94      INY
60B0: C0 14      95      CPY  #$14
60B2: 90 F6      96      BLT  LOADSHP1
60B4: 60          97      RTS
60B5: A9 00      98      *****
60B5: A9 00      99      DRAW  LDA  #$00
60B7: 8D 07 60  100     STA  XCOUNT
60BA: AC 05 60  101     DRAW1 LDY  BYTE
60BD: AE 03 60  102     LDX  LINE
60C0: BD 96 61  103     LDA  HI,X
60C3: 85 1B      104     STA  HIGH
60C5: BD 56 62  105     LDA  LO,X
60C8: 85 1A      106     STA  LOW
60CA: AE 07 60  107     LDX  XCOUNT
60CD: B1 1A      108     LDA  (LOW),Y
60CF: 5D 0A 60  109     EOR  TEMP,X
60D2: 91 1A      110     STA  (LOW),Y
60D4: C8          111     INY
60D5: B1 1A      112     LDA  (LOW),Y
60D7: 5D 0B 60  113     EOR  TEMP+1,X
60DA: 91 1A      114     STA  (LOW),Y
60DC: C8          115     INY
60DD: B1 1A      116     LDA  (LOW),Y
60DF: 5D 0C 60  117     EOR  TEMP+2,X
60E2: 91 1A      118     STA  (LOW),Y
60E4: C8          119     INY
60E5: B1 1A      120     LDA  (LOW),Y
60E7: 5D 0D 60  121     EOR  TEMP+3,X
60EA: 91 1A      122     STA  (LOW),Y
60EC: EE 07 60  123     INC  XCOUNT
60EF: EE 07 60  124     INC  XCOUNT
60F2: EE 07 60  125     INC  XCOUNT
60F5: EE 07 60  126     INC  XCOUNT
60F8: EE 03 60  127     INC  LINE
60FB: AD 03 60  128     LDA  LINE
60FE: CD 06 60  129     CMP  DEPTH
6101: 90 B7      130     BLT  DRAW1
6103: AD 04 60  131     LDA  LINEA
6106: 8D 03 60  132     STA  LINE      ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
6109: 60          133     RTS
610A: 81 80 80  134     SHAPE1 HEX  81808080858080D582 ;SHAPE TABLES
610D: 80 85 80 80 80 D5 82
6114: 80 80 D5 135     HEX  8080D58A8080D5AA8080
6117: 8A 80 80 D5 AA 80 80
611E: 84 80 80 136     SHAPE2 HEX  84808080948080D48A
6121: 80 94 80 80 80 D4 8A
6128: 80 80 D4 137     HEX  8080D4AA8080D4AA8180

```

```

612B: AA 80 80 D4 AA 81 80
6132: 90 80 80 138 SHAPE3  HEX  90808080D08080D0AA
6135: 80 D0 80 80 80 D0 AA
613C: 80 80 D0 139          HEX  8080D0AA8180D0AA8580
613F: AA 81 80 D0 AA 85 80
6146: C0 80 80 140 SHAPE4  HEX  C0808080C0828080C0AA
6149: 80 C0 82 80 80 C0 AA
6150: 81 80 C0 141          HEX  8180C0AA8580C0AA9580
6153: AA 85 80 C0 AA 95 80
615A: 80 82 80 142 SHAPE5  HEX  80828080808A808080AA
615D: 80 80 8A 80 80 80 AA
6164: 85 80 80 143          HEX  858080AA958080AAD580
6167: AA 95 80 80 AA D5 80
616E: 80 88 80 144 SHAPE6  HEX  8088808080A8808080A8
6171: 80 80 A8 80 80 80 A8
6178: 95 80 80 145          HEX  958080A8D58080A8D582
617B: A8 D5 80 80 A8 D5 82
6182: 80 A0 80 146 SHAPE7  HEX  80A0808080A0818080A0
6185: 80 80 A0 81 80 80 A0
618C: D5 80 80 147          HEX  D58080A0D58280A0D58A
618F: A0 D5 82 80 A0 D5 8A

```

HI

LO

790 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
DELAY	=\$6009	TEMP	=\$600A	SHPADR	=\$601E	PGM	=\$602C
CLR1	=\$6040	CLR	=\$6044	START	=\$6056	START1	=\$6059
START2	=\$605E	INITIAL	=\$6087	LOADSHP	=\$6099	LOADSHP1	=\$60AA
DRAW	=\$60B5	DRAW1	=\$60BA	SHAPE1	=\$610A	SHAPE2	=\$611E
SHAPE3	=\$6132	SHAPE4	=\$6146	SHAPE5	=\$615A	SHAPE6	=\$616E
SHAPE7	=\$6182	HI	=\$6196	LO	=\$6256	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8

Without changing anything in Program 11-1 except the shape bytes, we can draw the plane in any of the other three hi-res colors. Shown on the opposite page are the shapes and shape bytes for shape 0 for the plane in green, violet, and orange.

Shapes with multiple colors can be drawn quite easily, remembering though that a single byte can't contain two colors, one of which requires the high bit set and the other the high bit not set. This precludes a line in a shape within a single screen byte containing both violet and blue or green and orange. The line can, however, contain combinations of violet and green or blue and orange and, of course, different lines in the shape can contain any of the four colors. In addition, black and white can be placed anywhere. Note however that when combining colors, if two bits end up next to each other, white will be displayed in that region. The use of multiple colors, and the contrast they provide, goes a long way in mitigating the lower resolution of color displays.

	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4	1	2	4	8	1	2	4					
Green		●																					02	00	00	00
		●			●																		0A	00	00	00
		●			●		●		●		●		●										2A	05	00	00
		●			●		●		●		●		●		●								2A	15	00	00
		●			●		●		●		●		●		●		●						2A	15	00	00
Violet	●																						01	00	00	00
	●			●																			05	00	00	00
	●			●		●		●		●													55	02	00	00
	●			●		●		●		●		●											55	0A	00	00
	●			●		●		●		●		●		●									55	2A	00	00
Orange		●																					82	80	80	80
		●			●																		8A	80	80	80
		●			●		●		●		●												AA	85	80	80
		●			●		●		●		●		●										AA	95	80	80
		●			●		●		●		●		●		●								AA	D5	80	80

Simple, yes? But of course for the privilege of drawing in color, there's a price to be paid, and I don't mean the cost of a color TV or monitor (actually, I don't know why this should be so but it seems to be a law of some kind—something about a free lunch?). In any case, we've already discussed one drawback, the lower resolution of color shapes. There is yet another that involves problems in collision detection and we'll get to that next.

COLLISION DETECTION WITH COLOR SHAPES

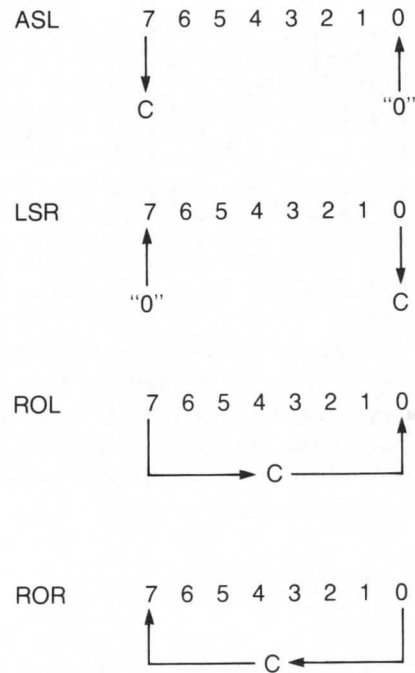
Collision detection with color shapes is difficult for two reasons; first, because such shapes contain "holes," and second, because of a problem relating to the high bit. Let's discuss the "hole" problem first.

Suppose we want to test for the collision of a vertically moving green shape with a violet one:

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Shape on screen
Shape 1—violet	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	1 0 1 0 1 0 1
AND with shape 2—green	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0 1 0 1 0 1 0
Result	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

The AND instruction returns a value of #00 indicating no collision, but, of course, a collision should occur. The same situation holds for collisions between violet and orange shapes and between green and blue shapes, because they also occupy different columns. This is not a problem for violet and blue or green and orange shapes because here they occupy the same columns (on the other hand, blue and orange shapes will always indicate a collision, even when there shouldn't be one, because of the high bit problem we'll get to shortly). The same "hole" problem arises with horizontal movement, because color shapes are moved horizontally two bits at a time to maintain the alternate column assignments. We could get around the problem by changing colors, but this would limit our program options and also violate a basic creed of us assembly language programmers, to wit, "\$FF," or "Flexibility Forever," which translated means if we can overcome a limitation, let's do it.

When dealing with bits in the “wrong” set of alternate columns, the instructions that immediately come to mind are those that shift bits over one position; e.g., ASL (Arithmetic Shift Left), LSR (Logical Shift Right), ROR (ROTate Right), and ROL (ROTate Left).



When we do this kind of shifting, we have to make sure we can restore the original shape and color in preparation for the next shape draw and erase. This is done by storing the shape byte to be tested in the Accumulator, shifting the bits, and then storing the shifted byte into a memory location labeled, let's say, SHIFT (another clever nom de storage). Thus, the shape byte in the shape table is not affected by the shifting. The AND test is then done with the contents of SHIFT and the draw and erase with the shape byte from the shape table.

The instruction we're going to use is LSR because it's the only one that ensures the high bit will contain 0 after the shift—pushing a 1 into the high bit can present problems as we'll see below. Now suppose we want to collision-test a violet with a green shape as in the example in the beginning of this section. Let's see what happens if we LSR the violet shape before ANDing with the green shape:

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Shape 1—violet	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
LSR	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
AND with shape 2—green	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
Result—non-zero	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0

Voila! We've detected a collision where there should be one. Let's see how this would look in a program (again, `CMP #$00` is included to make the routine easier to read—it is not needed before a `BEQ`):

```

LDA SHAPE,X           ;GET SHAPE BYTE TO BE TESTED
LSR                   ;SHIFT BITS RIGHT
STA SHIFT             ;STORE IN SHIFT
LDA (LOW),Y           ;GET SCREEN BYTE
AND SHIFT             ;AND WITH SHIFT CONTENTS
CMP #$00
BEQ NOHIT             ;JUMP TO NOHIT IF NO COLLISION
JMP COLLISION
NOHIT  Continue draw with SHAPE,X

```

Note that some assemblers require A in the operand column for `LSR` (and `ASL`, `ROR`, and `ROL`) when the bits in the Accumulator are to be shifted. The exact same procedure can be used for testing violet against orange and green against blue. When we get to blue vs. orange, however, we have a problem, because both colors have the high bit set and thus an `AND` test will always return a non-zero even when no collision is indicated. This occurs because both high bits are 1. Consider the following:

	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	Shape on screen
Shape 1—orange	1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0	0 1 0 1 0 0 0
AND with shape 2—blue	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 1
Result—non-zero	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	

Obviously a collision should not be detected, but it is because of the high bits. We might assume an `LSR` instruction would take care of this, because it places a zero in the high bit; but watch what happens:

	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
Shape 1—orange	1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0
LSR	0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1
AND with shape 2—blue	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0
Result—non-zero	0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0

The high bit has been shifted into the shape byte and, in this case at least, an erroneous collision detection has occurred. What we want to do then is mask out the high bit before shifting. We do this by `ANDing` with `#$7F`. Thus:

	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
Shape 1—orange	1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0
AND with #\$7F	0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Result—high bit 0	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0
LSR	0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1
AND with shape 2—blue	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0
Result—zero	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

In a program, the routine would look like this:

```

LDA SHAPE,X
AND #$7F
LSR
STA SHIFT
LDA (LOW),Y
AND SHIFT
CMP #$00
BEQ NOHIT
etc.

```

Even when testing blue or orange against a high-bit-not-set color, such as violet or green, it's still a good idea to mask out the high bit so that it doesn't get pushed into the shape byte. To summarize then:

<i>Color to be tested (ANDed)</i>	<i>Target color</i>	<i>Shift instructions</i>
violet	blue	none
green	orange	none
blue	violet	none
orange	green	none
green	violet or blue	LSR
violet	green or orange	LSR
blue	green or orange	AND #\$7F, LSR
orange	violet or blue	AND #\$7F, LSR
white (high bit off)	any color	none
any color	white (high bit off)	none

This is a fast and simple procedure, but not without its drawbacks. Because we're shifting the shape bits, in certain circumstances a collision detection will result when the shapes are not exactly at the collision site. For shapes moving vertically, this displacement will not exceed one bit position and this should certainly be tolerable in most circumstances. For shapes moving horizontally, the displacement can be as large as three bit positions, because the protocol is draw-erase-move two bit positions-LSR-AND test. We can reduce the displacement to one bit position by altering the protocol to the following; move two bit positions-draw-LSR-AND test-erase. But as mentioned, this displaced collision is not a problem in all cases—it depends on the shapes and which way they're moving.

A second method of collision detection with color shapes is one that seems to be favored by assembly language programmers, probably because the principle is simple and it works; there is also no problem with displaced collisions. The method involves setting up a second dummy shape table, identical to the first,

except that the shape is drawn in white (high bit off), i.e., no "holes." The white shape is ANDed with the screen byte, and the color shape is used to draw and erase. For example, if the color shape is stored in SHAPE and the white shape in SHAPE1, the routine would be as follows:

```

                LDA (LOW),Y
                AND SHAPE1,X
                CMP #$00
                BEQ NOHIT
                JMP COLLISION
NOHIT          Continue draw with SHAPE,X

```

This method works for any color combination and eliminates the problem of the high bit. An obvious drawback, however, is that multiple shape tables have to be constructed for each shape involved in collision detection. This can eat up a lot of space for programs with many colliding shapes, not to mention the time involved in writing the program. There can also be a significant increase in execution time, depending on the type of animation involved. For vertical animation, this is not a significant problem—a single shape would have only two shape tables, one in color and the other in white, and the routine described above can be used without any modification. For horizontal movement, however, each shape would require 14 shape tables instead of 7, and if we use our usual TEMP loading routine, we would have to load another TEMP with the white shapes for each AND test. This could increase the execution time to intolerable levels and if so, we would then have to use routines that do not involve TEMP loading; that is, a separate draw routine for each shape as discussed in Chapter 5 (Program 5-2). This would further increase our program size, but then you can't have everything.

There is yet a third method we can use, which is both simple and fast, but has the limitation that the shape has to be all one color. What we do is use a single white shape table and then mask the shape to color. For example:

	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
White shape	0 0 0 1 1 1 0 0
AND with #\$55	0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1
Result—violet shape	0 0 0 1 0 1 0 0

A program using this routine would look like this:

```

                LDA (LOW),Y
                AND WHITE SHAPE
                CMP #$00
                BEQ NOHIT
                JMP COLLISION
NOHIT          LDA WHITE SHAPE
                AND #$55
                STA COLOR SHAPE
                LDA (LOW),Y
                EOR COLOR SHAPE

```

For a green shape, we would AND with `#$2A`, for orange with `#$AA`, and for blue with `#$D5`. This routine requires only one (white) shape table, but obviously can be used only with shapes of a single color, because each color requires a different value to be ANDed. The only exception would be if we are testing a vertically moving shape and expect no side collision. Here, only the top or bottom line (white shape) need be collision-tested and then, if no collision, the whole color shape can be drawn with a separate routine.

Which to use, LSR or white dummy shapes? That depends on the program and your own proclivities. Use whichever is easier and more appropriate. On the other hand, we could observe another assembly language credo, “`#$EB`,” or “Easy is Better”—just change the shape colors to those that don’t involve alternate columns.

Finally, let’s discuss the game program for a moment. Suppose we draw the plane in blue. The bullet is a single dot and thus is either violet or green depending on the column in which it is drawn. Thus, half the time a collision will be missed, i.e., when the bullet is tested against a “hole” in the plane shape. Note that this is a special situation—ordinarily shapes are not just single dots. What to do? An LSR would be inappropriate—we would still miss collisions the other half of the time and if the shape byte were `#$01`, an LSR would empty the shape byte entirely. We could use a white dummy table—here the bullet would be 2-bits wide—but instead of going through all that trouble, why not just draw the bullet as a 2-bit wide white shape to begin with? Why not indeed. It works and looks fine—what more could we ask for?

Double Hi-Res Graphics and Animation

*A computer artist from Labore
Has only one problem; he can't draw.
Hi-res double
Gives him nothing but trouble,
Now he's twice as bad as before.*

Those of you with Apple IIc's or extended memory Apple IIe's have probably sat up many a night wondering what to do with the extra memory these machines contain. You can't use it for your BASIC programs (it can be done but Apple won't tell you how) and only some commercial programs take advantage of it. But we're assembly language programmers and no part of Apple memory is inaccessible to us. In this chapter, we'll see how to use the extra memory to display and animate graphics in the double hi-res mode, both in color and black and white.

DOUBLE HI-RES—WHAT IT IS AND WHAT'S REQUIRED

Not all Apples are capable of displaying double hi-res graphics—at the very least a minimum of 128K of memory is required. Apple IIc's come with 128K standard. Apple IIe's can be upgraded to 128K by adding an extended memory 80-column card (available from Apple and other companies) but double hi-res graphics also require that you have a revision B or later motherboard. You can tell what revision your motherboard is by checking the part number at the rear of the main circuit board. If the letter following the numbers is B, you're all set. If it is A, you have a revision A motherboard and double hi-res will not work. But don't despair—your Apple dealer will sell you a B motherboard at a price you can't refuse; all you have to do is learn how to program with one hand.

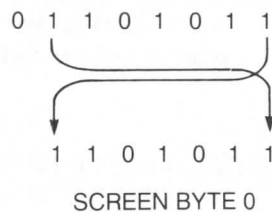
Another requirement, but one that is not absolutely essential, is a video monitor rather than a TV. You can use a black and white or color TV, but much detail will be lost, thus negating the increase in resolution and the details of color contrasts. You don't have to spend a lot of money for fancy monitors—I find the standard Apple monochrome monitor superb for double hi-res displays and even an inexpensive color monitor produces satisfactory results.

Double hi-res extends the horizontal resolution of the hi-res screen from 280 to 560 dots on a monochrome monitor—the vertical resolution remains the same at 192 lines. The 560 by 192 screen makes the Apple with double hi-res roughly equivalent to the hi-res mode on the IBM PC (600 by 200) and, as you might imagine, this increase in resolution can produce startlingly detailed graphics that make single hi-res appear rather crude. With color, the horizontal resolution is the same as single hi-res (140 dots), but with many more colors available and without the single hi-res color mixture limitations.

THE DOUBLE HI-RES SCREEN

The extra 64K of memory in 128K machines is essentially a mirror of the standard 64K memory block; that is, there are two of everything, including the hi-res screens. Let's label a hi-res screen from the standard memory as MAIN and the screen from the extra memory as AUX, for auxiliary. Each screen uses the same addresses; i.e., \$2000 is the first screen byte position for hi-res Page 1 for both MAIN and AUX. For this reason, you have to specify which memory you're using before sending shape bytes to a hi-res screen location. Now remember that in single hi-res, 7 bits from a shape byte are plotted in a single screen byte. Thus, a shape byte sent to \$2000 will be displayed in the first screen byte of hi-res Page 1. In double hi-res, each screen byte displays 7 bits from a shape byte from AUX and 7 bits from a shape byte from MAIN, the shape from AUX displayed in the first half of the screen byte. Thus, a shape byte sent to \$2000 in AUX will be displayed in the first half of the first screen byte of Page 1 (byte 0) and a shape byte sent to \$2000 in MAIN will be displayed in the second half (assuming, of course, that the double hi-res mode is selected).

SINGLE HI-RES \$2000



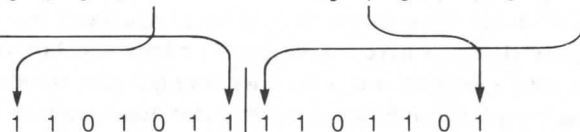
DOUBLE HI-RES

\$2000 AUX

0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1

0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1

\$2000 MAIN



SCREEN BYTE 0

Similarly, a shape byte sent to \$2001 in AUX will be displayed in the first half of screen byte 1, and a shape byte sent to \$2001 in MAIN will be displayed in the second half of screen byte 1, and so on. There are still just 40 screen bytes, but each can display up to 14 dots, which accounts for the 560 dot resolution ($14 \times 40 = 560$). All that needs to be done is to specify AUX or MAIN before sending the shape byte to the particular hi-res screen address—the double hi-res mode

takes care of the plotting. Note that, as in single hi-res, the high bit does not appear in the shape. Not only that, but in double hi-res the high bit has nothing to do with color selection as we'll see in a later section.

THE DOUBLE HI-RES MODE

Strange as it may seem, you cannot draw in double hi-res unless you first set the double hi-res mode. The way to do this is buried deep within the Apple reference manual and if you're fond of frustration, you're welcome to try to dig it out, but why not just read on? The method, as you might suspect, involves accessing certain soft switches, some of which you've seen before.

<i>Label</i>	<i>Address</i>	<i>Access</i>	<i>Function</i>
GRAPHICS	\$C050	LDA	Turns on graphics mode
MIXOFF	\$C052	LDA	Selects full page graphics
HIRES	\$C057	LDA	Selects hi-res mode
AN3	\$C05E	LDA	Turns off annunciator 3
COL80	\$C00D	STA	Selects 80 column mode
STORE80	\$C001	STA	Changes functions of next switches
AUX	\$C055	LDA	Selects AUX when STORE80 and HIRES on
MAIN	\$C054	LDA	Selects MAIN

The routine for selecting double hi-res is as follows:

```
LDA GRAPHICS
LDA MIXOFF
LDA HIRES
STA STORE80
STA COL80
LDA AN3
```

Once this is done, LDA AUX selects the Page 1 hi-res screen from the auxiliary memory and LDA MAIN selects the same page from main memory. Thus, to clear both screens, we do:

```
LDA MAIN
JSR CLEAR
LDA AUX
JSR CLEAR
```

where CLEAR is our usual clear screen subroutine. It's simple when you know which switch to pull (push?), thus attesting to the old adage (which I just thought of) that computers imitate life.

DRAWING SHAPES

Drawing a shape on the double hi-res screen is relatively easy—all we have to do is determine in which half of the screen byte, AUX or MAIN, the shape bits are to be plotted and modify the draw routine accordingly. For example, let's look at

how we would plot some simple shapes of varying lengths. To keep it really simple, we'll just plot some lines. For most of the programs in this chapter we'll be using single lines to illustrate the principles involved; however, the programs are designed in the usual way (i.e., XCOUNT, DEPTH, etc.) to allow the drawing of shapes with multiple lines, so our examples are applicable not just to lines, but to any shape.

Screen byte 12
.....

AUX	MAIN
0 1 1 1 1 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Here we're plotting shape byte #\$1E just in the AUX portion of the screen byte. The draw routine would look like this (we're using the EOR method for illustration):

```
LDA AUX
LDA Screen byte
EOR #$1E
STA Screen byte
```

Suppose now we want to draw a line extending into the MAIN section:

Screen byte 12
.....

AUX	MAIN
0 0 0 0 1 1 1	1 1 1 0 0 0 0

The draw routine would then be:

```
LDA AUX
LDA Screen byte
EOR #$70
STA Screen byte
LDA MAIN
LDA Screen byte    ;SAME SCREEN BYTE
EOR #$07
STA Screen byte
```

Now let's extend a line into the next screen byte:

Screen byte 12 Screen byte 13
.....

AUX	MAIN	AUX
0 0 0 0 1 1 1	1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1 1 0 0 0 0 0

The draw routine would be:

```

LDA AUX
LDA Screen byte
EOR #$70
STA Screen byte
LDA MAIN
LDA Screen byte
EOR #$7F
STA Screen byte
INY                ;NEXT SCREEN BYTE
LDA AUX
LDA Screen byte
EOR #$03
STA Screen byte

```

Note that we use INY to get to the next screen byte, because this is how we have always done it in our programs: Y is loaded with the value in BYTE and it is manipulated to access different screen bytes within the draw routine instead of BYTE itself to make erasing easier.

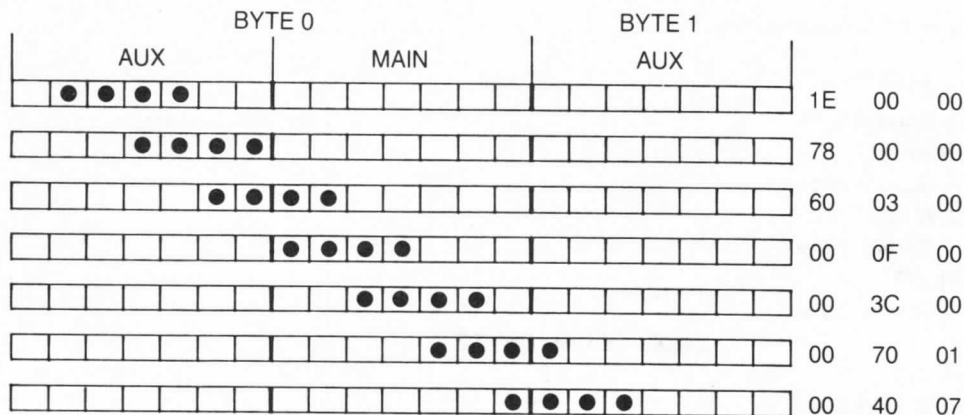
We can use a kind of shorthand to describe our double hi-res drawing routines. Thus, for the example above, A-M-INY-A. The same line starting in the MAIN section would use M-INY-A-M. A line extending over two whole screen bytes and starting in AUX would use A-M-INY-A-M, and so on. For a shape with multiple lines, we simply plot out the shape and design the draw routine based on the overall maximum shape width.

Now that we know how to display shapes on the double hi-res screen, let's see how to animate them.

ANIMATING SHAPES

Vertical animation, as usual, presents no problems. We just draw and erase the shape and change line positions; the shape bits always retain their column assignments. Non-vertical movement always contains a horizontal vector, and here things get more complicated, but not much more than with single hi-res horizontal movement. First of all, for greater simplicity, all our double hi-res horizontal animation will use 2-bit moves. One-bit moves are possible but involve greater complexity (14 shapes are required with different draw routines for each group of 7), and they are completely unnecessary because a 2-bit move in double hi-res is equivalent to a 1-bit move in single hi-res and this is certainly satisfactory.

With 2-bit moves, we need only 7 shapes. The technique is to examine the shape tables and devise the appropriate draw routine. Most everything else is the same as in our previous single hi-res programs. Let's consider the simplest example, a line occupying only half a screen byte and starting in the AUX section. Shown below are the shape tables for this line moving in 2-bit moves. (Note that as usual with 2-bit moves, 2 extra bytes have to be included in the shape tables in the direction of movement, but here the extra bytes are really half screen bytes, i.e., either a MAIN or AUX.)



Examination of the tables tells us the draw routine needed is A-M-INY-A. The tables also tell us that after seven shapes are drawn, we start over with the first shape in AUX in the next screen byte, and so we do an INC BYTE. This is in contrast to 2-bit moves in single hi-res where we have to move 2 bytes over after every seven shapes. Thus the protocol can be represented by A-M-INY-A—next screen byte—A-M-INY-A.

Let's now use these shapes in a program. The following program (Program 12-1) moves the line left to right across the screen in the same way that we moved the plane shape in previous programs. There is very little change from a single hi-res program, the major alteration being in the draw routine. The flow-chart for Program 12-1 is on page 235.

```

]PROGRAM 12-1
:ASM
1      ** DOUBLE HI-RES ** 2 BIT HORIZONTAL MOVE
2      ORG $6000
3      JMP PGM
6000: 4C 1B 60 4      LINE DS 1
5      LINEA DS 1
6      BYTE DS 1
7      DEPTH DS 1
8      XCOUNT DS 1
9      SHPNO DS 1
10     DELAY DS 1
11     TEMP DS 3
12     GRAPHICS = $C050
13     MIXOFF = $C052
14     HIRES = $C057
15     AN3 = $C05E
16     COL80 = $C00D
17     STORE80 = $C001
18     AUX = $C055
19     MAIN = $C054
20     HIGH = $1B
21     LOW = $1A
22     WAIT = $FCA8
23     *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
24     *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
600D: 09 25     SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
600E: 61 26     DFB #>SHAPE1
600F: 0C 27     DFB #<SHAPE2
6010: 61 28     DFB #>SHAPE2

```

```

6011: 0F      29      DFB #<SHAPE3
6012: 61      30      DFB #>SHAPE3
6013: 12      31      DFB #<SHAPE4
6014: 61      32      DFB #>SHAPE4
6015: 15      33      DFB #<SHAPE5
6016: 61      34      DFB #>SHAPE5
6017: 18      35      DFB #<SHAPE6
6018: 61      36      DFB #>SHAPE6
6019: 1B      37      DFB #<SHAPE7
601A: 61      38      DFB #>SHAPE7
601B: AD 50 C0 39      PGM LDA GRAPHICS
601E: AD 52 C0 40      LDA MIXOFF
6021: AD 57 C0 41      LDA HIRES
6024: 8D 01 C0 42      STA STORE80
6027: 8D 0D C0 43      STA COL80
602A: AD 5E C0 44      LDA AN3
602D: AD 54 C0 45      LDA MAIN
6030: 20 3C 60 46      JSR CLEAR      ;CLEAR MAIN SCREEN
6033: AD 55 C0 47      LDA AUX
6036: 20 3C 60 48      JSR CLEAR      ;CLEAR AUX SCREEN
6039: 4C 56 60 49      JMP DE
603C: A9 00      50      CLEAR LDA #00      ;CLEAR SCREEN SUBROUTINE
603E: 85 1A      51      STA LOW
6040: A9 20      52      LDA #$20
6042: 85 1B      53      STA HIGH
6044: A0 00      54      CLR1 LDY #00
6046: A9 00      55      LDA #00
6048: 91 1A      56      CLR STA (LOW),Y
604A: C8          57      INY
604B: D0 FB      58      BNE CLR
604D: E6 1B      59      INC HIGH
604F: A5 1B      60      LDA HIGH
6051: C9 40      61      CMP #$40
6053: 90 EF      62      BCC CLR1
6055: 60          63      RTS
6056: A9 60      64      DE LDA #$60      ;LOAD DELAY
6058: 8D 09 60 65      STA DELAY
6059: 66          66      ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
605B: 20 89 60 67      START JSR INITIAL      ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
605E: A9 00      68      START1 LDA #$00      ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER
6060: 8D 08 60 69      STA SHPNO
6063: 20 9B 60 70      START2 JSR LOADSHP      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
6066: 20 B7 60 71      JSR DRAW      ;DRAW
6069: AD 09 60 72      LDA DELAY      ;DELAY
606C: 20 A8 FC 73      JSR WAIT
606F: 20 B7 60 74      JSR DRAW      ;ERASE
6072: EE 08 60 75      INC SHPNO      ;NEXT SHAPE NUMBER
6075: AD 08 60 76      LDA SHPNO
6078: C9 07      77      CMP #$07      ;FINISHED ALL 7 SHAPES?
607A: 90 E7      78      BLT START2      ;IF NO, CONTINUE WITH NEXT SHAPE
607C: EE 05 60 79      INC BYTE      ;IF YES, NEXT BYTE
607F: AD 05 60 80      LDA BYTE
6082: C9 26      81      CMP #$26      ;END OF SCREEN?
6084: 90 D8      82      BLT START1      ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
6086: 4C 5B 60 83      JMP START      ;IF YES, START OVER
6087: 84          84      ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6089: A9 00      85      INITIAL LDA #$00
608B: 8D 05 60 86      STA BYTE
608E: 8D 03 60 87      STA LINE
6091: 8D 04 60 88      STA LINEA
6094: 18          89      CLC

```

```

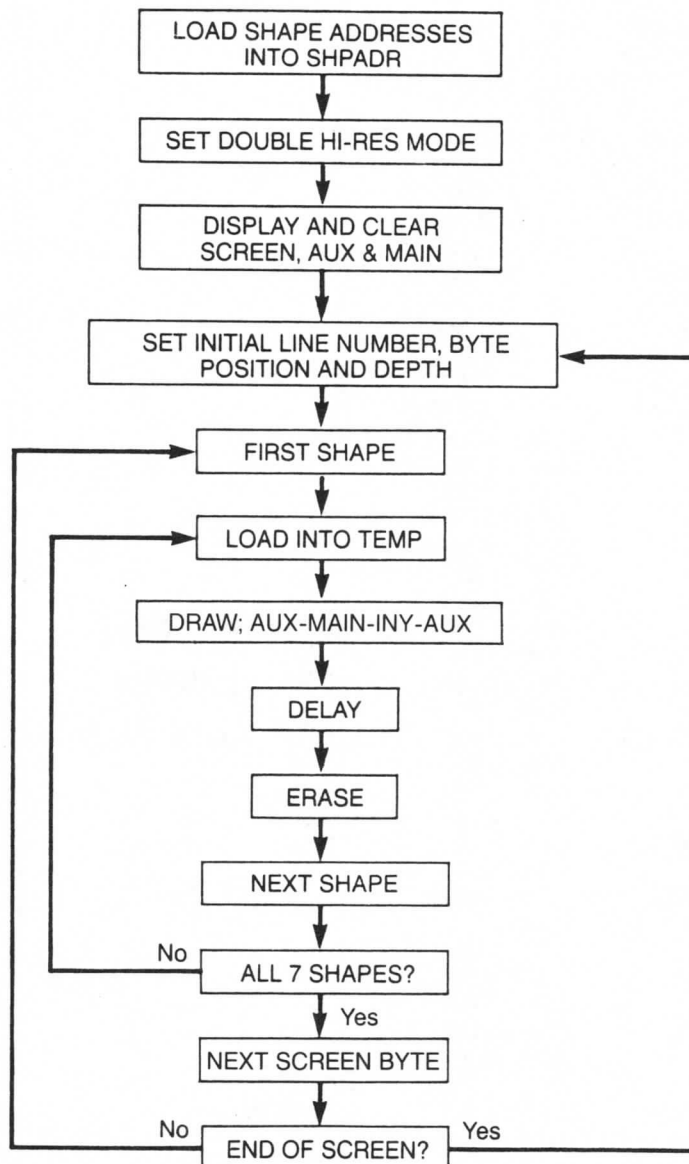
6095: 69 01 90 ADC #$01 ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
6097: 8D 06 60 91 STA DEPTH
609A: 60 92 RTS
93 *****
609B: AD 08 60 94 LOADSHP LDA SHPNO ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
609E: 0A 95 ASL
609F: AA 96 TAX
60A0: BD 0D 60 97 LDA SHPADR,X
60A3: 85 1A 98 STA LOW
60A5: BD 0E 60 99 LDA SHPADR+1,X
60A8: 85 1B 100 STA HIGH
60AA: A0 00 101 LDY #$00
60AC: B1 1A 102 LOADSHP1 LDA (LOW),Y
60AE: 99 0A 60 103 STA TEMP,Y
60B1: C8 104 INY
60B2: C0 03 105 CPY #$03
60B4: 90 F6 106 BLT LOADSHP1
60B6: 60 107 RTS
108 ** DRAW SUBROUTINE **
109 ** AUX-MAIN-NEXT BYTE-AUX **
60B7: A9 00 110 DRAW LDA #$00
60B9: 8D 07 60 111 STA XCOUNT
60BC: AC 05 60 112 DRAW1 LDY BYTE
60BF: AE 03 60 113 LDX LINE
60C2: BD 1E 61 114 LDA HI,X
60C5: 85 1B 115 STA HIGH
60C7: BD DE 61 116 LDA LO,X
60CA: 85 1A 117 STA LOW
60CC: AE 07 60 118 LDX XCOUNT
60CF: AD 55 C0 119 LDA AUX
60D2: B1 1A 120 LDA (LOW),Y
60D4: 5D 0A 60 121 EOR TEMP,X
60D7: 91 1A 122 STA (LOW),Y
60D9: AD 54 C0 123 LDA MAIN
60DC: B1 1A 124 LDA (LOW),Y
60DE: 5D 0B 60 125 EOR TEMP+1,X
60E1: 91 1A 126 STA (LOW),Y
60E3: C8 127 INY
60E4: AD 55 C0 128 LDA AUX
60E7: B1 1A 129 LDA (LOW),Y
60E9: 5D 0C 60 130 EOR TEMP+2,X
60EC: 91 1A 131 STA (LOW),Y
60EE: EE 07 60 132 INC XCOUNT
60F1: EE 07 60 133 INC XCOUNT
60F4: EE 07 60 134 INC XCOUNT
60F7: EE 03 60 135 INC LINE
60FA: AD 03 60 136 LDA LINE
60FD: CD 06 60 137 CMP DEPTH
6100: 90 BA 138 BLT DRAW1
6102: AD 04 60 139 LDA LINEA
6105: 8D 03 60 140 STA LINE ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
6108: 60 141 RTS
6109: 1E 00 00 142 SHAPE1 HEX 1E0000
610C: 78 00 00 143 SHAPE2 HEX 780000
610F: 60 03 00 144 SHAPE3 HEX 600300
6112: 00 0F 00 145 SHAPE4 HEX 000F00
6115: 00 3C 00 146 SHAPE5 HEX 003C00
6118: 00 70 01 147 SHAPE6 HEX 007001
611B: 00 40 07 148 SHAPE7 HEX 004007
HI
LO

```

670 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
DELAY	=\$6009	TEMP	=\$600A	SHPADR	=\$600D	PGM	=\$601B
CLEAR	=\$603C	CLR1	=\$6044	CLR	=\$6048	DE	=\$6056
START	=\$605B	START1	=\$605E	START2	=\$6063	INITIAL	=\$6089
LOADSHP	=\$609B	LOADSHP1	=\$60AC	DRAW	=\$60B7	DRAW1	=\$60BC
SHAPE1	=\$6109	SHAPE2	=\$610C	SHAPE3	=\$610F	SHAPE4	=\$6112
SHAPE5	=\$6115	SHAPE6	=\$6118	SHAPE7	=\$611B	HI	=\$611E
LO	=\$61DE	STORE80	=\$C001	COL80	=\$C00D	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	MAIN	=\$C054	AUX	=\$C055	HIRES	=\$C057
AN3	=\$C05E	WAIT	=\$FCA8				



The program can be modified easily to move lines of any length by altering the draw routine. For a line occupying both AUX and MAIN of one screen byte, the protocol is A-M-INY-A-M—next screen byte—A-M-INY-A-M. For a line occupying AUX and MAIN of one screen byte and AUX of the next, we would use A-M-INY-A-M-INY-A—next screen byte—A-M-INY-A-M-INY-A, and so on.

To demonstrate how to draw complicated shapes, I've included the following program, which moves a spaceship vertically. Running this program will illustrate how neat double hi-res is compared to single hi-res.

]PROGRAM 12-2
:ASM

```

1      ** DOUBLE HI-RES * VERTICAL SPACESHIP
2      ORG $6000
6000: 4C 09 60 3      JMP PGM
4      LINE DS 1
5      LINEA DS 1
6      BYTE DS 1
7      DEPTH DS 1
8      XCOUNT DS 1
9      DELAY DS 1
10     GRAPHICS = $C050
11     MIXOFF = $C052
12     HIRES = $C057
13     AN3 = $C05E
14     COL80 = $C00D
15     STORE80 = $C001
16     AUX = $C055
17     MAIN = $C054
18     HIGH = $1B
19     LOW = $1A
20     WAIT = $FCA8
6009: AD 50 C0 21     PGM LDA GRAPHICS
600C: AD 52 C0 22     LDA MIXOFF
600F: AD 57 C0 23     LDA HIRES
6012: 8D 01 C0 24     STA STORE80
6015: 8D 0D C0 25     STA COL80
6018: AD 5E C0 26     LDA AN3
601B: AD 54 C0 27     LDA MAIN
601E: 20 2A 60 28     JSR CLEAR ;CLEAR MAIN SCREEN
6021: AD 55 C0 29     LDA AUX
6024: 20 2A 60 30     JSR CLEAR ;CLEAR AUX SCREEN
6027: 4C 44 60 31     JMP DE
602A: A9 00 32     CLEAR LDA #00 ;CLEAR SCREEN SUBROUTINE
602C: 85 1A 33     STA LOW
602E: A9 20 34     LDA #$20
6030: 85 1B 35     STA HIGH
6032: A0 00 36     CLR1 LDY #00
6034: A9 00 37     LDA #00
6036: 91 1A 38     CLR STA (LOW),Y
6038: C8 39     INY
6039: D0 FB 40     BNE CLR
603B: E6 1B 41     INC HIGH
603D: A5 1B 42     LDA HIGH
603F: C9 40 43     CMP #$40
6041: 90 EF 44     BCC CLR1
6043: 60 45     RTS
6044: A9 60 46     DE LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
6046: 8D 08 60 47     STA DELAY

```

```

6049: 20 6B 60 48 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
604C: 20 7D 60 49 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
604F: AD 08 60 50 START1 JSR DRAW
6052: 20 A8 FC 51 LDA DELAY
6055: 20 7D 60 52 JSR WAIT
6058: EE 06 60 53 JSR DRAW
605B: EE 04 60 54 INC DEPTH
605E: AD 04 60 55 INC LINEA
6061: 8D 03 60 56 LDA LINEA
6064: C9 B8 57 STA LINE
6066: B0 E1 58 CMP #$B8
6068: 4C 4C 60 59 BGE START
6068: 4C 4C 60 60 JMP START1
606B: A9 00 61 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
606D: 8D 05 60 62 INITIAL LDA #$00
6070: 8D 03 60 63 STA BYTE
6073: 8D 04 60 64 STA LINE
6076: 18 65 STA LINEA
6077: 69 0D 66 CLC
6079: 8D 06 60 67 ADC #$0D ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
607C: 60 68 STA DEPTH
607C: 60 69 RTS
607C: 60 70 *****
607D: A9 00 71 ** DRAW SUBROUTINE **
607F: 8D 07 60 72 DRAW LDA #$00
6082: AC 05 60 73 STA XCOUNT
6085: AE 03 60 74 DRAW1 LDY BYTE
6088: BD 25 61 75 LDX LINE
608B: 85 1B 76 LDA HI,X
608D: BD E5 61 77 STA HIGH
6090: 85 1A 78 LDA LO,X
6092: AE 07 60 79 STA LOW
6095: AD 55 C0 80 LDX XCOUNT
6098: B1 1A 81 LDA AUX
609A: 5D E4 60 82 LDA (LOW),Y
609D: 91 1A 83 EOR SHAPE,X
609F: AD 54 C0 84 STA (LOW),Y
60A2: B1 1A 85 LDA MAIN
60A4: 5D E5 60 86 LDA (LOW),Y
60A7: 91 1A 87 EOR SHAPE+1,X
60A9: C8 88 STA (LOW),Y
60AA: AD 55 C0 89 INY
60AD: B1 1A 90 LDA AUX
60AF: 5D E6 60 91 LDA (LOW),Y
60B2: 91 1A 92 EOR SHAPE+2,X
60B4: AD 54 C0 93 STA (LOW),Y
60B7: B1 1A 94 LDA MAIN
60B9: 5D E7 60 95 LDA (LOW),Y
60BC: 91 1A 96 EOR SHAPE+3,X
60BE: C8 97 STA (LOW),Y
60BF: AD 55 C0 98 INY
60C2: B1 1A 99 LDA AUX
60C4: 5D E8 60 100 LDA (LOW),Y
60C7: 91 1A 101 EOR SHAPE+4,X
60C9: AD 07 60 102 STA (LOW),Y
60CC: 18 103 LDA XCOUNT
60CD: 69 05 104 CLC
60CF: 8D 07 60 105 ADC #$05
60D2: EE 03 60 106 STA XCOUNT
60D5: AD 03 60 107 INC LINE
60D5: AD 03 60 108 LDA LINE

```

```

60D8: CD 06 60 109      CMP DEPTH
60DB: 90 A5 110          BLT DRAW1
60DD: AD 04 60 111      LDA LINEA
60E0: 8D 03 60 112      STA LINE      ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
60E3: 60 113            RTS
60E4: 00 60 3F 114      SHAPE  HEX 00603F0000
60E7: 00 00
60E9: 00 50 56 115      HEX 0050560000
60EC: 00 00
60EE: 00 78 7F 116      HEX 00787F0100
60F1: 01 00
60F3: 01 07 00 117      HEX 0107000E08
60F6: 0E 08
60F8: 7E 40 3B 118      HEX 7E403B7007
60FB: 70 07
60FD: 7E 5C 52 119      HEX 7E5C527307
6100: 73 07
6102: 41 54 49 120      HEX 4154491208
6105: 12 08
6107: 40 5C 48 121      HEX 405C481300
610A: 13 00
610C: 40 00 00 122      HEX 4000001000
610F: 10 00
6111: 40 7F 7F 123      HEX 407F7F1F00
6114: 1F 00
6116: 20 0C 00 124      HEX 200C002300
6119: 23 00
611B: 10 0C 00 125      HEX 100C004300
611E: 43 00
6120: 1C 3F 60 126      HEX 1C3F604F03
6123: 4F 03

```

HI
LO

677 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
PGM	=\$6009	CLEAR	=\$602A	CLR1	=\$6032	CLR	=\$6036
DE	=\$6044	START	=\$6049	START1	=\$604C	INITIAL	=\$606B
DRAW	=\$607D	DRAW1	=\$6082	SHAPE	=\$60E4	HI	=\$6125
LO	=\$61E5	STORE80	=\$C001	COL80	=\$C00D	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	MAIN	=\$C054	AUX	=\$C055	HIRES	=\$C057
AN3	=\$C05E	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

We've seen that drawing and animating shapes in double hi-res is relatively simple—just by examining the shape tables we can tell what kind of draw routine is required. The only difficulty is that the extra resolution afforded puts greater demands on our artistic talents, whatever they may be. But with this greater demand comes a greater opportunity and the extra work required is well worth the results.

DOUBLE HI-RES COLOR SHAPES

Displaying color in double hi-res requires quite a different procedure from single hi-res. First, the high bit has nothing to do with color selection—it is simply ignored. Second, colors are not produced by plotting dots in alternate rows, but rather are determined by the particular combination of 4 dots or bits displayed at particular positions on the screen. For example, if we were to place 0 0 0 1 in AUX1, the first screen position at the left of the screen, magenta would be displayed. If instead we plotted 0 1 0 0, we would get a dark green, 0 1 1 1 a yellow, and so on. As there are 16 combinations of 4 bits, 16 colors are available. However, one is white, one is black, and there are two greys, and so actually we have 13 colors to choose from, quite an improvement over the 4 colors in single hi-res. Because the horizontal resolution in double hi-res is 560 dots and we use 4 for each color, the resolution in double hi-res color is $560/4 = 140$ or the same as in single hi-res color. But, with more colors to choose from, we can display more interesting graphics and with more apparent resolution because of color contrasts. Also, as we'll see, there is no limitation to color combinations within lines as there is in single hi-res.

Because the high bit of the shape byte is not plotted, this presents a problem when we want to repeat a particular dot pattern on the screen, which we would do, for example, in plotting a line of a single color. Suppose we want to display a dark blue line. The repeated dot pattern we want on the screen is 1 0 0 0. If we plot shape byte #11 in AUX1, we will get the desired pattern, but if #11 is also plotted in the next byte, MAIN1, see what happens:

AUX1	MAIN1
#11	#11
1 0 0 0 1 0 0	1 0 0 0 1 0 0
└─┘ └─┘	└─┘ └─┘

Obviously, the desired pattern is not repeated. The pattern is repeated, however, by plotting #22 in MAIN1 and to continue the pattern, we would plot #44 in AUX2 and #08 (or #88) in MAIN2, the next two positions over.

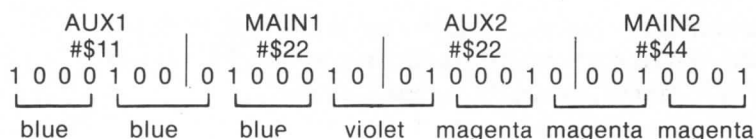
AUX1	MAIN1	AUX2	MAIN2
#11	#22	#44	#08
1 0 0 0 1 0 0	0 1 0 0 0 1 0	0 0 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 0 0 0
└─┘ └─┘	└─┘ └─┘	└─┘ └─┘	└─┘ └─┘

After these 4 bytes, the pattern repeats itself, starting with #11 in AUX3, #22 in MAIN3, etc. If we were to plot a dark blue line from AUX2, for example, the bytes would be #44, #08, #11, #22, #44, etc. Thus, each color has its own sequence of 4 bytes, the particular starting byte required depending on the distance from the left screen border. The dot pattern and the 4-byte sequence for each of the 16 colors is shown in Table 12-1.

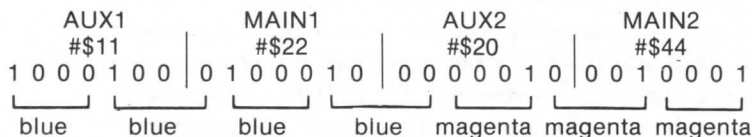
Table 12-1

Color	Bit Pattern	AUX1	MAIN1	AUX2	MAIN2
Black	0 0 0 0	#\$00	#\$00	#\$00	#\$00
Magenta	0 0 0 1	#\$08	#\$11	#\$22	#\$44
Brown	0 0 1 0	#\$44	#\$08	#\$11	#\$22
Orange	0 0 1 1	#\$4C	#\$19	#\$33	#\$66
Dark Green	0 1 0 0	#\$22	#\$44	#\$08	#\$11
Grey 1	0 1 0 1	#\$2A	#\$55	#\$2A	#\$55
Green	0 1 1 0	#\$66	#\$4C	#\$19	#\$33
Yellow	0 1 1 1	#\$6E	#\$5D	#\$3B	#\$77
Dark Blue	1 0 0 0	#\$11	#\$22	#\$44	#\$08
Violet	1 0 0 1	#\$19	#\$33	#\$66	#\$4C
Grey 2	1 0 1 0	#\$55	#\$2A	#\$55	#\$2A
Pink	1 0 1 1	#\$5D	#\$3B	#\$77	#\$6E
Medium Blue	1 1 0 0	#\$33	#\$66	#\$4C	#\$19
Light Blue	1 1 0 1	#\$3B	#\$77	#\$6E	#\$5D
Aqua	1 1 1 0	#\$77	#\$6E	#\$5D	#\$3B
White	1 1 1 1	#\$7F	#\$7F	#\$7F	#\$7F

This table is useful for drawing any color line anywhere on the screen. The particular starting point determines which byte is used first, then the other bytes are plotted in sequence. This is fine for a line of a single color but what if we want to plot a line with two or more colors? If the new color starts at a 4-byte boundary, we continue with the next sequence of 4 bytes for the new color. Thus, to plot a line in dark blue and magenta, with each color containing 4 bytes, the sequence would be 11,22,44,08,08,11,22,44. If the new color starts in the middle of a 4-byte sequence, we have to calculate a new byte at the color shift point by inspection. Let's say we want to plot a line containing 2 bytes of dark blue and 2 bytes of magenta. From Table 12-1 we get the values 11 and 22 for the dark blue in AUX1 and MAIN1, and 22 and 44 for the magenta in AUX2 and MAIN2. See what happens when we plot these bytes:



Obviously, a different byte is required to turn that fourth position into either blue or magenta. Let's change it to a dark blue. The byte to be plotted in AUX2 is #\$20:



Similarly, if we want to change the fourth position to magenta, the order of bytes would be 11, 02, 22, 44. I wish I could think of some formula to make this kind of change easier but I can't—I think it just has to be done by inspection, but this is not so bad. You just decide what colors you want, inspect the dot patterns, and choose the bytes accordingly.

Note that there is no limitation for color combinations within a line—any of the 16 colors can be placed next to any other. This provides for much greater flexibility than is available in single hi-res color, over and above the larger number of colors available.

Drawing a shape in double hi-res color takes some getting used to. What you have to do is imagine that every 4 bits plot a single dot, so there are seven possible dot plots for every two screen bytes, just as in single hi-res color. The shape is plotted out, the shape bytes assembled into the usual shape tables, and the shape can then be drawn with the double hi-res routines described in the beginning of this chapter. We'll see an example in the next section.

I say "imagine" every 4 bits plot a single dot because in actuality, each bit that's "on" in the set of 4 is plotted. This is most easily seen on a monochrome monitor, but it does have implications for the color display as well. To see what this is all about, run the following program, which displays all 16 colors as lines, each directly below the other, and observe the display on both a color and monochrome monitor.

```

]PROGRAM 12-3
:ASM
1      *DOUBLE HI-RES COLOR BARS
2      *****
3
4      ORG $6000
5      JMP PGM
6      LINE DS 1
7      BYTE DS 1
8      XCOUNT DS 1
9      GRAPHICS = $C050
10     HIRES = $C057
11     MIXOFF = $C052
12     STORE = $C001
13     AN3 = $C05E
14     COL = $C00D
15     AUX = $C055
16     MAIN = $C054
17     HIGH = $1B
18     LOW = $1A
19     PGM LDA GRAPHICS
20     LDA HIRES
21     STA STORE
22     STA COL
23     LDA AN3
24     LDA MIXOFF
25     LDA MAIN
26     JSR CLEAR ;CLEAR MAIN P.1
27     LDA AUX
28     JSR CLEAR ;CLEAR AUX P.1
29     JMP START
30     *****
31     CLEAR LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
32     STA LOW
33     LDA #$20
34     STA HIGH
35     CLR1 LDY #$00
36     CLR LDA #$00
37     STA (LOW),Y
38     INY
39     BNE CLR
40     INC HIGH

```

603A:	A5 1B	40	LDA	HIGH
603C:	C9 40	41	CMP	#\$40
603E:	90 EF	42	BLT	CLR1
6040:	60	43	RTS	
		44	*****	MAIN PROGRAM *****
6041:	A9 00	45	START	LDA #\$00
6043:	8D 05 60	46		STA XCOUNT
6046:	AE 03 60	47	START1	LDX LINE
6049:	AC 04 60	48		LDY BYTE
604C:	BD D4 60	49		LDA HI,X
604F:	85 1B	50		STA HIGH
6051:	BD 94 61	51		LDA LO,X
6054:	85 1A	52		STA LOW
6056:	AE 05 60	53		LDX XCOUNT
6059:	AD 55 C0	54		LDA AUX
605C:	BD 94 60	55		LDA COLOR,X
605F:	91 1A	56		STA (LOW),Y
6061:	AD 54 C0	57		LDA MAIN
6064:	BD 95 60	58		LDA COLOR+1,X
6067:	91 1A	59		STA (LOW),Y
6069:	C8	60		INY
606A:	AD 55 C0	61		LDA AUX
606D:	BD 96 60	62		LDA COLOR+2,X
6070:	91 1A	63		STA (LOW),Y
6072:	AD 54 C0	64		LDA MAIN
6075:	BD 97 60	65		LDA COLOR+3,X
6078:	91 1A	66		STA (LOW),Y
607A:	EE 05 60	67		INC XCOUNT
607D:	EE 05 60	68		INC XCOUNT
6080:	EE 05 60	69		INC XCOUNT
6083:	EE 05 60	70		INC XCOUNT
6086:	EE 03 60	71		INC LINE
6089:	EE 03 60	72		INC LINE
608C:	AD 03 60	73		LDA LINE
608F:	C9 1F	74		CMP #\$1F
6091:	90 B3	75		BLT START1
6093:	60	76		RTS
6094:	00 00 00	77	COLOR	HEX 00000000
6097:	00			
6098:	08 11 22	78		HEX 08112244
609B:	44			
609C:	44 08 11	79		HEX 44081122
609F:	22			
60A0:	4C 19 33	80		HEX 4C193366
60A3:	66			
60A4:	22 44 08	81		HEX 22440811
60A7:	11			
60A8:	2A 55 2A	82		HEX 2A552A55
60AB:	55			
60AC:	66 4C 19	83		HEX 664C1933
60AF:	33			
60B0:	6E 5D 3B	84		HEX 6E5D3B77
60B3:	77			
60B4:	11 22 44	85		HEX 11224408
60B7:	08			
60B8:	19 33 66	86		HEX 1933664C
60BB:	4C			
60BC:	55 2A 55	87		HEX 552A552A
60BF:	2A			
60C0:	5D 3B 77	88		HEX 5D3B776E
60C3:	6E			

```

60C4: 33 66 4C 89      HEX  33664C19
60C7: 19
60C8: 3B 77 6E 90      HEX  3B776E5D
60CB: 5D
60CC: 77 6E 5D 91      HEX  776E5D3B
60CF: 3B
60D0: 7F 7F 7F 92      HEX  7F7F7F7F
60D3: 7F

```

HI
LO

596 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
XCOUNT	=\$6005	PGM	=\$6006	CLEAR	=\$6027	CLR1	=\$602F
CLR	=\$6033	START	=\$6041	START1	=\$6046	COLOR	=\$6094
HI	=\$60D4	LO	=\$6194	STORE	=\$C001	COL	=\$C00D
GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	MAIN	=\$C054	AUX	=\$C055
HIRES	=\$C057	AN3	=\$C05E				

On a monochrome monitor, preferably with the aid of a magnifying glass, you would observe the following dot patterns, but of course much closer than shown:

Magenta	0001	.	.	.	.
Brown	0010	.	.	.	.
Orange	0011	..	..	..	..
Dark Blue	1000	.	.	.	.
Aqua	1110	...	...	...	...

This is why double hi-res colors are distinguishable on a monochrome monitor—they all have a different dot pattern. On a color monitor, at least on mine, the individual dots are not seen; continuous color lines are.

There is a problem, however, in the color display. Look at the color monitor. Although each line is plotted starting from the first screen position (AUX1), not all line up exactly. The most extreme example is magenta and dark blue as you might suspect, because the dot patterns are 0001 and 1000; i.e., the "on" bits are at opposite ends of the 4-bit group. Other color combinations also have this alignment problem to a degree depending on the particular dot patterns—the closer the "on" bits are to each other, the lesser the problem. Thus, the 4-bit pattern not only selects a particular color, but also changes slightly exactly where the color is drawn. This presents the only limitation I can think of regarding double hi-res color combinations. If you want lines to align themselves closely, there are certain color combinations that should not be used. Thankfully, most combinations result in only a minor misalignment, so this is not a big problem but is one you should be aware of when designing your shapes.

ANIMATING DOUBLE HI-RES COLOR SHAPES

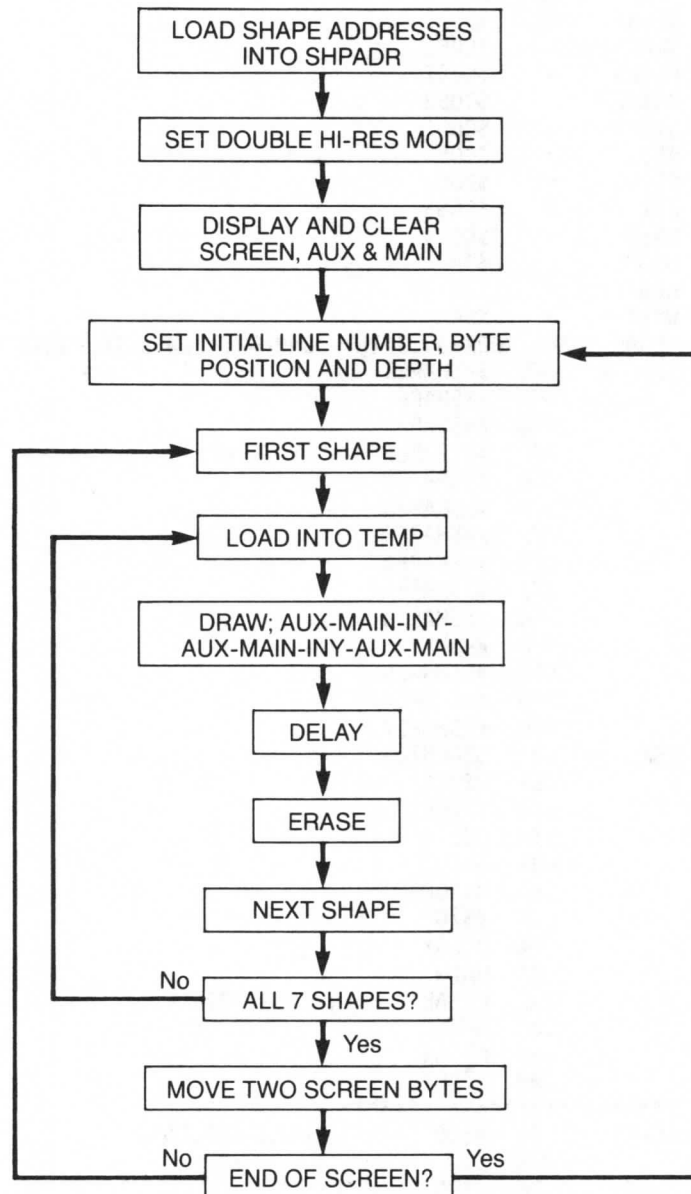
Is there a problem with vertical animation? Boo and hiss to those who answer yes. As there is no change in column assignments, the shape is just drawn once and moved up or down by changing screen line positions. Is there a problem with horizontal animation? Does Apple make computers?

Let's consider a program (Program 12-4) that moves a single dark blue line across the screen. The line length is just 2 bytes, so the first shape, at the left screen border, contains bytes #11 and #22 from Table 12-1. The line could be moved in whole screen-byte intervals, but this makes for rather jerky movement, so we'll use half screen-byte jumps. As with other types of horizontal movement, here too we use seven shape tables, but the particular bytes required cannot be taken from Table 12-1 except for the first shape. To illustrate this, let's look at the seven shape tables and see what bytes are required to obtain the desired dot pattern.

	AUX1	MAIN1	AUX2	MAIN2	AUX3	MAIN3
	#11	#22	#00	#00	#00	#00
Shape 1	1000100	0100010	0000000	0000000	0000000	0000000
	<u> </u>	<u> </u>				
	#10	#22	#04	#00	#00	#00
Shape 2	0000100	0100010	0010000	0000000	0000000	0000000
	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>			
	#00	#22	#44	#00	#00	#00
Shape 3	0000000	0100010	0010001	0000000	0000000	0000000
		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>		
	#00	#20	#44	#08	#00	#00
Shape 4	0000000	0000010	0010001	0001000	0000000	0000000
		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>		
	#00	#00	#44	#08	#01	#00
Shape 5	0000000	0000000	0010001	0001000	1000000	0000000
			<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	
	#00	#00	#40	#08	#11	#00
Shape 6	0000000	0000000	0000001	0001000	1000100	0000000
				<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
	#00	#00	#00	#08	#11	#02
Shape 7	0000000	0000000	0000000	0001000	1000100	0100000
				<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>

Once the seven shapes are drawn, the pattern is repeated, but with the first shape now drawn 2 screen bytes over, i.e., #11 in AUX3 and #22 in MAIN3, etc. Thus, in the MAIN PROGRAM, we do INC BYTE twice after each seven shapes. Each shape table consists of 6 bytes and the draw routine is A-M-INY-A-M-INY-A-M—2 bytes over—A-M-INY-A-M-INY-A-M, etc. The remainder of the program needs no further explanation, except to remind you that it can easily be adapted to multiple line shapes by extending the shape tables and modifying TEMP and the load shape routine accordingly. Thus, to draw two blue lines of the same length, one under the other, the shape 1 table would be 11, 22, 00, 00, 00, 00, 11, 22, 00, 00, 00, 00, TEMP would be changed to DS 12, and in the

LOADSHP subroutine, the CPY #\$06 would be changed to CPY #\$0C to take into account the shape tables now containing 12 bytes instead of 6.



]PROGRAM 12-4
:ASM

```

1  *DOUBLE HI-RES COLOR * 1 BLUE LINE
2  *****
3  *****
4  *****
5      ORG  $6000
6      JMP  PGM
7  LINE  DS   1
8  LINEA DS   1
9  BYTE  DS   1
6000: 4C 1E 60

```



```

10 DEPTH DS 1
11 XCOUNT DS 1
12 SHPNO DS 1
13 TEMP DS 6
14 DELAY DS 1
15 GRAPHICS = $C050
16 HIRES = $C057
17 MIXOFF = $C052
18 STORE = $C001
19 AN3 = $C05E
20 COL = $C00D
21 AUX = $C055
22 MAIN = $C054
23 HIGH = $1B
24 LOW = $1A
25 WAIT = $FCA8
26 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
6010: 37 27 SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
6011: 61 28 DFB #>SHAPE1
6012: 3D 29 DFB #<SHAPE2
6013: 61 30 DFB #>SHAPE2
6014: 43 31 DFB #<SHAPE3
6015: 61 32 DFB #>SHAPE3
6016: 49 33 DFB #<SHAPE4
6017: 61 34 DFB #>SHAPE4
6018: 4F 35 DFB #<SHAPE5
6019: 61 36 DFB #>SHAPE5
601A: 55 37 DFB #<SHAPE6
601B: 61 38 DFB #>SHAPE6
601C: 5B 39 DFB #<SHAPE7
601D: 61 40 DFB #>SHAPE7
601E: AD 50 C0 41 PGM LDA GRAPHICS
6021: AD 57 C0 42 LDA HIRES
6024: 8D 01 C0 43 STA STORE
6027: 8D 0D C0 44 STA COL
602A: AD 5E C0 45 LDA AN3
602D: AD 52 C0 46 LDA MIXOFF
6030: A9 70 47 LDA #$70
6032: 8D 0F 60 48 STA DELAY
6035: AD 54 C0 49 LDA MAIN
6038: 20 44 60 50 JSR CLEAR ;CLEAR MAIN P.1
603B: AD 55 C0 51 LDA AUX
603E: 20 44 60 52 JSR CLEAR ;CLEAR AUX P.1
6041: 4C 5E 60 53 JMP START
54 *****
6044: A9 00 55 CLEAR LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6046: 85 1A 56 STA LOW
6048: A9 20 57 LDA #$20
604A: 85 1B 58 STA HIGH
604C: A0 00 59 CLR1 LDY #$00
604E: A9 00 60 LDA #$00
6050: 91 1A 61 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6052: C8 62 INY
6053: D0 FB 63 BNE CLR
6055: E6 1B 64 INC HIGH
6057: A5 1B 65 LDA HIGH
6059: C9 40 66 CMP #$40
605B: 90 EF 67 BLT CLR1
605D: 60 68 RTS
69 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
605E: 20 8F 60 70 START JSR INITIAL

```



```

6061: A9 00      71  START1  LDA  #$00
6063: 8D 08 60   72          STA  SHPNO
6066: 20 A1 60   73  START2  JSR  LOADSHP
6069: 20 BD 60   74          JSR  DRAW
606C: AD 0F 60   75          LDA  DELAY
606F: 20 A8 FC   76          JSR  WAIT
6072: 20 BD 60   77          JSR  DRAW
6075: EE 08 60   78          INC  SHPNO
6078: AD 08 60   79          LDA  SHPNO
607B: C9 07      80          CMP  #$07
607D: 90 E7      81          BLT  START2
607F: EE 05 60   82          INC  BYTE
6082: EE 05 60   83          INC  BYTE
6085: AD 05 60   84          LDA  BYTE
6088: C9 26      85          CMP  #$26
608A: 90 D5      86          BLT  START1
608C: 4C 5E 60   87          JMP  START
88          ***** SUBROUTINES *****
608F: A9 00      89  INITIAL  LDA  #$00
6091: 8D 05 60   90          STA  BYTE
6094: 8D 03 60   91          STA  LINE
6097: 8D 04 60   92          STA  LINEA
609A: 18          93          CLC
609B: 69 01      94          ADC  #$01
609D: 8D 06 60   95          STA  DEPTH
60A0: 60          96          RTS
97          ** LOAD SHAPE TABLE INTO TEMP **
60A1: AD 08 60   98  LOADSHP  LDA  SHPNO
60A4: 0A          99          ASL
60A5: AA          100         TAX
60A6: BD 10 60   101         LDA  SHPADR,X
60A9: 85 1A      102         STA  LOW
60AB: BD 11 60   103         LDA  SHPADR+1,X
60AE: 85 1B      104         STA  HIGH
60B0: A0 00      105         LDY  #$00
60B2: B1 1A      106  LOADSHP1 LDA  (LOW),Y
60B4: 99 09 60   107         STA  TEMP,Y
60B7: C8          108         INY
60B8: C0 06      109         CPY  #$06
60BA: 90 F6      110         BLT  LOADSHP1
60BC: 60          111         RTS
112          *****
60BD: A9 00      113  DRAW      LDA  #$00
60BF: 8D 07 60   114         STA  XCOUNT
60C2: AC 05 60   115  DRAW1    LDY  BYTE
60C5: AE 03 60   116         LDX  LINE
60C8: BD 61 61   117         LDA  HI,X
60CB: 85 1B      118         STA  HIGH
60CD: BD 21 62   119         LDA  LO,X
60D0: 85 1A      120         STA  LOW
60D2: AE 07 60   121         LDX  XCOUNT
60D5: AD 55 C0   122         LDA  AUX
60D8: B1 1A      123         LDA  (LOW),Y
60DA: 5D 09 60   124         EOR  TEMP,X
60DD: 91 1A      125         STA  (LOW),Y
60DF: AD 54 C0   126         LDA  MAIN
60E2: B1 1A      127         LDA  (LOW),Y
60E4: 5D 0A 60   128         EOR  TEMP+1,X
60E7: 91 1A      129         STA  (LOW),Y
60E9: C8          130         INY
60EA: AD 55 C0   131         LDA  AUX

```

```

60ED: B1 1A      132      LDA (LOW),Y
60EF: 5D 0B 60   133      EOR TEMP+2,X
60F2: 91 1A      134      STA (LOW),Y
60F4: AD 54 C0   135      LDA MAIN
60F7: B1 1A      136      LDA (LOW),Y
60F9: 5D 0C 60   137      EOR TEMP+3,X
60FC: 91 1A      138      STA (LOW),Y
60FE: C8         139      INY
60FF: AD 55 C0   140      LDA AUX
6102: B1 1A      141      LDA (LOW),Y
6104: 5D 0D 60   142      EOR TEMP+4,X
6107: 91 1A      143      STA (LOW),Y
6109: AD 54 C0   144      LDA MAIN
610C: B1 1A      145      LDA (LOW),Y
610E: 5D 0E 60   146      EOR TEMP+5,X
6111: 91 1A      147      STA (LOW),Y
6113: EE 07 60   148      INC XCOUNT
6116: EE 07 60   149      INC XCOUNT
6119: EE 07 60   150      INC XCOUNT
611C: EE 07 60   151      INC XCOUNT
611F: EE 07 60   152      INC XCOUNT
6122: EE 07 60   153      INC XCOUNT
6125: EE 03 60   154      INC LINE
6128: AD 03 60   155      LDA LINE
612B: CD 06 60   156      CMP DEPTH
612E: 90 92      157      BLT DRAW1
6130: AD 04 60   158      LDA LINEA
6133: 8D 03 60   159      STA LINE
6136: 60         160      RTS
6137: 11 22 00   161  SHAPE1  HEX  112200000000
613A: 00 00 00
613D: 10 22 04   162  SHAPE2  HEX  102204000000
6140: 00 00 00
6143: 00 22 44   163  SHAPE3  HEX  002244000000
6146: 00 00 00
6149: 00 20 44   164  SHAPE4  HEX  002044080000
614C: 08 00 00
614F: 00 00 44   165  SHAPE5  HEX  000044080100
6152: 08 01 00
6155: 00 00 40   166  SHAPE6  HEX  000040081100
6158: 08 11 00
615B: 00 00 00   167  SHAPE7  HEX  000000081102
615E: 08 11 02

```

HI
LO

737 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
TEMP	=\$6009	DELAY	=\$600F	SHPADR	=\$6010	PGM	=\$601E
CLEAR	=\$6044	CLR1	=\$604C	CLR	=\$6050	START	=\$605E
START1	=\$6061	START2	=\$6066	INITIAL	=\$608F	LOADSHP	=\$60A1
LOADSHP1	=\$60B2	DRAW	=\$60BD	DRAW1	=\$60C2	SHAPE1	=\$6137
SHAPE2	=\$613D	SHAPE3	=\$6143	SHAPE4	=\$6149	SHAPE5	=\$614F
SHAPE6	=\$6155	SHAPE7	=\$615B	HI	=\$6161	LO	=\$6221
STORE	=\$C001	COL	=\$C00D	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052
MAIN	=\$C054	AUX	=\$C055	HIRES	=\$C057	AN3	=\$C05E
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

This is a simple program, but it illustrates the basic principles of horizontal animation in double hi-res color. For more complicated shapes with multiple colors, all one has to do is map out the shape to get the proper shape bytes and to design the proper draw routine. To see double hi-res color in action, run the following program, which moves a wildly colored spaceship vertically (I don't have an extra month to draw the seven shapes for horizontal movement).

```

]PROGRAM 12-5
:ASM
1      ** DOUBLE HI-RES COLOR * VERTICAL SPACESHIP
2      ORG $6000
6000: 4C 09 60 3      JMP PGM
4      LINE DS 1
5      LINEA DS 1
6      BYTE DS 1
7      DEPTH DS 1
8      XCOUNT DS 1
9      DELAY DS 1
10     GRAPHICS = $C050
11     MIXOFF = $C052
12     HIRES = $C057
13     AN3 = $C05E
14     COL80 = $C00D
15     STORE80 = $C001
16     AUX = $C055
17     MAIN = $C054
18     HIGH = $1B
19     LOW = $1A
20     WAIT = $FCA8
6009: AD 50 C0 21     PGM LDA GRAPHICS
600C: AD 52 C0 22     LDA MIXOFF
600F: AD 57 C0 23     LDA HIRES
6012: 8D 01 C0 24     STA STORE80
6015: 8D 0D C0 25     STA COL80
6018: AD 5E C0 26     LDA AN3
601B: AD 54 C0 27     LDA MAIN
601E: 20 2A 60 28     JSR CLEAR ;CLEAR MAIN SCREEN
6021: AD 55 C0 29     LDA AUX
6024: 20 2A 60 30     JSR CLEAR ;CLEAR AUX SCREEN
6027: 4C 44 60 31     JMP DE
602A: A9 00 32     CLEAR LDA #00 ;CLEAR SCREEN SUBROUTINE
602C: 85 1A 33     STA LOW
602E: A9 20 34     LDA #$20
6030: 85 1B 35     STA HIGH
6032: A0 00 36     CLR1 LDY #00
6034: A9 00 37     LDA #00
6036: 91 1A 38     CLR STA (LOW),Y
6038: C8 39     INY
6039: D0 FB 40     BNE CLR
603B: E6 1B 41     INC HIGH
603D: A5 1B 42     LDA HIGH
603F: C9 40 43     CMP #$40
6041: 90 EF 44     BCC CLR1
6043: 60 45     RTS
6044: A9 60 46     DE LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
6046: 8D 08 60 47     STA DELAY

```

```

6049: 20 6B 60 48 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
604C: 20 7D 60 49 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
604F: AD 08 60 50 START1 JSR DRAW
6052: 20 A8 FC 51 LDA DELAY
6055: 20 7D 60 52 JSR WAIT
6058: EE 06 60 53 JSR DRAW
605B: EE 04 60 54 INC DEPTH
605E: AD 04 60 55 INC LINEA
6061: 8D 03 60 56 LDA LINEA
6064: C9 B8 57 STA LINE
6066: B0 E1 58 CMP #$B8
6068: 4C 4C 60 59 BGE START
61 JMP START1
***** SUBROUTINES *****
606B: A9 00 62 INITIAL LDA #$00
606D: 8D 05 60 63 STA BYTE
6070: 8D 03 60 64 STA LINE
6073: 8D 04 60 65 STA LINEA
6076: 18 66 CLC
6077: 69 09 67 ADC #$09 ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
6079: 8D 06 60 68 STA DEPTH
607C: 60 69 RTS
*****
70
71 ** DRAW SUBROUTINE **
607D: A9 00 72 DRAW LDA #$00
607F: 8D 07 60 73 STA XCOUNT
6082: AC 05 60 74 DRAW1 LDY BYTE
6085: AE 03 60 75 LDX LINE
6088: BD 4B 61 76 LDA HI,X
608B: 85 1B 77 STA HIGH
608D: BD 0B 62 78 LDA LO,X
6090: 85 1A 79 STA LOW
6092: AE 07 60 80 LDX XCOUNT
6095: AD 55 C0 81 LDA AUX
6098: B1 1A 82 LDA (LOW),Y
609A: 5D 03 61 83 EOR SHAPE,X
609D: 91 1A 84 STA (LOW),Y
609F: AD 54 C0 85 LDA MAIN
60A2: B1 1A 86 LDA (LOW),Y
60A4: 5D 04 61 87 EOR SHAPE+1,X
60A7: 91 1A 88 STA (LOW),Y
60A9: C8 89 INY
60AA: AD 55 C0 90 LDA AUX
60AD: B1 1A 91 LDA (LOW),Y
60AF: 5D 05 61 92 EOR SHAPE+2,X
60B2: 91 1A 93 STA (LOW),Y
60B4: AD 54 C0 94 LDA MAIN
60B7: B1 1A 95 LDA (LOW),Y
60B9: 5D 06 61 96 EOR SHAPE+3,X
60BC: 91 1A 97 STA (LOW),Y
60BE: C8 98 INY
60BF: AD 55 C0 99 LDA AUX
60C2: B1 1A 100 LDA (LOW),Y
60C4: 5D 07 61 101 EOR SHAPE+4,X
60C7: 91 1A 102 STA (LOW),Y
60C9: AD 54 C0 103 LDA MAIN
60CC: B1 1A 104 LDA (LOW),Y
60CE: 5D 08 61 105 EOR SHAPE+5,X
60D1: 91 1A 106 STA (LOW),Y
60D3: C8 107 INY
60D4: AD 55 C0 108 LDA AUX

```

```

60D7: B1 1A      109      LDA (LOW),Y
60D9: 5D 09 61   110      EOR SHAPE+6,X
60DC: 91 1A      111      STA (LOW),Y
60DE: AD 54 C0   112      LDA MAIN
60E1: B1 1A      113      LDA (LOW),Y
60E3: 5D 0A 61   114      EOR SHAPE+7,X
60E6: 91 1A      115      STA (LOW),Y
60E8: AD 07 60   116      LDA XCOUNT
60EB: 18         117      CLC
60EC: 69 08      118      ADC #$08
60EE: 8D 07 60   119      STA XCOUNT
60F1: EE 03 60   120      INC LINE
60F4: AD 03 60   121      LDA LINE
60F7: CD 06 60   122      CMP DEPTH
60FA: 90 86      123      BLT DRAW1
60FC: AD 04 60   124      LDA LINEA
60FF: 8D 03 60   125      STA LINE      ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
6102: 60         126      RTS
6103: 00 00 40   127      SHAPE  HEX 0000405C3B000000
6106: 5C 3B 00 00 00 00
610B: 00 00 18   128      HEX 00001833664C0000
610E: 33 66 4C 00 00
6113: 00 32 66   129      HEX 0032664C19336600
6116: 4C 19 33 66 00
611B: 11 22 44   130      HEX 1122440811224408
611E: 08 11 22 44 08
6123: 11 10 46   131      HEX 111046701E027308
6126: 70 1E 02 73 08
612B: 33 66 4C   132      HEX 33664C1933664C19
612E: 19 33 66 4C 19
6133: 00 18 03   133      HEX 0018031002001100
6136: 10 02 00 11 00
613B: 00 5C 03   134      HEX 005C03680D002200
613E: 68 0D 00 22 00
6143: 00 10 02   135      HEX 001002700E003300
6146: 70 0E 00 33 00

```

HI
LO

715 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
PGM	=\$6009	CLEAR	=\$602A	CLR1	=\$6032	CLR	=\$6036
DE	=\$6044	START	=\$6049	START1	=\$604C	INITIAL	=\$606B
DRAW	=\$607D	DRAW1	=\$6082	SHAPE	=\$6103	HI	=\$614B
LO	=\$620B	STORE80	=\$C001	COL80	=\$C00D	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	MAIN	=\$C054	AUX	=\$C055	HIRES	=\$C057
AN3	=\$C05E	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

Curved and Diagonal Movement

*Moving up and down and to and fro
Is easy enough as you well know,
But moving at an angle
Can cause quite a tangle
As you change each column and row.*

Up until now we've only considered shapes moving either vertically or horizontally, but sometime in your career as a graphics computer programmer you might want to display other types of movements without having to tilt or rotate the monitor. The principle is easy. For vertical movement, we keep the screen byte constant and alter the line position; for horizontal movement, the line position is kept constant while the screen byte is changed (stop me if I'm going too fast). For diagonal or curved movement we change both the screen byte and line position for each draw. I told you it was easy.

Armed with this information we can now move shapes around in any kind of meandering path but, in general, pleasant results are obtained only if shapes move in some kind of recognizable pattern, either diagonally or in a curve described by some type of simple equation (don't worry, we're not going to get into quantum mechanics or even calculus, but keep in mind that $E = mc^2$). An exception to this is when movement in all directions is controlled by a joystick or paddles as we saw in Chapter 6 (Program 6-3).

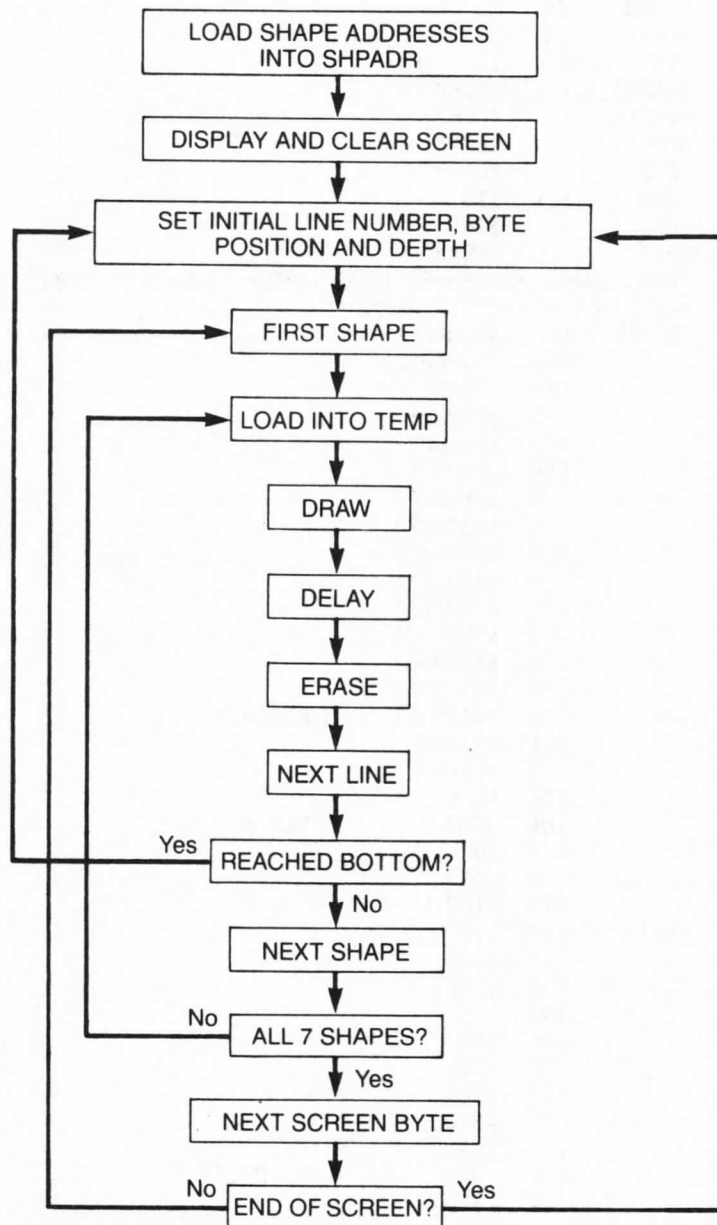
DIAGONAL MOVEMENT

.....

For any kind of non-vertical movement, there is always a horizontal vector and so we have to use the horizontal protocol, i.e., seven preshifted shapes. To illustrate diagonal movement, we're going to use Program 5-1 as a starting point—it moves a plane shape across the screen.

For our first example, let's move the plane down one line for each horizontal 1 bit move (see Program 13-1). After each draw and erase, we do an INC LINEA (remember, we don't INC LINE because LINE is altered in the draw routine). Before going on, we test to see if we've reached the bottom of the screen (line

#\$BA). If we have, we start over. If not, we continue by loading LINE with LINEA, adding the shape depth to LINE, and storing in DEPTH (DEPTH has to be changed each time the line position is changed). We then continue with the usual routine, i.e., next shape number, etc., and also test for the end of the screen. In this particular example, the plane will reach the bottom first before reaching the end of the screen because there are only 192 lines but 280 horizontal bit positions. However, we're testing for both bottom and end of screen to make the program more generally applicable.



]PROGRAM 13-1
:ASM

```

1  *1 SHAPE DIAGONAL
2  *2 BYTES WIDE, 5 LINES DEEP
3      ORG $6000
6000: 4C 27 60 4  JMP PGM
5  LINE DS 1
6  LINEA DS 1
7  BYTE DS 1
8  DEPTH DS 1
9  XCOUNT DS 1
10 SHPNO DS 1
11 DELAY DS 1
12 TEMP DS 15
13 GRAPHICS = $C050
14 MIXOFF = $C052
15 HIRES = $C057
16 PAGE1 = $C054
17 HIGH = $1B
18 LOW = $1A
19 WAIT = $FCA8
20 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
21 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6019: 0D 22 SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
601A: 61 23 DFB #>SHAPE1
601B: 1C 24 DFB #<SHAPE2
601C: 61 25 DFB #>SHAPE2
601D: 2B 26 DFB #<SHAPE3
601E: 61 27 DFB #>SHAPE3
601F: 3A 28 DFB #<SHAPE4
6020: 61 29 DFB #>SHAPE4
6021: 49 30 DFB #<SHAPE5
6022: 61 31 DFB #>SHAPE5
6023: 58 32 DFB #<SHAPE6
6024: 61 33 DFB #>SHAPE6
6025: 67 34 DFB #<SHAPE7
6026: 61 35 DFB #>SHAPE7
6027: AD 50 C0 36 PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
602A: AD 52 C0 37 LDA MIXOFF
602D: AD 57 C0 38 LDA HIRES
6030: AD 54 C0 39 LDA PAGE1
6033: A9 00 40 LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6035: 85 1A 41 STA LOW
6037: A9 20 42 LDA #$20
6039: 85 1B 43 STA HIGH
603B: A0 00 44 CLR1 LDY #$00
603D: A9 00 45 LDA #$00
603F: 91 1A 46 CLR STA (LOW),Y
6041: C8 47 INY
6042: D0 FB 48 BNE CLR
6044: E6 1B 49 INC HIGH
6046: A5 1B 50 LDA HIGH
6048: C9 40 51 CMP #$40
604A: 90 EF 52 BLT CLR1
604C: A9 60 53 LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
604E: 8D 09 60 54 STA DELAY
55 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6051: 20 95 60 56 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
6054: A9 00 57 START1 LDA #$00 ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER
6056: 8D 08 60 58 STA SHPNO
6059: 20 A7 60 59 START2 JSR LOADSHP ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP

```



```

605C: 20 C3 60 60      JSR DRAW      ;DRAW
605F: AD 09 60 61      LDA DELAY      ;DELAY
6062: 20 A8 FC 62      JSR WAIT
6065: 20 C3 60 63      JSR DRAW      ;ERASE
6068: EE 04 60 64      INC LINEA
606B: AD 04 60 65      LDA LINEA
606E: C9 BA 66      CMP #$BA
6070: 90 03 67      BLT START3
6072: 4C 51 60 68      JMP START
6075: 8D 03 60 69      START3 STA LINE
6078: 18 70      CLC
6079: 69 05 71      ADC #$05
607B: 8D 06 60 72      STA DEPTH
607E: EE 08 60 73      INC SHPNO      ;NEXT SHAPE NUMBER
6081: AD 08 60 74      LDA SHPNO
6084: C9 07 75      CMP #$07      ;FINISHED ALL 7 SHAPES?
6086: 90 D1 76      BLT START2      ;IF NO, CONTINUE WITH NEXT SHAPE
6088: EE 05 60 77      INC BYTE      ;IF YES, NEXT BYTE
608B: AD 05 60 78      LDA BYTE
608E: C9 26 79      CMP #$26      ;END OF SCREEN?
6090: 90 C2 80      BLT START1      ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
6092: 4C 51 60 81      JMP START      ;IF YES, START OVER
82 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6095: A9 00 83      INITIAL LDA #$00
6097: 8D 05 60 84      STA BYTE
609A: 8D 03 60 85      STA LINE
609D: 8D 04 60 86      STA LINEA
60A0: 18 87      CLC
60A1: 69 05 88      ADC #$05      ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
60A3: 8D 06 60 89      STA DEPTH
60A6: 60 90      RTS
91 *****
60A7: AD 08 60 92      LOADSHP LDA SHPNO      ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
60AA: 0A 93      ASL
60AB: AA 94      TAX
60AC: BD 19 60 95      LDA SHPADR,X
60AF: 85 1A 96      STA LOW
60B1: BD 1A 60 97      LDA SHPADR+1,X
60B4: 85 1B 98      STA HIGH
60B6: A0 00 99      LDY #$00
60B8: B1 1A 100      LOADSHP1 LDA (LOW),Y
60BA: 99 0A 60 101      STA TEMP,Y
60BD: C8 102      INY
60BE: C0 0F 103      CPY #$0F
60C0: 90 F6 104      BLT LOADSHP1
60C2: 60 105      RTS
106 *****
60C3: A9 00 107      DRAW LDA #$00
60C5: 8D 07 60 108      STA XCOUNT
60C8: AC 05 60 109      DRAW1 LDY BYTE
60CB: AE 03 60 110      LDX LINE
60CE: BD 76 61 111      LDA HI,X
60D1: 85 1B 112      STA HIGH
60D3: BD 36 62 113      LDA LO,X
60D6: 85 1A 114      STA LOW
60D8: AE 07 60 115      LDX XCOUNT
60DB: B1 1A 116      LDA (LOW),Y
60DD: 5D 0A 60 117      EOR TEMP,X
60E0: 91 1A 118      STA (LOW),Y
60E2: C8 119      INY
60E3: B1 1A 120      LDA (LOW),Y

```

```

60E5: 5D 0B 60 121      EOR  TEMP+1,X
60E8: 91 1A      122      STA  (LOW),Y
60EA: C8      123      INY
60EB: B1 1A      124      LDA  (LOW),Y
60ED: 5D 0C 60 125      EOR  TEMP+2,X
60F0: 91 1A      126      STA  (LOW),Y
60F2: EE 07 60 127      INC  XCOUNT
60F5: EE 07 60 128      INC  XCOUNT
60F8: EE 07 60 129      INC  XCOUNT
60FB: EE 03 60 130      INC  LINE
60FE: AD 03 60 131      LDA  LINE
6101: CD 06 60 132      CMP  DEPTH
6104: 90 C2      133      BLT  DRAW1
6106: AD 04 60 134      LDA  LINEA
6109: 8D 03 60 135      STA  LINE      ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
610C: 60      136      RTS
610D: 02 00 00 137  SHAPE1  HEX  0200000600007E1F00 ;SHAPE TABLES
6110: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
6116: 7E 37 00 138      HEX  7E37007E7F00
6119: 7E 7F 00
611C: 04 00 00 139  SHAPE2  HEX  0400000C00007C3F00
611F: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
6125: 7C 6F 00 140      HEX  7C6F007C7F01
6128: 7C 7F 01
612B: 08 00 00 141  SHAPE3  HEX  080000180000787F00
612E: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
6134: 78 5F 01 142      HEX  785F01787F03
6137: 78 7F 03
613A: 10 00 00 143  SHAPE4  HEX  100000300000707F01
613D: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
6143: 70 3F 03 144      HEX  703F03707F07
6146: 70 7F 07
6149: 20 00 00 145  SHAPE5  HEX  200000600000607F03
614C: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
6152: 60 7F 06 146      HEX  607F06607F0F
6155: 60 7F 0F
6158: 40 00 00 147  SHAPE6  HEX  400000400100407F07
615B: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
6161: 40 7F 0D 148      HEX  407F0D407F1F
6164: 40 7F 1F
6167: 00 01 00 149  SHAPE7  HEX  000100000300007F0F
616A: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F
6170: 00 7F 1B 150      HEX  007F1B007F3F
6173: 00 7F 3F

```

HI
LO

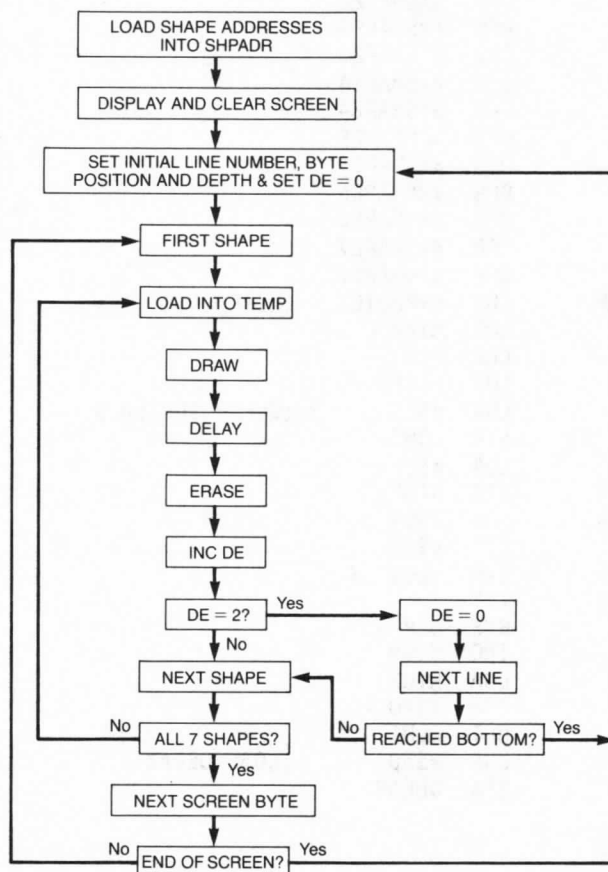
758 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
DELAY	=\$6009	TEMP	=\$600A	SHPADR	=\$6019	PGM	=\$6027
CLR1	=\$603B	CLR	=\$603F	START	=\$6051	START1	=\$6054
START2	=\$6059	START3	=\$6075	INITIAL	=\$6095	LOADSHP	=\$60A7
LOADSHP1	=\$60B8	DRAW	=\$60C3	DRAW1	=\$60C8	SHAPE1	=\$610D
SHAPE2	=\$611C	SHAPE3	=\$612B	SHAPE4	=\$613A	SHAPE5	=\$6149
SHAPE6	=\$6158	SHAPE7	=\$6167	HI	=\$6176	LO	=\$6236
GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

We can make the plane drop at an even steeper angle simply by increasing the line positions more often than once every horizontal move. We would do INC LINEA twice, or three times, or however many we want before going on to the next draw, but keep in mind that we want to keep the line jumps to a reasonably small number to maintain smooth animation. We could, with a more complicated protocol, draw the shape at each line position instead of after each every two or three line moves, but this results in a rather noticeable jerky motion. Line jumps between draws result in a more acceptable animation as long as the distance between draws is kept small (large jumps are okay for fast moving shapes, as we'll see below).

Suppose now we want the plane to drop at a shallower angle, let's say one line for every two horizontal moves. The next program (13-2) illustrates how this is done. We set up a counter labeled DE and set it to zero in the INITIAL subroutine. After the first draw and erase, DE is incremented by 1. If DE is less than 2 (line 67), we continue drawing on the same line. After the shape has been drawn and erased two times, $DE = 2$ and the branch at line 68 is not taken; DE is zeroed, LINEA is incremented and, if the bottom has not yet been reached, drawing continues, now one line down. Note that each time LINEA is changed, LINE is loaded with LINEA and DEPTH is adjusted (line 76). We can easily make the shape fall in a shallower angle by changing the CMP value in line 67. Thus, if we do a CMP #03, the shape will move three horizontal positions between each line change.



]PROGRAM 13-2

:ASM

```

1      *1 SHAPE DIAGONAL  2 HORIZ. 1 VERT.
2      *2 BYTES WIDE, 5 LINES DEEP
3
6000: 4C 28 60 4      ORG  $6000
5      LINE      DS  1
6      LINEA     DS  1
7      BYTE      DS  1
8      DEPTH     DS  1
9      XCOUNT   DS  1
10     SHPNO     DS  1
11     DELAY     DS  1
12     DE        DS  1
13     TEMP      DS  15
14     GRAPHICS  =  $C050
15     MIXOFF    =  $C052
16     HIRES     =  $C057
17     PAGE1     =  $C054
18     HIGH      =  $1B
19     LOW       =  $1A
20     WAIT      =  $FCA8
21     *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
22     *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
601A: 20 23     SHPADR DFB #<SHAPE1
601B: 61 24     DFB #>SHAPE1
601C: 2F 25     DFB #<SHAPE2
601D: 61 26     DFB #>SHAPE2
601E: 3E 27     DFB #<SHAPE3
601F: 61 28     DFB #>SHAPE3
6020: 4D 29     DFB #<SHAPE4
6021: 61 30     DFB #>SHAPE4
6022: 5C 31     DFB #<SHAPE5
6023: 61 32     DFB #>SHAPE5
6024: 6B 33     DFB #<SHAPE6
6025: 61 34     DFB #>SHAPE6
6026: 7A 35     DFB #<SHAPE7
6027: 61 36     DFB #>SHAPE7
6028: AD 50 C0 37 PGM   LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
602B: AD 52 C0 38     LDA MIXOFF
602E: AD 57 C0 39     LDA HIRES
6031: AD 54 C0 40     LDA PAGE1
6034: A9 00 41     LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6036: 85 1A 42     STA LOW
6038: A9 20 43     LDA #$20
603A: 85 1B 44     STA HIGH
603C: A0 00 45     CLR1  LDY #$00
603E: A9 00 46     LDA #$00
6040: 91 1A 47     CLR   STA (LOW),Y
6042: C8 48     INY
6043: D0 FB 49     BNE CLR
6045: E6 1B 50     INC HIGH
6047: A5 1B 51     LDA HIGH
6049: C9 40 52     CMP #$40
604B: 90 EF 53     BLT CLR1
604D: A9 60 54     LDA #$60 ;LOAD DELAY
604F: 8D 09 60 55     STA DELAY

```

```

56 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6052: 20 A5 60 57 START JSR INITIAL ;SET INITIAL BYTE, LINE, DEPTH
6055: A9 00 58 START1 LDA #$00 ;FIRST SHAPE NUMBER
6057: 8D 08 60 59 STA SHPNO
605A: 20 BA 60 60 START2 JSR LOADSHP ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
605D: 20 D6 60 61 JSR DRAW ;DRAW
6060: AD 09 60 62 LDA DELAY ;DELAY
6063: 20 A8 FC 63 JSR WAIT
6066: 20 D6 60 64 JSR DRAW ;ERASE
6069: EE 0A 60 65 INC DE ;NEXT LINE EVERY
606C: AD 0A 60 66 LDA DE TWO SHAPES
606F: C9 02 67 CMP #$02
6071: D0 1B 68 BNE START3
6073: A9 00 69 LDA #$00
6075: 8D 0A 60 70 STA DE
6078: EE 04 60 71 INC LINEA
607B: AD 04 60 72 LDA LINEA
607E: C9 BA 73 CMP #$BA ;TEST FOR BOTTOM
6080: 90 03 74 BLT START4
6082: 4C 52 60 75 JMP START
6085: 8D 03 60 76 START4 STA LINE
6088: 18 77 CLC
6089: 69 05 78 ADC #$05
608B: 8D 06 60 79 STA DEPTH
608E: EE 08 60 80 START3 INC SHPNO ;NEXT SHAPE NUMBER
6091: AD 08 60 81 LDA SHPNO
6094: C9 07 82 CMP #$07 ;FINISHED ALL 7 SHAPES?
6096: 90 C2 83 BLT START2 ;IF NO, CONTINUE WITH NEXT SHAPE
6098: EE 05 60 84 INC BYTE ;IF YES, NEXT BYTE
609B: AD 05 60 85 LDA BYTE
609E: C9 26 86 CMP #$26 ;END OF SCREEN?
60A0: 90 B3 87 BLT START1 ;IF NO, CONTINUE DRAW
60A2: 4C 52 60 88 JMP START ;IF YES, START OVER
89 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
60A5: A9 00 90 INITIAL LDA #$00
60A7: 8D 0A 60 91 STA DE
60AA: 8D 05 60 92 STA BYTE
60AD: 8D 03 60 93 STA LINE
60B0: 8D 04 60 94 STA LINEA
60B3: 18 95 CLC
60B4: 69 05 96 ADC #$05 ;DEPTH OF SHAPE
60B6: 8D 06 60 97 STA DEPTH
60B9: 60 98 RTS
99 *****
60BA: AD 08 60 100 LOADSHP LDA SHPNO ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
60BD: 0A 101 ASL
60BE: AA 102 TAX
60BF: BD 1A 60 103 LDA SHPADR,X
60C2: 85 1A 104 STA LOW
60C4: BD 1B 60 105 LDA SHPADR+1,X
60C7: 85 1B 106 STA HIGH
60C9: A0 00 107 LDY #$00
60CB: B1 1A 108 LOADSHP1 LDA (LOW),Y
60CD: 99 0B 60 109 STA TEMP,Y
60D0: C8 110 INY
60D1: C0 0F 111 CPY #$0F
60D3: 90 F6 112 BLT LOADSHP1
60D5: 60 113 RTS

```

```

114 *****
60D6: A9 00 115 DRAW LDA #$00
60D8: 8D 07 60 116 STA XCOUNT
60DB: AC 05 60 117 DRAW1 LDY BYTE
60DE: AE 03 60 118 LDX LINE
60E1: BD 89 61 119 LDA HI,X
60E4: 85 1B 120 STA HIGH
60E6: BD 49 62 121 LDA LO,X
60E9: 85 1A 122 STA LOW
60EB: AE 07 60 123 LDX XCOUNT
60EE: B1 1A 124 LDA (LOW),Y
60F0: 5D 0B 60 125 EOR TEMP,X
60F3: 91 1A 126 STA (LOW),Y
60F5: C8 127 INY
60F6: B1 1A 128 LDA (LOW),Y
60F8: 5D 0C 60 129 EOR TEMP+1,X
60FB: 91 1A 130 STA (LOW),Y
60FD: C8 131 INY
60FE: B1 1A 132 LDA (LOW),Y
6100: 5D 0D 60 133 EOR TEMP+2,X
6103: 91 1A 134 STA (LOW),Y
6105: EE 07 60 135 INC XCOUNT
6108: EE 07 60 136 INC XCOUNT
610B: EE 07 60 137 INC XCOUNT
610E: EE 03 60 138 INC LINE
6111: AD 03 60 139 LDA LINE
6114: CD 06 60 140 CMP DEPTH
6117: 90 C2 141 BLT DRAW1
6119: AD 04 60 142 LDA LINEA
611C: 8D 03 60 143 STA LINE ;RESET LINE FOR NEXT CYCLE
611F: 60 144 RTS
6120: 02 00 00 145 SHAPE1 HEX 0200000600007E1F00 ;SHAPE TABLES
6123: 06 00 00 7E 1F 00
6129: 7E 37 00 146 HEX 7E37007E7F00
612C: 7E 7F 00
612F: 04 00 00 147 SHAPE2 HEX 0400000C00007C3F00
6132: 0C 00 00 7C 3F 00
6138: 7C 6F 00 148 HEX 7C6F007C7F01
613B: 7C 7F 01
613E: 08 00 00 149 SHAPE3 HEX 080000180000787F00
6141: 18 00 00 78 7F 00
6147: 78 5F 01 150 HEX 785F01787F03
614A: 78 7F 03
614D: 10 00 00 151 SHAPE4 HEX 100000300000707F01
6150: 30 00 00 70 7F 01
6156: 70 3F 03 152 HEX 703F03707F07
6159: 70 7F 07
615C: 20 00 00 153 SHAPE5 HEX 200000600000607F03
615F: 60 00 00 60 7F 03
6165: 60 7F 06 154 HEX 607F06607F0F
6168: 60 7F 0F
616B: 40 00 00 155 SHAPE6 HEX 400000400100407F07
616E: 40 01 00 40 7F 07
6174: 40 7F 0D 156 HEX 407F0D407F1F
6177: 40 7F 1F
617A: 00 01 00 157 SHAPE7 HEX 000100000300007F0F
617D: 00 03 00 00 7F 0F

```

6183: 00 7F 1B 158 HEX 007F1B007F3F
 6186: 00 7F 3F

HI
 LO

777 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
BYTE	=\$6005	DEPTH	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	SHPNO	=\$6008
DELAY	=\$6009	DE	=\$600A	TEMP	=\$600B	SHPADR	=\$601A
PGM	=\$6028	CLR1	=\$603C	CLR	=\$6040	START	=\$6052
START1	=\$6055	START2	=\$605A	START4	=\$6085	START3	=\$608E
INITIAL	=\$60A5	LOADSHP	=\$60BA	LOADSHP1	=\$60CB	DRAW	=\$60D6
DRAW1	=\$60DB	SHAPE1	=\$6120	SHAPE2	=\$612F	SHAPE3	=\$613E
SHAPE4	=\$614D	SHAPE5	=\$615C	SHAPE6	=\$616B	SHAPE7	=\$617A
HI	=\$6189	LO	=\$6249	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052
PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8		

CURVED MOVEMENT

.....

In general, when moving shapes that are meant to represent some object in the real world, such as planes, bullets, bombs, or what have you, realism is effected only when the path represents how such shapes actually move. This usually means the path must follow some sort of defined curve such as a circle, parabola, etc. Of course, if you're moving a shape that looks like a snigglehof, you can twist it around any way you want, but the example I'm going to use is falling bombs, not only because it fits in well with the game program, but also because it expresses my militaristic aggression (you'll get this way, too, after a few bouts with assembly language programming).

Actually, the falling bomb example is applicable to any falling object. When something falls as a result of the force of gravity, it is constantly accelerating; that is, its vertical drop per constant horizontal displacement continually increases until it hits something or is slowed by air resistance. Let's put this in the form of equations to see how it works. We calculate new line positions as follows:

$$VX = VX + 1$$

$$LINE = LINE + VX$$

The following table illustrates how line positions change for each constant horizontal move.

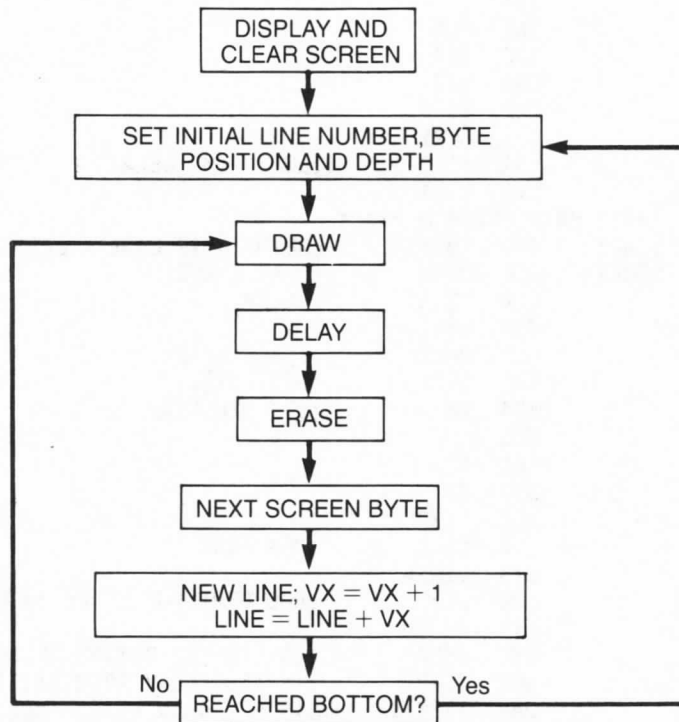
<i>Horizontal Position</i>	<i>Line</i>	<i>VX</i>	<i>New Line</i>
0	0	0	0
1	0	1	1
2	1	2	3
3	3	3	6
4	6	4	10
5	10	5	15
6	15	6	21

Obviously what's happening is that the distance between lines is constantly increasing by a value equal to VX and the resulting path describes a falling object exactly. Now let's see how we can put this to work in a program.

First of all, I've decided to draw the bomb at each new line position rather than continuously at each screen line; i.e., the bomb is drawn only after each line jump regardless of the distance involved. What this means is that as the bomb approaches the bottom of the screen, there will be rather large line intervals between draws, but this is just what we want. The bomb should be moving faster as it approaches the bottom and the larger line jumps provide just this illusion. Large jumps are appropriate for fast moving shapes. Look at the bullet moves in the game program—here, too, the shape is moving 1 byte (eight lines) at a time. Note also that if the bomb were drawn at every line position and not just at the new lines, the large jumps from new line to new line would be eliminated, but the result would be jerky animation and the illusion of increasing speed would be destroyed—the bomb would appear to be moving at a constant (jerky) speed all the way down. The only way to increase the apparent velocity in this case would be to shorten the delay times as the bomb falls, a tricky and unnecessary exercise, and one that wouldn't eliminate the jerky animation anyway.

The horizontal displacement of the bomb as it falls can vary from 1 bit to 1 byte or any other value you want. The displacement will not affect the acceleration illusion (this depends on the line changes), but only the steepness or shallowness of the fall. I've chosen a 1-byte move because it looks right. A 1-byte horizontal move also simplifies the program considerably because we need only one shape and not seven. The same shape is plotted at each new screen byte position. For shorter moves, we would have to use the seven preshifted shapes and change line positions after testing SHPNO for the desired values.

In the MAIN PROGRAM of Program 13-3, we draw and erase, INC BYTE, add 1 to VX, then add the value in LINE to VX and store the result in LINE and LINEA. We adjust DEPTH for the new line, test for the bottom of the screen, and then continue drawing.



]PROGRAM 13-3
:ASM

```

1      * FALLING BOMBS *
2      *****
3
4      ORG $6000
5      JMP PGM
6
7      XCOUNT DS 1
8      BYTE DS 1
9      LINE DS 1
10     LINEA DS 1
11     DEPTH DS 1
12     DELAY DS 1
13     VX DS 1
14     GRAPHICS = $C050
15     MIXOFF = $C052
16     HIRES = $C057
17     PAGE1 = $C054
18     HIGH = $1B
19     LOW = $1A
20     WAIT = $FCA8
21
22     PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
23     LDA MIXOFF
24     LDA HIRES
25     LDA PAGE1
26     LDA #00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
  
```

6000: 4C 0A 60

600A: AD 50 C0

600D: AD 52 C0

6010: AD 57 C0

6013: AD 54 C0

6016: A9 00

```

6018: 85 26      24      STA $26
601A: A9 20      25      LDA #$20
601C: 85 27      26      STA $27
601E: A0 00      27      CLR1 LDY #00
6020: A9 00      28      LDA #00
6022: 91 26      29      CLR  STA ($26),Y
6024: C8          30      INY
6025: D0 FB      31      BNE CLR
6027: E6 27      32      INC $27
6029: A5 27      33      LDA $27
602B: C9 40      34      CMP #$40
602D: 90 EF      35      BLT CLR1
602F: A9 B0      36      LDA #$B0      ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6031: 8D 08 60    37      STA DELAY
        38
***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6034: 20 64 60    39      START JSR INITIAL      ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
6037: 20 7D 60    40      START1 JSR DRAW      ;DRAW SHAPE
603A: AD 08 60    41      LDA DELAY      ;DELAY
603D: 20 A8 FC    42      JSR WAIT
6040: 20 7D 60    43      JSR DRAW      ;ERASE SHAPE
6043: EE 04 60    44      INC BYTE      ;NEXT BYTE
6046: AD 09 60    45      LDA VX      ;SET NEW LINE
6049: 18          46      CLC
604A: 69 01      47      ADC #01
604C: 8D 09 60    48      STA VX
604F: 6D 05 60    49      ADC LINE
6052: 8D 05 60    50      STA LINE      ;NEW LINE
6055: 8D 06 60    51      STA LINEA
6058: 69 03      52      ADC #03      ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO NEW LINE
605A: 8D 07 60    53      STA DEPTH
605D: C9 BA      54      CMP #$BA      ;IS LINE AT BOTTOM OF SCREEN?
605F: E0 D3      55      BGE START      ;IF YES, DRAW FROM INITIAL VALUES
6061: 4C 37 60    56      JMP START1      ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE, NEXT BYTE
        57
***** SUBROUTINES *****
6064: A9 00      58      INITIAL LDA #$00
6066: 8D 04 60    59      STA BYTE
6069: A9 00      60      LDA #00
606B: 8D 05 60    61      STA LINE
606E: 8D 06 60    62      STA LINEA
6071: 18          63      CLC
6072: 69 03      64      ADC #03
6074: 8D 07 60    65      STA DEPTH
6077: A9 00      66      LDA #00
6079: 8D 09 60    67      STA VX
607C: 60          68      RTS
        69
*****
607D: A9 00      70      DRAW LDA #00
607F: 8D 03 60    71      STA XCOUNT
6082: AC 04 60    72      DRAW1 LDY BYTE
6085: AE 05 60    73      LDX LINE
6088: BD B4 60    74      LDA HI,X
608B: 85 1B      75      STA HIGH
608D: BD 74 61    76      LDA LO,X
6090: 85 1A      77      STA LOW
6092: AE 03 60    78      LDX XCOUNT
6095: B1 1A      79      LDA (LOW),Y
6097: 5D B1 60    80      EOR SHAPE,X
609A: 91 1A      81      STA (LOW),Y
609C: EE 03 60    82      INC XCOUNT
609F: EE 05 60    83      INC LINE
60A2: AD 05 60    84      LDA LINE

```

```

60A5: CD 07 60 85      CMP DEPTH
60A8: 90 D8 86        BLT DRAW1
60AA: AD 06 60 87      LDA LINEA
60AD: 8D 05 60 88      STA LINE
60B0: 60 89          RTS
60B1: 07 1E 07 90    SHAPE  HEX 071E07    ;SHAPE TABLE
                        HI
                        LO

```

564 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
VX	=\$6009	PGM	=\$600A	CLR1	=\$601E	CLR	=\$6022
START	=\$6034	START1	=\$6037	INITIAL	=\$6064	DRAW	=\$607D
DRAW1	=\$6082	SHAPE	=\$60B1	HI	=\$60B4	LO	=\$6174
GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

In this program, once the bomb has reached the bottom, we start over, but we can insert any other routine here, such as an explosion, decrement score, etc. If we want an explosion—for example, when the bomb reaches the screen bottom—we need only test for the bottom line of the screen and jump to an explosion routine. If we want to test for the bomb hitting the man in the game program, we would have to include a collision test for the bomb itself, being careful to calculate just which line or group of lines the bomb would reach when hitting the man. To distinguish between hitting bottom or hitting the man, we need only determine at which line the collision occurred, as the bottom line and the man occupy different line positions.

Finally, one can add more realism to falling shapes by simulating the effect of air resistance. At some point in an object's fall, air resistance will cause the acceleration to cease and the object will fall at a constant speed. We can effect this simulation by not allowing VX to go above a certain value—when VX remains constant, the line intervals will then also be constant. A routine to accomplish this would be:

```

                LDA VX
                CMP #$04
                BGE CONT
                CLC
                ADC #$01
                STA VX
CONT            CLC
                ADC LINE
                etc.

```

Drawing over **B**ackgrounds

*A computer artist named Pound
Drew a woman shape nicely round.
Her repete was not well,
And just so you could tell,
He used an unsavory background.*

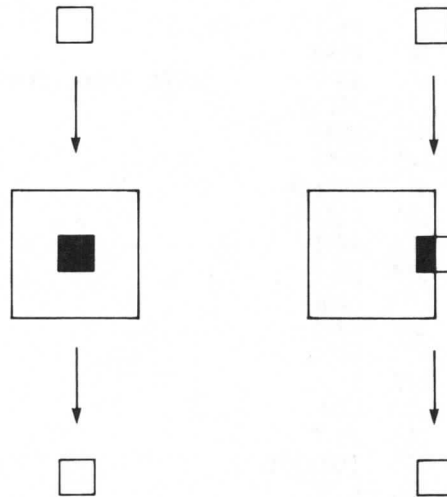
Backgrounds can enhance any program displaying hi-res graphics, not only game programs. A background can consist of stationary shapes (clouds or stars for a sky scene, for example) or moving shapes where collisions are not desired (shapes passing in the night?). Drawing a shape behind or in front of another shape can create the illusion of depth. In addition, one can use the whole screen as a background. For example, if we load the Accumulator with #\$7F instead of #\$00 in the clear screen routine, we can draw black shapes on a white background. Similarly, we can produce whole screen color backgrounds with the clear screen routine by LDAing with the appropriate byte; #\$55 will produce a violet screen, and so on.

WHITE SHAPES AND BACKGROUNDS

The trick to drawing over backgrounds is to have the object and the background retain their original shapes following draw-erase cycles. The easiest way to do this is to use EOR for both drawing and erasing, i.e., the usual DRAW-ERASE protocol. Let's see what happens when we EOR a shape with a background:

1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Background
0 0 1 1 0 0 0	EOR Shape
<hr/>	
1 1 0 0 1 1 1	Background with shape in black
0 0 1 1 0 0 0	EOR Shape (erase)
<hr/>	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Background restored

The result is a black shape surrounded by the white background, producing what might be called a "negative." This actually works quite well if we want the object to appear to be in front of the background as opposed to behind it. The effect is illustrated in the following figure.



To see how this looks in a program, run Program 14-1, which is the same as Program 4-1, except a box has been drawn in the path of the person shape.

]PROGRAM 14-1
:ASM

```

1  ** WHITE SHAPE & BACKGROUND * NEGATIVE EFFECT
2  ****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 6 BYTES DEEP
4  ****
5          ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 0A 60 6  JMP  PGM
7          XCOUNT DS  1
8          BYTE    DS  1
9          LINE     DS  1
10         LINEA    DS  1
11         DEPTH    DS  1
12         DELAY    DS  1
13         SDEPTH   DS  1
14         GRAPHICS =  $C050
15         MIXOFF   =  $C052
16         HIRES    =  $C057
17         PAGE1    =  $C054
18         HIGH     =  $1B
19         LOW      =  $1A
20         WAIT     =  $FCA8
600A: AD 50 C0 21  PGM  LDA  GRAPHICS  ;HIRES,P.1
600D: AD 52 C0 22          LDA  MIXOFF
6010: AD 57 C0 23          LDA  HIRES
6013: AD 54 C0 24          LDA  PAGE1
6016: A9 00 25          LDA  #$00      ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6018: 85 1A 26          STA  LOW
601A: A9 20 27          LDA  #$20
601C: 85 1B 28          STA  HIGH

```

```

601E: A0 00      29 CLR1    LDY  #$00
6020: A9 00      30        LDA  #$00
6022: 91 1A      31 CLR      STA  (LOW),Y
6024: C8          32        INY
6025: D0 FB      33        BNE  CLR
6027: E6 1B      34        INC  HIGH
6029: A5 1B      35        LDA  HIGH
602B: C9 40      36        CMP  #$40
602D: 90 EF      37        BLT  CLR1
602F: A9 80      38        LDA  #$80      ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6031: 8D 08 60   39        STA  DELAY
        40
        ** DRAW WHITE BOX
6034: A9 5A      41        LDA  #$5A
6036: 8D 09 60   42        STA  SDEPTH
6039: A0 10      43        LDY  #$10
603B: A9 50      44        LDA  #$50
603D: 8D 05 60   45        STA  LINE
6040: AE 05 60   46 ST      LDX  LINE
6043: BD CC 60   47        LDA  HI,X
6046: 85 1B      48        STA  HIGH
6048: BD 8C 61   49        LDA  LO,X
604B: 85 1A      50        STA  LOW
604D: A9 7F      51        LDA  #$7F
604F: 91 1A      52        STA  (LOW),Y
6051: EE 05 60   53        INC  LINE
6054: AD 05 60   54        LDA  LINE
6057: CD 09 60   55        CMP  SDEPTH
605A: 90 E4      56        BLT  ST
        57
        ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
605C: 20 84 60   58 START   JSR  INITIAL      ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
605F: 20 98 60   59 START1  JSR  DRAW        ;DRAW SHAPE
        LDA  DELAY          ;DELAY
6062: AD 08 60   60        LDA  LINEA
6065: 20 A8 FC   61        JSR  WAIT
6068: AD 06 60   62        LDA  LINEA
606B: 8D 05 60   63        STA  LINE
606E: 20 98 60   64        JSR  DRAW        ;ERASE SHAPE
6071: EE 07 60   65        INC  DEPTH      ;NEXT DEPTH
6074: EE 06 60   66        INC  LINEA      & NEXT LINE
6077: AD 06 60   67        LDA  LINEA
607A: 8D 05 60   68        STA  LINE
607D: C9 BB      69        CMP  #$BB      ;IS LINE AT BOTTOM OF SCREEN?
607F: B0 DB      70        BGE  START      ;IF YES, DRAW FROM INITIAL VALUES
6081: 4C 5F 60   71        JMP  START1     ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
        72
        ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6084: A9 10      73 INITIAL  LDA  #$10
6086: 8D 04 60   74        STA  BYTE      ;SET STARTING BYTE
6089: A9 00      75        LDA  #$00
608B: 8D 05 60   76        STA  LINE      ;SET STARTING LINE
608E: 8D 06 60   77        STA  LINEA
6091: 18          78        CLC
6092: 69 06      79        ADC  #$06      ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO LINE
6094: 8D 07 60   80        STA  DEPTH
6097: 60          81        RTS
6098: A9 00      82 DRAW      LDA  #$00
609A: 8D 03 60   83        STA  XCOUNT      ;ZERO XCOUNT
609D: AC 04 60   84 DRAW1    LDY  BYTE      ;LOAD BYTE
60A0: AE 05 60   85        LDX  LINE      ;LOAD LINE
60A3: BD CC 60   86        LDA  HI,X      ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
60A6: 85 1B      87        STA  HIGH
60A8: BD 8C 61   88        LDA  LO,X
60AB: 85 1A      89        STA  LOW

```

```

60AD: AE 03 60 90      LDX XCOUNT      ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
60B0: B1 1A 91      LDA (LOW),Y      ;GET BYTE FROM SCREEN
60B2: 5D C6 60 92      EOR SHAPE,X      ;EOR BYTE FROM SHAPE ADDRESS+X
60B5: 91 1A 93      STA (LOW),Y      ;PLOT BYTE
60B7: EE 03 60 94      INC XCOUNT
60BA: EE 05 60 95      INC LINE      ;NEXT LINE
60BD: AD 05 60 96      LDA LINE
60C0: CD 07 60 97      CMP DEPTH      ;FINISH SHAPE?
60C3: 90 D8 98      BLT DRAW1      ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
60C5: 60 99      RTS      ;IF YES, NEXT DRAW CYCLE
60C6: 08 3E 5D 100 SHAPE HEX 083E5D1C1422 ;SHAPE TABLE
60C9: 1C 14 22

```

HI
LO

588 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
SDEPTH	=\$6009	PGM	=\$600A	CLR1	=\$601E	CLR	=\$6022
ST	=\$6040	START	=\$605C	START1	=\$605F	INITIAL	=\$6084
DRAW	=\$6098	DRAW1	=\$609D	SHAPE	=\$60C6	HI	=\$60CC
LO	=\$618C	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

As you may have already guessed, the DRAW-DRAW protocol is inappropriate for drawing over backgrounds, because whatever background is in the screen byte will be erased by the shape byte, as there is no restoring function. Try Program 14-2, which is the same as Program 4-3 (DRAW-DRAW) except for a box in the person's path—the box is erased as the person shape passes through it.

]PROGRAM 14-2
:ASM

```

1  ** WHITE SHAPE & BACKGROUND * DRAW-DRAW
2  ****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 7 BYTES DEEP
4  ****
5      ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 0A 60 6      JMP  PGM
7      XCOUNT DS 1
8      BYTE DS 1
9      LINE DS 1
10     LINEA DS 1
11     DEPTH DS 1
12     DELAY DS 1
13     SDEPTH DS 1
14     GRAPHICS = $C050
15     MIXOFF = $C052
16     HIRES = $C057
17     PAGE1 = $C054
18     HIGH = $1B
19     LOW = $1A
20     WAIT = $FCA8
600A: AD 50 C0 21     PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
600D: AD 52 C0 22     LDA MIXOFF

```

```

6010: AD 57 C0 23      LDA HIRES
6013: AD 54 C0 24      LDA PAGE1
6016: A9 00 25        LDA #$00          ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6018: 85 1A 26        STA LOW
601A: A9 20 27        LDA #$20
601C: 85 1B 28        STA HIGH
601E: A0 00 29        CLR1 LDY #$00
6020: A9 00 30        LDA #$00
6022: 91 1A 31        CLR STA (LOW),Y
6024: C8 32          INY
6025: D0 FB 33        BNE CLR
6027: E6 1B 34        INC HIGH
6029: A5 1B 35        LDA HIGH
602B: C9 40 36        CMP #$40
602D: 90 EF 37        BLT CLR1
602F: A9 80 38        LDA #$80          ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6031: 8D 08 60 39      STA DELAY
6034: A9 5A 41        ** DRAW WHITE BOX LDA #$5A
6036: 8D 09 60 42      STA SDEPTH
6039: A0 10 43        LDY #$10
603B: A9 50 44        LDA #$50
603D: 8D 05 60 45      STA LINE
6040: AE 05 60 46      ST LDX LINE
6043: BD F5 60 47      LDA HI,X
6046: 85 1B 48        STA HIGH
6048: BD B5 61 49      LDA LO,X
604B: 85 1A 50        STA LOW
604D: A9 7F 51        LDA #$7F
604F: 91 1A 52        STA (LOW),Y
6051: EE 05 60 53      INC LINE
6054: AD 05 60 54      LDA LINE
6057: CD 09 60 55      CMP SDEPTH
605A: 90 E4 56        BLT ST
605C: 20 7B 60 58      ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
605F: 20 8F 60 59      START JSR INITIAL ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
6062: AD 08 60 60      START1 JSR DRAW ;DRAW SHAPE
6065: 20 A8 FC 61      LDA DELAY ;DELAY
6068: EE 07 60 62      INC DEPTH ;NEXT DEPTH
606B: EE 06 60 63      INC LINEA & NEXT LINE
606E: AD 06 60 64      LDA LINEA
6071: 8D 05 60 65      STA LINE
6074: C9 BA 66        CMP #$BA ;IS LINE AT BOTTOM OF SCREEN?
6076: B0 43 67        BGE ERASE ;IF YES, ERASE SHAPE, START OVER
6078: 4C 5F 60 68      JMP START1 ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
607B: A9 10 70        ***** SUBROUTINES *****
607D: 8D 04 60 71      INITIAL LDA #$10
6080: A9 00 72        STA BYTE ;SET STARTING BYTE
6082: 8D 05 60 73      LDA #$00
6085: 8D 06 60 74      STA LINE ;SET STARTING LINE
6088: 18 75          CLC
6089: 69 07 76        ADC #$07 ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO LINE
608B: 8D 07 60 77      STA DEPTH
608E: 60 78          RTS
608F: A9 00 79      DRAW LDA #$00
6091: 8D 03 60 80      STA XCOUNT ;ZERO XCOUNT
6094: AC 04 60 81      DRAW1 LDY BYTE ;LOAD BYTE
6097: AE 05 60 82      LDX LINE ;LOAD LINE
609A: BD F5 60 83      LDA HI,X ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW

```



```

609D: 85 1B      84      STA HIGH
609F: BD B5 61 85      LDA LO,X
60A2: 85 1A      86      STA LOW
60A4: AE 03 60 87      LDX XCOUNT      ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
60A7: BD EE 60 88      LDA SHAPE,X      ;LOAD SHAPE BYTE
60AA: 91 1A      89      STA (LOW),Y      ;PLOT BYTE
60AC: EE 03 60 90      INC XCOUNT
60AF: EE 05 60 91      INC LINE      ;NEXT LINE
60B2: AD 05 60 92      LDA LINE
60B5: CD 07 60 93      CMP DEPTH      ;FINISH SHAPE?
60B8: 90 DA      94      BLT DRAW1      ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
60BA: 60          95      RTS      ;IF YES, NEXT DRAW CYCLE
60BB: CE 05 60 96      ERASE DEC LINE      ;RESET LINE
60BE: A9 00      97      LDA #$00      ;ZERO XCOUNT
60C0: 8D 03 60 98      STA XCOUNT
60C3: AC 04 60 99      ERASE1 LDY BYTE
60C6: AE 05 60 100     LDX LINE
60C9: BD F5 60 101     LDA HI,X
60CC: 85 1B      102     STA HIGH
60CE: BD B5 61 103     LDA LO,X
60D1: 85 1A      104     STA LOW
60D3: AE 03 60 105     LDX XCOUNT
60D6: B1 1A      106     LDA (LOW),Y
60D8: 5D EE 60 107     EOR SHAPE,X
60DB: 91 1A      108     STA (LOW),Y      ;ERASE
60DD: EE 03 60 109     INC XCOUNT
60E0: EE 05 60 110     INC LINE
60E3: AD 05 60 111     LDA LINE
60E6: CD 07 60 112     CMP DEPTH
60E9: 90 D8      113     BLT ERASE1
60EB: 4C 5C 60 114     JMP START
60EE: 00 08 3E 115     SHAPE HEX 00083E5D1C1422 ;SHAPE TABLE
60F1: 5D 1C 14 22

```

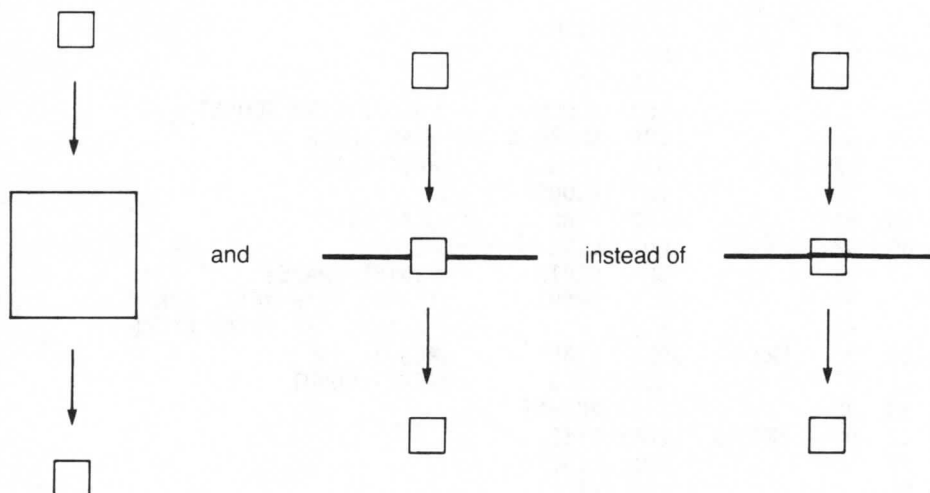
HI
LO

629 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
SDEPTH	=\$6009	PGM	=\$600A	CLR1	=\$601E	CLR	=\$6022
ST	=\$6040	START	=\$605C	START1	=\$605F	INITIAL	=\$607B
DRAW	=\$608F	DRAW1	=\$6094	ERASE	=\$60BB	ERASE1	=\$60C3
SHAPE	=\$60EE	HI	=\$60F5	LO	=\$61B5	GRAPHICS	=\$C050
MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8

The "negative" effect is sometimes inappropriate. For example, when we want a shape to appear to go behind the background or when the background is very simple, such as a single line, the shape should merge with the background as illustrated here.



To accomplish this, we need to use a different type of draw routine, one that uses AND and ORA.

We've seen the AND instruction before in the chapter on collisions, but it won't hurt to review it. AND compares each bit in the Accumulator with the corresponding bit of a byte, either a direct value or the contents of a memory location, and returns a value of 1 if both bits are 1. Otherwise, the result is 0. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Example

Accumulator	0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1
AND byte	0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1
Result	0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1

ORA does the same kind of comparison, but here the result is 1 if either or both bits are 1, and 0 if both bits are 0. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Example

Accumulator	0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1
ORA byte	0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1
Result	0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1

Let's see how we use these instructions to produce a shape merged with a background. First, we obtain a complement of the shape by EORing with #\$7F. We then AND the background with the complement, and ORA the shape:

Shape	0 0 1 1 0 0 0
EOR #\$7F	1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Result	1 1 0 0 1 1 1
AND background	1 1 1 1 0 0 0
Result	1 1 0 0 0 0 0
ORA shape	0 0 1 1 0 0 0
Result	1 1 1 1 0 0 0 Shape + Background

A problem arises when we now want to erase the shape and restore the background. If we EOR the shape, a flawed background results:

Shape + background	1 1 1 1 0 0 0
EOR shape	0 0 1 1 0 0 0
Result	1 1 0 0 0 0 0

We get around this by storing the background in a temporary location labeled BACK, and erase the shape by redrawing the stored background using the protocol LDA byte, STA screen byte. We can see how this works in the next program (Program 14-3), which is the same as Program 14-1 except for the draw and erase routines.

First, we reserve memory for the background by BACK DS 6, because the shape contains 6 bytes. In the DRAW routine, we load the screen byte by LDA (LOW),Y (line 92) and store the byte (i.e., the background) in BACK with STA BACK,X (line 93). We then continue drawing with EOR #\$7F to obtain the shape complement; AND BACK,X to AND the background; ORA SHAPE,X to ORA the shape byte; and STA (LOW),Y to plot the result. X is used as the counter for the BACK "table" the same way it's used as a counter for the SHAPE table. For multiple byte shapes, we would use BACK+1,X, BACK+2,X, etc. in the same way that we use SHAPE+1,X, etc. In the MAIN PROGRAM, after the shape is drawn, we erase by calling an XDRAW routine. Here the background is restored by LDA BACK,X, STA (LOW),Y; i.e., we redraw the background directly over the merged shape + background.

]PROGRAM 14-3
:ASM

```

1  **WHITE SHAPE & BACKGROUND * NO NEGATIVE EFFECT
2  ****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 6 BYTES DEEP
4  ****
5      ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 10 60 6  JMP  PGM
7      XCOUNT DS 1
8      BYTE DS 1
9      LINE DS 1
10     LINEA DS 1
11     DEPTH DS 1
12     DELAY DS 1
13     SDEPTH DS 1
14     BACK DS 6
15     GRAPHICS = $C050
16     MIXOFF = $C052
17     HIRES = $C057
18     PAGE1 = $C054
19     HIGH = $1B
20     LOW = $1A
21     WAIT = $FCA8
6010: AD 50 C0 22 LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
6013: AD 52 C0 23 LDA MIXOFF

```

```

6016: AD 57 C0 24      LDA HIRES
6019: AD 54 C0 25      LDA PAGE1
601C: A9 00 26      LDA #$00          ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
601E: 85 1A 27      STA LOW
6020: A9 20 28      LDA #$20
6022: 85 1B 29      STA HIGH
6024: A0 00 30      CLR1 LDY #$00
6026: A9 00 31      LDA #$00
6028: 91 1A 32      CLR STA (LOW),Y
602A: C8 33      INY
602B: D0 FB 34      BNE CLR
602D: E6 1B 35      INC HIGH
602F: A5 1B 36      LDA HIGH
6031: C9 40 37      CMP #$40
6033: 90 EF 38      BLT CLR1
6035: A9 80 39      LDA #$80          ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6037: 8D 08 60 40     STA DELAY
6038: 41          ** DRAW WHITE BOX
603A: A9 5A 42      LDA #$5A
603C: 8D 09 60 43     STA SDEPTH
603F: A0 10 44      LDY #$10
6041: A9 50 45      LDA #$50
6043: 8D 05 60 46     STA LINE
6046: AE 05 60 47     ST LDX LINE
6049: BD 0F 61 48     LDA HI,X
604C: 85 1B 49      STA HIGH
604E: BD CF 61 50     LDA LO,X
6051: 85 1A 51      STA LOW
6053: A9 7F 52      LDA #$7F
6055: 91 1A 53      STA (LOW),Y
6057: EE 05 60 54     INC LINE
605A: AD 05 60 55     LDA LINE
605D: CD 09 60 56     CMP SDEPTH
6060: 90 E4 57      BLT ST
6061: 58          ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6062: 20 8A 60 59     START JSR INITIAL          ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
6065: 20 9E 60 60     START1 JSR DRAW          ;DRAW SHAPE
6068: AD 08 60 61     LDA DELAY          ;DELAY
606B: 20 A8 FC 62     JSR WAIT
606E: AD 06 60 63     LDA LINEA
6071: 8D 05 60 64     STA LINE
6074: 20 D7 60 65     JSR XDRAW          ;ERASE SHAPE
6077: EE 07 60 66     INC DEPTH          ;NEXT DEPTH
607A: EE 06 60 67     INC LINEA          & NEXT LINE
607D: AD 06 60 68     LDA LINEA
6080: 8D 05 60 69     STA LINE
6083: C9 BB 70      CMP #$BB          ;IS LINE AT BOTTOM OF SCREEN?
6085: B0 DB 71      BGE START          ;IF YES, DRAW FROM INITIAL VALUES
6087: 4C 65 60 72     JMP START1          ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
6088: 73          ***** SUBROUTINES *****
608A: A9 10 74      INITIAL LDA #$10
608C: 8D 04 60 75     STA BYTE          ;SET STARTING BYTE
608F: A9 00 76      LDA #$00
6091: 8D 05 60 77     STA LINE          ;SET STARTING LINE
6094: 8D 06 60 78     STA LINEA
6097: 18 79      CLC
6098: 69 06 80      ADC #$06          ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO LINE
609A: 8D 07 60 81     STA DEPTH
609D: 60 82      RTS
609E: A9 00 83      DRAW LDA #$00
60A0: 8D 03 60 84     STA XCOUNT          ;ZERO XCOUNT

```

```

60A3: AC 04 60 85  DRAW1  LDY  BYTE      ;LOAD BYTE
60A6: AE 05 60 86      LDX  LINE      ;LOAD LINE
60A9: BD 0F 61 87      LDA  HI,X      ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
60AC: 85 1B 88      STA  HIGH
60AE: BD CF 61 89      LDA  LO,X
60B1: 85 1A 90      STA  LOW
60B3: AE 03 60 91      LDX  XCOUNT   ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
60B6: B1 1A 92      LDA  (LOW),Y    ;GET BYTE FROM SCREEN
60B8: 9D 0A 60 93      STA  BACK,X    ;STORE BACKGROUND
60BB: BD 09 61 94      LDA  SHAPE,X
60BE: 49 7F 95      EOR  #$7F
60C0: 3D 0A 60 96      AND  BACK,X
60C3: 1D 09 61 97      ORA  SHAPE,X
60C6: 91 1A 98      STA  (LOW),Y    ;PLOT
60C8: EE 03 60 99      INC  XCOUNT
60CB: EE 05 60 100     INC  LINE      ;NEXT LINE
60CE: AD 05 60 101     LDA  LINE
60D1: CD 07 60 102     CMP  DEPTH    ;FINISH SHAPE?
60D4: 90 CD 103      BLT  DRAW1    ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
60D6: 60 104      RTS      ;IF YES, NEXT DRAW CYCLE
60D7: A9 00 105     XDRAW  LDA  #$00
60D9: 8D 03 60 106     STA  XCOUNT
60DC: AE 05 60 107     XDRAW1 LDX  LINE
60DF: AC 04 60 108     LDY  BYTE
60E2: BD 0F 61 109     LDA  HI,X
60E5: 85 1B 110     STA  HIGH
60E7: BD CF 61 111     LDA  LO,X
60EA: 85 1A 112     STA  LOW
60EC: AE 03 60 113     LDX  XCOUNT
60EF: BD 0A 60 114     LDA  BACK,X    ;GET BACKGROUND
60F2: 91 1A 115     STA  (LOW),Y    AND PLOT
60F4: EE 03 60 116     INC  XCOUNT
60F7: EE 05 60 117     INC  LINE
60FA: AD 05 60 118     LDA  LINE
60FD: CD 07 60 119     CMP  DEPTH
6100: 90 DA 120      BLT  XDRAW1
6102: AD 06 60 121     LDA  LINEA
6105: 8D 05 60 122     STA  LINE
6108: 60 123      RTS
6109: 08 3E 5D 124   SHAPE  HEX  083E5D1C1422 ;SHAPE TABLE
610C: 1C 14 22

HI
LO

```

655 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
SDEPTH	=\$6009	BACK	=\$600A	PGM	=\$6010	CLR1	=\$6024
CLR	=\$6028	ST	=\$6046	START	=\$6062	START1	=\$6065
INITIAL	=\$608A	DRAW	=\$609E	DRAW1	=\$60A3	XDRAW	=\$60D7
XDRAW1	=\$60DC	SHAPE	=\$6109	HI	=\$610F	LO	=\$61CF
GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057
WAIT	=\$FCA8						

COLOR SHAPES WITH COLOR OR WHITE BACKGROUNDS

Drawing color shapes over color or white backgrounds using the usual EOR DRAW-ERASE routine produces a variety of strange results. For example, if we plot a violet shape over a violet background or a green shape over a green background, the shape turns to black:

1 0 1 0 1 0 1	Background violet
0 0 1 0 1 0 0	EOR violet shape
<hr/>	
1 0 0 0 0 0 1	Shape is black

Plotting blue over blue or orange over orange yields even stranger results. Here the shape not only turns to black but the background turns to the non-high-bit-set color (blue to violet or orange to green), because when the high bit is EORed, it sets to 0 (remember even though the high bit is not plotted, it is still affected by assembly language instructions):

	High	
1 0 1 0 1 0 1	1	Background blue
0 0 1 0 1 0 0	1	EOR blue shape
<hr/>		
1 0 0 0 0 0 1	0	Black shape, violet background

If we plot alternate column colors, say a green shape over a violet background, the shape turns to white:

1 0 1 0 1 0 1	Background violet
0 0 0 1 0 1 0	EOR green shape
<hr/>	
1 0 1 1 1 1 1	Shape is white

Similarly, if we plot a blue shape over orange, the shape also turns to white and, in addition, the background turns to the non-high-bit-set color.

If we plot color shapes over a white background using EOR, the color changes to the complement:

1 1 1 1 1 1 1	White background
1 0 1 0 1 0 1	EOR violet shape
<hr/>	
0 1 0 1 0 1 0	Shape is green

To see the effect of all this, run the following program (Program 14-4), which draws a violet and green shape over a violet background using EOR. What you will see is that the violet part of the shape will turn to black and the green part to white as the shape passes over the background.

]PROGRAM 14-4
:ASM

```

1  *COLOR SHAPE & BACKGROUND WITH EOR
2  *****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 6 BYTES DEEP
4  *****
5          ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 0A 60 6  JMP  PGM
7          XCOUNT DS 1
8          BYTE DS 1
9          LINE DS 1
10         LINEA DS 1
11         DEPTH DS 1
12         DELAY DS 1
13         SDEPTH DS 1
14         GRAPHICS = $C050
15         MIXOFF = $C052
16         HIRES = $C057
17         PAGE1 = $C054
18         HIGH = $1B
19         LOW = $1A
20         WAIT = $FCA8
600A: AD 50 C0 21  LDA  GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
600D: AD 52 C0 22  LDA  MIXOFF
6010: AD 57 C0 23  LDA  HIRES
6013: AD 54 C0 24  LDA  PAGE1
6016: A9 00 25  LDA  #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6018: 85 1A 26  STA  LOW
601A: A9 20 27  LDA  #$20
601C: 85 1B 28  STA  HIGH
601E: A0 00 29  CLR1 LDY  #$00
6020: A9 00 30  LDA  #$00
6022: 91 1A 31  CLR  STA  (LOW),Y
6024: C8 32  INY
6025: D0 FB 33  BNE  CLR
6027: E6 1B 34  INC  HIGH
6029: A5 1B 35  LDA  HIGH
602B: C9 40 36  CMP  #$40
602D: 90 EF 37  BLT  CLR1
602F: A9 80 38  LDA  #$80 ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6031: 8D 08 60 39  STA  DELAY
40  ** DRAW VIOLET BOX
6034: A9 5A 41  LDA  #$5A
6036: 8D 09 60 42  STA  SDEPTH
6039: A0 10 43  LDY  #$10
603B: A9 50 44  LDA  #$50
603D: 8D 05 60 45  STA  LINE
6040: AE 05 60 46  ST   LDX  LINE
6043: BD CC 60 47  LDA  HI,X
6046: 85 1B 48  STA  HIGH
6048: BD 8C 61 49  LDA  LO,X
604B: 85 1A 50  STA  LOW
604D: A9 55 51  LDA  #$55
604F: 91 1A 52  STA  (LOW),Y
6051: EE 05 60 53  INC  LINE
6054: AD 05 60 54  LDA  LINE
6057: CD 09 60 55  CMP  SDEPTH
605A: 90 E4 56  BLT  ST
57  ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
605C: 20 7E 60 58  START JSR  INITIAL ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
605F: 20 92 60 59  START1 JSR  DRAW ;DRAW SHAPE

```

```

6062: AD 08 60 60      LDA DELAY      ;DELAY
6065: 20 A8 FC 61      JSR WAIT
6068: 20 92 60 62      JSR DRAW      ;ERASE SHAPE
606B: EE 07 60 63      INC DEPTH      ;NEXT DEPTH
606E: EE 06 60 64      INC LINEA      & NEXT LINE
6071: AD 06 60 65      LDA LINEA
6074: 8D 05 60 66      STA LINE
6077: C9 BB 67        CMP #$BB      ;IS LINE AT BOTTOM OF SCREEN?
6079: B0 E1 68        BGE START      ;IF YES, DRAW FROM INITIAL VALUES
607B: 4C 5F 60 69      JMP START1     ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
607E: A9 10 71        ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6080: 8D 04 60 72      INITIAL LDA #$10
6083: A9 00 73        STA BYTE      ;SET STARTING BYTE
6085: 8D 05 60 74      LDA #$00
6088: 8D 06 60 75      STA LINE      ;SET STARTING LINE
608B: 18 76          CLC
608C: 69 06 77        ADC #$06      ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO LINE
608E: 8D 07 60 78      STA DEPTH
6091: 60 79          RTS
6092: A9 00 80      DRAW  LDA #$00
6094: 8D 03 60 81      STA XCOUNT ;ZERO XCOUNT
6097: AC 04 60 82      DRAW1 LDY BYTE  ;LOAD BYTE
609A: AE 05 60 83      LDX LINE    ;LOAD LINE
609D: BD CC 60 84      LDA HI,X    ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
60A0: 85 1B 85      STA HIGH
60A2: BD 8C 61 86      LDA LO,X
60A5: 85 1A 87      STA LOW
60A7: AE 03 60 88      LDX XCOUNT ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
60AA: B1 1A 89      LDA (LOW),Y ;GET BYTE FROM SCREEN
60AC: 5D C6 60 90      EOR SHAPE,X ;EOR BYTE FROM SHAPE ADDRESS+X
60AF: 91 1A 91      STA (LOW),Y ;PLOT BYTE
60B1: EE 03 60 92      INC XCOUNT
60B4: EE 05 60 93      INC LINE      ;NEXT LINE
60B7: AD 05 60 94      LDA LINE
60BA: CD 07 60 95      CMP DEPTH    ;FINISH SHAPE?
60BD: 90 D8 96      BLT DRAW1     ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
60BF: AD 06 60 97      LDA LINEA    ;IF YES, RESET LINE
60C2: 8D 05 60 98      STA LINE      AND GO TO NEXT
60C5: 60 99          RTS DRAW      CYCLE
60C6: 14 2A 2A 100  SHAPE  HEX 142A2A2A1414 ;SHAPE TABLE
60C9: 2A 14 14

```

HI
LO

588 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
SDEPTH	=\$6009	PGM	=\$600A	CLR1	=\$601E	CLR	=\$6022
ST	=\$6040	START	=\$605C	START1	=\$605F	INITIAL	=\$607E
DRAW	=\$6092	DRAW1	=\$6097	SHAPE	=\$60C6	HI	=\$60CC
LO	=\$618C	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

In all these cases, the background can be restored by EORing the shape byte, but clearly we need to modify the draw routine to allow the shapes to retain their colors. The technique we're going to use is a slight modification of the protocol presented in Program 14-3. We load the background byte with LDA (LOW),Y and store it in BACK with STA BACK,X. Next, we load the Accumulator, not with the shape byte but rather with a white dummy shape, and use this for the EOR #\$7F and AND BACK,X. We then ORA the color shape and plot. The background is restored from BACK in the XDRAW routine. This technique is used in the following program (Program 14-5) to draw a green shape over a violet background.

]PROGRAM 14-5
:ASM

```

1      * COLOR SHAPE & BACKGROUND * COLOR RETAINED
2      *****
3      *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 6 BYTES DEEP
4      *****
5
6000: 4C 10 60 6      ORG $6000
7                  JMP PGM
8      XCOUNT DS 1
9      BYTE DS 1
10     LINE DS 1
11     LINEA DS 1
12     DEPTH DS 1
13     DELAY DS 1
14     SDEPTH DS 1
15     BACK DS 6
16     GRAPHICS = $C050
17     MIXOFF = $C052
18     HIRES = $C057
19     PAGE1 = $C054
20     HIGH = $1B
21     LOW = $1A
22     WAIT = $FCA8
23     PGM LDA GRAPHICS ;HIRES,P.1
24     LDA MIXOFF
25     LDA HIRES
26     LDA PAGE1
27     LDA #$00 ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
28     STA LOW
29     LDA #$20
30     STA HIGH
31     CLR1 LDY #$00
32     CLR LDA #$00
33     STA (LOW),Y
34     INY
35     BNE CLR
36     INC HIGH
37     LDA HIGH
38     CMP #$40
39     BLT CLR1
40     LDA #$80 ;LOAD TIME DELAY
41     STA DELAY
42     ** DRAW VIOLET BOX
43     LDA #$5A
44     STA SDEPTH
45     LDY #$10
46     LDA #$50
47     STA LINE

```

```

6046: AE 05 60 47 ST      LDX LINE
6049: BD 15 61 48      LDA HI,X
604C: 85 1B 49      STA HIGH
604E: BD D5 61 50      LDA LO,X
6051: 85 1A 51      STA LOW
6053: A9 55 52      LDA #$55
6055: 91 1A 53      STA (LOW),Y
6057: EE 05 60 54      INC LINE
605A: AD 05 60 55      LDA LINE
605D: CD 09 60 56      CMP SDEPTH
6060: 90 E4 57      BLT ST
58 ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6062: 20 84 60 59 START JSR INITIAL ;SETUP BYTE,LINE & DEPTH
6065: 20 98 60 60 START1 JSR DRAW ;DRAW SHAPE
6068: AD 08 60 61      LDA DELAY ;DELAY
606B: 20 A8 FC 62      JSR WAIT
606E: 20 D7 60 63      JSR XDRAW ;ERASE SHAPE
6071: EE 07 60 64      INC DEPTH ;NEXT DEPTH
6074: EE 06 60 65      INC LINEA & NEXT LINE
6077: AD 06 60 66      LDA LINEA
607A: 8D 05 60 67      STA LINE
607D: C9 BB 68      CMP #$BB ;IS LINE AT BOTTOM OF SCREEN?
607F: B0 E1 69      BGE START ;IF YES, DRAW FROM INITIAL VALUES
6081: 4C 65 60 70      JMP START1 ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
71 ***** SUBROUTINES *****
6084: A9 10 72 INITIAL LDA #$10
6086: 8D 04 60 73      STA BYTE ;SET STARTING BYTE
6089: A9 00 74      LDA #$00
608B: 8D 05 60 75      STA LINE ;SET STARTING LINE
608E: 8D 06 60 76      STA LINEA
6091: 18 77      CLC
6092: 69 06 78      ADC #$06 ;ADD DEPTH OF SHAPE TO LINE
6094: 8D 07 60 79      STA DEPTH
6097: 60 80      RTS
6098: A9 00 81 DRAW LDA #$00
609A: 8D 03 60 82      STA XCOUNT ;ZERO XCOUNT
609D: AC 04 60 83 DRAW1 LDY BYTE ;LOAD BYTE
60A0: AE 05 60 84      LDX LINE ;LOAD LINE
60A3: BD 15 61 85      LDA HI,X ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
60A6: 85 1B 86      STA HIGH
60A8: BD D5 61 87      LDA LO,X
60AB: 85 1A 88      STA LOW
60AD: AE 03 60 89      LDX XCOUNT
60B0: B1 1A 90      LDA (LOW),Y ;GET SCREEN BYTE
60B2: 9D 0A 60 91      STA BACK,X ;SAVE BACKGROUND
60B5: BD 0F 61 92      LDA WSHAPE,X ;LOAD WHITE SHAPE
60B8: 49 7F 93      EOR #$7F
60BA: 3D 0A 60 94      AND BACK,X
60BD: 1D 09 61 95      ORA SHAPE,X ;ORA COLOR SHAPE
60C0: 91 1A 96      STA (LOW),Y ;PLOT
60C2: EE 03 60 97      INC XCOUNT
60C5: EE 05 60 98      INC LINE ;NEXT LINE
60C8: AD 05 60 99      LDA LINE
60CB: CD 07 60 100     CMP DEPTH ;FINISH SHAPE?
60CE: 90 CD 101     BLT DRAW1 ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
60D0: AD 06 60 102     LDA LINEA ;IF YES, RESET LINE
60D3: 8D 05 60 103     STA LINE AND GO TO NEXT
60D6: 60 104     RTS DRAW CYCLE
60D7: A9 00 105 XDRAW LDA #$00
60D9: 8D 03 60 106     STA XCOUNT
60DC: AE 05 60 107 XDRAW1 LDX LINE

```

```

60DF: AC 04 60 108      LDY  BYTE
60E2: BD 15 61 109      LDA  HI,X
60E5: 85 1B      110      STA  HIGH
60E7: BD D5 61 111      LDA  LO,X
60EA: 85 1A      112      STA  LOW
60EC: AE 03 60 113      LDX  XCOUNT
60EF: BD 0A 60 114      LDA  BACK,X
60F2: 91 1A      115      STA  (LOW),Y
60F4: EE 03 60 116      INC  XCOUNT
60F7: EE 05 60 117      INC  LINE
60FA: AD 05 60 118      LDA  LINE
60FD: CD 07 60 119      CMP  DEPTH
6100: 90 DA      120      BLT  XDRAW1
6102: AD 06 60 121      LDA  LINEA
6105: 8D 05 60 122      STA  LINE
6108: 60      123      RTS
6109: 28 28 28 124  SHAPE  HEX  282828282828 ;SHAPE TABLE
610C: 28 28 28
610F: 7C 7C 7C 125  WSHAPE  HEX  7C7C7C7C7C7C ;WHITE SHAPE TABLE
6112: 7C 7C 7C

```

HI
LO

661 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
SDEPTH	=\$6009	BACK	=\$600A	PGM	=\$6010	CLR1	=\$6024
CLR	=\$6028	ST	=\$6046	START	=\$6062	START1	=\$6065
INITIAL	=\$6084	DRAW	=\$6098	DRAW1	=\$609D	XDRAW	=\$60D7
XDRAW1	=\$60DC	SHAPE	=\$6109	WSHAPE	=\$610F	HI	=\$6115
LO	=\$61D5	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	WAIT	=\$FCA8				

Let's examine the details to see how the program works.

Violet background	1 0 1 0 1 0 1	#\$55
Green shape	0 0 0 1 0 1 0	#\$28
White dummy shape	0 0 1 1 1 1 1	#\$7C
White shape	0 0 1 1 1 1 1	
EOR #\$7F	1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
Result	1 1 0 0 0 0 0	
AND violet background	1 0 1 0 1 0 1	
Result	1 0 0 0 0 0 0	
ORA green shape	0 0 0 1 0 1 0	
Result	1 0 0 1 0 1 0	
	black	

The result is a green shape over a violet background. This is what we want—the colors are retained—but notice that the shape now has a black

border. This is not a great problem. If you run Program 14-5, you'll see that the border actually sets off the shape quite nicely. Eliminating the border is really not necessary for most situations and in fact an equally pleasing effect can be achieved by changing the border to white. All that's required is changing the white dummy shape. For example:

Violet background	1 0 1 0 1 0 1	#\$55
Green shape	0 0 0 1 0 1 0	#\$28
White dummy shape	0 0 0 1 1 1 1	#\$78
White shape	0 0 0 1 1 1 1	
EOR #\$7F	1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
Result	1 1 1 0 0 0 0	
AND violet background	1 0 1 0 1 0 1	
Result	1 0 1 0 0 0 0	
ORA green shape	0 0 0 1 0 1 0	
Result	1 0 1 1 0 1 0	
	white	

This technique works for drawing any color over a white background and for any color (including white) over any other color background, unless the color combinations involve high-bit-set and high-bit-not-set colors. You can't draw a violet shape over a blue background, for example, because the plotted byte either has the high bit set or not.

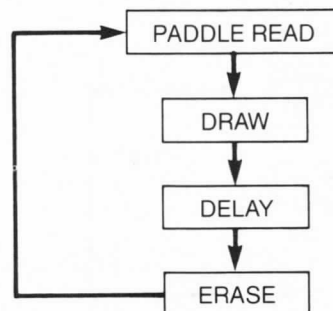
Advanced Paddle (Joystick) Routines

*I'm really in a bit of a fix—
I need a limerick like a magician needs tricks.
But I'm lazy today
So I'll take the easy way—
Just read the one in Chapter 6.*

The paddle routine in the game program works okay for its stated purpose, but let's see how we can use our assembly language expertise to improve on it and at the same time exercise our programming skills. First, we'll discuss how to minimize flicker by introducing a paddle movement test, and then we'll go on to a paddle-smoothing routine that prevents instantaneous movement of the paddle-controlled shape.

TESTING FOR NON-MOVEMENT OF PADDLE

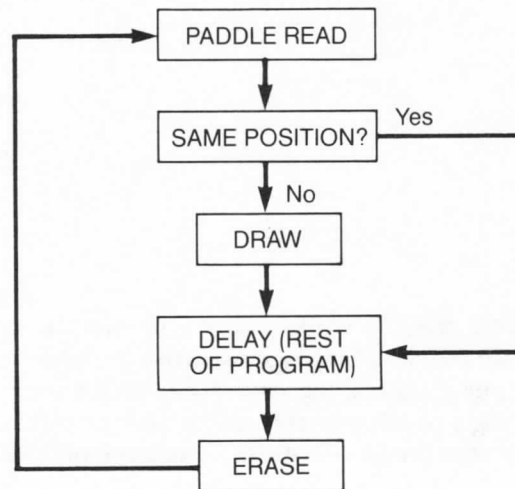
Let's consider Program 6-1, where the vertical movement of a shape is controlled by a paddle. The overall scheme can be represented as follows:



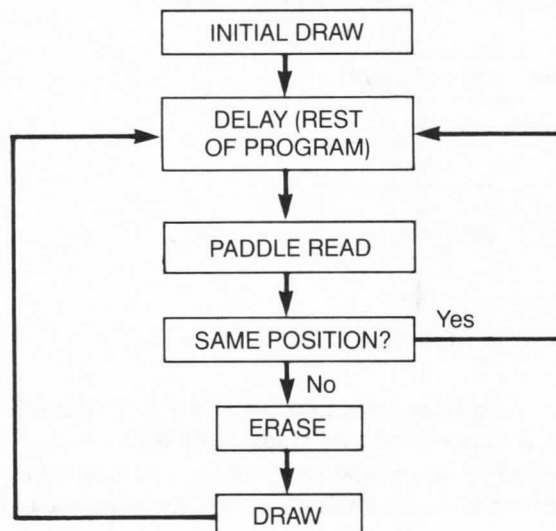
In the game program, "DELAY" can be replaced by "REST OF PROGRAM", because everything else is executed between paddle reads. Now if you look at the man shape in the game program or the shape in Program 6-1, when the shapes are stationary, flicker is evident. As mentioned before, the amount of

flicker depends to a large extent on the image retention characteristics of the monitor or TV. The reason for the flickering is the delay between paddle reads; the longer the delay (or the larger the program code between reads) the greater the flickering. Note also that the flickering is noticeable only when the shape is stationary, i.e., when the paddle position is not changed, and this leads us to the solution to the problem. In the scheme diagrammed above, the shape is drawn and erased continuously, even if the paddle position stays the same. What we need to do then is introduce a test for paddle movement—if the paddle is not moved, the draw-erase cycle will be bypassed, the shape will stay on the screen at the position determined by the paddle, and flicker will be totally eliminated.

If we try to introduce this test using the scheme above, we run into trouble, because the shape is erased before each paddle read and so if the paddle isn't moved, the shape will not be displayed.



We could get around this by using a DRAW-DRAW routine, but this presents its own problems which we'll get to later. To perform the test with a DRAW-ERASE routine, we have to modify our usual draw-erase cycle to an erase-draw cycle preceded by an initial draw outside the main loop; that is:

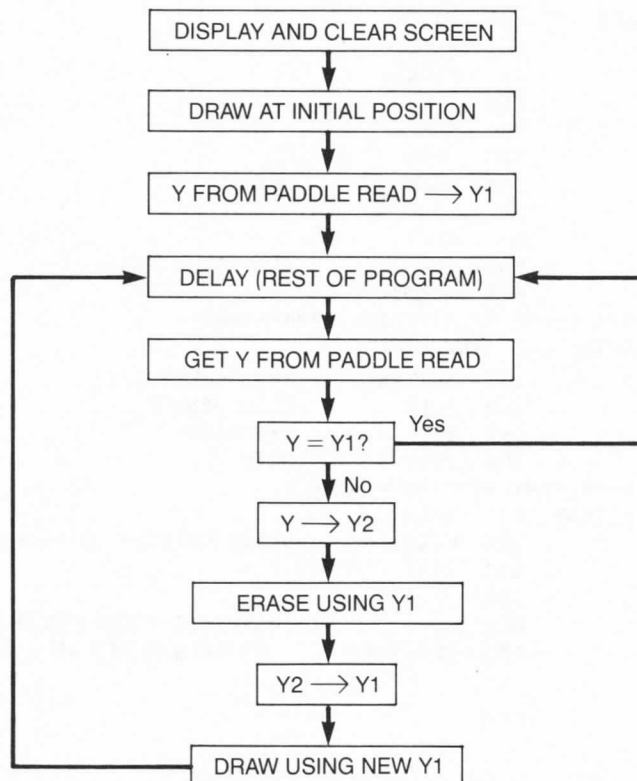


As you can see, the shape is erased and drawn only when the paddle position changes—if it stays the same, the erase-draw routine is bypassed entirely. Note that the shape is drawn, not erased, before the paddle read and test and so always stays on the screen. This scheme is incorporated into the following program (Program 15-1) which is the same as Program 6-1, except for the paddle movement test.

In the MAIN PROGRAM of Program 15-1, we draw the shape initially using a specified screen byte position (defined in the INITIAL subroutine) and a screen line specified by the PDLE subroutine; in this subroutine we also store the Y value returned from PREAD in Y1. The program then proceeds into the main loop, starting with a delay (or rest of program) and then a paddle read. The Y value returned from PREAD is compared to Y1—if equal, it means the paddle position hasn't changed and the program loops back to the delay (rest of program) without erasing and redrawing the shape. Voila, no flicker, or, as they say in French, *voila*, no flicker.

If Y is not equal to Y1, the paddle position has moved, so we want to erase and then redraw the shape at the new position specified by the paddle read. First, we store the Y value from PREAD temporarily in Y2 and then jump to PLOT to erase the shape using Y1 (the original Y value from the last draw). The value in Y2 is then placed in Y1 and another jump to PLOT draws the shape using the Y value from the last PREAD. In other words, Y1 is used for erasing and Y2 for drawing, then Y2 is placed in Y1 in preparation for the next cycle. After the draw, the program loops to the delay (rest of program), and so on and on and on.

Compare Programs 6-1 and 15-1. The absence of flicker is quite noticeable and quite an improvement, and would be even more so in programs with lots of code between paddle reads.



]PROGRAM 15-1

:ASM

```

1  * PADDLE MOVE TEST * VERTICAL
2  *****
3  *SHAPE IS 1 BYTE WIDE BY 6 BYTES DEEP
4  *****
5          ORG  $6000
6000: 4C 0B 60 6  JMP  PGM
7          XCOUNT DS  1
8          BYTE    DS  1
9          LINE     DS  1
10         LINEA    DS  1
11         DEPTH    DS  1
12         DELAY    DS  1
13         Y1       DS  1
14         Y2       DS  1
15         GRAPHICS =  $C050
16         MIXOFF   =  $C052
17         HIRES    =  $C057
18         PAGE1    =  $C054
19         HIGH     =  $1B
20         LOW      =  $1A
21         WAIT     =  $FCA8
22         PREAD    =  $FB1E
600B: AD 50 C0 23  PGM    LDA  GRAPHICS    ;HIRES,P.1
600E: AD 52 C0 24          LDA  MIXOFF
6011: AD 57 C0 25          LDA  HIRES
6014: AD 54 C0 26          LDA  PAGE1
6017: A9 00 27          LDA  #$00          ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
6019: 85 1A 28          STA  LOW
601B: A9 20 29          LDA  #$20
601D: 85 1B 30          STA  HIGH
601F: A0 00 31  CLR1    LDY  #$00
6021: A9 00 32          LDA  #$00
6023: 91 1A 33  CLR     STA  (LOW),Y
6025: C8 34          INY
6026: D0 FB 35          BNE  CLR
6028: E6 1B 36          INC  HIGH
602A: A5 1B 37          LDA  HIGH
602C: C9 40 38          CMP  #$40
602E: 90 EF 39          BLT  CLR1
6030: A9 40 40          LDA  #$40          ;LOAD TIME DELAY
6032: 8D 08 60 41      STA  DELAY
42  ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
43  ** INITIAL DRAW **
6035: 20 76 60 44          JSR  INITIAL    ;SET SCREEN BYTE
6038: 20 89 60 45          JSR  PDLE      ;READ PADDLE 1
603B: 20 7C 60 46          JSR  DEP       ;SET DEPTH
603E: 20 9C 60 47          JSR  DRAW      ;DRAW
48  *****
6041: AD 08 60 49  PROGRAM LDA  DELAY
6044: 20 A8 FC 50          JSR  WAIT      ;DELAY OR REST OF PROGRAM
6047: A2 01 51          LDX  #$01
6049: 20 1E FB 52          JSR  PREAD
604C: CC 09 60 53          CPY  Y1        ;IF PADDLE HASN'T MOVED, DO NOT
604F: F0 F0 54          BEQ  PROGRAM      ERASE AND REDRAW SHAPE

```



```

6051: 8C 0A 60 55      STY Y2          ;IF PADDLE HAS MOVED, STORE Y IN
6054: 20 63 60 56      JSR PLOT          Y2 AND ERASE USING Y1
6057: AD 0A 60 57      LDA Y2          ;TRANSFER Y2 TO Y1
605A: 8D 09 60 58      STA Y1          AND
605D: 20 63 60 59      JSR PLOT          DRAW
6060: 4C 41 60 60      JMP PROGRAM
61
***** SUBROUTINES *****
6063: AD 09 60 62      PLOT LDA Y1
6066: C9 BB 63          CMP #$BB
6068: 90 02 64          BLT CONT1
606A: A9 BA 65          LDA #$BA
606C: 8D 05 60 66      CONT1 STA LINE
606F: 20 7C 60 67      JSR DEP
6072: 20 9C 60 68      JSR DRAW
6075: 60 69            RTS
70
*****
6076: A9 10 71          INITIAL LDA #$10
6078: 8D 04 60 72      STA BYTE          ;SET STARTING BYTE
607B: 60 73            RTS
74
*****
607C: AD 05 60 75      DEP LDA LINE          ;SET DEPTH
607F: 8D 06 60 76      STA LINEA
6082: 18 77            CLC
6083: 69 06 78          ADC #$06
6085: 8D 07 60 79      STA DEPTH
6088: 60 80            RTS
81
*****
6089: A2 01 82          PDLE LDX #$01          ;READ PADDLE 1
608B: 20 1E FB 83      JSR PREAD          ;0-255 IN Y
608E: 8C 09 60 84      STY Y1          ;STORE Y IN Y1
6091: C0 BB 85          CPY #$BB          ;CLIP TO 0-186
6093: 90 03 86          BLT CONT
6095: A9 BA 87          LDA #$BA
6097: A8 88            TAY
6098: 8C 05 60 89      CONT STY LINE          ;0-186 IN LINE
609B: 60 90            RTS
91
*****
609C: A9 00 92          DRAW LDA #$00
609E: 8D 03 60 93      STA XCOUNT          ;ZERO XCOUNT
60A1: AC 04 60 94      DRAW1 LDY BYTE          ;LOAD BYTE
60A4: AE 05 60 95      LDX LINE          ;LOAD LINE
60A7: BD D6 60 96      LDA HI,X          ;LOAD LINE ADDRESS INTO HIGH,LOW
60AA: 85 1B 97          STA HIGH
60AC: BD 96 61 98      LDA LO,X
60AF: 85 1A 99          STA LOW
60B1: AE 03 60 100     LDX XCOUNT          ;LOAD X WITH XCOUNT
60B4: B1 1A 101        LDA (LOW),Y          ;GET BYTE FROM SCREEN
60B6: 5D D0 60 102     EOR SHAPE,X          ;EOR BYTE FROM SHAPE ADDRESS+X
60B9: 91 1A 103        STA (LOW),Y          ;PLOT BYTE
60BB: EE 03 60 104     INC XCOUNT
60BE: EE 05 60 105     INC LINE          ;NEXT LINE
60C1: AD 05 60 106     LDA LINE
60C4: CD 07 60 107     CMP DEPTH          ;FINISH SHAPE?
60C7: 90 D8 108        BLT DRAW1          ;IF NO, DRAW NEXT LINE
60C9: AD 06 60 109     LDA LINEA          ;IF YES, RESET LINE AND
60CC: 8D 05 60 110     STA LINE          DRAW NEXT CYCLE
60CF: 60 111          RTS

```

```
60D0: 08 1C 22 112 SHAPE    HEX 081C223E227F ;SHAPE TABLE
60D3: 3E 22 7F
```

HI
LO

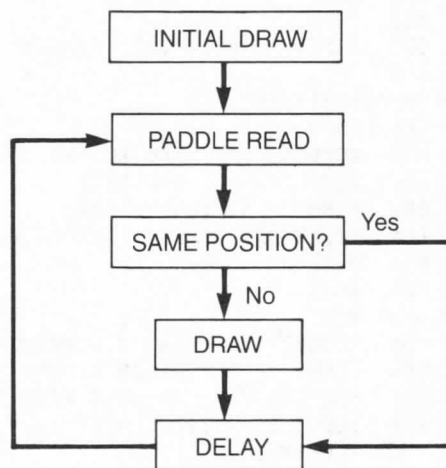
598 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	XCOUNT	=\$6003	BYTE	=\$6004
LINE	=\$6005	LINEA	=\$6006	DEPTH	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
Y1	=\$6009	Y2	=\$600A	PGM	=\$600B	CLR1	=\$601F
CLR	=\$6023	PROGRAM	=\$6041	PLOT	=\$6063	CONT1	=\$606C
INITIAL	=\$6076	DEP	=\$607C	PDLE	=\$6089	CONT	=\$6098
DRAW	=\$609C	DRAW1	=\$60A1	SHAPE	=\$60D0	HI	=\$60D6
LO	=\$6196	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052	PAGE1	=\$C054
HIRES	=\$C057	PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8		

PADDLE-SMOOTHING ROUTINES

As mentioned above, using a DRAW-DRAW routine would simplify things somewhat, because without an erase routine, the shape will always be on the screen. For example, we could use the following scheme:



However, there is a problem with paddle routines using DRAW-DRAW. Remember that DRAW-DRAW erases by redrawing over a previous position. For vertical movement, a border of #00's equal to the maximum shape move must be included in the shape tables. For horizontal movement, a trailing byte #00 may be needed, depending on how the shape is drawn. If the jump in position from one paddle read to the next is greater than the border in vertical movement, or larger than one byte in horizontal movement, then shape fragments will be left on the screen. Because the paddle routines we've used so far provide for virtually instantaneous movement, moving the paddle (or more easily the joystick) rapidly does produce large jumps. Try this with Program 6-1. Introduce a border of size 5 or so and convert to a DRAW-DRAW routine; then move the paddle slowly—okay. Then move it rapidly—interesting pattern, no? The solution to this problem (aside from huge, unworkable borders or movement limiters on your paddles) is to limit the maximum shape move regardless of paddle movement. This not only eliminates the DRAW-DRAW problem, but also provides for a smoother, more pleasing effect. In the next program (Program 15-2), we're going to modify Program 6-2 (horizontal movement of the man shape) by limiting the movement to a maximum of 5 bit positions at a time.

Program 15-2 is the same as Program 6-2 except for the PDLE subroutine, so we'll limit our discussion to that part of the program. Examining the flowchart will make this discussion easier to follow. The flowchart for Program 15-2 is on page 294. The two salient memory storage locations are MHORIZ, which contains the Y value used to calculate the shape position, and PDL, which contains the Y value from the most current paddle read.

If MHORIZ is larger than PDL, we want to subtract 5 from MHORIZ but not go below zero. After the subtraction, if MHORIZ is \geq PDL, we continue with the program and use MHORIZ to calculate the new shape position. If $\text{MHORIZ} < \text{PDL}$, we don't want to go beyond the paddle position, so we set MHORIZ equal to PDL and then continue with the shape draw. If MHORIZ initially equals PDL, we set MHORIZ equal to PDL and continue. If MHORIZ is initially smaller than PDL, we add 5 to MHORIZ but only if it is below 250 so that we don't go beyond 255. After adding 5, if $\text{MHORIZ} > \text{PDL}$ we set MHORIZ equal to PDL, again not to go beyond the paddle position. All this occurs just once each cycle, thus limiting the shape movement to a maximum of 5 bit positions in either direction.

]PROGRAM 15-2

:ASM

	1	*PADDLE OR JOYSTICK CONTROL OF HORIZONTAL MOVEMENT
	2	*PADDLE SMOOTHING ROUTINE
	3	ORG \$6000
6000: 4C 40 60	4	JMP PGM
	5	LINE DS 1
	6	LINEA DS 1
	7	DEPTH DS 1
	8	HORIZ DS 1
	9	XCOUNT DS 1
	10	DELAY DS 1
	11	TEMP DS 39
	12	PDL DS 1
	13	MHORIZ DS 1
	14	GRAPHICS = \$C050
	15	MIXOFF = \$C052
	16	HIRES = \$C057
	17	PAGE1 = \$C054
	18	HIGH = \$1B
	19	LOW = \$1A

```

20 WAIT      =    $FCA8
21 PREAD     =    $FB1E
22 *LOAD SHAPE ADDRESSES INTO SHPADR, LOW BYTE FIRST
23 *CONTINUE FOR ALL 7 SHAPES
6032: 5A      24 SHPADR   DFB  #<SHAPE1
6033: 61      25          DFB  #>SHAPE1
6034: 81      26          DFB  #<SHAPE2
6035: 61      27          DFB  #>SHAPE2
6036: A8      28          DFB  #<SHAPE3
6037: 61      29          DFB  #>SHAPE3
6038: CF      30          DFB  #<SHAPE4
6039: 61      31          DFB  #>SHAPE4
603A: F6      32          DFB  #<SHAPE5
603B: 61      33          DFB  #>SHAPE5
603C: 1D      34          DFB  #<SHAPE6
603D: 62      35          DFB  #>SHAPE6
603E: 44      36          DFB  #<SHAPE7
603F: 62      37          DFB  #>SHAPE7
6040: AD 50 C0 38 PGM      LDA  GRAPHICS    ;HIRES,P.1
6043: AD 52 C0 39          LDA  MIXOFF
6046: AD 57 C0 40          LDA  HIRES
6049: AD 54 C0 41          LDA  PAGE1
604C: A9 00     42          LDA  #$00        ;CLEAR SCREEN 1
604E: 85 1A     43          STA  LOW
6050: A9 20     44          LDA  #$20
6052: 85 1B     45          STA  HIGH
6054: A0 00     46 CLR1     LDY  #$00
6056: A9 00     47          LDA  #$00
6058: 91 1A     48 CLR      STA  (LOW),Y
605A: C8        49          INY
605B: D0 FB     50          BNE  CLR
605D: E6 1B     51          INC  HIGH
605F: A5 1B     52          LDA  HIGH
6061: C9 40     53          CMP  #$40
6063: 90 EF     54          BLT  CLR1
6065: A9 60     55          LDA  #$60        ;LOAD DELAY
6067: 8D 08 60 56          STA  DELAY
606A: A2 B7     57          LDX  #$B7        ;DRAW LINE
606C: A0 00     58          LDY  #$00
606E: BD 71 64 59          LDA  HI,X
6071: 85 1B     60          STA  HIGH
6073: BD 31 65 61          LDA  LO,X
6076: 85 1A     62          STA  LOW
6078: A9 7F     63          LDA  #$7F
607A: 91 1A     64 LN       STA  (LOW),Y
607C: C8        65          INY
607D: C0 27     66          CPY  #$27
607F: 90 F9     67          BLT  LN
6081: 20 96 60 68          ***** MAIN PROGRAM *****
6084: 20 A5 60 70 PADDLE   JSR  INIT          ;SET LINE & DEPTH
6087: 20 10 61 71          JSR  PDLE         ;READ PADDLE 0
608A: AD 08 60 72          JSR  DRAW         ;DRAW
608D: 20 A8 FC 73          LDA  DELAY
6090: 20 10 61 74          JSR  WAIT         ;DELAY
6093: 4C 84 60 75          JSR  DRAW         ;ERASE
                                JMP  PADDLE     ;READ PADDLE AGAIN

```

```

***** SUBROUTINES *****
6096: A9 AA 76 INIT LDA #$AA
6098: 8D 03 60 77 STA LINE
609B: 8D 04 60 78 STA LINEA
609E: 18 80 CLC
609F: 69 0D 81 ADC #$0D
60A1: 8D 05 60 82 STA DEPTH
60A4: 60 83 RTS
84 *****
60A5: A2 00 85 PDLE LDX #$00
60A7: 20 1E FB 86 JSR PREAD ;READ PADDLE 0
60AA: 8C 30 60 87 STY PDL
60AD: 98 88 TYA
60AE: CD 31 60 89 CMP MHORIZ ;IF MHORIZ > PDL,
60B1: 90 20 90 BLT PADDLE3 SUBTRACT 5 FROM MHORIZ
60B3: CD 31 60 91 CMP MHORIZ ;IF MHORIZ = PDL,
60B6: F0 12 92 BEQ PADDLE1 SET MHORIZ = PDL
60B8: AD 31 60 93 LDA MHORIZ ;IF MHORIZ < PDL,
60BB: C9 FA 94 CMP #$FA BUT >= 250,
60BD: B0 0B 95 BGE PADDLE1 SET MHORIZ = PDL
60BF: AD 31 60 96 LDA MHORIZ ;IF < 250, ADD 5 TO MHORIZ
60C2: 18 97 CLC
60C3: 69 05 98 ADC #$05
60C5: CD 30 60 99 CMP PDL ;DON'T GO PAST PDL POSITION
60C8: 90 03 100 BLT PADDLE2
60CA: AD 30 60 101 PADDLE1 LDA PDL
60CD: 8D 31 60 102 PADDLE2 STA MHORIZ
60D0: 4C EB 60 103 JMP PADDLE5
60D3: AD 31 60 104 PADDLE3 LDA MHORIZ ;SUBTRACT 5 FROM MHORIZ
60D6: 38 105 SEC
60D7: E9 05 106 SBC #$05
60D9: B0 05 107 BGE PADDLE4 ;BRANCH IF >= 0
60DB: A9 00 108 LDA #$00 ;IF < 0,
60DD: 8D 31 60 109 STA MHORIZ SET MHORIZ = 0
60E0: CD 30 60 110 PADDLE4 CMP PDL ;DON'T GO PAST PDL POSITION
60E3: B0 E8 111 BGE PADDLE2
60E5: AD 30 60 112 LDA PDL
60E8: 4C CD 60 113 JMP PADDLE2
60EB: AC 31 60 114 PADDLE5 LDY MHORIZ
60EE: B9 6B 62 115 LDA BYTETBL,Y ;CONVERT TO SCREEN BYTE (0 - 36)
60F1: 8D 06 60 116 STA HORIZ
60F4: B9 6E 63 117 LDA OFFSET,Y ;GET SHAPE NUMBER
60F7: 0A 118 ASL ;LOAD SHAPE INTO TEMP
60F8: AA 119 TAX
60F9: BD 32 60 120 LDA SHPADR,X
60FC: 85 1A 121 STA LOW
60FE: BD 33 60 122 LDA SHPADR+1,X
6101: 85 1B 123 STA HIGH
6103: A0 00 124 LDY #$00
6105: B1 1A 125 LOAD LDA (LOW),Y
6107: 99 09 60 126 STA TEMP,Y
610A: C8 127 INY
610B: C0 27 128 CPY #$27
610D: 90 F6 129 BLT LOAD
610F: 60 130 RTS

```

```

131 *****
6110: A9 00      132 DRAW    LDA  #$00
6112: 8D 07 60   133          STA  XCOUNT
6115: AE 03 60   134 DRAW1   LDX  LINE
6118: AC 06 60   135          LDY  HORIZ
611B: BD 71 64   136          LDA  HI,X
611E: 85 1B      137          STA  HIGH
6120: BD 31 65   138          LDA  LO,X
6123: 85 1A      139          STA  LOW
6125: AE 07 60   140          LDX  XCOUNT
6128: B1 1A      141          LDA  (LOW),Y
612A: 5D 09 60   142          EOR  TEMP,X
612D: 91 1A      143          STA  (LOW),Y
612F: C8         144          INY
6130: B1 1A      145          LDA  (LOW),Y
6132: 5D 0A 60   146          EOR  TEMP+1,X
6135: 91 1A      147          STA  (LOW),Y
6137: C8         148          INY
6138: B1 1A      149          LDA  (LOW),Y
613A: 5D 0B 60   150          EOR  TEMP+2,X
613D: 91 1A      151          STA  (LOW),Y
613F: EE 07 60   152          INC  XCOUNT
6142: EE 07 60   153          INC  XCOUNT
6145: EE 07 60   154          INC  XCOUNT
6148: EE 03 60   155          INC  LINE
614B: AD 03 60   156          LDA  LINE
614E: CD 05 60   157          CMP  DEPTH
6151: 90 C2      158          BLT  DRAW1
6153: AD 04 60   159          LDA  LINEA      ;RESET LINE
6156: 8D 03 60   160          STA  LINE
6159: 60         161          RTS
615A: 00 0E 01   162 SHAPE1  HEX  000E01000E01000E01 ;SHAPE TABLES
615D: 00 0E 01 00 0E 01
6163: 00 44 01   163          HEX  004401007F00601F00
6166: 00 7F 00 60 1F 00
616C: 30 1F 00   164          HEX  301F00181F00001F00
616F: 18 1F 00 00 1F 00
6175: 00 1F 00   165          HEX  001F00001B00403100
6178: 00 1B 00 40 31 00
617E: 60 60 00   166          HEX  606000
6181: 00 1C 02   167 SHAPE2  HEX  001C02001C02001C02
6184: 00 1C 02 00 1C 02
618A: 00 08 03   168          HEX  000803007E01003E00
618D: 00 7E 01 00 3E 00
6193: 00 3F 00   169          HEX  003F00403F00003E00
6196: 40 3F 00 00 3E 00
619C: 00 3E 00   170          HEX  003E00003600003600
619F: 00 36 00 00 36 00
61A5: 00 63 00   171          HEX  006300
61A8: 00 38 04   172 SHAPE3  HEX  003804003804003804
61AB: 00 38 04 00 38 04
61B1: 00 10 06   173          HEX  001006007C03007C00
61B4: 00 7C 03 00 7C 00
61BA: 00 7C 00   174          HEX  007C00007E00007C00
61BD: 00 7E 00 00 7C 00

```

```

61C3: 00 38 00 175      HEX 003800003800006C00
61C6: 00 38 00 00 6C 00
61CC: 00 46 01 176      HEX 004601
61CF: 00 70 08 177  SHAPE4  HEX 007008007008007008
61D2: 00 70 08 00 70 08
61D8: 00 20 0C 178      HEX 00200C007807007801
61DB: 00 78 07 00 78 01
61E1: 00 78 01 179      HEX 007801007801007801
61E4: 00 78 01 00 78 01
61EA: 00 70 00 180      HEX 007000007000007000
61ED: 00 70 00 00 70 00
61F3: 00 70 00 181      HEX 007000
61F6: 00 60 11 182  SHAPE5  HEX 006011006011006011
61F9: 00 60 11 00 60 11
61FF: 00 40 18 183      HEX 00401800700F007003
6202: 00 70 0F 00 70 03
6208: 00 70 03 184      HEX 007003007803007003
620B: 00 78 03 00 70 03
6211: 00 60 01 185      HEX 006001006001003003
6214: 00 60 01 00 30 03
621A: 00 18 06 186      HEX 001806
621D: 00 40 23 187  SHAPE6  HEX 004023004023004023
6220: 00 40 23 00 40 23
6226: 00 00 31 188      HEX 00003100601F006007
6229: 00 60 1F 00 60 07
622F: 00 70 07 189      HEX 007007007807006007
6232: 00 78 07 00 60 07
6238: 00 60 07 190      HEX 006007006006006006
623B: 00 60 06 00 60 06
6241: 00 30 0C 191      HEX 00300C
6244: 00 00 47 192  SHAPE7  HEX 000047000047000047
6247: 00 00 47 00 00 47
624D: 00 00 62 193      HEX 00006200403F00700F
6250: 00 40 3F 00 70 0F
6256: 00 58 0F 194      HEX 00580F004C0F00400F
6259: 00 4C 0F 00 40 0F
625F: 00 40 0F 195      HEX 00400F00400D006018
6262: 00 40 0D 00 60 18
6268: 00 30 30 196      HEX 003030

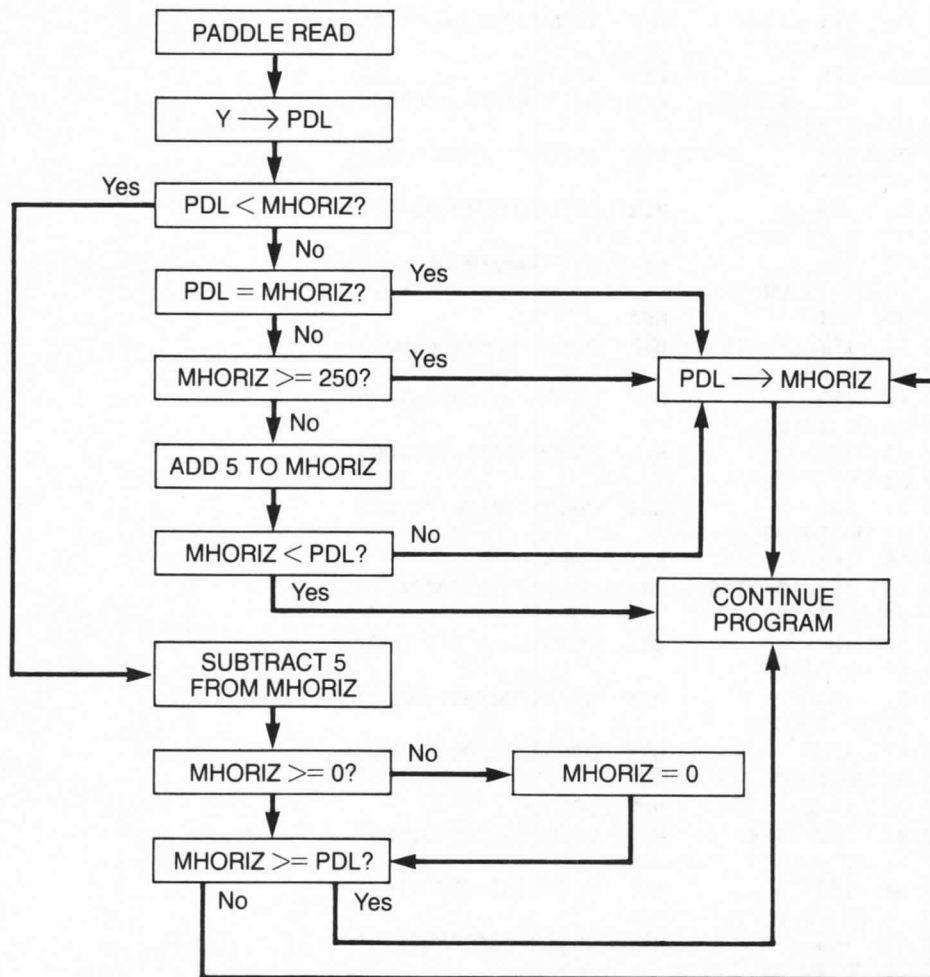
```

BYTETBL
 OFFSET
 HI
 LO

1521 bytes

Symbol table - numerical order:

LOW	=\$1A	HIGH	=\$1B	LINE	=\$6003	LINEA	=\$6004
DEPTH	=\$6005	HORIZ	=\$6006	XCOUNT	=\$6007	DELAY	=\$6008
TEMP	=\$6009	PDL	=\$6030	MHORIZ	=\$6031	SHPADR	=\$6032
PGM	=\$6040	CLR1	=\$6054	CLR	=\$6058	LN	=\$607A
PADDLE	=\$6084	INIT	=\$6096	PDLE	=\$60A5	PADDLE1	=\$60CA
PADDLE2	=\$60CD	PADDLE3	=\$60D3	PADDLE4	=\$60E0	PADDLE5	=\$60EB
LOAD	=\$6105	DRAW	=\$6110	DRAW1	=\$6115	SHAPE1	=\$615A
SHAPE2	=\$6181	SHAPE3	=\$61A8	SHAPE4	=\$61CF	SHAPE5	=\$61F6
SHAPE6	=\$621D	SHAPE7	=\$6244	BYTETBL	=\$626B	OFFSET	=\$636E
HI	=\$6471	LO	=\$6531	GRAPHICS	=\$C050	MIXOFF	=\$C052
PAGE1	=\$C054	HIRES	=\$C057	PREAD	=\$FB1E	WAIT	=\$FCA8



Run Program 15-2 and compare it to Program 6-2. I think you'll agree the effect is more pleasing and is reminiscent of the type of paddle control one sees in Invader-type games.

The paddle smoothing routine can be used in any program using paddles to move shapes in any direction and the maximum speed of movement can be altered simply by changing the value to be added or subtracted. This routine also allows one to incorporate a DRAW-DRAW routine into the program. For vertical animation, we simply limit the maximum move to the border size. For horizontal animation, we need only limit the maximum move to one byte or less.

One final note. I haven't combined the paddle smoothing routine with the paddle movement test of Program 15-1. This is something for you to do, as we'll talk about in the last chapter.

Integrating **BASIC** with Assembly Language Programs

*There once was a woman named Kit,
Whose husband gave her a fit.
Computing all night
He neglected her plight
So they drifted apart, bit by bit.*

(This has nothing to do with this chapter, but it's hard writing these things.)

There isn't anything that can be done in BASIC that can't be done in assembly language, but for some things BASIC is much easier. Complex arithmetic, for example, is much simpler using BASIC. In assembly language, you can add, subtract, multiply, and divide, but in BASIC a whole host of arithmetic functions are available, such as SQR, ABS, INT, SIN, COS, TAN, RND, EXP, LOG, etc., and working with formulas is made simpler with the DEF FN instruction (see the Apple BASIC manual for details). Of course, all these functions can be derived from the four basics of adding, subtracting, multiplying, and dividing, but if speed is not required, it's much easier to let the BASIC interpreter do it for you. If speed is required (let's say you want to plot sine curves on the hi-res screen—easy but slow in BASIC), you'll need to use assembly language. Deriving sine curve equations from the four basic arithmetic functions is about as much fun as defleaing your dog but fortunately, if you need to do this, there are texts on the market that deal with complex number manipulations using assembly language.

Printing to the text screen is often used with hi-res graphics programs, either for displaying whole page instructions or for printing on the bottom four lines of page 1 with the mixed text and graphics mode. (This is different from printing on the hi-res screen itself—here one needs to use shapes in the form of letters in the same way as we used number shapes for displaying the score in the game program.) Text printing can be done using BASIC or assembly language and in fact is relatively easy with assembly language, because one can use several built-in Apple subroutines to take care of the housekeeping chores. But, to my mind, nothing is easier than the BASIC PRINT statement. The only advantage of assembly language for text printing is speed, but this is like saying you can travel a distance of 1 foot faster going 100 mph than going 50 mph. Printing in BASIC is so fast, unless you're using some kind of convoluted code, that any speed advantage of assembly language is more academic than real.

MEMORY ALLOCATION
.....

Dealing with a program that uses both BASIC and assembly language, or with a program that uses both BASIC and hi-res graphics whether or not assembly language is also used, requires that attention be paid to how memory is allocated. We have to be careful that BASIC, assembly language, and the hi-res screens don't run into each other, that is, do not occupy the same memory locations; otherwise, we will be left with an unworkable program. To see how to do this, let's consider first how BASIC uses memory.

On startup, the Apple assigns \$800 (2048) to the bottom of BASIC and \$9600 (38400) to the top (for machines with 48K minimum RAM,— see Chapter 2). The reason a top has to be assigned is that while the BASIC program starts at the bottom, variables are stored after the end of the last program line, and string variables are stored at the top and work their way down. Thus, any non-BASIC program code such as assembly language or a hi-res screen between the top and bottom may interfere with the BASIC program itself, especially if string variables are used. Even if they're not, it's always a good idea to reserve an area of memory for BASIC to ensure no overlap with the hi-res screens or with assembly language code. There are two solutions to this problem—we either change the top or change the bottom of BASIC, the particular choice depending on how much memory we want to allocate to the different parts of the program and which hi-res screen we want to use.

There are four basic situations to consider:

1. Page 1 hi-res screen, BASIC below Page 1, assembly language above Page 1:

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE	\$9600 (38400)
PAGE 1	\$4000 (16384)
BASIC	\$2000 (8192)
	\$0800 (2048)

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE 22000 BYTES
BASIC 6000 BYTES

The bottom of BASIC is the startup address, \$800 (2048). We want to move the top, the area for string variable storage, to the bottom of hi-res screen Page 1, which starts at \$2000 (8192). We do this in the beginning of the BASIC program by

```
1 HIMEM:8192
```

(Note that BASIC uses only decimal addresses, not hex.) This instruction ensures that BASIC will occupy a memory block that will not be interfered with by the hi-res screen or the assembly language code. The assembly language program itself could be given a starting address of \$4000, that is, just above Page 1. The result of all this is that BASIC would have about 6000 bytes of available memory,

whereas the assembly language program would have about 22,000 bytes. (If we want to use both hi-res screens, the assembly language program would be started at \$6000 and would have about 14,000 bytes of memory.)

2. Page 2 hi-res screen. BASIC below Page 2, assembly language above Page 2:

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE	\$9600 (38400)
PAGE 2	\$6000 (24576)
BASIC	\$4000 (16384)
	\$0800 (2048)

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE 14000 BYTES
BASIC 14000 BYTES

Here we want to move the top of BASIC to \$4000 and we do this by

1 HIMEM:16384

The assembly language code would start at \$6000 and have about 14,000 bytes of memory, and BASIC would have also about 14,000.

3. Page 1 hi-res screen, BASIC above Page 1, assembly language below Page 1:

BASIC	\$9600 (38400)
PAGE 1	\$4000 (16384)
ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE	\$2000 (8192)
	\$0800 (2048)

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE 6000 BYTES
BASIC 22000 BYTES

Moving the bottom of BASIC is a little more complicated than moving the top. There is no single command to do this; rather a series of POKEs is required. Locations 103 and 104 have to be POKEd with certain values and the new start of BASIC has to be POKEd with zero because BASIC must always start with zero in the first position. There is a formula that can be used to calculate the values to be POKEd into 103 and 104, but the easiest thing to do is incorporate the formula into a BASIC instruction itself and let the program do the calculating for you. What we do is set up a separate program called a "loader" program and use

it both to change the bottom of BASIC and run the main program. The "loader" program consists of one line (make sure you save the program before running it because it self-destructs on running):

```
1 LOC = 16384 + 1:POKELOC - 1,0:POKE 103,LOC - INT(LOC/256) * 256:
  POKE 104,INT (LOC/256): PRINT CHR$(4); "RUN PROGRAM"
```

Running this program will set the bottom of BASIC to \$4000 and will run the main program labeled PROGRAM, assuming of course it's on the same disk. In this case, BASIC will have about 22,000 bytes of available memory and the assembly language program about 6,000 bytes, assuming we start it at \$800.

4. Page 2 hi-res screen, BASIC above page 2, assembly language below Page 2:

BASIC	\$9600 (38400)
PAGE 2	\$6000 (24576)
ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE	\$4000 (16384)
	\$0800 (2048)

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE 14000 BYTES
BASIC 14000 BYTES

The only change here is defining LOC in the "loader" program as $24576 + 1$. Now both BASIC and the assembly language program will have about 14,000 bytes of available memory.

These are the four basic memory allocation situations, but variations are sometimes required. For example, and as mentioned above, if we want to use both hi-res screens, things would have to be shifted around, removing memory from either BASIC or the assembly language program, depending on the particular configuration we want. Also, because we can start the assembly language program anywhere, the actual memory available for assembly language is variable.

Other situations may require other changes. For example, suppose we're using the number 3 configuration with BASIC above Page 1. If our assembly language program requires 8,000 bytes instead of the 6,000 available, we could move the bottom of BASIC to around 19,000 instead of 16,384 and use the extra memory for assembly language code. We could use this memory block, for example, to store our line address and offset tables. Assembly language programs do not require a continuous block of uninterrupted memory, but when we split up such a program, we have to be careful where we do it. For example, we wouldn't want an interruption in the middle of a draw routine. We can, however, place any block of code that is accessed only by its label anywhere we want. The only caveat, as discussed before, is that relative branch instructions have a range limited to 127 bytes forward and 128 bytes back—in these cases, we use the relative branch to go to a nearby JMP instruction, which has no range limitation. In the example cited above, we would set up our main program with ORG \$800

and place the line address and offset tables starting at \$4000, making sure they do not extend into the start of BASIC.

The particular configuration we would choose obviously depends on the program requirements. If we need Page 1 to display mixed text and graphics, we must use configuration 1 or 3. If the assembly language program is long and BASIC short, we would choose 1; conversely, configuration 3 would be appropriate for long BASIC and short assembly language programs. Keep in mind that because we can place assembly language blocks almost anywhere we want and we can vary the top and bottom of BASIC, there is a large amount of flexibility in how to allocate available memory for any particular program application.

If your program lengths are running close to the available memory limits, it's important to know the program size so you can plan accordingly. This is no problem with assembly language programs, as most assemblers will display the length in bytes after assembly. To determine the length of a BASIC program in bytes, load the program and type in the following instructions (with thanks to Beagle Bros.):

```
PRINT (PEEK (175) ) + PEEK (176) * 256) - (PEEK (103) + PEEK (104) * 256)
```

If you find your programs are too large to fit, don't despair just yet. Assembly language programs can be shortened by writing more efficient code, but this is probably applicable only to very experienced programmers. An easy trick to extend total available memory is to include the following as the first line of your BASIC program:

```
1 PRINT CHR$(4);"MAXFILES1"
```

This extends the upper limit of memory from \$9600 (38400) to \$9AA6 (39590) (for 48K minimum machines), making available an extra 1,190 bytes. The price you pay for this is that only one text file can be open at one time (see the Apple DOS Programmer's Manual for more details). Another thing you can do is use one of the commercially available optimizing programs, such as those available from Beagle Bros., to crunch your BASIC programs. You'd be amazed at how much space can be saved using one of these utilities, but save this for last—such crunched programs are virtually impossible to edit. If you're really desperate, try one of the DOS mover programs (if you have 64K)—you can realize some 10,000 bytes of extra memory this way.

ZERO PAGE USAGE

We mentioned in a previous chapter that we have to be careful in choosing which zero page addresses to use in our assembly language programs. This is because zero page is used extensively by Applesoft BASIC and DOS and so if we're using BASIC along with our assembly language program or if we're using DOS commands, either from BASIC or from assembly language, we have to search for "open" zero page addresses and there aren't many. For the Apple IIe, safe zero page addresses are \$06 to \$09, \$1A to \$1C, \$EB to \$EF, and \$F9 to \$FC. These are probably okay for other Apple IIs but I would check the Reference Manual for your particular machine just to make sure. Of course if you're not using BASIC or DOS, then any zero page address can be used, but it's probably

best to stick with the safe ones—you never know when you might be adding DOS commands or BASIC to your assembly language program.

GRAPHICS AND TEXT COMMANDS FROM BASIC

You've seen some of these instructions before in Chapter 3 and they are all described in the Apple BASIC manual but some rather obtusely—a brief review is worthwhile.

GR Clears and displays low resolution screen.

HGR Clears and displays hi-res screen Page 1 (mixed text and graphics with the bottom four lines displaying text).

HGR2 Clears and displays hi-res screen Page 2.

TEXT Displays the full screen text page without clearing it.

HOME Clears but does not display the text page and sends the cursor to the top left position. When used with hi-res screen Page 1 in mixed text and graphics mode, the bottom four lines are cleared and the cursor is positioned at VTAB 21 without affecting the graphics display. The combined instructions TEXT:HOME will display and clear the entire text page regardless of which hi-res screen is being used.

POKE 49232,0 (or POKE -16304,0) (In this and the following examples, either number can be POKEd but Integer BASIC requires poking the negative number.) Accesses the graphics mode, either lo-res or hi-res depending on the status of other soft switches, without clearing the graphics screen.

POKE 49233,0 (POKE -16303,0) Selects the text page without clearing it: the text page margins can be altered to produce a text "window;" unlike the TEXT command, this instruction leaves the text "window" settings intact.

POKE 49234,0 (POKE -16302,0) Selects full screen graphics for hi-res screen Page 1.

POKE 49235,0 (POKE -16301,0) Selects mixed text and graphics for hi-res screen Page 1 (not necessary after an HGR if full screen graphics has not been selected).

POKE 49236,0 (POKE -16300,0) Selects Page 2 without clearing it.

POKE 49237,0 (POKE -16299,0) Selects Page 1 without clearing it.

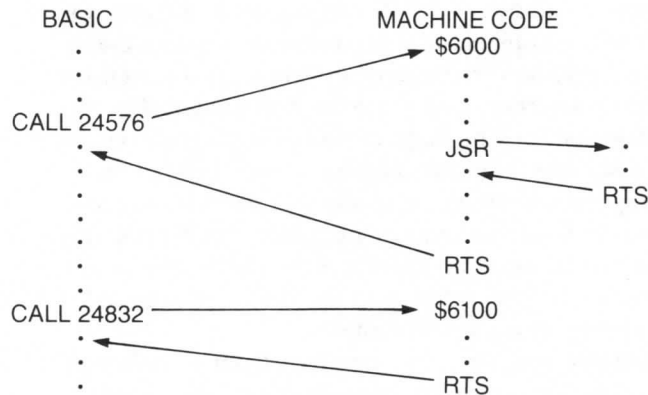
POKE 49238,0 (POKE -16298,0) Selects low resolution mode (not necessary after a GR).

POKE 49239,0 (POKE -16297,0) Selects high resolution mode (not necessary after an HGR or HGR2).

ACCESSING ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE PROGRAMS FROM BASIC

When combining BASIC with assembly language, program control essentially rests with the BASIC program. A particular assembly language program address is

accessed from BASIC by the instruction `CALL address` (decimal). Thus, the command `CALL 24576` would send the program to the machine code beginning at \$6000. The program returns to BASIC when it reaches an `RTS` opcode that does not follow a `JSR`. If there is no such `RTS`, the program remains in the assembly language portion. For example:



To see how this works in an actual program, let's use BASIC in our game program to display the game instructions before starting. On our disk we would have the game program labeled `GAME`. The BASIC program would look like this:

```

10 PRINT CHR$(4);"BLOAD GAME,A$6000"
20 TEXT:HOME
30 PRINT "GAME INSTRUCTIONS . . . . . PRESS ANY KEY TO CONTINUE"
40 GET A$
50 HGR:POKE -16302,0
60 CALL 24576
  
```

One of the advantages of using BASIC is that BASIC commands often can substitute for assembly language code. In this instance, for example, `HGR` is used to display and clear the Page 1 hi-res screen and `POKE -16302,0` displays full screen graphics. As this is done in the beginning, speed is not required, and the call to Page 1 full screen graphics and the clear screen routines in the `GAME` program become unnecessary and can be deleted. Once the call to \$6000 is made, the program stays entirely in the `GAME` program, because there is no `RTS` not preceded by a `JSR`.

Let's modify the `GAME` even further by changing the restart protocol. In the `STOP2` subroutine, instead of the *press any key* routine we substitute an `RTS`. When the game ends, this will send the program back to BASIC where we will now display another text screen containing, for example, a scoring summary:

```

70 TEXT:HOME
80 PRINT "GAME SUMMARY. . . . . PRESS ANY KEY TO CONTINUE"
90 GET A$
100 GOTO 50
  
```

The `TEXT` instruction calls the text screen and `HOME` clears it. We restart the game by going back to line 50. Alternatively, if we want to display the game instructions again, line 100 would read `GOTO 20`. Other variations are possible.

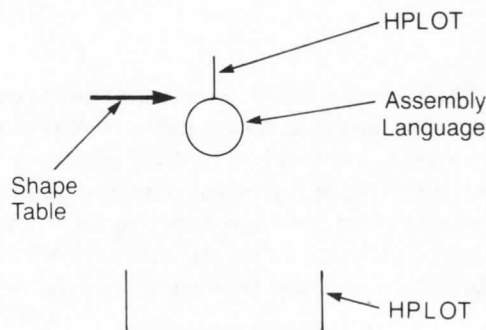
Suppose we want to restart just by going back to the game instructions:

```
70 GOTO 20
```

This combination of printing in BASIC and displaying graphics in assembly language is quite easy and very useful, not only for game programs but also for a multitude of other applications. In addition, BASIC can be used not only for printing but also for graphics itself, in conjunction with assembly language graphics. This is possible because the hi-res screen doesn't care where its instructions come from and so one can freely intermix graphics from BASIC, assembly language, and even from Apple shape tables. The only caveat is that pleasant results are obtained only if the non-assembly language graphics do not involve themselves in routines that require speed and smooth animation. Perhaps the greatest utility of this type of intermixing is in educational programs. Such programs generally do not involve continuous, rapid animation as in games, but rather present a series of lessons, each one consisting of some text and a graphics presentation that consists only partly of animation routines.

To see how we can profitably mix text and graphics from a variety of sources, let's design a small educational program that illustrates the principle that objects fall down unless restrained (the profit comes from selling the program to kindergarten computer workshops). We're going to use hi-res screen Page 1 with mixed text and graphics and use the bottom four lines for the explanatory text. Because our BASIC program is small, we'll place it below Page 1 with HIMEM:8192. We're also going to use a shape table and we'll load this above Page 1 at \$4000 (16384). The assembly language program will be loaded above the shape table, at \$6000 (24576).

The screen will show a ball suspended by a rope above a container.



After some text instructions, the rope will be cut at a site indicated by an arrow—the arrow will then disappear and the ball will fall into the container. The container and rope will be drawn from BASIC by HPlotting. The arrow will come from the shape table (designed with the aid of a utility program such as Apple Mechanic from Beagle Bros.) and the ball will be drawn and animated with our assembly language program. The Page 1 screen will be displayed and cleared from BASIC and we can begin the assembly language program at \$6000 with just drawing the ball. This draw routine ends with an RTS, say at \$64FF, and thus will return to BASIC once the ball is drawn. At \$6500 (25856), the program continues with the ball animation and also ends with an RTS to get back to

BASIC again. The program would look like this (the shape table and assembly language program will already have been BSAVED on the disk:

```

1 HIMEM:8192      :REM BASIC BELOW PAGE 1
10 PRINT CHR$(4);"BLOAD SHAPE TABLE,A$4000"
20 PRINT CHR$(4);"BLOAD ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE,A$6000"
30 SH = 16384      :REM LOCATION OF SHAPE TABLE
40 POKE 232,SH - INT(SH/256) * 256:POKE 233, INT(SH/256) :REM TELLS PROGRAM
   WHERE SHAPE TABLE IS LOCATED
50 HGR  :REM SELECTS HI-RES PAGE 1
60 HCOLOR = 3      :REM COLOR WHITE
70 ROT = 0:SCALE = 1 :REM NEEDED FOR SHAPE TABLE DRAW
80 HOME: VTAB21:PRINT "WHAT WILL HAPPEN WHEN THE ROPE IS CUT?":PRINT "PRESS ANY
   KEY TO CONTINUE" :REM PRINTS ON BOTTOM 4 LINES
90 HPOINT 100,50 TO 100,100 TO 150,100 TO 150,50 :REM PLOTS CONTAINER
100 HPOINT 125,10 TO 125,20 :REM PLOTS ROPE
110 DRAW 1 AT 125,20 :REM DRAWS ARROW
120 CALL 24576 :REM DRAWS BALL
130 GET A$ :REM WAIT FOR KEYPRESS
140 HOME: VTAB21:PRINT "LET'S DO IT. PRESS ANY KEY TO CUT THE ROPE" :REM CHANGES
   TEXT IN BOTTOM 4 LINES BUT LEAVES GRAPHICS INTACT
150 GET A$
160 XDRAW 1 AT 125,20 :REM ERASES ARROW
170 CALL 25856 :REM MOVES BALL DOWN
180 HOME: VTAB21:PRINT "YOU WERE RIGHT! THE BALL FALLS":PRINT "PRESS ANY KEY TO
   CONTINUE
190 GET A$
200 TEXT:HOME: PRINT "IF YOU LIKED THIS PROGRAM, TELL MOMMY TO BUY IT." :REM
   PRINTS ON TEXT PAGE

```

The variations on this theme are endless. We could clear the screen with HGR and continue with more graphics from any source; we could draw the container, rope, and arrow in color by specifying a color with HCOLOR and, of course, draw the ball in color in the assembly language program; we could make a larger container by changing SCALE; we could switch back and forth from text to graphic screens without erasing them by using the appropriate POKES, and so on. The reason this works is that HPOINT and DRAW are very fast for simple shapes that are displayed and not moved—assembly language is required only for the animation. And let me emphasize that assembly language is indeed required—moving the ball around from BASIC or shape tables would produce an animation that would immediately mark you as a rank amateur, deserving only of scorn. From personal experience, I can tell you that professional-looking animation is a strong selling point for these types of programs.

Suggestions for Game Modification

We've covered quite a bit since constructing the game program, but, of course, the coverage has not been exhaustive (and I don't mean it hasn't been tiring). My hope is that this book has provided the necessary background in hi-res assembly language graphics so that you can now profitably examine more advanced texts and those rather obtuse (I hope now less obtuse) magazine articles that pop up now and then to learn even more about this subject, either for constructing your own games or indeed for any of the many other applications that find hi-res graphics useful. You may not know enough yet to construct a really super arcade-type game, but you certainly have the knowledge to produce professional results for interesting games and for educational and other types of programs. And, of course, you've also learned something about how to use assembly language other than just to move numbers around.

As mentioned in the Introduction, any learning process is enhanced by doing and not just observing. In this spirit, below I will discuss suggestions for modifying the game program using techniques covered in Parts One and Two that were not incorporated into the game. You may find that going through the exercises in this chapter will teach you more about hi-res graphics and assembly language than all the other chapters combined, and so I urge you to sharpen your typing fingers and go to work.

1. Use the DRAW-DRAW protocol for both the man and the plane, making sure to incorporate the appropriate borders. As neither shape is used for collision detection, DRAW-DRAW will work and will produce smoother animation. For the man shape, use the paddle smoothing routine (necessary for DRAW-DRAW as discussed in Chapter 15) and the test for non-movement of paddle to eliminate flicker.

2. Work on the sound routines for the plane and explosions and perhaps for the bullet firing.

3. Have planes appear at several different line positions and have some going right to left instead of just left to right. Make sure each line position is some multiple of 8 from the bullet firing line to ensure collision detection with the bullet; alternatively, use multiple line collision testing with the bullet shape.

4. Have the planes drop bombs and use the bomb shape for collision testing. Use the line position of a collision to determine what the bomb has hit—if at the bottom, it hits the bottom line; above the bottom, but not above the top of the man, it hits the man; above the man, it hits a bullet. Include an explosion routine for each collision. Have the game end if the man is hit.

5. Change the scoring protocol to decrement by 1 each time a bullet is fired, increment by 3 for each plane hit and by 5 for each bomb hit. A plane is hit if only a bullet detects a collision. A bomb is hit if both the bomb and bullet detect a collision.

6. Use BASIC to display the game instructions.

7. Draw the plane in color, changing the bullet shape to a width of 2 bits to ensure collision detection. Draw the explosion shapes in orange and yellow. Draw flickering orange lines directly behind the plane to simulate engine exhaust. Enlarge the man shape and draw in color.

8. Reprogram the game in double hi-res and in double hi-res color. For the latter, use dummy white shape tables for collision detection.

Well, that's it. Good luck—and remember, #2B or not #2B is not the only question.

Appendix: Assembly Language Commands

Not all assembly language commands for the Apple II 6502 microprocessor are listed here, mainly just those referenced in the text. In addition, the descriptions are not comprehensive. A complete set, with complete descriptions, can be found in texts on assembly language programming. I especially recommend *Assembly Lines: The Book*, by Roger Wagner, Roger Wagner Publishing Co., Santee, CA, 1982.

ADC (ADd with Carry) Adds the contents of a memory location or a direct value to the contents of the Accumulator, plus the Carry bit if it was set. The result is stored in the Accumulator. ADC is usually preceded by a CLC in case the Carry bit has inadvertently been set. A common use of ADC is to add two numbers together.

Example

```
CLC
LDA #$01
ADC #$01      ;Accumulator now contains #$02
```

```
CLC
LDA #$01
ADC $4000     ;$4000 contains #$04
STA $5000     ;$5000 now contains #$05
```

AND (Logical AND) Compares each bit of the Accumulator with each corresponding bit of the contents of a memory location or a direct value. If both bits are 1, the result is 1; otherwise the result is 0. The result is stored in the Accumulator. This command is useful for collision detections.

Example

Accumulator	0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1
Number	0 1 1 1 0 1 0 0
Result	0 0 0 1 0 1 0 0

ASL (Arithmetic Shift Left) Each bit of the Accumulator or the contents of a memory location is moved one position to the left. A 0 is placed in bit 0 (the rightmost bit) and the high bit is placed in the Carry. One use of ASL is to multiply by factors of two.

C <--- 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 <--- "0"

BCC (Branch on Carry Clear) The branch is taken if the Carry bit is clear; i.e., zero. The pseudo-op BLT (Branch if Less Than) can be used by some assemblers, because BCC is often used after a comparison instruction to test if the Accumulator holds a value less than a specified value; if it does, the Carry bit is clear and the branch is executed.

Example

```
LDA #$05
CMP #$06
BCC CONTINUE ;The branch is taken
```

BCS (Branch on Carry Set) The branch is taken if the Carry bit is set, i.e., 1.

The pseudo-op BGE (Branch if Greater or Equal) This can be used by some assemblers as BCS is often used after a comparison instruction to test if the Accumulator holds a value equal to or greater than a specified value; if it does, the Carry bit is set and the branch is executed.

Example

```
LDA #$05
CMP #$04
BCS CONTINUE ; The branch is taken
```

BEQ (Branch if Equal) Branches if the result of a previous operation is zero. It is often used to compare the value in the Accumulator or the contents of a memory location to a specified value, which itself can be the contents of a memory location or a direct value. If the values are equal, the branch is taken.

Example

```
LDA LINE
CMP DEPTH
BEQ CONTINUE ;The branch is taken if LINE = DEPTH
```

BEQ can also be used to test for a register reaching a zero value.

Example

```

        LDY #$06
LOOP    LDA $4000
        STA $5000
        DEY
        BEQ CONTINUE    ;The branch is taken when Y = 0
        JMP LOOP
    
```

BIT Compare Accumulator BITs with contents of memory. BIT can be used to access a soft switch without changing the contents of the Accumulator.

Example

```

        BIT $C030    ;Tweaks speaker
    
```

BMI (Branch on Minus) Branches if any operation produces a result in the range #\$80 to #\$FF, i.e., high bit set. One use is to test for a keypress.

Example

```

LOOP    LDA $C000    ;If no key pressed, value < #$80
        BMI CONTINUE ;Branches if key pressed
        JMP LOOP
    
```

BMI can also be used to terminate a loop when a value reaches any number from #\$80 to #\$FF.

Example

```

        LDY #$70
LOOP    DEY
        BMI CONTINUE ;Branch taken when Y wraps around to #$FF
        JMP LOOP
    
```

BNE (Branch on Not Equal) Branches if the result of any operation is non-zero.

Example

```

        LDA #$06
        CMP #$05
        BNE CONTINUE ;Branch is taken
    
```

BNE can also be used in loops to test for non-zero.

Example

```

        LDY #$06
LOOP    DEY
        BNE LOOP    ;Branches until Y = 0
        RTS
    
```

BPL (Branch on Plus) Branches if any operation produces a result in the range #00 to #7F, i.e., high bit not set. BPL can be used to test for a key press.

Example

```

LOOP   LDA $C000           ;If no key pressed, value < #$80
        BPL LOOP           ;Branches until key is pressed
        JMP CONTINUE

```

BPL can also be used to terminate a loop when a value reaches any number outside the range #00 to #7F.

Example

```

                LDY #$70
                DEY
LOOP   BPL LOOP   ;Branches until Y = #$FF
                RTS

```

Note: Conditional branches are limited to 127 bytes forward and 128 bytes back.

BRK (BReaK) Halts execution of the program. This command is useful for debugging programs. By placing BRK at strategic locations, the program can be stopped and the status of the registers and memory locations examined.

CLC (CLear Carry) Clears the Carry bit; usually used preceding an ADC instruction in case the Carry bit has been set accidentally somewhere else in the program. It can also be used to force a branch.

Example

```

CLC
BCC CONTINUE ;Branch always taken

```

CMP (CoMPare to Accumulator) Compares the value in the Accumulator to a direct value or to the contents of a memory location. CMP is used with comparison instructions for conditional branches.

Example

```

LDA #$06
CMP #$07
BCC CONTINUE

```

CPX (ComPare to X register) Compares the contents of the X register to a direct value or to the contents of a memory location; used with conditional branch instructions.

Example

```

        LDX #$00
LOOP    LDA LINE,X
        STA LINEA
        INX
        CPX #$05
        BCC LOOP    ;Branches until X = 5
        RTS

```

CPY (ComPare to Y register) Compares the contents of the Y register to a direct value or the contents of a memory location; see CPX.

DEC (DECrement) Decrements the contents of a memory location by one. If the location contains #\$00, the value will wrap around to #\$FF.

Example

```

        LDA #$00
        STA $4000
        DEC $4000    ;$4000 now contains #$FF

```

DEX (DEcrement to X register) Decrements the X register by one; see DEC.

DEY (DEcrement the Y register) Decrements the Y register by one; see DEC.

EOR (Exclusive-OR with Accumulator) Each bit of the Accumulator is compared to the corresponding bit of a direct value or the contents of a memory location. If either bit is 1, the result is 1; if both bits are 1 or 0, the result is 0. The result is stored in the Accumulator. EOR is useful in drawing routines for both drawing and erasing.

Example

Accumulator	1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0
Number	0 1 0 1 0 1 1 0
Result	1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0

INC (INCrement memory) Increments the contents of a memory location by one. If the location contains #\$FF, the value will wrap around to #\$00 (see DEC).

INX (INCrement the X register) Increments the X register by one; see INC.

INY (INCrement the Y register) Increments the Y register by one; see INC.

JMP (JuMP to address) Sends the program to the specified address.

JSR (Jump to SubRoutine) Analogous to a GOSUB in BASIC, JSR sends the program to a subroutine at a specified address. When an RTS in the subroutine is encountered, the program returns to the program line immediately following the JSR (see RTS).

LDA (LoaD the Accumulator) Loads the Accumulator with a direct value or the contents of a memory location.

Example

```
LDA #$05      ;Accumulator contains #$05
LDA $4000     ;Accumulator contains contents of $4000
```

LDX (LoaD the X register) Loads the X register with a direct value or the contents of a memory location; see LDA.

LDY (LoaD the Y register) Loads the Y register with a direct value or the contents of a memory location; see LDX.

LSR (Logical Shift Right) Opposite of ASL; each bit of the Accumulator or the contents of a memory location is moved 1 position to the right. A zero is placed in the high bit and bit 0 (the rightmost bit) is placed in the Carry bit. One use of LSR is to divide by factors of 2.

"0" ---> 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 ---> C

NOP (No OPeration) This does what it says; no operation is performed, but time is used. NOP is used for debugging by disabling certain steps and can also be used as a time delay.

ORA (Inclusive OR with Accumulator) Compares each bit of the Accumulator with the corresponding bit of a direct value or the contents of a memory location. If either or both bits are 1, the result is 1; if both bits are 0, the result is 0. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Example

Accumulator	0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1
Number	0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1
Result	0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1

ROL (ROtate Left) Each bit of the Accumulator or the contents of a memory location is moved one position to the left. The Carry bit is placed into bit 0 and is replaced by the high bit (see ASL).

C <--- 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 <--- C

ROR (ROtate Right) Each bit of the Accumulator or the contents of a memory location is moved one position to the right. The Carry bit is placed in the high bit and replaced by bit 0 (see ROL).

C ---> 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 ---> C

RTS (ReTurn from Subroutine) Returns the program to the line immediately following the JSR call to the subroutine (see JSR). An RTS without a preceding JSR is used to return the program to BASIC when the assembly language program is called from BASIC.

SBC (SuBtract with Carry) Subtracts the contents of a memory location or a direct value from the Accumulator and also subtracts the opposite of the

Carry. The result is stored in the Accumulator. SBC should always be preceded by SEC prior to the first subtraction.

Example

```
LDA #$05
SEC
SBC #$03      ;Accumulator now contains #$02
```

SEC (SEt Carry) Sets the Carry bit to 1. Used before a SBC instruction and also can be used to force a branch.

Example

```
SEC
BCS CONTINUE ;Branch always taken
```

STA (STore Accumulator) Sends the contents of the Accumulator to a specified memory location. The Accumulator is not affected.

Example

```
STA $4000      ;$4000 contains contents of Accumulator
```

STX (STore the X register) Sends the contents of the X register to a specified memory location (see STA). The X register is not affected.

STY (STore the Y register) Sends the contents of the Y register to a specified memory location (see STX). The Y register is not affected.

TAX (Transfer Accumulator to X register) Transfers the contents of the Accumulator to the X register. The Accumulator is not affected.

TAY (Transfer Accumulator to Y register) Transfer the contents of the Accumulator to the Y register. The Accumulator is not affected (see TAX).

TXA (Transfer X to Accumulator) Sends the contents of the X register to the Accumulator. The X register is not affected. Combined with TAY, can be used to transfer a value from X to Y.

Example

```
LDX #$05      ;#$05 in X
TXA           ;#$05 in A
TAY           ;#$05 in Y
```

TYA (Transfer Y to Accumulator) Transfers the contents of the Y register to the Accumulator. The Y register is not affected. Combined with TAX, can be used to transfer a value from Y to X.

Example

```
LDY #$05      ;#$05 in Y
TYA           ;#$05 in A
TAX           ;#$05 in X
```

Index

Absolute indexing, 28
 ADC (ADd with Carry)
 instruction, 32, 170, 306
 Addresses
 line address tables, 24-29
 memory, 9-15
 shape address tables, 57-60
 Air resistance simulation, 265
 AND (Logical AND)
 instruction
 collision detection, 116-117
 use in color drawing,
 223-224
 drawing over backgrounds
 using, 272-273
 explanation of, 306-307
 Animating shapes
 in double hi-res, 231-238
 in double hi-res color,
 244-251
 shape tables and, 4
 Animation, color
 how to draw a blue plane,
 215-220
 how to draw a green plane,
 220
 how to draw an orange
 plane, 220
 how to draw a violet plane,
 220
 how to maintain even, 215
 how to use multiple colors,
 221

Animation, horizontal
 accessing sequential shapes,
 60-72
 double hi-res and, 231-236
 DRAW-DRAW routine and,
 77-81
 DRAW-ERASE routine and,
 61
 preshifted shapes, 54-57
 problems with color and,
 215
 temp and shape address
 tables, 57-60, 65-66
 testing for end of screen in,
 60-61
 use of separate draw
 routines for, 66-72
 Animation, internal
 definition of, 82
 how to produce, 82-88
 Animation, vertical
 double hi-res and, 231,
 236-238
 DRAW-DRAW routines and,
 48-53
 DRAW-ERASE routine and,
 48, 53
 erasing a shape, 37-39
 moving down, 39-45
 moving up, 45-48
 time delays and, 39
 Apple shape tables,
 disadvantages of, 4

Apple II
 memory map, 9-11
 sound generation and,
 167-169
 ASL (Arithmetic Shift Left)
 instruction, 58-59, 307
 ASM (assemble) command, 14
 Assemblers
 field headings in, 13-14
 how to write object/
 machine code, 12-15
 purpose of, vii
 source code and, 13, 14
 Assembly language
 accessing assembly
 language programs
 from BASIC, 300-303
 determining length of
 programs in, 299
 editing in, 13
 memory and, 296-299
 speed of, 4
 text printing and, 295
 versatility of, 5
 zero page usage and,
 299-300
 Asterisk
 as a delimiter, 14
 Backgrounds
 color shapes with color or
 white, 276-282

Backgrounds (*continued*)

- EOR and, 266-267
- EOR and drawing color, 276-278
- retaining colors in, 279-282
- use of AND, 272-273
- white shapes and, 266-275

BASIC

- accessing assembly
 - language programs from, 300-303
- arithmetic functions in, 295
- determining length of programs in, 299
- disadvantages of, 3-4
- entering memory in, 299
- graphics and text
 - commands from, 300
- memory allocation and, 296-299
- text printing and, 295, 302
- zero page usage and, 299-300

BCC (Branch on Carry Clear), 15, 20, 307

BCS (Branch on Carry Set), 15, 307

BDRAW and collision test of every line, 120

BEQ (Branch if Equal), 307-308

BGE (Branch if Greater or Equal), 15, 307

Binary number system, how it works, 6-7

Bit

- color drawing and, 213, 214, 222-224
- definition of, 8

BIT instruction, 308

BLINE and explosions, 128

BLOAD command, 14

BLT (Branch if Less Than), 15, 20

BMI (Branch on Minus), 308

BNE (Branch on Not Equal), 168, 308

BPL (Branch on Plus), 88, 309

Branch if Equal (BEQ), 307-308

Branch if Greater or Equal (BGE), 15, 307

Branch if Less Than (BLT), 15, 20

Branch on Carry Clear (BCC), 15, 20, 307

Branch on Carry Set (BCS), 15, 307

Branch on Minus (BMI), 308

Branch on Not Equal (BNE), 168, 308

Branch on Plus (BPL), 88, 309

BRK (BReAK), 309

BRUN command, 14

Bullets, paddle control and shooting, 105-106

BXDRAW and collision, 119

Byte

- definition of, 8
- high order, 10
- low order, 10
- screen versus shape, 22

BYTETBL table, 98-99

CALL address, 301

Carry bit, 170-171

CLC (CLear Carry), 32, 309

Clearing a hi-res screen, 18-21

CMP (CoMPare to Accumulator), 309

shape tables and, 32-33

Collision detection

AND instruction and, 116-117

BDRAW and collision test of every line, 120

BXDRAW and, 119

color drawing and, 221-226

decrementing scoring and, 156-166

delay loop and, 118

DRAW-DRAW and, 52, 117

DRAW-ERASE and, 118

dummy shape tables and, 224-225

explosion and, 131-138

general routine for, 117-118

reason for collision test to fail, 119

scoring and, 144-155

shape positions and, 119-120

shifting of bits and, 222-224

test-draw-erase cycle and, 118-119

test for, 118, 122-127

Color, drawing in

ANDing and, 223-224

animating double hi-res color shapes, 244-251

Apple II and, 213-215

backgrounds and, 276-282

collision detection and, 221-226

double hi-res and, 239-243

dummy shape tables and, 224-225

high bit and, 214, 239

horizontal movement and

problems with, 215

how colored shapes are produced, 213-214

how four hi-res colors are produced, 214

how to draw a blue plane, 215-220

how to draw a green plane, 220

how to draw an orange plane, 220

how to draw a violet plane, 220

how to maintain even, 215

how to produce white, 213

how to use multiple colors, 221

LSR and, 222-223

problems with certain color combinations, 215

resolution and, 215

shifting of bits when, 222-224

types available in double hi-res, 240-241

types available in hi-res, 213

Command field, 13

Comment field, 13, 14

CoMPare to Accumulator (CMP), 309

shape tables and, 32-33

Conditional branch

instructions, 178

CONTROL RESET, 40

CPX (ComPare to X register), 309-310

CPY (ComPare to Y register), 310

DC directive, 25

DEC (Decrement to X register), 310

Decrementing scoring, 156-166

DEcrement the Y register (DEY), 310

- Defined Storage (DS) code, 32
- DELAY instruction
 - collision and, 118
 - explosions and, 139
 - paddle crosstalk and, 101
 - sound generation and, 168-169
 - vertical animation and, 39
- DEY (DEcrement the Y register), 310
- DFB code, 25, 58
- Displaying a hi-res screen, 16-18
- Dots
 - definition of, 12
 - how to convert a dot pattern to a byte, 21-22
- DRAW-DRAW routine
 - collision detection and, 52, 117
 - definition of, 48
 - drawing of a plane using, 195-210
 - ERASE and, 50
 - flicker and, 52
 - sound effects and, 198
 - speed of, 52-53
 - used in moving a shape down, 48-52
- DRAW-ERASE routine, 48, 53, 61
 - collision detection and, 118
- Drawing
 - color shapes with color or white backgrounds, 276-282
 - figures (persons), 23-24
 - multiple shapes, 106-115
 - shapes in double hi-res, 229-231
 - shapes in double hi-res color, 241-243
 - shapes wider than one byte, 33-36
 - shooting bullets, 105-106
 - using EOR instruction, 38
 - white shapes and backgrounds, 266-275
 - See also* Animation, horizontal; Animation, vertical
- DS (defined storage) code, 32
- EOR (Exclusive-OR) instruction, 310
 - drawing color backgrounds using, 276-278
 - drawing over backgrounds using, 266-267
 - erasing a shape using, 37-39
- EQU instruction, 15
- ERASE routine, 50
- Erasing a shape
 - by drawing over a shape, 48-53
 - using EOR instruction, 37-39
- Explosions
 - BLINE and, 128
 - collision and, 131-138
 - decrementing scoring and, 156-166
 - delay loop and, 139
 - HORIZB and, 128
 - how to draw, 129-138
 - initialization routine and, 129
 - scoring and, 144-155
 - types of displays for, 129
 - where to draw an explosion, 127-129
 - See also* Sound effects
- Field headings in assemblers, 13-14
- Figures (persons), how to draw, 23-24
- Flicker
 - DRAW-DRAW and, 52
 - how to reduce, 283-288
- Game, creating a
 - bullet draw routine, 177
 - conditional branch instructions, 178
 - displaying of scores, 177
 - drawing a man, 176
 - drawing a plane, 176-177
 - flowchart for, 172-178
 - paddle reads and, 176
 - PCOUNTER and, 176
 - PINITIAL and, 176
 - program for, 179-195
 - using DRAW-DRAW for, 195-210
- GOSUB command, 40
- GR command, 300
- HCOLOR command, 4
- Hexadecimal numbering system, how it works, 8-9
- HEX command, 25
- Hex numbers, how to convert into binary numbers, 9
- HGR command, 16, 300
- HGR2 command, 16, 300
- HI byte table, 26-27
- Hi-res, double
 - animating color shapes in, 244-251
 - animating shapes in, 231-238
 - displaying color in, 239-243
 - drawing shapes in, 229-231, 241-243
 - high bit and, 229
 - how to select mode for, 229
 - memory needed for, 227
 - motherboard for, 227
 - resolution and, 228
 - screens for, 228-229
 - video monitor versus television for, 227
- Hi-res screen(s)
 - choosing between page 1 and page 2, 11-12
 - clearing the, 18-21
 - displaying the, 16-18
 - divisions of, 12
 - double, 228-229
 - memory allocation and, 296-299
- HOME command, 300
- HORIZB and explosions, 128
- INC (INCrement memory), 310
- INC LINEA instruction, 41
- INC LINE instruction, 41
- Initialization (INITE) routine, 129
- INITIAL subroutine, 45, 72
- INX (INcrement the X register), 310
- INY (INcrement the Y register), 310

JMP (JuMP to address)
instruction, 18, 310

Joysticks
difference between paddles
and, 89
horizontal/vertical
movement and,
101-105
reading of, 89-90
See also Paddles

JSR (Jump to SubRoutine)
instruction, 40, 310

Keypress, used in restarting,
144-155

Labels, assigning to soft
switches, 18

LDA (LoaD the Accumulator)
instruction, 17, 310-311

LDX (LoaD the X register),
311

LDY (LoaD the Y register),
311

Line address tables
how to use, 24-25
program for, 25-29

Line locations
changing, 29
curved movement and, 262
shapes at new, 72-77

Line numbers, 14

LO byte table, 27-28

Load accumulator (LDA)
instruction, 17, 310-311

Loading (BLOAD) a program,
14

Loading TEMP, 58-59

Load the X register (LDX),
311

Load the Y register (LDY),
311

LSR (Logical Shift Right)
instruction
collision detection and
color drawing and,
222-223
definition of, 311
sound effects and, 171

MAIN PROGRAM, definition
of, 40

Memory
allocation in BASIC,
296-299

determining length of
programs, 299

double hi-res and, 227
extending, 299

Memory addresses
in Apple II, 9-11
changing location of, 14-15
converting from hex to
decimal, 10
pages and, 10
relocating, 15
storage and, 10

Monitors versus televisions
for double hi-res, 227

Motherboard for double hi-
res, 227

Movement, curved
air resistance simulation,
265
calculating line positions
for, 262
flowchart for, 263
program for falling bombs,
263-265

Movement, diagonal
creating sharp angles,
257-261
flowchart for, 253
how to keep a smooth line
of animation, 257
program for line by line,
252-257
testing for end of screen
and, 252-253

Movement, horizontal
joystick control and,
101-105
paddle control and, 93-101,
289-294

See also Animation,
horizontal

Movement, vertical
joystick control and,
101-105
paddle control and, 90-93
See also Animation, vertical

NEWLINE, 72

Nibble, definition of, 8

NOP (No OPERATION), 311

NSHAPE, 140-141

Object code
definition of, 12
how to run, 14

OFFSET table, 100-101

Opcodes and pseudo-opcodes,
15

ORA (Inclusive OR with
Accumulator), 311

Paddle crosstalk, 101

Paddles
creating a game and reading
of, 176
difference between
joysticks and, 89
horizontal movement and,
93-101, 289-294
how to integrate multiple
shapes, 106-115
reading of, 89-90
shooting bullets and,
105-106
smoothing routines,
288-294
testing for non-movement
of, 283-288
vertical movement and,
90-93

See also Joysticks

Pages
in hi-res screens, 11-12
in memory addresses, 10

PCOUNTER and game
creation, 176

PEEK command, 16

PINITIAL and game creation,
176

Pixels, definition of, 12

Plotting shapes, 24-29

Points, drawing a series of
clearing a hi-res screen,
18-21
displaying the hi-res screen,
16-18

drawing shapes wider than
one byte, 33-36
how to draw a shape, 21-24
plotting a shape, 24-29
using shape tables, 30-33

POKE commands, 4, 16, 300

PREAD instructions, 89-90

Preshifted shapes, 54-57

Printing text, 295, 302

Reading of paddles, 89-90

Relocation of programs, 14-15

Resolution
color drawing and, 215
double hi-res and, 228

- RETURN command, 40
- Reviewing (CALL-151) a program, 14
- ROL (ROtate Left), 311
- ROR (ROtate Right), 311
- ROT (rotation) command, 4
- RTS (ReTurn from Subroutine) instruction, 40, 311
- Running (BRUN) a program, 13

- SBC (SuBtract with Carry), 311-312
- SCALE command, 4
- Scoring display
 - counting by multiples and decrementing score, 156-166
 - counting by ones, 140-144
 - how to count collision events, 141, 144
 - how to zero the counter, 141
 - NSHAPE and, 140-141
 - stopping and restarting with a keypress, 144-155
- Screen bytes, 12
- Screen positions
 - accessing, 12
 - testing, 60-61
- Screen(s), hi-res
 - choosing between page 1 and page 2, 11-12
 - clearing the, 18-21
 - displaying the, 16-18
 - divisions of, 12
 - double, 228-229
 - memory allocation and, 296-299
- SEC (SEt Carry), 312
- Semi-colon, use of, 13
- Shape positions and collisions, 119-120

- Shapes
 - accessing sequential, 60-72
 - double hi-res and animating, 231-238
 - double hi-res and animating color, 244-251
 - double hi-res and drawing of, 229-231
 - how to produce colored, 213-214
 - new line positions and, 72-77
 - paddle control and multiple, 106-115
 - seven preshifted, 54-57
 - See also* Backgrounds
- Shape tables
 - addressing (SHPADR), 58
 - CMP of, 32-33
 - color drawing and dummy, 224-225
 - contents of, 4
 - for horizontal animation, 55-57
 - how to construct, 32, 58
 - problems with using, 4
 - program for, 30-32
 - purpose of, 30
 - TEMP and, 57-60, 65-66
- Shooting bullets, how to draw, 105-106
- SHPADR, 57-58
- SHPNO, 58
- Soft switches
 - assigning labels to, 18
 - for double hi-res, 299
 - how to access, 16-17
- Sound effects
 - on the Apple II, 167-169
 - BNE and, 168
 - DELAY and, 168-169
 - DRAW-DRAW and, 198
 - how to create, 169-171
 - See also* Explosions
- Source code, 13, 14
- STA (STore Accumulator) instruction, 13, 17, 312

- Status Register, 170
- Stopping at a predetermined score, 144-155
- Storage of bytes, 10
- Store accumulator (STA) instruction, 13, 17, 312
- STX (STore the X register), 312
- STY (STore the Y register), 312
- SUBROUTINES, definition of, 40
- Subtract with carry (SBC), 311-312

- TAX (Transfer Accumulator to X register) instruction, 59, 312
- TAY (Transfer Accumulator to Y register) instruction, 59, 312
- Televisions and double hi-res, 227
- TEMP and shape address tables, 57-60, 65-66
 - advantage of, 57
 - loading of shapes in, 57-58
- SHPADR and, 58-60
- TEXT command, 300
- Time delays
 - collision and, 118
 - explosions and, 139
 - paddle crosstalk and, 101
 - sound generation and, 168-169
 - vertical animation and, 39
- TXA (Transfer X to Accumulator), 312
- TYA (Transfer Y to Accumulator), 312

- XCOUNT, 32

- Zero page addresses

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

.....

Leonard I. Malkin teaches and does research in biochemistry at a leading midwest medical school. He is a member of the medical school committee on CAI (Computer Assisted Instruction) and has published several commercially successful programs for the Apple II. He is also president of his own educational software corporation and is currently engaged in developing other educational programs for the Apple. His immediate plans are to "use the proceeds from this book to buy myself a boat and get away from computers for a while—they're driving me crazy."

Hi-Res Graphics and Animation Using Assembly Language

Leonard I. Malkin, Ph.D.

Explore the secrets of double hi-res and color and learn how to create startlingly detailed animated graphics.

This is *the* book for both beginners in assembly language programming and assembly language literates who wish to extend their expertise to Apple II hi-res graphics and animation.

Whereas most books on assembly language do not feature hi-res graphics, this book uses hi-res graphics and animation as a tool to demonstrate the fundamentals of assembly language programming. At the same time, this easy-to-read and sometimes humorous book will show you the secrets of producing professional hi-res animated graphics for games and a variety of other applications.

In the first part of the book, following a discussion of binary and hexadecimal numbering systems and the use of an assembler, you will be guided through each step leading to the construction of a single arcade-type game written entirely in assembly language. Various aspects of hi-res animated graphics are covered with clear, concise explanations. Illustrated with detailed programs, topics include: vertical and horizontal movement, internal animation, paddle and joystick controls, collisions and explosions, scoring, sound generation, and the animation of multiple shapes.

The second part of the book explores color graphics and double hi-res techniques and requirements, including double hi-res color. Other topics in Part Two include curved and diagonal movement, drawing over backgrounds, more sophisticated paddle and joystick controls, integrating BASIC with assembly language, and the use of BASIC and assembly language graphics for educational programs.

Also of interest to Apple® owners...

Pascal Programs for Data Base Management

Tom Swan

The best bargain in data base management to date! This package contains a complete relational data base system (thirty-one programs and four library units)—ready to run—in Apple Pascal.

The software contains the source codes for all the programs. In the accompanying book, the author explains how to create, edit, merge, search, and sort data files. Two powerful commands that distinguish a relational data base are presented in the programs *join* and *project*. With the help of these two programs, it is possible to extract and prepare any conceivable combination of information from a data base. Also included is *pdbsunit*, a special library of powerful Pascal procedures for input, output, and special data base functions. 7272-4, Book/Software, 3 disks

*The Guide for
Apple® II
Programmers*



Hayden Book Company

A DIVISION OF HAYDEN PUBLISHING COMPANY, INC.
HASBROUCK HEIGHTS, NEW JERSEY / BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA

ISBN 0-8104-6758-5